

AN INTRODUCTORY LATIN BOOK.

Intended as an Elementary Drill Book on the Inflections and Principles of the Language, and as an Introduction to the author's Grammar, Reader, and Composition. By ALBERT HARKNESS, Ph. D., Professor in Brown University.

12mo. 162 Pages.

A LATIN GRAMMAR.

For Schools and Colleges. By ALBERT HARKNESS, Ph. D., Professor in Brown University.

12mo, 355 Pages.

A LATIN READER.

Intended as a Companion to the author's Latin Grammar; with References, Suggestions, Notes, and Vocabulary. By ALBERT HARKNESS, Ph. D., Professor in Brown University.

12mo. 212 Pages.

A FIRST GREEK BOOK.

Comprising an Outline of the Forms and Inflections of the Language, a complete Analytical Syntax, and an Introductory Greek Reader, with Notes and Vocabularies. By ALBERT HARKNESS, Ph. D., Professor in Brown University, author of Harkness's Latin Grammar, &c., &c.

12mo. 276 Pages.

W. C. CHEWETT & CO.,

PUBLISHERS,

17 and 19 KING STREET EAST, TORONTO.

A Latin Grammar for Schools and Colleges.

By A. HARKNESS, Ph.D., Professor in Brown University.

To explain the general plan of the work, the Publishers ask the attention of teachers to the following extracts from the Preface:

1. This volume is designed to present a systematic arrangement of the great facts and laws of the Latin language; to exhibit not only grammatical forms and constructions, but also those *vital principles* which underlie, control, and explain them.

2. Designed at once as a text-book for the class-room, and a book of reference in study, it aims to introduce the beginner easily and pleasantly to the first principles of the language, and yet to make adequate provision for the wants of the more advanced student.

3. By brevity and conciseness in the choice of phraseology and compactness in the arrangement of forms and topics, the author has endeavored to compress within the limits of a convenient manual an amount of carefully-selected grammatical facts, which would otherwise fill a much larger volume.

4. He has, moreover, endeavored to present the whole subject in the light of modern scholarship. Without encumbering his pages with any unnecessary discussions, he has aimed to enrich them with the *practical results* of the recent labors in the field of philology.

5. Syntax has received in every part special attention. An attempt has been made to exhibit, as clearly as possible, that beautiful system of laws which the genius of the language—that highest of all grammatical authority—has created for itself.

6. Topics which require extended illustration are first presented in their completeness in general outline, before the separate points are discussed in detail. Thus a single page often foreshadows all the leading features of an extended discussion, imparting a completeness and vividness to the impression of the learner, impossible under any other treatment.

7. Special care has been taken to explain and illustrate with the requisite fulness all difficult and intricate subjects. The Subjunctive Mood—the severest trial of the teacher's patience—has been presented, it is hoped, in a form at once simple and comprehensive.

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2009 with funding from
Ontario Council of University Libraries

Annelia Grinton

80

Handwritten text, possibly a signature or title, in a cursive script. The text is written in dark ink on a light-colored background. The characters are somewhat stylized and difficult to decipher, but appear to be a single line of writing.

The "AUTHORIZED TEXT BOOK" Series.

A

LATIN GRAMMAR

FOR

SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES.

BY

ALBERT HARKNESS, PH. D.,

PROFESSOR IN BROWN UNIVERSITY.

AUTHOR OF

"FIRST LATIN BOOK," "A SECOND LATIN BOOK," "A FIRST GREEK BOOK," ETC.

TORONTO:

W. C. CHEWETT & CO.,

17 & 19 KING STREET EAST.

1868.

ENTERED, according to Act of the Provisional Legislature, in the year 1868, by
ALBERT HARKNESS,
In the Office of the Registrar of the Province of Canada.

ENTERED, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1864, by
D. APPLETON AND COMPANY,
In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States for the Southern
District of New York.

P R E F A C E .

THE work now offered to the public had its origin in a desire to promote the cause of Classical study. It has long been the opinion of the author, in common with numerous classical teachers, that the subject of Latin Grammar, often regarded as dry and difficult, may be presented to the learner in a form at once simple, attractive, and philosophical. It is the aim of this manual to aid the instructor in the attainment of this most desirable end.

That the present is a favorable time for the production of a Latin Grammar scarcely admits of a doubt. Never before were there such facilities for the work. The last quarter of a century has formed an epoch in the study of language and in the methods of instruction. During this period some of the most gifted minds of Germany have been gathering the choicest treasures in the field of philology, while others have been equally successful in devising improved methods of instruction. In our own country too, the more enterprising teachers have caught the spirit of improvement, and are calling loudly for a better method than has hitherto prevailed in classical study.

The present work has been prepared in view of these facts. To explain its general plan, the author begs leave to specify the following points.

1. This volume is designed to present a systematic arrangement of the great facts and laws of the Latin language; to exhibit not only grammatical forms and constructions, but also those *vital principles* which underlie, control, and explain them.

2. Designed at once as a text-book for the class-room, and a book of reference in study, it aims to introduce the beginner easily and pleasantly to the first principles of the language, and yet to make adequate provision for the wants of the more advanced student. Accordingly it presents in large type a general survey of the whole subject in a brief and concise statement of facts and

laws, while parallel with this, in smaller type, it furnishes a fuller discussion of irregularities and exceptions for later study and for reference.

3. By brevity and conciseness in the choice of phraseology and compactness in the arrangement of forms and topics, the author has endeavored to compress within the limits of a convenient manual an amount of carefully selected grammatical facts, which would otherwise fill a much larger volume.

4. He has, moreover, endeavored to present the whole subject in the light of modern scholarship. Without encumbering his pages with any unnecessary discussions, he has aimed to enrich them with the *practical results* of the recent labors in the field of philology.

5. In the regular paradigms, both of declension and of conjugation, the stems and endings have been distinguished by a difference of type, thus keeping constantly before the pupil the significance of the two essential elements which enter into the composition of inflected forms.

6. Syntax has received in every part special attention. An attempt has been made to exhibit, as clearly as possible, that beautiful system of laws which the genius of the language—that highest of all grammatical authority—has created for itself. The leading principles of construction have been put in the form of definite rules, and illustrated by carefully selected examples. To secure convenience of reference and to give completeness and vividness to the general outline, these rules, after being separately discussed, are presented in a body at the close of the Syntax.

7. The subdivisions in each discussion are developed, as far as practicable, from the leading idea which underlies the whole subject. Thus in the treatment of cases, moods, and tenses, various uses, comparatively distinct in themselves, are found to centre around some leading idea or thought, thus imparting to the subject both unity and simplicity.

8. Topics which require extended illustration are first presented in their completeness in general outline, before the separate points are discussed in detail. Thus a single page often foreshadows all the leading features of an extended discussion, imparting a completeness and vividness to the impression of the learner, impossible under any other treatment.

9. Special care has been taken to explain and illustrate with

the requisite fulness all difficult and intricate subjects. The Subjunctive Mood—that severest trial of the teacher’s patience—has been presented, it is hoped, in a form at once simple and comprehensive. The different uses have not only been carefully classified, but also distinguished by characteristic and appropriate terms, convenient for the class-room.

For the benefit of those who prefer to begin with a more elementary manual in the study of Latin, it is in contemplation to publish a smaller Grammar on precisely the same plan as the present work, and with the same mode of treatment. This will be especially adapted to the wants of those who do not contemplate a collegiate course of study.

A Latin Reader, prepared with special reference to this work and intended as a companion to it, will be published at an early day.

In conclusion the author cheerfully acknowledges his indebtedness to other scholars, who have labored in the same field. The classification of verbs is founded in part on that of Grotendorf and Krüger, a mode of treatment generally adopted in the recent German works on the subject, and well exhibited by Allen in his *Analysis of Latin Verbs*.

In Prosody much aid has been derived from the excellent works of Ramsay and Habenicht.

On the general subjects of Etymology and Syntax, his indebtedness is less direct, though perhaps no less real. His views of philology have been formed in a great measure under the moulding influence of the great German masters; and perhaps few Latin Grammars of any repute have appeared within the last half century, either in this country, England, or Germany, from which he has not received valuable suggestions. In the actual work of preparation, however, he has carried out his own plan, and presented his own modes of treatment, but he has aimed to avoid all untried novelties and to admit only that which is sustained by the highest authority, and confirmed by the actual experience of the class-room.

The author is happy to express his grateful acknowledgments to the numerous Instructors who have favored him with valuable suggestions; especially to his esteemed friend and colleague, Professor J. L. Lincoln, of this University.

PREFACE

TO THE REVISED EDITION.

THE present edition is the result of a thorough and complete revision. The author has subjected every part of the work to a careful examination; he has availed himself of the suggestions of the most eminent classical instructors, and, finally, as the surest of all tests, he has used the work in connection with all the principal Latin authors usually read in school and college. The materials thus collected have been incorporated in this edition without either changing the plan or increasing the size of the work. By a studied attention to clearness and brevity, space has been secured for many valuable refinements of the language.

In this new form the work is now committed to classical teachers in the hope that in their hands it may promote the cause of classical education in our land.

BROWN UNIVERSITY, *September*, 1867.

CONTENTS.

PART FIRST

ORTHOGRAPHY.

	Page.
Alphabet,	1
Sounds of Letters,	2
I. English Method of Pronunciation,	2
II. Continental Method,	5
Syllables,	6
Quantity,	7
Accentuation,	7

PART SECOND.

ETYMOLOGY.

CHAPTER I.

NOUNS.

Gender,	8
Person and Number,	9
Cases,	10
Declensions,	10
First Declension,	11
Greek Nouns,	12
Gender,	12
Second Declension,	12
Greek Nouns,	14
Gender,	15
Third Declension,	15
Class I.—With Nominative Ending,	16
Class II.—Without Nominative Ending,	17
Formation of Cases,	20
Greek Peculiarities,	29
Gender,	30
Fourth Declension,	34
Gender,	35
Fifth Declension,	36
Gender,	36
Comparative View of Declensions,	37
General Table of Gender,	39
Declension of Compound Nouns,	39

	Page.
Irregular Nouns,	40
I. Indeclinable,	40
II. Defective,	41
III. Heteroclites,	42
IV. Heterogeneous,	43

CHAPTER II.

ADJECTIVES.

First and Second Declensions,	44
Third Declension,	47
Formation of Cases,	49
Irregular Adjectives,	50
Comparison,	51
I. Terminational Comparison,	51
Irregular,	51
Defective,	52
II. Adverbial Comparison,	53
Numerals,	54
I. Numeral Adjectives,	54
II. Numeral Adverbs,	58

CHAPTER III.

PRONOUNS.

Personal Pronouns,	59
Possessive,	60
Demonstrative,	60
Relative,	62
Interrogative,	63
Indefinite,	63

CHAPTER IV.

VERBS.

Voices, Moods,	65
Tenses,	66
Numbers, Persons,	67
Conjugation,	67
Paradigms of Verbs,	68
Synopsis of Conjugation,	88
Deponent Verbs,	91
Periphrastic Conjugation,	94
Contractions and Peculiarities of Conjugation,	95
Formation of the Parts of Verbs,	96
Table of Verbal Inflections,	98
Comparative View of Conjugations,	102
Formation of Principal Parts,	104
I. Regular Formations,	104
Euphonic Changes,	105
II. Irregular Formations,	106
Principal Parts in Compounds,	109

	Page.
Classification of Verbs,	110
First Conjugation,	110
Second Conjugation,	112
Third Conjugation,	115
Fourth Conjugation,	125
Irregular Verbs,	127
Defective “	134
Impersonal “	136

CHAPTER V.

PARTICLES.

Adverbs,	137
Prepositions,	139
Conjunctions,	139
Interjections,	141

CHAPTER VI.

FORMATION OF WORDS.

Derivation of Words,	141
Derivative Nouns,	141
Derivative Adjectives,	145
Derivative Verbs,	147
Derivative Adverbs,	149
Composition of Words,	150
Compound Nouns,	152
Compound Adjectives,	152
Compound Verbs,	153
Compound Adverbs,	153

PART THIRD.

SYNTAX.

CHAPTER I

SYNTAX OF SENTENCES.

Section.	
I. Classification of Sentences,	154
II. Simple Sentences,	156
III. Complex Sentences,	158
IV. Compound Sentences,	159

CHAPTER II.

SYNTAX OF NOUNS.

I. Agreement of Nouns,	160
Predicate Nouns,	160
Appositives,	161
II. Nominative,	162

Section.	Page.
III. Vocative,	163
IV. Accusative,	163
I. Direct Object,	164
Two Accusatives,	165
II. Subject of Infinitive,	167
III. Agreement of Accusative,	167
IV. Accusative in an Adverbial sense,	168
With or without Prepositions,	168
Accusative of Time and Space,	168
Accusative of Limit,	168
Accusative of Specification,	169
V. Accusative in Exclamations,	169
V. Dative,	170
I. Dative with Verbs—Indirect Object,	170
Dative of Advantage,	171
Dative with Compounds,	172
Dative of Possessor,	173
Dative of Agent,	173
Ethical Dative,	174
Two Datives,	174
II. Dative with Adjectives,	175
III. Dative with Nouns and Adverbs,	176
VI. Genitive,	176
I. Genitive with Nouns,	177
II. Genitive with Adjectives,	180
III. Genitive with Verbs,	182
Predicate Genitive,	182
Genitive of Place,	183
Genitive in Special Constructions,	183
Genitive and Accusative,	186
IV. Genitive with Adverbs,	187
VII. Ablative,	187
I. Ablative of Cause, Manner, Means,	188
Ablative of Price,	190
Ablative with Comparatives,	190
Ablative of Difference,	191
Ablative in Special Constructions,	192
II. Ablative of Place,	193
Ablative of Source and Separation,	195
III. Ablative of Time,	196
IV. Ablative of Characteristic,	197
V. Ablative of Specification,	198
VI. Ablative Absolute,	198
VII. Ablative with Prepositions,	199
VIII. Cases with Prepositions,	199

CHAPTER III.

SYNTAX OF ADJECTIVES.

Agreement of Adjectives,	201
Use of Adjectives,	202
Comparison,	203

CHAPTER IV.

SYNTAX OF PRONOUNS.

	Page.
Agreement of Pronouns,	204
Personal and Possessive Pronouns,	206
Reflexive Use,	206
Demonstrative Pronouns,	208
Relative Pronouns,	209
Interrogative Pronouns,	210
Indefinite Pronouns,	211

CHAPTER V.

SYNTAX OF VERBS.

Section.		
I.	Agreement of Verbs,	212
II.	Use of Voices,	214
III.	Tenses of the Indicative,	215
IV.	Use of the Indicative,	219
V.	Tenses of the Subjunctive,	219
	Sequence of Tenses,	220
VI.	Use of the Subjunctive,	223
	I. Potential Subjunctive,	223
	II. Subjunctive of Desire,	225
	III. Subjunctive of Purpose or Result,	226
	IV. Subjunctive of Condition,	232
	V. Subjunctive of Concession,	236
	VI. Subjunctive of Cause and Time,	238
	VII. Subjunctive in Indirect Questions,	242
	VIII. Subjunctive by Attraction,	244
	IX. Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse,	245
	Moods and Tenses in the Oratio Obliqua,	246
	Pronouns, Adverbs, etc., in Oratio Oblique	248
VII.	Imperative,	248
	I. Tenses of the Imperative,	248
	II. Use of the Imperative,	249
VIII.	Infinitive,	250
	I. Tenses of the Infinitive,	251
	II. Subject of the Infinitive,	252
	III. Predicate after the Infinitive,	253
	IV. Construction of the Infinitive,	254
IX.	Subject and Object Clauses,	258
X.	Gerund,	262
	Gerundive,	263
XI.	Supine,	266
XII.	Participles,	267

CHAPTER VI.

SYNTAX OF PARTICLES.

Adverbs,	270
Prepositions,	271
Conjunctions,	271
Interjections,	274

CHAPTER VII.

	Page.
Rules of Syntax,	274

CHAPTER VIII.

ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS AND CLAUSES.

Section.

I. Arrangement of Words,	281
II. Arrangement of Clauses,	285

PART FOURTH.

PROSODY.

CHAPTER I.

QUANTITY.

I. General Rules of Quantity,	287
II. Special Rules of Quantity,	289
I. Quantity of Final Syllables,	289
II. Quantity in Increments,	292
III. Quantity of Derivative Endings,	295
IV. Quantity of Stem Syllables,	297

CHAPTER II.

VERSIFICATION.

I. General View of the Subject,	300
I. Metrical Feet,	300
II. Verses,	302
III. Figures of Prosody,	304
II. Varieties of Verse,	305
I. Dactylic Verse,	305
II. Anapaestic Verse,	308
III. Trochaic Verse,	308
IV. Iambic Verse,	309
V. Ionic Verse,	312
VI. Choriambic Verse,	312
VII. Logaedic Verse,	313
VIII. Miscellaneous Verses,	315
III. Versification of Virgil, Horace, Ovid, and Juvenal,	315

APPENDIX.

Figures of Speech,	320
Latin Authors,	322
Roman Calendar,	323
Roman Money, Weights, and Measures,	325
Abbreviations,	327
Index of Verbs,	328
Index of Subjects,	336

Amelia Grinton

LATIN GRAMMAR.

1. **LATIN GRAMMAR** treats of the principles of the Latin language. It comprises four parts:

I. **ORTHOGRAPHY**, which treats of the letters and sounds of the language.

II. **ETYMOLOGY**, which treats of the classification, inflection, and derivation of words.

III. **SYNTAX**, which treats of the construction of sentences.

IV. **PROSODY**, which treats of quantity and versification.

PART FIRST.

ORTHOGRAPHY.

ALPHABET.

2. **THE** Latin alphabet is the same as the English with the omission of *w*.

1. *U* supplies the place of *w*.

2. *H* is only a breathing, and not strictly entitled to the rank of a letter.

3. *J* and *v* did not originally belong to the Latin: their places were supplied respectively by *i* and *u*, which were used both as vowels and as consonants.

4. *K* is seldom used, and *y* and *z* occur only in words of Greek origin.

3. **Classes of Letters.**—Letters are divided into two classes:

I. *Vowels*, a, e, i, o, u, y.

II. *Consonants* :

1. Liquids, l, m, n, r.

2. Spirants, h, s.

3. Mutes: 1) Labials, p, b, f, v.

2) Palatals, c, g, k, q, j.

3) Linguals, t, d.

4. Double Consonants, x, z.

4. Combinations of Letters.—We notice here,

1. *Diphthongs*—combinations of two vowels in one syllable. The most common are—*ae*, *oe*, *au*.

2. *Double Consonants*—*x* = *cs* or *gs*; *z* = *ds* or *ts*.

3. *Ch*, *ph*, *th* are best treated, not as combinations of letters, but only as aspirated forms of *c*, *p*, and *t*, as *h* is only a breathing.

SOUNDS OF LETTERS.

5. Scholars in different countries generally pronounce Latin substantially as they do their own languages. In this country, however, two distinct systems are recognized, generally known as the *English* and the *Continental Method*.¹ For the convenience of the instructor, we add a brief outline of each.

I. ENGLISH METHOD.

1. *Sounds of Vowels.*

6. Vowels generally have their long or short English sounds. But

1. *These sounds* in Latin, as in English, are somewhat modified by the consonants which accompany them.

2. *R*, *final*, or followed by another consonant, greatly obscures the vowel sound. Before *r* thus situated, *e*, *i*, and *u* are scarcely distinguishable from each other, as in the English *her*, *fir*, *fur*, while *a* and *o* are pronounced as in *far*, *for*, but between *qu* and *rt*, *a* approaches the sound of *o*: *quar-tus*, as in *quarter*.

3. *Dr*, following *qua*, gives to *a* something of the sound of *o*: *quad-rupes*, as in *quadruped*.

7. **Long Sound.**—Vowels have their long English sounds

¹ Strictly speaking, there is no Continental Method, as every nation on the continent of Europe has its own method.

—*a* as in *fate*, *e* in *mete*, *i* in *pine*, *o* in *note*, *u* in *tube*, *y* in *type*—in the following situations:

1. In final syllables ending in a vowel:¹ *se*, *si*, *ser'-vi*, *ser'-vo*, *cor'-nu*, *mi'-sy*.

2. In all syllables, before a vowel or diphthong: *de'-us*, *de-o'-rum*, *de'-ae*, *di-e'-i*, *ni'-hi-lum*.²

3. In penultimate³ and unaccented syllables, not final, before a single consonant or a mute with *l* or *r*: *pa'-ter*, *pa'-tres*, *A'-thos*, *O'-thrys*, *do-lo'-ris*. But

1) *A* unaccented has the sound of *a* final in *America*: *men'-sa*.

2) *A* after *qu*. See §. 2.

3) *I* (also *y*) unaccented, not final, generally has the short sound of *e*; *nobilis* (nob'-e-lis), *Amycus* (Am'-e-cus). But in the first syllable of a word it has—(1) before an accented vowel or diphthong, its long sound, *di'-e-bus*; and (2) before a single consonant or a mute with *l* or *r*, sometimes the long sound, *i-do'-ne-us*; and sometimes the short sound, *philosophus* (phe-los'-o-phus).

4) *I* and *u* in special combinations. See §. 2 and 4.

5) Before *bl*, *gl*, *tl*.—*U* has the short sound before *bl*; and the other vowels before *gl* and *tl*: *Pub-lic'-o-la*, *Ag-la'-o-phon*, *At'-las*.

6) In compounds, when the first part is entire and ends in a consonant, any vowel before such consonant has generally the short sound: *a* in *ab'-es*, *e* in *recl'-it*, *i* in *in'-it*, *o* in *ob'-it*, *prod'-est*. But those final syllables which, as exceptions, have the long sound before a consonant (§. 1), retain that sound in compounds: *post'-quam*, *hos'-ce*.

8. Short Sound.—Vowels have the short English sound —*a* as in *fat*, *e* in *met*, *i* in *pin*, *o* in *not*, *u* in *tub*, *y* in *myth*—in the following situations:

1. In final syllables ending in a consonant: *a'-mat*, *a'-met*, *rex'-it*, *sol*, *con'-sul*, *Te'-thys*; except *post*, *es* final, and *os* final in plural cases: *res*, *di'-es*, *hos*, *a'-gros*.

2. In all syllables before *x*, or any two consonants except a mute with *l* or *r* (§. 3): *rex'-it*, *bel'-lum*, *rex-e'-runt*, *bel-lo'-rum*.

3. In all accented syllables before one or more consonants, except the penultimate: *dom'-i-nus*, *pat'-ri-bus*. But

1) *A*, *e*, or *o*, before a single consonant (or a mute with *l* or *r*) fol-

¹ Some give to *i* in both syllables of *tibi* and *sibi* the short sound.

² In these rules no account is taken of *h*, as that is only a breathing: hence the first *i* in *nihilum* is treated as a vowel before another vowel; for the same reason, *ch*, *ph*, and *th* are treated as single mutes; thus *th* in *Athos* and *Othrys*.

³ Penultimate, the last syllable but one.

lowed by *e*, *i*, or *y*, before another vowel, has the long sound: *a'-ci-es*, *a'-cri-a*, *mē'-re-o*, *dō'-ce-o*.

2) *U*, in any syllable not final, before a single consonant or a mute with *l* or *r*, except *bl* (7. 5), has the long sound: *Pu'-ni-cus*, *sa-lu'-bri-tas*.

3) *Compounds*. See 7. 6).

2. Sounds of Diphthongs.

9. *Ae* and *oe* are pronounced like *e*:

1) long: *Cae'-sar* (Ce'-sar), *Oe'-ta* (E'-ta).

2) short: *Daed'-ā-lus* (Ded'-a-lus), *Oed'-ī-pus*

Au, as in author: *au'-rum*.

Eu, . . . neuter: *neu'-ter*.

1. *Ei* and *oi* are seldom diphthongs, but when so used they are pronounced as in height, coin: *hei*, *proin*. See Synacresis, 669. II.

2. *I* between an accented *a*, *e*, *o*, or *y* and another vowel has the sound of *y* consonant in yes: *Acha'ia* (A-ka'-ya), *Pompe'ius* (Pom-pe'-yus), *Latoia* (La-to'-ya), *Harpyia* (Har-py'-ya). These combinations of *i* with the following vowel are sometimes called semi-consonant diphthongs.

3. *Ui*, as a diphthong with the long sound of *i*, occurs in *cui*, *hui*, *huic*.

4. *U*, with the sound of *w*, sometimes unites with the following vowel or diphthong:—(1) after *q*: *qui* (kwi), *qua*, *que*, *quae*:—(2) generally after *g*: *lingua* (lin'-gwa), *lin'-guis*, *lin'-guae*:—(3) sometimes after *s*: *sua'-deo* (swa'-deo). These combinations of *u* are analogous to those of *i* mentioned above under 2.

3. Sounds of Consonants.

10. The consonants are pronounced in general as in English, but a few directions may aid the learner.

11. **C, G, S, T, and X** are generally pronounced with their ordinary English sounds. Thus,

1. *C* and *g* are *soft* (like *s* and *j*) before *e*, *i*, *y*, *ae* and *oe*, and *hard* in other situations: *ce'-do* (sedo), *ci'-vis*, *Cy'-rus*, *cae'-do*, *coe'-na*, *a'-ge* (a-je), *a'-gi*; *ca'-do* (ka'-do), *co'-go*, *cum*, *Ga'-des*. But

1) *Ch* is hard like *k*: *chorus* (ko'-rus), *Chi-os* (Ki'os). But see 13. 2.

2) *G* has the soft sound before *g* soft: *ag'-ger*.

2. *S* generally has its regular English sound, as in son, thus: *sa'-cer*, *so'-ror*, *si'-dus*. But

1) *S* final, after *c*, *ae*, *au*, *b*, *m*, *n*, *r*, is pronounced like *z*: *spes*, *praes*, *laus*, *urbs*, *hi'-ems*, *mons*, *pars*.

2) In a few words *s* has the sound of *z*, because so pronounced in English words derived from them: *Cae'-sar*, Caesar; *cau'-sa*, cause; *mu'-sa*, muse; *mi'-ser*, miser; *phys'-i-cus*, physic, etc.

3. *T* has its regular English sound, as in time: *ti'-mor*, *to'-tus*.

4. *X* has generally its regular English sound like *ks*; *rex'-i* (rek'-si), *ux'-or* (uk'-sor). But

1) At the beginning of a word it has the sound of *z*: *Xan'-thus* (Zan-thus).

2) Between *e* or *u* and an accented vowel, it has the sound of *gz*: *ex-i'-lis* (egzi'lis, as in exile); *ux-o'-ri-us* (ugzo're-us, as in uxorious).

12. C, S, T, and X—Aspirated.—Before *i* preceded by an accented syllable and followed by a vowel, *c*, *s*, *t*, and *x* are aspirated—*c*, *s*, and *t* taking the sound of *sh*, *x* that of *ksh*: *so'-ci-us* (so'-she-us), *Al'-si-um* (Al'she-um), *ar'-ti-um* (ar'she-um); *anx'-i-us* (ank'-she-us). *C* has also the sound of *sh* before *eu* and *yo* preceded by an accented syllable: *ca-du'-ce-us* (ca-dn'-she-us), *Sic'-y-on* (Sish'-e-on). But

1. *S*, immediately preceded by an accented vowel and followed by *i* with another vowel, has the sound of *zh*: *Moe'-si-a* (Me'-zhe-a). But some proper nouns retain the sound of *sh*: *A'-si-a* (A'-she-a), *Lys'-i-as*, *So'-si-a*, *The'-o-do'-si-a*, *Tys'-i-as*.

2. *T* loses the aspirate—(1) after *s*, *t*, or *x*: *Os'-ti-a*, *At'-ti-us*, *mix'-ti-o*:—(2) in old infinitives in *ier*: *flec'-ti-er*:—(3) generally in proper names in *tion* (tyon): *Phi-lis'-ti-on*, *Am-phic'-ty-on*.

13. Silent Consonants—An initial consonant, with or without the aspirate *h*, is sometimes silent: Thus

1. *C* before *n*: *Cne'-us* (Ne'-us).

2. *Ch* or *ph* before a mute: *Chtho'-ni-a* (Thonia), *Phthi'-a* (Thia).

3. *G* or *m* before *n*: *gna'-rus*; *Mne'-mon*.

4. *P* before *s* or *t*: *Psy'-che*, *Ptol'-e-mae'-us*.

5. *T* before *m*: *Tmo'-lus*.

II. CONTINENTAL METHOD.

1. Sounds of Vowels.

14. Each vowel has in the main one uniform sound,¹ but the length or duration of the sound depends upon the quantity of the vowel. See 20.

The vowel sounds are as follows:

a like *ä* in father: e. g. *a'-ra*.

e *ā* made: ' *ple'-bes*.

i *ē* me: *i'-ri*.

o *ō* no: *o'-ro*.

u *ô* do: *u'-num*.

y *ē* me: *Ny'-sa*.

¹ These sounds sometimes undergo slight modifications in uniting with the various consonants.

2. *Sounds of Diphthongs.*

15. *Ae* and *oe* like *a* in *made*, e. g. *ae'-tas*, *coe'-lum*.
au " *ou* " *out*, " *au'-rum*.¹

3. *Sounds of Consonants.*

16. The pronunciation of the consonants is similar to that of the English method, but it varies somewhat in different countries.

SYLLABLES.

17. In the pronunciation of Latin, every word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs; thus the Latin words, *more*, *vice*, *acute*, and *persuade* are pronounced, not as the same words are in English, but with their vowel sounds all heard in separate syllables; thus, *mo'-re*, *vi'-ce*, *a-cu'-te*, *per-sua'-de*.

18. **Simple words** are divided into syllables as follows:

1. After a vowel (or diphthong), with the *Long Sound* (7), consonants must be joined to the following vowel: *pa'-ter*, *pa'-tres*, *a-gro'-rum*, *sa-cro'-rum*, *au-di'-vi*.

2. After a vowel with the *Short Sound* (8),

1) *A single* or *double consonant* is joined to such vowel, except after *i* unaccented: *gen'-e-ri*, *rex'-i*, *dom'-i-nus*.

2) *Two consonants* are separated: *bel'-lum*, *men'-sa*, *pat'-ri-bus*. But *x* following a consonant must be joined to the preceding syllable: *Alex'-es*, *anx'-i-us*.

3) *Of three* or *more consonants*, the last, or, if a mute with *l* or *r*, the last two must be joined to the following vowel: *emp'-tus*, *tem'-plum*, *claus'-tra*, *trans'-tra*.

19. **Compounds** are divided into syllables,

1. Generally like simple words: *ed'-o-mo* (*e*, *domo*), *an-tef'-e-ro* (*ante*, *fero*), *be-nev'-o-lens* (*bene*, *volens*), *mag-nan'-i-mus* (*magnus*, *animus*).

2. But if the first part is entire and ends in a consonant, the compound is resolved into its component parts: *ab'-es*, *ab-i'-re*.

¹ In other combinations, the two vowels are generally pronounced separately, but *ei* and *eu* occur as diphthongs with nearly the same sound as in English.

QUANTITY.

20. Syllables are in quantity or length either long, short, or common.¹

21. Long.—A syllable is long in quantity,

1. If it contains a diphthong: *haec*.

2. If its vowel is followed by *j*, *x*, *z*, or any two consonants, except a mute with *l* or *r*: *rex*, *mons*.

22. Short.—A syllable is short, if its vowel is followed by another vowel or a diphthong: *dī'-es*, *vi'-ae*, *nī'-hil*.²

23. Common.—A syllable is common, if its vowel, naturally short, is followed by a mute with *l* or *r*: *a'-gri*.

24. The signs $\bar{\cdot}$, $\acute{\cdot}$, \circ denote respectively that the syllables over which they are placed are long, short, or common: *ā-grō-rūm*.

ACCENTUATION.

I. PRIMARY ACCENT.

25. Monosyllables are treated as accented syllables: *mons*, *nos*.

26. Other words are accented as follows:³

1. Words of two syllables—always on the first: *men'-sa*.

2. Words of more than two syllables—on the penult⁴ if that is long in quantity, otherwise on the antepenult:⁴ *hō-nō'-ris*, *con'-sū-lis*. But

1) *Genitives* in *i* for *ii* and *vocatives* in *i* for *ie* retain the accent of the full form: *in-ge'-ni* for *in-ge'-ni-i*; *Mer-cu'-ri* for *Mer-cu'-ri-e*.

2) *Penults common* in quantity take the accent when used as long.

3) *Compounds* are accented like simple words; but

(a) *The enclitics*, *que*, *ve*, *ne*, appended to words accented on the antepenult, throw back their accent upon the last syllable of that word: *hom'-i-ne'-que*, *hom'-i-nes'-que*.

(b) *Facio* compounded with other words than prepositions, retains its own accent: *cal-e-fū'-cit*.

¹ Common, i. e. sometimes long and sometimes short. For rules of quantity see Prosody. Two or three leading facts are here given for the convenience of the learner.

² No account is taken of the breathing *h* (2. 2).

³ In the subsequent pages the pupil will be expected to accent words in pronunciation according to these rules. The quantity of the penult in words of more than two syllables will therefore be marked (unless determined by 21 and 22), to enable him to ascertain the place of the accent.

⁴ Penult, last syllable but one; antepenult, the last but two.

II. SECONDARY ACCENTS.

27. A second accent is placed on the second or third syllable before the primary accent,—on the second, if that is the first syllable of the word, or is long in quantity, otherwise on the third : *mon'-u-e'-runt* ; *mon'-u-e-ra'-mus* ; *in-stau'-ra-ve'-runt*.

28. In the same way, a third accent is placed on the second or third syllable before the second accent : *hon'-o-rif'-i-ccn-tis'-sī-mus*.

PART SECOND.

E T Y M O L O G Y .

29. ETYMOLOGY treats of the classification, inflection, and derivation of words.

30. The Parts of Speech are—*Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, Verbs, Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections.*

CHAPTER I.

N O U N S .

31. A Noun or Substantive is a name, as of a person, place, or thing : *Cicēro*, Cicero ; *Rōma*, Rome ; *puer*, boy ; *dōmus*, house.

1. A Proper Noun is a proper name, as of a person or place : *Cicēro*, *Rōma*.

2. A Common Noun is a name common to all the members of a class of objects : *vir*, a man ; *ēquus*, horse. Common nouns include

1) *Collective Nouns*—designating a collection of objects : *popūlus*, people ; *exercitus*, army.

2) *Abstract Nouns*—designating properties or qualities : *virtus*, virtue ; *justitia*, justice.

3) *Material Nouns*—designating materials as such : *aurum*, gold ; *lignum*, wood ; *āqua*, water.

32. Nouns have *Gender, Number, Person, and Case.*

GENDER.

33. There are three genders—*Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter.*

34. In some nouns, gender is determined by signification ; in others, by endings.

35. GENERAL RULES FOR GENDER.

I. MASCULINES.

1. Names of *Males*: *Cicero*; *vir*, man; *rex*, king.
2. Names of *Rivers*, *Winds*, and *Months*: *Rhenus*, Rhine; *Nötus*, south wind; *Aprilis*, April.

II. FEMININES.

1. Names of *Females*: *mulier*, woman; *leaena*, lioness.
2. Names of *Countries*, *Towns*, *Islands*, and *Trees*: *Aegyptus*, Egypt; *Röma*, Rome; *Delos*, Delos; *pîrus*, pear tree.

III. NEUTERS.

1. *Indeclinable Nouns*: *fas*, right; *nihil*, nothing.
2. *Words and Clauses* used as *indeclinable nouns*: *triste vale*, a sad farewell; *difficile est amicitiam manere*, it is difficult for friendship to continue.¹

36. REMARKS ON GENDER.

1. **Exceptions.**—The endings² of nouns sometimes give them a gender at variance with these rules. Thus,

1) The names of rivers—*Albula*, *Allia*, *Lêthe*, *Styx*, and sometimes others, are feminine by ending.

2) Some names of *countries*, *towns*, *islands*, *trees*, and *animals* take the gender of their endings. See 47. 1.

2. **Masculine or Feminine.**—A few personal appellatives applicable to both sexes and a few names of animals are sometimes *masculine* and sometimes *feminine*, but when used without distinct reference to sex they are generally *masculine*: *civis*, citizen (man or woman); *cömes*, companion; *bos*, ox, cow.

3. **Mobile Nouns** have different forms for different genders: *filius*, *filia*, son, daughter; *rex*, *regina*, king, queen; *leo*, *leaena*, lion, lioness.

4. **Epicene Nouns** have but one gender, but are used for both sexes. They apply only to the inferior animals, and usually take the gender of their endings: *anser*, goose (male or female), masculine; *aquila*, eagle, feminine.

PERSON AND NUMBER.

37. The Latin, like the English, has three persons and two numbers. The first person denotes the speaker; the second, the person spoken to; the third, the person spoken of. The singular number denotes one, the plural more than one.

¹ Here *vale* and the clause *amicitiam manere* are both used as neuter nouns.

² Gender as determined by the endings of nouns will be noticed in connection with the several declensions.

CASES.

38. The Latin has six cases :

Names.	English Equivalents.
Nominative,	Nominative.
Genitive,	Possessive, or Objective with <i>of</i> .
Dative,	Objective with <i>to</i> or <i>for</i> .
Accusative,	Objective.
Vocative,	Nominative Independent.
Ablative,	Objective with <i>from</i> , <i>by</i> , <i>in</i> , <i>with</i> .

1. **Oblique Cases.**—In distinction from the Nominative and Vocative (*casus recti*, right cases), the other cases are called *oblique* (*casus obliqui*).

2. **Case-Endings.**—In form the several cases are in general distinguished from each other by certain terminations called *case-endings*: Nom. *mensa*, Gen. *mensae*, &c.

3. **Cases Alike.**—But certain cases are not distinguished in form. Thus,

1) The *Nominative*, *Accusative*, and *Vocative* in *neuters* are alike, and in the plural end in *a*.

2) The *Nominative* and *Vocative* are alike in all pure Latin nouns, except those in *us* of the second declension (45).

3) The *Dative* and *Ablative Plural* are alike.

DECLENSIONS.

39. The formation of the several cases is called Declension.

40. **Five Declensions.**—In Latin there are five declensions, distinguished from each other by the following

Genitive Endings.

Dec. I.	Dec. II.	Dec. III.	Dec. IV.	Dec. V.
ae,	i,	īs,	ūs,	ei.¹

41. **Stem and Endings.**—In any noun, of whatever declension,

1. The stem may be found by dropping the ending of the genitive singular.

2. The several cases may be formed by adding to this stem the case-endings.

¹ See 119. 1.

FIRST DECLENSION.

42. Nouns of the first declension end in

ă and ē,—*feminine*; ās and ēs,—*masculine*.

But pure Latin nouns end only in *a*, and are declined as follows :

SINGULAR.

	Example.	Meaning.	Case-Endings.
<i>Nom.</i>	mensă,	a table,	ă
<i>Gen.</i>	mensae,	of a table,	ae
<i>Dat.</i>	mensae,	to, for a table,	ae
<i>Acc.</i>	mensam,	a table,	am
<i>Voc.</i>	mensă,	O table,	ă
<i>Abl.</i>	mensa,	with, from, by a table,	ā

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	mensae,	tables,	ae
<i>Gen.</i>	ensarum,	of tables,	arum
<i>Dat.</i>	ensis,	to, for tables,	is
<i>Acc.</i>	ensas,	tables,	as
<i>Voc.</i>	ensae,	O tables,	ae
<i>Abl.</i>	ensis,	with, from, by tables.	is.

1. **Case-Endings.**—From an inspection of this example, it will be seen that the several cases are distinguished from each other by their case-endings.

2. **Examples for Practice.**—With these endings decline :

Ala, wing; *ăqua*, water; *causa*, cause; *fortuna*, fortune; *porta*, gate; *victoria*, victory.

3. **Irregular Case-Endings.**—The following occur :

1) **As** for *ae* in the *Gen.* of *familia*, in composition with *păter*, *măter*, *filius*, and *filia* : *paterfamilias*, father of a family.

2) **Ai** for the genitive ending *ae*, in the poets : *aulăi* for *aulae*, of a hall.

3) **Um** for *arum* in the *Gen. Plur.* : *Dardanidum* for *Dardanidarum*, of the descendants of Dardanus.

4) **Abus** for *is* in the *Dat.* and *Abl. Plur.*, especially in *dea*, goddess, and *filia*, daughter, to distinguish them from the same cases of *deus*, god, and *filius*, son.

4. **Article.**—The Latin has no article. A Latin noun may therefore, according to the connection in which it is used, be translated either without any article, with *a* or *an*, or with *the* : *côrôna*, crown, a crown, the crown.

43. GREEK NOUNS.—Nouns of this declension in **e, as**, and **es** are of Greek origin, and are declined as follows :

Epitōme, epitome. Aenēas, Aeneas. Pyrites, pyrites.

SINGULAR.

<i>N. epitōmē</i>	<i>Aenēās</i>	<i>pŷritēs</i>
<i>G. epitōmēs</i>	<i>Aenēae</i>	<i>pyritae</i>
<i>D. epitōmae</i>	<i>Aenēae</i>	<i>pyritae</i>
<i>A. epitōmēn</i>	<i>Aenēām, ān</i>	<i>pyritēn</i>
<i>V. epitōmē</i>	<i>Aenēā</i>	<i>pyritē, ā</i>
<i>A. epitōmē</i>	<i>Aenēā.</i>	<i>pyritē, ā</i>

PLURAL.

<i>N. epitōmae</i>	<i>pŷritae</i>
<i>G. epitōmārūm</i>	<i>pyritārūm</i>
<i>D. epitōmīs</i>	<i>pyritīs</i>
<i>A. epitōmās</i>	<i>pyritās</i>
<i>V. epitōmae</i>	<i>pyritae</i>
<i>A. epitōmīs.</i>	<i>pyritīs.</i>

1. **Examples for Practice.**—*Aloc, aloe; boreas, north wind; comētes, comet.*

2. **Paradigms.**—Observe 1) That in the Plur. and in the Dat. Sing., Greek nouns are declined like *mensa*, and 2) That in the Gen. Sing., only those in *e* depart from the regular ending *ae*.

3. Many Greek nouns assume the Latin ending *a*, and are declined like *mensa*. Many in *e* have also a form in *a*; *epitōne, epitōma, epitome*.

44. GENDER IN FIRST DECLENSION.

Feminine endings : **a, e.**

Masculine endings : **as, es.**

EXCEPTIONS.—*Masculine*—(1) a few in *a* by signification : *poēta, poet; agricōla, husbandman*. See 35. 1.—(2) *Hadria, Adriatic sea; sometimes dāma, deer, and tulpa, mole.*

SECOND DECLENSION.

45. Nouns of the second declension end in

ēr, īr, ūs, os,—masculine; ūm, on,—neuter.

But pure Latin nouns end only in *er, ir, us, um*, and are declined as follows :

Servus, *slave*. Puer, *boy*. Ager, *field*. Templum, *temple*.

SINGULAR.

N. serv <u>ŭs</u>	pu <u>er</u>	ag <u>er</u>	templ <u>um</u>
G. serv <u>i</u>	pu <u>er</u> i	ag <u>r</u> i	templ <u>i</u>
D. serv <u>o</u>	pu <u>er</u> o	ag <u>r</u> o	templ <u>o</u>
A. serv <u>um</u>	pu <u>er</u> um	ag <u>r</u> um	templ <u>um</u>
V. serv <u>e</u>	pu <u>er</u>	ag <u>er</u>	templ <u>um</u>
A. serv <u>o</u>	pu <u>er</u> o	ag <u>r</u> o	templ <u>o</u>

PLURAL.

N. serv <u>i</u>	pu <u>er</u> i	ag <u>r</u> i	templ <u>a</u>
G. serv <u>orūm</u>	pu <u>er</u> orūm	ag <u>r</u> orūm	templ <u>orūm</u>
D. serv <u>is</u>	pu <u>er</u> is	ag <u>r</u> is	templ <u>is</u>
A. serv <u>os</u>	pu <u>er</u> os	ag <u>r</u> os	templ <u>a</u>
V. serv <u>i</u>	pu <u>er</u> i	ag <u>r</u> i	templ <u>a</u>
A. serv <u>is</u> .	pu <u>er</u> is.	ag <u>r</u> is.	templ <u>is</u> .

1. Case-Endings.—From an inspection of the paradigms it will be seen that they are declined with the following

Case-Endings.

1. ŭs.

2. er.

3. um.

SINGULAR.

N. ŭs	— ¹	um
G. i	i	i
D. o	o	o
A. um	um	um
V. e	— ¹	um
A. o	o	o

PLURAL.

N. i	i	ā
G. orūm	orūm	orūm
D. is	is	is
A. os	os	ā
V. i	i	ā
A. is.	is.	is.

2. Examples for Practice.—Like SERVUS: *annus*, year; *dominus*, master.—Like PUER: *gēner*, son-in-law; *sōcer*, father-in-law.—Like AGER: *fāber*, artisan; *magister*, master.—Like TEMPLUM: *bellum*, war; *regnum*, kingdom.

3. Paradigms.—Observe

1) That *puer* differs in declension from *servus* only in dropping the

¹ The endings for the Nom. and Voc. Sing. are wanting in nouns in *er*; thus *puer* is the stem without any case-ending; the full form would be *puerūs*.

endings *us* and *e* in the Nom. and Voc. ; Nom. *puer* for *puërus*, Voc. *puer* for *puëre*.

2) That *ager* differs from *puer* only in dropping *e* before *r*.¹

3) That *templum*, as a neuter noun, has the Nom., Accus., and Voc. alike, ending in the plural in *a*. See 38. 3.

4. **Ager and Puer.**—Most nouns in *er* are declined like *ager*, but the following in *er* and *ir* are declined like *puer*.

1) Nouns in *ir* : *vir*, *viri*, man.

2) Compounds in *fer* and *ger* : *armiger*, *armigëri*, armor-bearer ; *signifer*, *signifëri*, standard-bearer.

3) Adulter, *adulterer* ; *Liber*, *Bacchus* ; *presbyter*, *elder*.
Celtiber, *Celtiberian* ;² *libëri*, *children* ; *söcer*, *father-in-law*.
gëner, *son-in-law* ; *Mulciber*, *Vulcan* ;² *vesper*, *evening*.
Iber, *Spaniard*.²

5. **Irregular Case-Endings.**—The following occur :

1) **I** for *ii* by contraction, in the Gen. Sing. without change of accent : *ingë'ni* for *ingë'nii*, of talent.

2) **I** for *ie*, common in proper names in *ius*, without change of accent : *Mercu'ri* for *Mercu'rie*, Mercury. Also in *fili* for *filie*, son ; *gëni* for *genie*, guardian spirit.

3) **Us** for *e* in the Voc., the regular form in *deus*, god, but rare in other words.

4) **Um** for *orum*, common in a few words denoting money, weight, and measure : *talentum* for *talentorum*, of talents ; also in a few other words : *deum* for *deorum* ; *libërum* for *liberorum* ; *Argivum* for *Argivorum*.

6. **Deus.**—This has, Voc. Sing., *deus* ; Nom. Plur., *dei*, *dii*, *di* ; Gen., *deorum*, *deum* ; Dat. and Abl., *deis*, *diiis*, *dis* ; otherwise regular.

— 46. GREEK NOUNS.

Nouns of this declension in **os** and **on** are of Greek origin.

1. Nouns in *os* are generally declined like those in *us*, except in the accusative singular, where they have *on* : *Dëlös*, *Delï*, *Delö*, *Delön*, etc., island Delos.

2. Nouns in *on* are declined like *templum*, with *on* for *um* in the nominative, accusative, and vocative.

3. Most Greek nouns generally assume in prose the Latin forms in *us* and *um*, but sometimes, especially in poetry, they retain in one or more cases the peculiar endings of the Greek. Thus,

¹ In *puer*, *e* belongs to the stem, and is accordingly retained in all the cases ; but in *ager* it is inserted in the Nom. and Voc. Sing., as the pure stem *agr* would be difficult to pronounce.

² *Celtiber* and *Iber* have *e long* in the Gen., and *Mulciber* sometimes drops *e*.

- 1) *Genitive Singular*, **ō** (rarely **u**): Andrōgeō from Andrōgeōs.
- 2) *Accusative* “ **o** or **on**: Atho, Athon “ Athos.
- 3) *Nominative Plural*, **oe**: cānēphōroe “ cānēphōrōs.
- 4) *Genitive* “ **ōn** (**om**): būcōlīcōn “ būcōlīcōn.
- 5) *Greek nouns in eūs* admit certain forms of the third declension: *Orpheus*; G., *Orphōs*; D., *Orphēi*; A., *Orpheā*; V., *Orphēu*.—*Panthūs* has Voc. *Panthū*, and *pelāgus*, Plur. *pelāge*.

47. GENDER IN SECOND DECLENSION.

Masculine endings: **er, ir, us, os**.

Neuter endings: **um, on**.

I. FEMININE BY EXCEPTION.

1. *Nouns feminine by signification*: *Aegyptus*, Egypt; *Corinthus*, Corinth. See §5. 2, but observe that

Many names of *countries, towns, islands, and trees* follow the gender of their endings.—(1) *COUNTRIES*: *Bospōrus*, *Isthmus*, *Pontus*, masculine by ending; those in *um* and plurals in *a*, neuter by ending.—(2) *TOWNS*: *Canōpus* and plurals in *i*, masculine; those in *um* and plurals in *a*, neuter.—(3) *ISLANDS*: those in *um* and plurals in *a*, neuter.—(4) *TREES*: *oleaster* and *pinaster*, masculine. Some names of shrubs and plants are feminine, like those of trees, while others take the gender of their endings.

2. Other Feminine exceptions are

- 1) Most names of gems and ships: *amethystus*, *sapphirus*.
- 2) *Alvus*, belly; *carbāsus*, sail; *cōlus*, distaff; *hūmus*, ground; *vannus*, sieve.
- 3) Many Greek feminines, as (1) nouns in *odus*, *metros*, *thongus*: *periōdus*, period; *diamētros*, diameter; *diphthongus*, diphthong; (2) *abyssus*, abyss; *atōmus*, atom; *dialectos*, dialect.

II. NEUTER BY EXCEPTION.

Pelāgus, sea; *vīrus*, poison; *vulgus* (rarely masc.), common people.

THIRD DECLENSION.

48. Nouns of the third declension end in

a, e, i, o, y, c, l, n, r, s, t, x.

I. MASCULINE ENDINGS:

o, or, os, er, es *increasing in the genitive.*

II. FEMININE ENDINGS:

as, is, ys, x, es *not increasing in the genitive, s preceded by a consonant.*

III. NEUTER ENDINGS:

a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ar, ur, us.

49. Nouns of this declension may be divided into two classes:

I. Nouns which have a case ending in the nominative singular. These all end in *e, s, or x*.

II. Nouns which have no case-ending in the nominative singular.

In class II. the Nom. Sing. is either the same as the stem, or is formed from it by dropping or changing one or more letters of the stem: *consul*, Gen. *consŭlis*; stem, *consul*, a consul; *leo*, *leōnis*, stem, *leon* (Nom. drops n), lion; *carmen*, *carminis*, stem, *carmin* (Nom. changes in to en), song.

50. CLASS I.—WITH NOMINATIVE ENDING.

I. Nouns in **es**, **is**, **s impure**,² and **x**:—*with stem unchanged in nominative.*

Nubes, <i>f.</i> <i>cloud.</i>	Avis, <i>f.</i> <i>bird.</i>	Urbs, <i>f.</i> <i>city.</i>	Rex, <i>m.</i> <i>king.</i>
SINGULAR.			
<i>N.</i> nūbēs	āvīs	urb̄s	rex ¹
<i>G.</i> nubīs	avīs	urb̄is	rēgīs
<i>D.</i> nubī	avī	urbī	regī
<i>A.</i> nubēm	avēm	urbēm	regēm
<i>V.</i> nubēs	avīs	urb̄s	rex
<i>A.</i> nubē	avē ³	urbē	regē
PLURAL.			
<i>N.</i> nubēs	avēs	urbēs	regēs
<i>G.</i> nubīum	aviūm	urbīum	regūm
<i>D.</i> nubībūs	avībūs	urbībūs	regībūs
<i>A.</i> nubēs	avēs	urbēs	regēs
<i>V.</i> nubēs	avēs	urbēs	regēs
<i>A.</i> nubībūs.	avībūs.	urbībūs.	regībūs.

II. Nouns in **es**, **is**, **s impure**, and **x**:—*with stem changed in nominative.*

Miles, <i>m.</i> <i>soldier.</i>	Lapis, <i>m.</i> <i>stone.</i>	Ars, <i>f.</i> <i>art.</i>	Judex, <i>m.</i> and <i>f.</i> <i>judge.</i>
SINGULAR.			
<i>N.</i> milēs	lāpīs	ars	jūdex ¹
<i>G.</i> militīs	lapīdīs	artīs	judicēs
<i>D.</i> militī	lapīdī	artī	judicī
<i>A.</i> militēm	lapīdēm	artēm	judicēm
<i>V.</i> milēs	lapīs	ars	judex
<i>A.</i> militē	lapīdē	artē	judicē
PLURAL.			
<i>N.</i> militēs	lapīdēs	artēs	judicēs
<i>G.</i> militūm	lapīdūm	artiūm	judiciūm

¹ X in rex = *gs—g* belonging to the stem, and *s* being the nom. ending; but in judex, x = *cs—c* belonging to the stem, and *s* being the nom. ending.

² *Impure*, i. e., preceded by a consonant. ³ Sometimes *avē*.

<i>D.</i> milit ibŭs	lapid ibŭs	art ibŭs	judic ibŭs
<i>A.</i> milit ēs	lapid ēs	art ēs	judic ēs
<i>V.</i> milit ēs	lapid ēs	art ēs	judic ēs
<i>A.</i> milit ibŭs.	lapid ibŭs.	art ibŭs.	judic ibŭs.

III. Nouns in **as**, **os**, **us**, and **e**:—*those in as, os, and us with stem changed, those in e with stem unchanged.*

Civitas, <i>f.</i> <i>state.</i>	Nepos, <i>m.</i> <i>grandson.</i>	Virtus, <i>f.</i> <i>virtue.</i>	Mare, <i>n.</i> <i>sea.</i>
-------------------------------------	--------------------------------------	-------------------------------------	--------------------------------

SINGULAR.

<i>N.</i> civit ās	nēp ōs	virt ūs	mār ē
<i>G.</i> civitat is	nepōt is	virtut is	mar is
<i>D.</i> civitat i	nepōt i	virtut i	mar i
<i>A.</i> civitat ēm	nepōt ēm	virtut ēm	mar ē
<i>V.</i> civit ās	nepō s	virt ūs	mar ē
<i>A.</i> civitat ē	nepōt ē	virtut ē	mar i ²

PLURAL.

<i>N.</i> civitat ēs	nepōt ēs	virtut ēs	mar iā
<i>G.</i> civitat ium ¹	nepōt ium	virtut ium	mar ium
<i>D.</i> civitat ibŭs	nepot ibŭs	virtut ibŭs	mar ibŭs
<i>A.</i> civitat ēs	nepōt ēs	virtut ēs	mar iā
<i>V.</i> civitat ēs	nepōt ēs	virtut ēs	mar iā
<i>A.</i> civitat ibŭs.	nepot ibŭs.	virtut ibŭs.	mar ibŭs.

51. CLASS II.—WITHOUT NOMINATIVE ENDING.

I. Nouns in **l** and **r**:—*with stem unchanged in nominative.*

Sol, <i>m.</i> <i>sun.</i>	Consul, <i>m.</i> <i>consul.</i>	Passer, <i>m.</i> <i>sparrow.</i>	Vultur, <i>m.</i> <i>vulture.</i>
-------------------------------	-------------------------------------	--------------------------------------	--------------------------------------

SINGULAR.

<i>N.</i> s ōl	cons ŭl	pass ēr	vult ūr
<i>G.</i> s ōlis	cons ŭlis	pass ērīs	vult ūrīs
<i>D.</i> s ōli	cons ŭli	pass ērī	vult ūrī
<i>A.</i> s ōlēm	cons ŭlēm	pass ērēm	vult ūrēm
<i>V.</i> s ōl	cons ŭl	pass ēr	vult ūr
<i>A.</i> s ōlē	cons ŭlē	pass ērē	vult ūrē

PLURAL.

<i>N.</i> s ōlēs	cons ŭlēs	pass ērēs	vult ūrēs
<i>G.</i>	cons ŭlūm	pass ērūm	vult ūrūm
<i>D.</i> s ōlibŭs	cons ŭlibŭs	pass eribŭs	vult uribŭs

¹ Sometimes *civitatium*.

² Sometimes *mare* in poetry.

<i>A.</i> sōlēs	consūlēs	passērēs	vultūrēs
<i>V.</i> sōlēs	consūlēs	passērēs	vultūrēs
<i>A.</i> sōlibūs.	consulibūs.	passeribūs.	vulturibūs.

II. Nouns in **o** and **r** :—*with stem changed in nominative.*

Leo, <i>m.</i> <i>lion.</i>	Virgo, <i>f.</i> <i>maiden.</i>	Pater, <i>m.</i> <i>father.</i>	Pastor, <i>m.</i> <i>shepherd.</i>
--------------------------------	------------------------------------	------------------------------------	---------------------------------------

SINGULAR.

<i>N.</i> leo	virgo	pătēr	pastōr
<i>G.</i> leōnīs	virginīs	pătĕrīs	pastōrīs
<i>D.</i> leōnī	virginī	patrī	pastōrī
<i>A.</i> leōnēm	virginēm	patrēm	pastōrēm
<i>V.</i> leo	virgo	patēr	pastōr
<i>A.</i> leōnē	virginē	patrē	pastōrē

PLURAL.

<i>N.</i> leōnēs	virginēs	patrēs	pastōrēs
<i>G.</i> leōnūm	virginūm	patrūm	pastōrūm
<i>D.</i> leonibūs	virginibūs	patrībūs	pastoribūs
<i>A.</i> leōnēs	virginēs	patrēs	pastōrēs
<i>V.</i> leōnēs	virginēs	patrēs	pastōrēs
<i>A.</i> leonibūs.	virginibūs.	patrībūs.	pastoribūs.

III. Nouns in **en**, **us**, and **ut** :—*with stem changed in nominative.*

Carmen, <i>n.</i> <i>song.</i>	Opus, <i>n.</i> <i>work.</i>	Corpus, <i>n.</i> <i>body.</i>	Capūt, <i>n.</i> <i>head.</i>
-----------------------------------	---------------------------------	-----------------------------------	----------------------------------

SINGULAR.

<i>N.</i> carmēn	ōpūs	corpūs	căpūt
<i>G.</i> carminīs	opĕrīs	corpōrīs	capĭtīs
<i>D.</i> carminī	opĕrī	corpōrī	capĭtī
<i>A.</i> carmēn	opūs	corpūs	capūt
<i>V.</i> carmēn	opūs	corpūs	capūt
<i>A.</i> carminē	opĕrē	corpōrē	capĭtē

PLURAL.

<i>N.</i> carmină	opĕră	corpōră	capĭtă
<i>G.</i> carminūm	opĕrūm	corpōrūm	capĭtūm
<i>D.</i> carminibūs	operibūs	corporibūs	capitibūs
<i>A.</i> carmină	opĕră	corpōră	capĭtă
<i>V.</i> carmină	opĕră	corpōră	capĭtă
<i>A.</i> carminibūs.	operibūs.	corporibūs.	capitibūs.

52. Case-Endings.—From an inspection of the paradigms, it will be seen,

1. That the nouns belonging to Class II. differ from those of Class I. only in taking no case-ending in the nominative and vocative singular.

2. That all nouns of both classes are declined with the following

Case-Endings.

SINGULAR.

	Masc. and Fem.	Neuter.
<i>Nom.</i>	s ¹ (es, is) — ²	ě — ²
<i>Gen.</i>	is	is
<i>Dat.</i>	ī	ī
<i>Acc.</i>	ěm (īm) ³	like nom.
<i>Voc.</i>	like nom.	“ “
<i>Abl.</i>	ě, ī	ě, ī

PLURAL.

	Masc. and Fem.	Neuter.
<i>Nom.</i>	ēs	ă, iă
<i>Gen.</i>	ŭm, iŭm	ŭm, iŭm
<i>Dat.</i>	ibŭs	ibŭs
<i>Acc.</i>	ēs	ă, iă
<i>Voc.</i>	ēs	ă, iă
<i>Abl.</i>	ibŭs.	ibŭs.

53. Declension.⁴—To apply these endings in declension, we must know, besides the nominative singular,

1. *The Gender*, as that shows which set of endings must be used.

2. *The Genitive Singular* (or some oblique case), as that contains the *stem* (41) to which these endings must be added.

54. EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE :

Class I.

Rūpes,	<i>Gen.</i> rupis, f.	<i>rock</i> ,	hospes,	<i>Gen.</i> hospītis, m.	<i>guest</i> .
vestis,	vestis, f.	<i>garment</i> ;	cuspis,	cuspidis, f.	<i>spear</i> .
trabs,	trābis, f.	<i>beam</i> ;	mons,	montis, m.	<i>mountain</i> .
lex,	lēgis, f.	<i>law</i> ;	āpex,	apīcis, m.	<i>summit</i> .
libertas,	libertātis, f.	<i>liberty</i> ;	sālus,	salūtis, f.	<i>safety</i> .
sedile,	sedilis, n.	<i>scat</i> ;			

¹ In nouns in *o* (= *es* or *gs*), *s* is the case-ending, and the *e* or *g* belongs to the stem.

² The dash here implies that the case-ending is sometimes wanting, as in all nouns Class II.

³ The enclosed endings are less common than the others.

⁴ For Irregularities see Formation of Cases (55-95) and Irregular Nouns.

Class II.

Exsul,	Gen. exsūlis, m. and f.	exile ;	dōlor,	Gen. dolōris, m.	pain.
actio,	actiōnis, f.	action ;	imāgo,	imagīnis, f.	image.
anser,	ansēris, m.	goose ;	frāter,	fratris, m.	brother.
nōmen,	nomīnis, n.	name ;	tempus,	tempōris, n.	time.

FORMATION OF CASES.

Nominative Singular.

55. The nominative singular may generally be formed from any oblique case in one of two ways :

I. By changing the ending of the given case to the nominative ending

s (es, is) in masculines and feminines ; **e** in neuters :
Acc. *urbem*, Nom. *urbs* ; *āvem*, *avis* ; *nūbem*, *nubes*. So
Gen. *māris* (neut.), Nom. *mare*.

II. By dropping the ending of the given case : Gen.
consūlis, Nom. *consul* ; *passēris*, *passer* ; *pastōris*, *pastor*.

1. THE FIRST METHOD applies in general to *mute stems*.

2. THE SECOND METHOD applies to most *liquid stems*.

3. EUPHONIC CHANGES :

1) **T, d, and r** before **s** are dropped ; **c** and **g** before **s** unite with it and form **x** ; **i** is sometimes changed to **e** : Gen. *civitātis*, N. *civitas* (for *civītat*s, t dropped) ; G. *milītis*, N. *mīles* (*milī*tis, t dropped and i changed to e) ; G. *rēgis*, N. *rex* (regs).

2) The endings **on** and **in** of masc. and fem. stems are generally changed to **o** : G. *lēōnis*, N. *leo* (for *leon*) ; G. *virgīnis*, N. *virgo* (for *virgin*). But in neuters *in* is changed to *en* : G. *carminīs*, *carmen* (for *carmin*).

3) The endings **er** and **or** of neut. stems are generally changed to **us** : G. *opēris*, N. *opus* (for *oper*) ; G. *corpōris*, N. *corpus* (for *corpor*).

4) Other changes sometimes occur.

Genitive Singular.

I. GENERAL RULES.

56. Class I. forms the genitive singular by changing the nominative ending into **is** : *māre*, *māris*, sea ; *urbs*, *urbis*, city ; *nūbes*, *nubis*, cloud ; *hostis*, *hostis*, enemy ; *arx* (arcs), *arcis*, citadel ; *rex* (regs), *rēgis*, king.

1. CLASS I. includes, it will be remembered, nouns in *e*, *s* (with a few exceptions), and *x*.

2. THE NOMINATIVE ENDING in this class is

1) *e* in nouns in *e* : *mare*.

2) *s* in nouns in *s* ; but if *e* or *i* precedes, it may be *es* or *is* ; thus it is *s* in *urbs*, *es* in *nubes*, and *is* in *hostis*.

3) *s* in nouns in *x*: as the double consonant *x* = *cs* or *gs*, the *c* or *g* belongs to the stem and the *s* is the ending.

Accordingly the genitive changes the endings *e*, *s*, *es*, and *is* into *is*, as above.

3. IRREGULARITIES AND EXCEPTIONS.—See special rules, 58–83.

57. **Class II.** forms the genitive by adding *is* to the nominative: *sōl*, *sōlis*, sun; *carcer*, *carcēris*, prison; *pastor*, *pastōris*, shepherd; *lien*, *liēnis*, spleen.

1. **CLASS II.** includes all nouns of this declension not embraced under **Class I.**

2. **CHANGES AND IRREGULARITIES.**—See special rules.

II. SPECIAL RULES.

I. Words ending in a Vowel.

Genitive Formation—Various.

A.

58. Nouns in **a** form the genitive in **ātis**; *poēma*, *poemātis*, poem. These are of Greek origin.

E.

59. Nouns in **e** form the genitive in **is**; *māre*, *māris*, sea.

I.

60. Nouns in **i** form the genitive in **is**, or are indeclinable: *sināpi*, *sināpis*, mustard.

EXCEPTIONS.—The compounds of **mēli** form it in **itis**: *oxymēli*, *oxymclitis*, oxymel.

O.

61. Nouns in **o** form the genitive in **ōnis**: *leo*, *leōnis*, lion; *actio*, *actiōnis*, action.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following form it in

1. **ōnis**:—most national names, *Macēdo*, *Macedōnis*, Macedonian.

2. **īnis**:—*Apollo*; *hōmo*, man; *nēmo*, nobody; *turbo*, whirlwind; and nouns in **do** and **go**: *grando*, *grandīnis*, hail; *virgo*, *virgīnis*, maiden; except—*harpāgo*, *ōnis*; *līgo*, *ōnis*; *praedo*, *ōnis*, also *comēdo*, *cūdo*, *mango*, *spādo*, *unēdo*, *ūdo*.

3. **nis**:—*cāro*, *carnīs*, flesh.

4. **ēnis**:—*Anio*, *Aniēnis*, river Anio; *Nerio*, *Neriēnis*.

5. **us**:—few Greek feminines: *Dido*, *Didus*.

Y.

62. Nouns in **y** form the genitive in **ŷis** (*ŷos*, *ŷs*), or

are indeclinable: *mīsy, mīsŷis* (misŷos, misys) copperas. These are of Greek origin.

II. Words ending in Mutes or Liquids: **c, l, n, r, t.**

Genitive adds is.

C.

63. There are two nouns in **c**: *ālec, alēcis*, pickle; *lac, lactis*, milk.

L.

64. Nouns in **l** form the genitive by adding **is**: *sōl, sōlis*, sun.

1. Two add **lis**:—*fel, fellis*, gall; *mel, mellis*, honey.

2. Nouns in **āl** lengthen **a** in the Gen.; *anīmal, animālis*, animal; except *sal*, salt, and masculine proper names: *Hannībal, Hannibālis*.

N.

65. Nouns in **n** form the genitive by adding **is**, but those in **ēn** form it in **inis**: *paeān, paeānis*, paean; *flūmen, flūminis*, stream.

1. The few nouns in **ēn** (e long), mostly Greek, add **is**: *liēn, liēnis*, spleen.

2. Nouns in **an, on, in, yn** are Greek, and sometimes have **os** for **is** in the Gen.: *Pān, Pānos* for Panis, god Pan.—Some in **on** have *onis* or *ontis*: *aēdon, aedōnis*, nightingale; *Xenōphon, Xenōphontis*.

R.

66. Nouns in **r** form the genitive by adding **is**: *carcer, carcēris*, prison; *fulgur, fulgūris*, lightning.

1. Nouns in **ār** generally lengthen **a** in the Gen.: *calcār, calcāris*, spur; but a few retain the short vowel.—*Far*, corn, has *farris*; *hēpar*, liver, *hepātis*.

2. Some nouns in **er** drop **e** in the genitive:

1) Those in **ter**: *pāter, patris*, father; except *lāter, latēris*, tile, and Greek nouns: *crāter, cratēris*, bowl.

2) *Imber* and names of months in **ber**: *imber, imbris*, shower; *September, Septembris*.

3. *Iter*, way, has *itinēris*; *Jupīter, Jōvis*.

4. Nouns in **or** have generally **ōris**: *pastor, pastōris*, shepherd; but a few retain the short vowel. *Cor*, heart, has *cordis*.

5. Four in **ur** have **ōris**: *ēbur*, ivory; *fēmur*, thigh; *jēcūr*, liver; *rōbur*, strength; but *femur* has also *femīnis*, and *jecur, jecinōris, jecinēris*, and *jocinēris*.

T.

67. Nouns in **t** form the genitive in **itis**: *cāput*, *capitis*, head. *Caput* and its compounds are the only nouns in *t*.

III. Words ending in *S* preceded by a Vowel or Diphthong.

Genitive Formation—Various.

AS.

68. Nouns in **as** form the genitive in **ātis**: *aetas*, *aetātis*, age; *civitas*, *civitātis*, state.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following form it in

1. **ātis**:—*ānas*, *anātis*, duck, and neuter Greek nouns.
2. **adis**:—*vas*, *vūdis*, surety; *Arcas*, Arcadian, and fem. Greek nouns;¹
lampas, *lampadis*, torch.
3. **āris**:—*mas*, *māris*, a male.
4. **āsīs**:—*vas*, *vāsīs*, vessel.
5. **assis**:—*as*, *assis*, an as (a coin).
6. **antis**:—only masc. Greek nouns; *adūmas*, *antis*, adamant.

ES.

69. Nouns in **ēs** (e long) form the genitive in **is**: *fūmes*, *famis*, hunger; *nūbes*, *nubis*, cloud.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following form it in

1. **edis**:—(1) **ēdis**: *hēres*, *herēdis*, heir; *merces*, reward.—(2) **ēdis**:
pes, *pēdis*, foot.—(3) **aedis**: *pracs*, *praedis*, surety.
2. **eris**:—(1) **ēris**: *Cēres*, *Cerēris*.—(2) **aeris**: *aes*, *acris*, copper.
3. **etis**:—(1) **ētis**: *quies*, rest, with compounds, *inquies*, *requies*,
and a few Greek words: *lēbes*, *tūpes*.—(2) **ētis**: *abies*, fir
tree; *aries*, ram; *paries*, wall.
4. **essis**:—*bes*, *bessis*, two thirds.
5. **i**:—a few Greek proper names: *Xerxes*, *i*.

70. Nouns in **ēs** (e short) form the genitive in **itis**: *mīles*, *militis*, soldier.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following form it in

1. **ētis**:—*interpres*, interpreter; *sēges*, crop; *tēges*, covering.
2. **īdis**:—*obses*, hostage; *praeses*, president.

IS.

71. Nouns in **is** form the genitive in **is**: *avis*, *avis*, bird; *cānis*, *canis*, dog.

¹ Greek nouns sometimes have *ados* for *adis*.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following form it in

1. *ĕris* :—*cĭnis*, *cĭnĕris*, ashes ; *cucūmis*, cucumber ; *pulvis*, dust ; *vōmis*, ploughshare.
2. *īdis* :—*cāpis*, cup ; *cassis*, helmet ; *cuspis*, spear ; *lāpis*, stone ; *promulsis*, antepast, and a few Greek ¹ words : as *tyrannis*, *īdis*, tyranny. Sometimes *ībis* and *tigris*.
3. *īnis* :—*pollis*, flour ; *sanguis*, blood.
4. *īris* :—*glis*, *glīris*, dormouse.
5. *issis* :—*sēmīs*, *semīssis*, half an as.
6. *ītis* :—*lis*, strife ; *Dis*, *Quīris*, *Samnis*.

OS.

72. Nouns in **os** form the genitive in *ōris* : *flos*, *flōris*, flower ; *mos*, *mōris*, custom.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following form it in

1. *ōtis* :—*cos*, *cōtis*, whetstone ; *dos*, dowry ; *nĕpos*, grandson ; *sacerdos*, priest ; and a few Greek words : *rhinocēros*, the rhinoceros.
2. *ōdis* :—*custos*, *custōdis*, guardian.
3. *ōis* :—few masc. Greek nouns : *hēros*, hero ; *Mīnos*, *Tros*.
4. *ōris* :—*arbos* for *arbor*, tree.
5. *ossis* :—*os*, *ossis*, bone (*os*, mouth, regular : *ōris*).
6. *ōvis* :—*bos*, *bōvis*, ox.

US.

73. Nouns in **us** form the genitive in *ĕris* or *ōris* : *lātus*, *latĕris*, side ; *corpus*, *corpōris*, body.

1. *Genitive in ĕris*.—*Acus*, foedus, fūnus, gēnus, glōmus, lātus, mūnus, ōlus, ōnus, ōpus, pondus, rūnus, scēlus, sīnus, ulcus, vellus, Vēnus, viscus, vulnus.

2. *Genitive in ōris*.—*Corpus*, dēcus, dedēcus, facinus, fēnus, frīgus, lēpus, litus, nēmus, pectus, pēcus, pēnus, pignus, stercus, tempus, tergus.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following form it in

1. *uris* :—(1) *ūris* : *crus*, leg ; *jus*, right ; *jus*, soup ; *mus*, mouse ; *pus*, pus ; *rus*, country ; *tus* (thus), incense ; *tellus*, earth.
—(2) *ŭris* : *Līgus*, *Ligūris*, Ligurian.
2. *ūtis* :—*juventus*, youth ; *sālus*, safety ; *senectus*, old age ; *servitus*, servitude ; *virtus*, virtue.
3. *udis* :—(1) *ūdis* : *incus*, anvil ; *pālus*, marsh ; *subscus*, dovetail.—
(2) *ŭdis* : *pēcus*, *pecūdis*, a head of cattle.—(3) *audis* : *fraus*, *fraudis*, fraud ; *laus*, praise.

¹ Greek nouns sometimes have *idos* or even *ios* for *idis* ; *Salamis* has *Salamīnis* ; *Simois*, *Simoentis*.

4. **uis**:—*grus, gruis*, crane; *sus*, swine.

5. **untis**:—a few Greek names of places: *Trapezus, untis*.

6. **ōdis**:—Greek compounds in *pus*: *tripus, tripōdis*, tripod.

7. **eos**:—Greek nouns in *eus*, when of this declension: *Thēseus, Theseos*.

YS.

74. Nouns in **ys** form the genitive in **ŷis, ŷos, ys**: *Othrys, Othrŷos*.

These are of Greek origin; a few of them have *ŷdis*: *chlamys, chlamŷdis*, cloak.

IV. Words ending in *S* preceded by a Consonant.

Genitive in **is** or **tis**.

BS, MS, PS.

75. Nouns in **bs, ms, and ps** form the genitive by changing **s** into **is**: *urbs, urbis*, city; *hiems, hiēmīs*, winter; *daps, dāpis*, food.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following form it in

1. **īpis**:—nouns in *ceps* from *capio*: *princeps, princīpis*, prince. Also *ādeps*, fat; *forceps*, forceps.
2. **ūpis**:—*auceps, aucūpis*, fowler.
3. **ŷphis**:—*gryps, gryŷphis*, griffin.

LS, NS, RS.

76. Nouns in **ls, ns, and rs** form the genitive by changing **s** into **tis**: *puls, pultis*, broth; *mens, mentis*, mind; *ars, artis*, art.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following form it in

dis:—*frons, frondis*, leaf; *glans, acorn*; *juglans*, walnut.

V. Words ending in *X*.—Genitive in **cis** or **gis**.

AX.

77. Nouns in **ax** form the genitive in **ācis**: *pax, pācis*, peace.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following form it in

1. **ācis**:—*fax, fācis*, torch; and a few Greek nouns.
2. **actis**:—few Greek names of men: *Astyānax*.

EX.

78. Nouns in **ex** form the genitive in **īcis**: *jūdex, judicis*, judge.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following form it in

1. **ecis**:—(1) **ēcis**: *ālex*, pickle; *vervex*, wether.—(2) **ēcis**: *nex*, murder; *fenīsex*, mower.—(3) **aecis**: *fax*, *faccis*, lees.
2. **egis**:—(1) **ēgis**: *lex*, law; *rex*, king, and their compounds.—(2) **ēgis**: *grex*, flock; *aquīlex*, water-inspector.
3. **ectīlis**:—*supellex*, *supellectīlis*, furniture.
4. **īgis**:—*rēmex*, *remīgis*, rower.
5. **is**:—*sēnex*, *sēnis*, old man.

IX.

79. Nouns in **ix** form the genitive in **īcis**: *rādiix*, *radīcis*, root.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following form it in

1. **īcis**:—*appendix*, appendix; *cālix*, cup; *fornix*, arch; *pīx*, pitch; *sālix*, willow, and a few others.
2. **īgis**:—*strīx*, screech owl; and a few Gallic names: *Dumnōrix*, *Orgetōrix*.
3. **īvis**:—*nīx*, *nīvis*, snow.

OX.

80. Nouns in **ox** are: *vox*, *vōcis*, voice; *nox*, *noctis*, night.

There are also a few national names which form the genitive in **ōcis** or **ōgis**: *Cappādox*, *Cappadōcis*; *Allōbrox*, *Allobrogis*.

UX.

81. Nouns in **ux** form the genitive in **ūcis**: *dux*, *dūcis*, leader.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following form it in

1. **ucis**:—(1) **ūcis**: *lux*, *lūcis*, light; *Pollux*.—(2) **aucis**: *faux* (def.), *faucis*, throat.
2. **ugis**:—(1) **ūgis**: *frux*, *frūgis*, fruit.—(2) **ūgis**: *conjux*, *conjūgis*, spouse.

YX.

82. Nouns in **yx** are from the Greek, and form the genitive variously: *Erīx*, *Erījēis*, *Eryx*; *bombyx*, *bombījēis*, silkworm; *Styx*, *Stījēis*, *Styx*; *coccyx*, *coccyjēis*, cuckoo; *ōnyx*, *onījēis*, *onyx*.

X PRECEDED BY A CONSONANT.

83. Nouns in **x** preceded by a consonant change **x** into **cis**: *arx*, *arcis*, citadel.

EXCEPTIONS.—A few Greek nouns form it in *gis*: *phālanx*, *phalangis*, *phalanx*.

Dative Singular.

84. ENDING :—*ī*: *urbs*, *urbī*, city. But

The old dative in *e* also occurs: *aere*, for *aerī*.

Accusative Singular.

85. ENDING :—like Nom., *ēm*, *īm*.

I. ENDING :—like nom. in neuters: *māre*, *mare*, sea.

II. ENDING :—*ēm*, in most masculines and feminines: *urbs*, *urbēm*.

III. ENDING :—*īm*, in the following:

1. In names of *rivers* and *places* in *is* not increasing in the genitive: *Tībēris*, *Tībērīm*; *Hispālis*, *Hispālim*.

2. In *amussis*, rule; *būris*, plough-tail; *rāvis*, hoarseness; *sītis*, thirst; *tussis*, cough; *vis*, force.

3. Generally in: *febris*, *pelvis*, *puppis*, *restis*, *secūris*, *turris*; sometimes in: *clāvis*, *messis*, *nāvis*, *pars*.

4. In Greek nouns in *is*, G. *is*, and in many in *is*, G. *idos* or *īdis*, though the latter have also the regular *īdem*: *poēsis*, *poēsīm*; *Agis* (*Agīdis*), *Agīm* or *Agīdem*. For Greek nouns see also 93.

Vocative Singular.

86. ENDING :—like nominative; *rex*, *rex*. But

Some Greek nouns drop *s*: *Pallas*, *Palla*; *Orpheus*, *Orpheu*. See 94.

Ablative Singular.

87. ENDING :—*ē*, *ī*.

I. ENDING :—*ē*, in most nouns; *urbis*, *urbe*, city.

II. ENDING :—*ī*, in the following classes of words:

1. In neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*: *sedile*, *sedīlī*, seat; *vectigal*, *vectigālī*, tax; *calcar*, *calcārī*, spur. But

The following have *e*:—(1) Names of towns in *e*; *Praeneste*.—(2) Nouns in *al* and *ar* with *a* short in Gen.: *sal*, *sālē*, salt; *nectar*, *nectāre*, nectar.—(3) *Far*, *farre*, corn.—(4) Generally *rēte*, net, and in poetry sometimes *māre*.

2. In adjectives in *er* and *is* used substantively: *September*, *Septembri*, September; ¹ *familiāris*, *familiārī*, friend. But

Adjectives used as proper names, and *juvēnis*, youth, have *e*; *Juvenālis*, *Juvenālē*, Juvenal.

¹ Names of months are adjectives used substantively, with *mensis*, month, understood.

3. In nouns in **is** with **im** in the accusative (85): *Tibēris, Tibērīm, Tibēri; sītis, sitīm, sīti*.

III. ENDING:—**ē** or **ī**; in nouns with **em** or **im** in the Acc.: *turris, turrem* or *turrim, turre* or *turri*. But

1. *Restis*, Acc. *restīm*, rarely *em*, has *reste*; while *nāvis, navem*, rarely *im*, has generally *navi*.

2. Greek nouns in *is*, G. *īdis*, generally have *e*, even though the Acc. may have *im*: *Pāris*, Acc. *Parīm* or *Parīdem*, Abl. *Parīde*.

3. Some other nouns occasionally form the Abl. in *i*.—(1) several in *is*: *amnis, anguis, āvis, bilis, civis, classis, collis, ignis, orbis, postis, rātis, unguis*, and a few others.—(2) some names of towns, to denote the place in which: *Carthagīni*, at Carthage; *Tibūri*, at Tibur.—(3) *imber, rus, sors, supellex, vesper*, and a few others.

Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural.

88. ENDING:—**ēs, ā, iā**.

I. ENDING:—**ēs** in masculines and feminines: *urbs, urbes*.

II. ENDING:—**ā, iā** in neuters:

1. **a** in most neuters: *carmen, carmīna*.

2. **ia** in neuters which admit *i* in the ablative (87. II.): *māre, maria*.

III. RARE ENDINGS are

1. The ancient endings—**ēis** and **īs** in the Acc. Plur. of masculines and feminines with *ium* in the Gen.: *civēis, civīs*, for *cives*.

2. The Greek endings—**ēs, as, is, e**. See 95 and 98.

3. *Vīs*, force, has Plur.: *vīres, virium, viribus, vīres, vīres, viribus*.

Genitive Plural.

89. ENDING:—**um, ium**.

I. ENDING:—**um** in most nouns: *leo, leōnum*.

II. ENDING:—**ium** in the following classes of words:

1. In neuters with **ia** in the plural, i. e., those in *e, al, and ar* (*al* and *ar* with *ā* in Gen.); *māre, maria, marium; animal, animālia, animalium, animal*.

2. In most nouns of more than one syllable in **ns** and **rs**:¹ *cliens, clientium, elient; cohors, cohortium, cohort*.

3. In many nouns not increasing in the genitive:

1) Most nouns in **es** and **is** not increasing:² *nūbes, nubium; āvis, avium*.

2) *Cāro*, flesh; *imber*, storm; *linter*, boat; *utcr*, leathern sack; *venter*, belly; and generally *Insūber*, Insubrian.

¹ Some of these often have *um* in poetry and sometimes even in prose, as *pārens*, parent, generally has.

² But *cānis, juvēnis, strues, vātes*, have *um*; *āpis, mensis, sēdes, volucris, um* or *ium*; *compes, ium*.

4. In monosyllables in **s** and **x** preceded by a *consonant*¹ and in a few in **s** and **x** preceded by a *vowel*:² *urbs, urbium, city; arx, arcium, citadel; nox, noctium, night.*

5. In many nouns in **as** and **is** (Plur. *ātes* and *ītes*). Thus

1) In names of nations: *Arpīnas, Arpinatium; Samnīs, Samnitium.*

2) In *Optimātes* and *Penātes*, and occasionally in other nouns in *as*: *civitas, civitatum*, sometimes *civitatum*.

III. RARE ENDINGS.—*Bos* has *boum*: a few Greek words (especially titles of books) on: *Metamorphōses, Metamorphoseon.*

IV. WANTING.—The Gen. Plur. is often wanting in monosyllables.

Dative and Ablative Plural.

90. ENDING:—**ībūs**: *urbs, urbibus.*

RARE ENDINGS are:

1. **is** or **ibus**—in neuters in *a*: *poēma*; D. and A., *poemātis*, or *poematibus*, poem.

2. **ubus**—in *bos, būbus* (rare *bōbus* for *bovibus*), ox; *sus, sūbus* for *svibus*, swine.

3. **si, sin**—in Greek words. See 97.

GREEK PECULIARITIES.

91. Most Greek nouns of the third declension are entirely regular, but a few retain certain peculiarities of the Greek, and some are entirely indeclinable.

Greek Genitive Singular.

92. ENDING:—sometimes **os** or **i** (rare) for *is*: *Daphnis, Daphnīdos* for *Daphnīdis*; *Xerxes, Xerxi* for *Xerxis*.

1. ENDING:—**os**. (1) Many nouns in *as* and *is* have *ados* and *idos* for *adis* and *idis*: *Pallas, Pallādos*.—(2) Those in *ys* may have *yos* or *ys*: *Tēthys, Tēthyos*.—(3) Those in *eus* have *eos*: *Orpheus, Orpheos*.—(4) *Pān* has *Pānos*.

2. ENDING:—**i**. Proper names in *es*, Gen. *is*, sometimes have *i* for *is*: *Achilles, Achilli*.

3. ENDING:—**us**. Greek feminines in *o*, *ēcho, Dido, Sappho*, have regularly *us* in the Gen. and the Greek ending *o* in the other cases, rarely the Latin *ōni, ōnem, ōne*; *Dido, Didus, Dido*.

Greek Accusative Singular.

93. ENDING:—often **a**: sometimes **im, in**; sometimes **en** for *em*: *Pericles, Periclea*; *poēsis, poēsīm, or poēsīn, poem*; *Xerxes, Xerxen*.

1. THE ENDING **a** is used—(1) by prose writers in proper names and in *aēr* and *aether*,—(2) by the poets both in proper and in common nouns.

¹ Except (*ops*) *ōpis* and the Greek nouns, *gryps, lynx, sphynx*.

² Namely, *fauz, glis, lis, mas, nix, nor, os* (ossis), *vis*, generally *fraus* and *mus*.

2. THE ENDING **im** or **in** is used in Greek nouns in *is*, Gen. *īs*, and sometimes in a few in *is*, Gen. *īdis*: *poēsis*, *poēsim*, *poēsin*; *Pāris* (Pāridis), *Parīdem*, *Parim*, *Parin*.

3. THE ENDING **en** is often used in proper names in *es*, Gen. *is*, and sometimes in a few in *es*, Gen. *ētis*: *Aeschines*, *Aeschinen*; *Thāles*, *Thālēm* or *Thalen*.

4. THE ENDING **ym** or **yn**.—Greek nouns in *ys* have *ym* or *yn*: *Othrys*, *Othrym* or *Othryn*.

Greek Vocative Singular.

94. ENDING sometimes drops **s**: *Orpheus*, *Orpheu*. See 86.

1. **S** is dropped,—(1) regularly in nouns in *eus* and *ys*, together with proper names in *as*, Gen. *antis*: *Perseus*, *Perseu*; *Cōtys*, *Coty*; *Atlas*, *Atla*,—(2) generally in nouns in *is* and sometimes in proper nouns in *es*: *Daphnis*, *Daphni*; *Soerātes*, *Soerātēs*, or *Socrāte*.

2. Proper names in **es** shorten the ending to *ēs*, when *s* is retained: *Socrātes*, *Soerātēs*.

Greek Nominative and Vocative Plural.

95. ENDING :—sometimes *ēs* for *ēs*, especially in poetry: *Arcādēs* for *Arcādēs*.

1. THE ENDING **e** is used in a few neuters in *os*: *mēlos*, *mele*, song; these neuters are used only in the Nom. and Acc. *Tempe*, the vale Tempe, is plural.

2. THE ENDING **is** for *es* occurs in a few names of cities: *Sardis* for *Sardes*.

Greek Genitive Plural.

96. ENDING :—**on**: only in a few words, almost exclusively titles of books: *Metamorphōses* (title of a poem), *Metamorphoseon*.

Greek Dative and Ablative Plural.

97. ENDING :—**si**, before vowels **sin**, poetic: *Troādes*, *Troāsin*.

Greek Accusative Plural.

98. ENDING :—**as**: *Macedōnes*, *Macedōnas*.

1. THE ENDING **e** is used in a few neuters in *os*: *mēlos*, *mele*; *Tempe*. See 95. 1.

2. THE ENDING **is** occurs in a few names of cities: *Sardis* for *Sardes*.

GENDER IN THIRD DECLENSION.

99. The Gender of nouns of this declension, when not determined by the general rules (35), may be ascertained from their endings, as follows: ¹

¹ See also 48.

I. MASCULINE ENDINGS.

o, or, os, er, es *increasing in the genitive.*

O.

100. Nouns in **o** are masculine : *sermo*, discourse.

EXCEPTIONS.—*Feminine*, viz.:

1. Nouns in **o**, Gen. *inis* (i. e., most nouns in *do* and *go*, 61. 2), except *cardo*, *ordo*, *turbo*, masc., *cupido* and *margo*, masc. or fem.
2. *Cāro*, flesh, and the Greek *Argo*, *ēcho*, an echo.
3. Abstract and collective nouns in *io* : *ratio*, reason ; *concio*, an assembly ; except numeral nouns in *io*, which (except *unio*) are masc. ; *ternio*, *quaternio*.

OR.

101. Nouns in **or** are masculine : *dōlor*, pain.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. *Feminine* :—*arbor*, tree.
2. *Neuter* :—*ādor*, spelt ; *aequor*, sea ; *cor*, heart ; *marmor*, marble.

OS.

102. Nouns in **os** are masculine : *mos*, custom.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. *Feminine* :—*arbos*, tree ; *cos*, whetstone ; *dos*, dowry ; *eos*, dawn.
2. *Neuter* :—*os*, mouth ; *os*, bone ; and a few Greek words : *chaos*, *ēpos*, *ēthos*, *mēlos*.

ER.

103. Nouns in **er** are masculine : *agger*, mound.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. *Feminine* :—*linter*, boat (sometimes masc.).
2. *Neuter* :—(1) *cadāver*, corpse ; *iter*, way ; *tūber*, tumor ; *ūber*, udder ; *ver*, spring ; *verber*, scourge,—(2) botanical names in **er**, Gen. *ēris* : *ācer*, maple tree ; *papāver*, poppy ; *pīper*, pepper.

ES INCREASING IN GENITIVE.

104. Nouns in **es** increasing in the genitive are masculine : *pes*, genitive *pedis*, foot.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. *Feminine* :—*compes*, fetter ; *merces*, reward ; *merges*, sheaf ; *quies*, rest (with its compounds) ; *sēges*, crop ; *tēges*, mat ; sometimes also *āles*, bird, and *quadrūpes*, quadruped.
2. *Neuter* :—*acs*, copper.

II. FEMININE ENDINGS.

as, is, ys, x, es not increasing in genitive, **s** preceded by a consonant.

AS.

105. Nouns in **as** are feminine: *aetas*, age.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. *Masculine*:—**as**, an as (a coin), *vas*, surety, and Greek nouns in *as*, G. *antis*, as *adāmas*, adamant.
2. *Neuter*:—*vas*, vessel, and Greek nouns in *as*, G. *ātis*, as *erysipēlas*.

IS.

106. Nouns in **is** are feminine: *nāvis*, ship.

EXCEPTIONS.—*Masculine*:

1. Nouns in **ālis, ollis, cis, mis, nis, guis, quis**: *natālis*, birthday; *collis*, hill; *fascis*, bundle; *vōmis*, ploughshare; *ignis*, fire; *sanguis*, blood; *torquis*, collar. But a few with these endings are occasionally feminine: *aquālis*, *canālis*, *cānis*, *clūnis*, *amnis*, *cīnis*, *fīnis*, *anguis*, *torquis*.
2. *Axis*, axle; *fustis*, club; *pulvis*, dust;
būris, plough-tail; *glis*, dormouse; *scrobis* (f.), ditch;
callis (f.), path;¹ *lāpis*, stone; *sentis*, brier;
cassis, net; *mensis*, month; *tigris* (f.), tiger;
caulis, stem; *orbis*, circle; *torris*, brand;
corbis (f.), basket; *postis*, post; *rectis*, lever.²
ensis, sword;
3. Compounds of **as** (a coin): *sēmis*, *decussis*. Also *Lucretīlis*, *mānes* (pl.).

YS.

107. Nouns in **ys** are feminine: *chlāmys*, cloak.

EXCEPTIONS.—*Masculine*:—names of mountains, *Othrys*.

X.

108. Nouns in **x** are feminine: *pax*, peace.

EXCEPTIONS.—*Masculine*:

1. Greek masculines: *eōrax*, raven; *thōrax*, cuirass.
 2. Nouns in **ex** and **unx**; except the six feminines: *fax*, *forfex*, *lex*, *nex*, (*prcx*), *supellex*, and such as are fem. by signification.
35. II.

¹ The examples marked (f.) are sometimes feminine. *Corbis* and *tigris* are often feminine.

² For nouns in *is* masculine by signification, see 35. I.

3. Four in **ix**: *cālix*, cup; *fornix*, arch; *phoenix*, phoenix; *varix* (f.), swollen vein.
4. One in **ux**: *trādux*, vine-layer.
5. Names of mountains in **yx**, and a few other words in **yx**.
6. Sometimes: *calx*, heel; *calx*, lime; *lynx*, a lynx.

ES NOT INCREASING IN GENITIVE.

109. Nouns in **es** not increasing in genitive are feminine: *nūbes*, cloud.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. *Masculine*:—*acināccs*: sometimes *palumbes* and *vepres*.
2. *Neuter*:—a few rare Greek nouns: *cacoēthes*, *hippomānes*

S PRECEDED BY A CONSONANT.

110. Nouns in **s** preceded by a consonant are feminine: *urbs*, city.

EXCEPTIONS.—*Masculine*:

1. *Dens*, tooth, *fons*, fountain, *mons*, mountain, *pons*, bridge; generally *ādeps*, fat, and *rūdens*, cable.
2. Some nouns in **ns**, originally adjectives or participles with a masc. noun understood,—(1) *oriens*, *occidēns* (sol), east, west,—(2) *confluens*, *torrens* (amnis), confluence, torrent,—(3) *bīdens*, *trīdens* (raster), two-pronged hoe, trident,—(4) *sextans*, *quadrans* (as), parts of an as.
3. *Chālybs*, steel, *hydrops*, dropsy, and a few Greek names of animals: *ēpops*, *gryps*, *seps* (f.).
4. Sometimes: *forceps*, forceps; *serpens*, serpent; *stirps*, stock. *Animans*, animal, originally participle, is masc., fem., or neuter.

III. NEUTER ENDINGS.

a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ar, ur, us.

A, E, I, Y, C, T, AR.

111. Nouns in **a, e, i, y, c, t, ar** are neuter: *poēma*, poem; *māre*, sea; *lac*, milk; *cāput*, head.

L.

112. Nouns in **l** are neuter: *anīmal*, animal.

EXCEPTIONS.—*Masculine*:—*mūgil*, mullet; *sal* (also neuter in singular), salt; *sol*, sun.

N.

113. Nouns in **n** are neuter: *carmen*, song.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. *Masculine*:—*pecten*, comb; *ren*, kidney; *lien*, spleen; and Greek masculines in **an**, **en**, **in**, **on**: *pacan*, pacan; *cānon*, rule.
2. *Feminine*:—*aēdon*, nightingale; *alcyon* (halcyon), kingfisher; *īcon*, image; *sinclon*, muslin.

UR.

114. Nouns in **ur** are neuter: *fulgur*, lightning.

EXCEPTIONS.—*Masculine*:—*furfur*, bran; *turtur*, turtledove; *vultur*, vulture.

US.

115. Nouns in **us** are neuter: *corpus*, body.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. *Masculine*:—*lēpus*, hare; *mus*, mouse; Greek nouns in **pus** and a few others: *tripus*, tripod.
2. *Feminine*:—*tellus*, earth; *fraus*, fraud; *laus*, praise; and nouns in **us**, Gen. **utis** or **udis**: *virtus*, virtue; *pālus*, marsh.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

116. Nouns of the fourth declension end in
us,—*masculine*; **u**,—*neuter*.

They are declined as follows:

Fructus, *fruit*. Cornu, *horn*. Case-Endings.

SINGULAR.

<i>N.</i> fruct ūs	corn ū	ūs	ū
<i>G.</i> fruct ūs	corn ūs	ūs	ūs
<i>D.</i> fruct uī	corn ū	uī	ū
<i>A.</i> fruct ūm	corn ū	ūm	ū
<i>V.</i> fruct ūs	corn ū	ūs	ū
<i>A.</i> fruct ū	corn ū	ū	ū

PLURAL.

<i>N.</i> fruct ūs	corn uā	ūs	uā
<i>G.</i> fruct uām	corn uām	uām	uām
<i>D.</i> fruct ībūs	corn ībūs	ībūs (ūbūs)	ībūs (ūbūs)
<i>A.</i> fruct ūs	corn uā	ūs	uā
<i>V.</i> fruct ūs	corn uā	ūs	uā
<i>A.</i> fruct ībūs .	corn ībūs .	ībūs (ūbūs).	ībūs (ūbūs).

1. *Case-Endings*.—Nouns of this declension are declined with the case-endings presented in the above table.

2. **Examples for Practice.**—*Cantus*, song; *currus*, chariot; *cur-sus*, course; *versus*, verse; *genu*, knee.

3. **Modification of Third Declension.**—The fourth declension is but a modification of the third, produced by contraction: thus *fructus*, in the uncontracted form, was declined like *grus*, *gruis*, of Decl. III.: N. *fructus*, G. *fructuis* = *fructus*; D. *fructui*, A. *fructuem* = *fructum*, V. *fructus*; A. *fructue* = *fructu*: Plur. N. *fructues* = *fructus*, etc.

4. **Irregular Case-Endings.**—The following occur:

1) **ŮbŮs** for *ŭbŭs*, used regularly in the Dat. and Abl. Plur. of

Acus, needle; *arcus*, bow; *artus*, joint; *lŕcus*, lake; *partus*, birth; *pŕcu*, cattle; *quercus*, oak; *spŕcus*, den; *tribus*, tribe; *vŕru*, spit: occasionally in a few other words, as *portus*, *sinus*, and *tonŕtrus*.

2) **Ůis**, the uncontracted form for *us*, in the Gen.: *fructuis* for *fructus*.

3) **Ů** for *ui*, in the Dat. by contraction: *equitŕtu* for *equitŕtui*, cavalry.

117. Second and Fourth Declensions.—Some nouns are partly of this declension and partly of the second.

1. *Dŕmus*, house, declined as follows:

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. <i>domŭs</i>	<i>domŭs</i>
G. <i>domŭs</i> , <i>domi</i>	<i>domuŭm</i> , <i>domŕrŭm</i>
D. <i>domuŭi</i> (<i>domŕ</i>)	<i>domibŭs</i>
A. <i>domŭm</i>	<i>domŕs</i> , <i>domŭs</i>
V. <i>domŭs</i>	<i>domŭs</i>
A. <i>domŕ</i> (<i>domŭ</i>)	<i>domibŭs</i> .

In this word there is generally a difference of meaning between the forms of the second Decl. and those of the fourth; thus, G. *domus*, of a house; *domi*, at home: A. Pl. *domus*, houses; *domos*, often, homeward; to homes.

2. Certain names of trees in *us*, as *cupressus*, *fŕcus*, *laurus*, *pŕnus*, though generally of Decl. II., sometimes take those cases of the fourth which end in *us* and *u*: N. *laurus*, G. *laurus*, D. *lauro*, A. *laurum*, V. *laurus*, A. *lauru*, &c. So also *cŕlus*, distaff.

3. A few nouns, especially *senŕtus* and *tumultus*, though regularly of Decl. IV., sometimes take the genitive ending *i* of the second: *senŕti*, *tumulti*.

118. GENDER IN FOURTH DECLENSION.

Masculine ending: **us**.

Neuter ending: **u**.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. *Feminine*:—(1) *ŕcus*, needle; *cŕlus*, distaff; *dŕmus*, house; *mŕnus*, hand; *portŕcus*, portico; *tribus*, tribe,—(2) *ŕdus*, ides; *Quinquŕtrus*, feast of Minerva; generally *pŕnus*, store, when of this decl.; rarely *spŕcus*, den,—(3) a few nouns

Fem. by signification (35. II.): *nūrus*, daughter-in-law;
figus, fig tree.¹

2. *Neuter*:—*sēcus* (*sexus*), sex; rarely, *spēcus*, den.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

119. Nouns of the fifth declension end in **es**,—*femine*, and are declined as follows:

Dies, <i>day</i> .	Res, <i>thing</i> .	Case-Endings.
SINGULAR.		
<i>N. diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	ēs
<i>G. diēī</i>	<i>rēī</i>	eī
<i>D. diēī</i>	<i>rēī</i>	eī
<i>A. diēm</i>	<i>rēm</i>	ēm
<i>V. diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	ēs
<i>A. diē</i>	<i>rē</i>	ē
PLURAL.		
<i>N. diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	ēs
<i>G. diērūm</i>	<i>rērūm</i>	ērūm
<i>D. diēbūs</i>	<i>rēbūs</i>	ēbūs
<i>A. diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	ēs
<i>V. diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	ēs
<i>A. diēbūs.</i>	<i>rēbūs.</i>	ēbūs.

1. **Case-Endings**.—Nouns of this declension are declined with the case-endings presented in the above table.

E in *ei* is generally short when preceded by a consonant, otherwise long.

2. **Examples for Practice**.—*Acies*, battle array; *effigies*, effigy; *facies*, face; *series*, series; *species*, form; *spes*, hope.

3. **Modification of Third Declension**.—The fifth declension, like the fourth, seems to be a modification of the third. It is produced by contraction (*ees* = *ēs*: *ēbus* = *ēbus*), except in the genitive, where *ei* comes from *eis*, by dropping *s*, and *ērūm* from *eum*, by inserting *r*.

4. **Irregular Endings**:—*ē* or *ī* for *ei* in the Gen. and Dat.: *acie* for *aciēi*; *pernicii* for *perniciēi*.

5. **Defective**.—Nouns of this declension, except *dies* and *res*, want the Gen., Dat., and Abl. Plur., and many admit no plural whatever.

120. GENDER IN FIFTH DECLENSION.

Nouns of the fifth declension are feminine.

Exceptions.—*Masculine*:—*dies*, day, and *meridies*, midday, though *dies* is sometimes feminine in the singular.

¹ Also *Fem.* when it means *fig*.

COMPARATIVE VIEW OF THE FIVE DECLENSIONS.

121. Case-Endings of Latin nouns.¹

SINGULAR.

Dec. I.	Dec. II.		Dec. III.		Dec. IV		D. V.
Fem.	Masc.	Neut.	M. & F.	Neut.	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
<i>N.</i> ā	ūs — ²	īm	s (es, is) ³ —	ĕ —	ūs	ū	ēs
<i>G.</i> ae	ī	ī	īs	īs	ūs		ēī
<i>D.</i> ae	ō	ō	ī	ī	uī	ū	ēī
<i>A.</i> ām	ūm	ūm	ēm (īm)	like nom.	ūm	ū	ēm
<i>V.</i> ā	ĕ —	ūm	like nom.	like nom.	ūs	ū	ēs
<i>A.</i> ā	ō	ō	ĕ (ī)	ĕ (ī)	ū	ū	ē

PLURAL.

<i>N.</i> ae	ī	ā	ēs	ā (iā)	ūs	uā	ēs
<i>G.</i> ārūm	ōrūm	ōrūm	ūm (iūm)	ūm (iūm)	uūm	uūm	ērūm
<i>D.</i> īs	īs	īs	ībūs	ībūs	ībūs (ūbūs)	ībūs (ūbūs)	ēbūs
<i>A.</i> ās	ōs	ā	ēs	ā (iā)	ūs	uā	ēs
<i>V.</i> ae	ī	ā	ēs	ā (iā)	ūs	uā	ēs
<i>A.</i> īs.	īs	īs.	ībūs.	ībūs.	ībūs (ūbūs)	ībūs (ūbūs).	ēbūs.

122. By a close analysis it will be found,

1. That the five declensions are only five varieties of one general system of declension.

2. That these varieties have been produced by the union of different final letters in the various stems, with one general system of endings.

123. According to this analysis,

1. The stems in the five declensions end in the following letters:

I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
a,	o,	consonant,	u,	e.
		(rarely i).		

2. The general case-endings are as follows: ⁴

¹ This table presents the endings of all nouns in the Latin language, except a few derived from the Greek.

² The dash denotes that the case-ending is sometimes wanting: *er* and *ir* in Decl. II., it will be remembered, are not case-endings, but parts of the stem (45. 1).

³ The inclosed endings are less common than the others.

⁴ In this table observe,

1) That different endings characteristic of different genders may be found in one and the same declension.

2) That a slight difference of declension is however apparent in the double forms in *is*, *i*; *ēs*, *i*; *ūm*, *rūm*; *ībūs*, *is*; but that in each of these double forms, the first seems to have been the original ending from which the second was derived.

SINGULAR.	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i> s —	ě, m —
<i>G.</i> ěs, ě	ěs, ě
<i>D.</i> ě	ě
<i>A.</i> ěm, m	like nom.
<i>V.</i> like nom.	“ “
<i>A.</i> ě (ě)	ě (ě)
PLURAL.	
<i>N.</i> ěs, ě	ă (iă)
<i>G.</i> ům, rŭm	ům, rŭm
<i>D.</i> ěbŭs, ěs	ěbŭs, ěs
<i>A.</i> ěs	like nom.
<i>V.</i> like nom.	“ “
<i>A.</i> ěbŭs, ěs.	ěbŭs, ěs.

3. The manner in which these endings unite with the different stems so as to produce the five declensions may be seen in the following

COMPARATIVE VIEW OF DECLENSIONS.

I. Mensa.	II. Servo.	III. Reg.	IV. Fructu.	V. Re.
SINGULAR.				
N. { mensa- mensă	servo-s servŭs	reg-s rex	fructu-s fructŭs	re-s rēs
G. { mensa-i mensae	servo-i servī	reg-is rēgīs	fructu-is fructŭs	re-i(s) rēi
D. { mensa-i mensae	servo-i servō	reg-i regī	fructu-i fructuī	re-i rēi
A. { mensa-m mensām	servo-m servŭm	reg-em regēm	fructu-(e)m fructŭm	re-(e)m rēm
V. { mensa- mensă	servo-c ¹ servĕ	reg-s rex	fructu-s fructŭs	re-s rēs
A. { mensa-e mensā	servo-c servō	reg-e regĕ	fructu-e fructŭ	re-e rē
PLURAL.				
N. { mensa-i mensae	servo-i servī	reg-es regēs	fructu-es fructŭs	re-es rēs
G. { mensa-um mensārŭm	servo-um servōrŭm	reg-um regŭm	fructu-um fructuŭm	re-um rērŭm
D. { mensa-is mensīs	servo-is servīs	reg-ibus regibŭs	fructu-ibus fructibŭs	re-ibus rēbŭs
A. { mensa-es mensās	servo-es servōs	reg-es regēs	fructu-es fructŭs	re-es rēs
V. { mensa-i mensae	servo-i servī	reg-es regēs	fructu-es fructŭs	re-es rēs
A. { mensa-is mensīs.	servo-is servīs.	reg-ibus regibŭs.	fructu-ibus fructibŭs.	re-ibus rēbŭs.

¹ Nouns in *us* of Dec. II. have *e* instead of *s*.

124. GENERAL TABLE OF GENDER.

I. Gender independent of ending.¹ Common to all declensions.

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Names of MALES, of RIVERS, WINDS, and MONTHS.	Names of FEMALES, of COUNTRIES, TOWNS, ISLANDS, and TREES.	INDECLINABLE NOUNS, and WORDS and CLAUSES used as <i>Indeclinable Nouns</i> .

II. Gender determined by Nominative Ending.²

DECLENSION I.

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
as, es.	a, e.	

DECLENSION II.

er, ir, us, os.		um, on.
-----------------	--	---------

DECLENSION III.

o, or, os, er, es increasing in the genitive.	as, is, ys, x, es not increasing in the genitive, s preceded by a consonant.	a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ar, ur, us.
---	--	-------------------------------------

DECLENSION IV.

us.		u.
-----	--	----

DECLENSION V.

	es.	
--	-----	--

DECLENSION OF COMPOUND AND IRREGULAR NOUNS.

COMPOUND NOUNS.

125. Compounds present in general no peculiarities of declension. But

1. If two nominatives unite, they are both declined: *respublica* = *res publica*, republic, the public thing; *jusjurandum* = *jus jurandum*, oath.

2. If a nominative unites with an oblique case, only the nominative is declined: *paterfamilias* = *pater familias* (42. 3), or *pater familiae*, the father of a family.

¹ For exceptions, see 36.

² For exceptions, see under the several declensions.

126. PARADIGMS.

SINGULAR.

N. <i>respublica</i>	jusjurandū	pāterfamiliās
G. <i>rēipublicae</i>	jūrisjurandī	patrisfamilias
D. <i>rēipublicae</i>	jurijurandō	patrīfamilias
A. <i>rempublicām</i>	jusjurandū	patremfamilias
V. <i>respublicā</i>	jusjurandū	paterfamilias
A. <i>rēpublicā</i>	jurejurandō	patrēfamilias

PLURAL.

N. <i>respublicae</i>	jurajurandā	patresfamilias
G. <i>rērumpublicārū</i>		patrumfamilias
D. <i>rēbuspublicīs</i>		patribusfamilias
A. <i>respublicās</i>	jurajurandā	patresfamilias
V. <i>respublicae</i>	jurajurandā.	patresfamilias
A. <i>rēbuspublicīs.</i>		patribusfamilias.

1. The parts which compose these and similar words are often and perhaps more correctly written separately : *res publica* ; *pāter familias* or *familiae*.

2. The parts of *respublica* are *res* of the 5th Decl. and *publica* of the 1st.

3. The parts of *jusjurandum* are *jus* of the 3d Decl. and *jurandum* of the 2d. *Jusjurandum* wants the Gen., Dat., and Abl. Plur.

4. The parts of *paterfamilias* are *pāter* of the 3d Decl. and *familias* (42. 3), the old Gen. of *familia*, of the 1st. Sometimes, though rarely, the Gen. *familiārum* is used in the plural : *patresfamiliārum* for *patres familias*.

IRREGULAR NOUNS.

127. Irregular nouns may be divided into four classes:

I. INDECLINABLE NOUNS have but one form for all cases.

II. DEFECTIVE NOUNS want certain parts.

III. HETEROCLITES (*heteroclita*¹) are partly of one declension and partly of another.

IV. HETEROGENEOUS NOUNS (*heterogenea*²) are partly of one gender and partly of another.

I. INDECLINABLE NOUNS.

128. The Latin has but few indeclinable nouns.

1. The principal examples are :

1) *Fas*, right ; *nēfas*, wrong ; *instar*, equality ; *māne*, morning ; *nihil*, nothing ; *pondo*, pound ; *sēcus*, sex.

2) The letters of the alphabet, *a*, *b*, *c*, *alpha*, *beta*, etc.

3) Foreign words : *Jacob*, *Illeberri* ; though these are often declined :

¹ From *ἕτερος*, *another*, and *κλίσις*, *inflection*, i. e., of different declensions.

² From *ἕτερος*, *another*, and *γένος*, *gender*, i. e., of different genders.

Jacobus, Jacōbi; Illeberis, Illeberri. *Jēsus* has *Jesum* in the accusative and *Jesu* in the other cases.

2. Some indeclinable nouns are also defective: *māne* wants the Gen. and Dat.; *fas* and *nēfas*, the Gen., Dat., and Abl.

II. DEFECTIVE NOUNS.

129. Nouns may be defective in *Number*, in *Case*, or in both *Number* and *Case*.

I. Nouns defective in Number.

130. **Plural wanting.**—Many nouns from the nature of their signification want the plural: *Rōma*, Rome; *justitia*, justice; *aurum*, gold.

1. The principal nouns of this class are :

1) Proper names (except those used only in the plural): *Cicēro*, *Rōma*.

2) Abstract Nouns: *fīdes*, faith; *justitia*, justice.

3) Names of materials: *aurum*, gold; *ferrum*, iron.

4) A few others: *meridies*, midday; *specūmen*, example; *supellex*, furniture; *ver*, spring; *vespēra*, evening, etc.

2. Proper names admit the plural to designate *families*, *classes*; names of materials, to designate *pieces* of the material or *articles* made of it; and abstract nouns, to designate *instances*, or *kinds*, of the quality; *Scipiōnes*, the Scipios; *area*, vessels of copper; *avaritiae*, instances of avarice; *odia*, hatreds.

In the poets, the *plur.* of abstracts occurs in the sense of the sing.

131. **Singular wanting.**—Many nouns want the singular.

1. The most important of these are :

1) Certain personal appellatives applicable to classes: *majōres*, forefathers; *postēri*, descendants; *gemīni*, twins; *libēri*, children, etc.

2) Many names of cities: *Athēnae*, Athens; *Thēbae*, Thebes; *Delphi*, Delphi; *Argi*, Argos, though the Sing. *Argos* occurs in Nom. and Acc.

3) Many names of festivals: *Bacchanalia*, *Olympia*, *Saturnalia*.

4) Many names not included in these classes. Such are :

Arma, arms; *divitiae*, riches; *exsequiae*, funeral rites; *exuviae*, spoils; *īdus*, ides; *indutiae*, truce; *insidiae*, ambushade; *mānes*, shades of the dead; *mīnae*, threats; *moenia*, walls; *munia*, duties; *nuptiae*, nuptials; *reliquiae*, remains.

2. An individual member of a class designated by these plurals may be denoted by *unus ex* with the plural: *unus ex libēris*, one of the children, or a child.

3. The plural in names of cities may have reference to the several parts of the city, especially as ancient cities were often made up of separate villages. So in the names of festivals, the plural may refer to the various games and exercises which together constituted the festival.

132. **Plural with Change of Meaning.**—Some nouns have one signification in the singular and another in the plural: Thus

SINGULAR.

Aedes, temple;
Aqua, water;

PLURAL.

aedes, (1) temples, (2) a house,¹
aquae, (1) waters, (2) mineral springs.

¹ *Aedes* and some other words in this list, it will be observed, have in the plural two significations, one corresponding to that of the singular, and the other distinct from it.

Auxilium, <i>help</i> ;	auxilia, <i>auxiliaries</i> .
Bōnum, <i>a good thing, blessing</i> ;	bona, <i>riches, goods</i> .
Carcer, <i>prison, barrier</i> ;	carcēres, <i>barriers of a race-course</i> .
Castrum, <i>castle, hut</i> ;	castra, <i>camp</i> .
Comitium, <i>name of a part of the Roman forum</i> ;	comitia, <i>the assembly held in the comitium</i> .
Cōpia, <i>plenty, force</i> ;	copiae, (1) <i>stores</i> , (2) <i>troops</i> .
Facultas, <i>ability</i> ;	facultātes, <i>wealth, means</i> .
Finis, <i>end</i> ;	finēs, <i>borders, territory</i> .
Fortūna, <i>fortune</i> ;	fortunae, <i>possessions, wealth</i> .
Gratia, <i>gratitude, favor</i> ;	gratiae, <i>thanks</i> .
Hortus, <i>garden</i> ;	horti, (1) <i>gardens</i> , (2) <i>pleasure grounds</i> .
Impedimentum, <i>hindrance</i> ;	impedimenta, (1) <i>hindrances</i> , (2) <i>baggage</i> .
Littēra, <i>letter of alphabet</i> ;	litterae, (1) <i>letters of alphabet</i> , (2) <i>epistle, writing, letters, literature</i> .
Lūdus, <i>play, sport</i> ;	ludi, (1) <i>plays</i> , (2) <i>public spectacle</i> .
Mos, <i>custom</i> ;	mōres, <i>manners, character</i> .
Natālis (dies), <i>birth-day</i> ;	natales, <i>pedigree, parentage</i> .
Opēra, <i>work, service</i> ;	operae, <i>workmen</i> .
Pars, <i>part</i> ;	partes, (1) <i>parts</i> , (2) <i>a party</i> .
Rostrum, <i>beak of ship</i> ;	rostra, (1) <i>beaks</i> , (2) <i>the rostra or tribune in Rome (adorned with beaks)</i> .
Sal, <i>salt</i> ;	sāles, <i>witty sayings</i> .

II. Nouns defective in Case.

133. Some nouns are defective in case. Thus

1. Some want the *nominative, dative, and vocative singular* : (Ops), ōpis, *help* ; (vix or vicis), vīcis, *change*.

2. Some want the *nominative and vocative singular* : (Daps), dāpis, *food* ; (ditio), ditiōnis, *sway* ; (frux), frūgis, *fruit* ; (internecio), interne-ciōnis, *destruction* ; (pollis), pollinis, *flour*.

3. Some want the *genitive, dative, and ablative plural* : thus most nouns of the fifth declension. See 119. 5.

So also many neuters : *far, fel, mel, pus, rus, tus* ; especially Greek neuters in *os*, which want these cases in the singular also : *ēpos, mēlos*.

4. Some want the *genitive plural* : thus many nouns otherwise entire, especially monosyllables : *nex, pax, pix* ; *cor, cos, ros* ; *sal, sol, lux*.

III. Nouns defective in Number and Case.

134. Some nouns want one entire number and certain cases of the other : *fors*, chance, has only *fors* and *forte* ; *lues*, pestilence, has *lues, luem, lue*. Many verbal nouns in *u* have only the ablative singular : *jussu*, by order ; *mandātu*, by command ; *rogātu*, by request.

III. HETEROCLITES.—TWO CLASSES.

I. Heteroclites with one form in the nominative singular.

II. Heteroclites with different forms in the nominative singular.

Class First.

135. Of DECLENSIONS II. and IV. are a few nouns in *us*.
See 117.

136. Of DECLENSIONS II. and III. are

1. *Jugĕrum*, an acre; regularly of the second Decl., except in the Gen. Plur., which is *jugĕrum*, according to the third. Other forms of the third are rare.

2. *Vas*, a vessel; of the third Decl. in the Sing., and of the second in the Plur.: *vas*, *vāsīs*; plural, *vāsa*, *vasōrum*.

3. Plural names of festivals in *alia*: *Bacchanalia*, *Saturnalia*; which are regularly of the third Decl., but sometimes form the Gen. Plur. in *ōrum* of the second. *Ancile*, a shield, and a few other words also occur.

137. Of DECLENSIONS III. and V. are

1. *Requies*, rest; which is regularly of the third Decl., but also takes the forms *requiem* and *requie* of the fifth.

2. *Fāmes*, hunger; regularly of the third Decl., except in the ablative, *famē*, of the fifth (not *famē*, of the third).

*Class Second.*¹

138. FORMS IN *ia* AND *ies*.—Many words of four syllables have one form in *ia* of Decl. I., and one in *ies* of Decl. V.: *barbaria*, *barbaries*, barbarism; *duritia*, *durities*, hardness; *luxuria*, *luxuries*, luxury; *materia*, *materies*, material; *mollitia*, *mollities*, softness.

139. FORMS IN *us* AND *um*.—Many nouns derived from verbs have one form in *us* of Decl. IV., and one in *um* of Decl. II.: *conātus*, *conātum*, an attempt; *eventus*, *eventum*, event; *prætextus*, *prætextum*, pretext.

140. Many other Examples might be added. Many words which have but one approved form in prose, admit another in poetry: *juventus* (*ūtis*), youth; poetic, *juventa* (*ae*): *senectus* (*ūtis*), old age; poetic, *senecta* (*ae*): *paupertas* (*ātis*), poverty; poetic, *pauperies* (*ēi*).

IV. HETEROGENEOUS NOUNS.—TWO CLASSES.

I. With one form in the nominative singular.

II. With different forms in the nominative singular.

Class First.

141. MASCULINE AND NEUTER.—Some *masculines* take in the plural an additional form of the neuter gender:

Jocus, a jest; plur., *joci* and *joca*.

Locus, place; “ *loci*, topics, passages in books, places; *loca*, places.

Sibilus, hissing; “ *sibili*; poetic, *sibila*.

142. FEMININE AND NEUTER.—Some *feminines* take in the plural an additional form of the neuter gender:

¹ Sometimes called *Redundant nouns*, or *abundantia*.

Carbāsus, linen; plural, *carbasi* and *carbasa*, sails, &c.
margarita, pearl; “ *margaritæ* and *margarita*, ōrum.
ostrea, oyster; “ *ostreae* and *ostrea*, ōrum.

143. NEUTER AND MASCULINE OR FEMININE.—Some *neuters* take in the plural a different gender; thus

1. Some *neuters* become *masculine* in the plural:

Coelum, heaven; plural, *coeli*.

2. Some *neuters* generally become *masculine* in the plural, but sometimes remain *neuter*:

Frēnum, bridle; plur., *freni*, sometimes *frena*.

rastrum, rake; “ *rastri*, “ *rastra*.

3. Some *neuters* become *feminine* in the plural:

Epŭlum, public feast; plur., *epulae*, meal, banquet.

Class Second.

144. FORMS IN *us* AND *um*.—Some nouns of the second declension have one form in *us* masculine and one in *um* neuter: *clipeus*, *clipeum*, shield; *commentarius*, *commentarium*, commentary; *cubitus*, *cubitum*, cubit; *jugŭlus*, *jugŭlum*, throat.

145. HETEROGENEOUS HETEROCOLITES.—Some heteroclitēs are also heterogeneous: *conātus* (*us*), *conātum* (*i*), effort; *menda* (*ae*), *mendum* (*i*), fault.

CHAPTER II.

ADJECTIVES.

146. The adjective is that part of speech which is used to qualify nouns: *bŏnus*, good; *magnus*, great.

The form of the adjective in Latin depends in part upon the gender of the noun which it qualifies; *bonus puer*, a good boy; *bona puella*, a good girl; *bonum tectum*, a good house. Thus *bonus* is the form of the adjective when used with masculine nouns, *bona* with feminine, and *bonum* with neuter.

147. Some adjectives are partly of the first declension and partly of the second, while all the rest are entirely of the third declension.

I. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

148. Adjectives of this class have in the nominative singular the endings:

Masc., Dec. II.

Fem., Dec. I.

Neut., Dec. II.

us¹ —,

a,

um.

They are declined as follows:

Bonus, good.

SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	bōnūs	bōnā	bōnūm
<i>Gen.</i>	bonī	bonae	bonī
<i>Dat.</i>	bonō	bonae	bonō
<i>Acc.</i>	bonūm	bonām	bonūm
<i>Voc.</i>	bonē	bonā	bonūm
<i>Abl.</i>	bonō	bonā	bonō

PLURAL.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	bonī	bonae	bonā
<i>Gen.</i>	bonōrūm	bonārūm	bonōrūm
<i>Dat.</i>	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
<i>Acc.</i>	bonōs	bonās	bonā
<i>Voc.</i>	bonī	bonae	bonā
<i>Abl.</i>	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs.

Liber, free.

SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	libēr	libērā	libērūm
<i>Gen.</i>	libērī	libērae	libērī
<i>Dat.</i>	libērō	libērae	libērō
<i>Acc.</i>	libērūm	libērām	libērūm
<i>Voc.</i>	libēr	libērā	libērūm
<i>Abl.</i>	libērō	libērā	libērō

PLURAL.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	libērī	libērae	libērā
<i>Gen.</i>	liberōrūm	liberārūm	liberōrūm
<i>Dat.</i>	libērīs	libērīs	libērīs
<i>Acc.</i>	libērōs	libērās	libērā
<i>Voc.</i>	libērī	libērae	libērā
<i>Abl.</i>	libērīs	libērīs	libērīs.

¹ The dash indicates that the ending is sometimes wanting. See 45. 1.

Aeger, sick.

SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	aegĕr	aegră	aegrŭm
<i>Gen.</i>	aegrĭ	aegrac	aegrĭ
<i>Dat.</i>	aegrō	aegrac	aegrō
<i>Acc.</i>	aegrŭm	aegrăm	aegrŭm
<i>Voc.</i>	aeger	aegră	aegrŭm
<i>Abl.</i>	aegrō	aegră	aegrō ;

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	aegrĭ	aegrac	aegră
<i>Gen.</i>	aegrōrŭm	aegrārŭm	aegrōrŭm
<i>Dat.</i>	aegrĭs	aegrĭs	aegrĭs
<i>Acc.</i>	aegrōs	aegrās	aegră
<i>Voc.</i>	aegrĭ	aegrac	aegră
<i>Abl.</i>	aegrĭs	aegrĭs	aegrĭs.

1. *Bonus* is declined in the Masc. like *servus* of Decl. II. (45), in the Fem. like *mensa* of Decl. I. (42), and in the Neut. like *templum* of Decl. II. (45).

2. *Liber* differs in declension from *bonus* only in dropping *us* and *e* in the Nom. and Voc. (45. 3, 1). *Aeger* differs from *liber* only in dropping *e* before *r* (45. 3, 2).

3. Most adjectives in *er* are declined like *aeger*, but the following in *er* and *ur* are declined like *liber* :

1) *Asper*, rough; *lăcer*, torn; *mĭser*, wretched; *prosper*, prosperous; *tĕner*, tender; but *asper* sometimes drops the *e*, and *dexter*, right, sometimes retains it: *dexter*, *dextĕra* or *dextra*.

2) *Sătur*, sated; *satur*, *satŭra*, *satŭrum*.

3) Compounds in *fer* and *ger*: *mortifer*, deadly; *alĭger*, winged.

149. Irregularities.—These nine adjectives have in the singular *iŭs* in the genitive and *ĭ* in the dative :

Alius, another; *nullus*, no one; *sŏlus*, alone; *tŏtus*, whole; *ullus*, any; *ŭnus*, one; *alter*, *-tĕra*, *-tĕrum*, the other; *ŭter*, *-tra*, *-trum*, which (of two); *neuter*, *-tra*, *-trum*, neither.

1. The Regular Forms occasionally occur in some of these adjectives: *aliae*, *nullĭ*, for *aliŭs*, *nullŭs*; *altĕro*, *altĕrae*, for *alteri*.

2. *I* in *iŭs* in poetry is sometimes short; generally so in *alterius*.

3. *Alius* has *aliud* for *aliŭm* in the neuter, and shortens the genitive *aliŭs* into *aliŭs*.

4. Like *uter* are declined its compounds: *uterque*, *utervis*, *uterlibet*, *utercunque*. In *alterŭter* sometimes both parts are declined, as *alteriŭs utriŭs*; and sometimes only the latter, as *alterutriŭs*.

II. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

150. Adjectives of the third declension may be divided into three classes :

I. Those which have in the nominative singular three different forms—one for each gender.

II. Those which have two forms—the masculine and feminine being the same.

III. Those which have but one form—the same for all genders.

151. I. ADJECTIVES OF THREE ENDINGS of this declension have in the nominative singular :

Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
er,	is,	e.

They are declined as follows :

Acer, sharp.

SINGULAR.

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N. ācēr</i>	<i>ācrīs</i>	<i>ācrē</i>
<i>G. acrīs</i>	<i>acrīs</i>	<i>acrīs</i>
<i>D. acrī</i>	<i>acrī</i>	<i>acrī</i>
<i>A. acrēm</i>	<i>acrēm</i>	<i>acrē</i>
<i>V. acēr</i>	<i>acrīs</i>	<i>acrē</i>
<i>A. acrī</i>	<i>acrī</i>	<i>acrī ;</i>

PLURAL.

<i>N. acrēs</i>	<i>acrēs</i>	<i>acriā</i>
<i>G. acriūm</i>	<i>acriūm</i>	<i>acriūm</i>
<i>D. acribūs</i>	<i>acribūs</i>	<i>acribūs</i>
<i>A. acrēs</i>	<i>acrēs</i>	<i>acriā</i>
<i>V. acrēs</i>	<i>acrēs</i>	<i>acriā</i>
<i>A. acribūs</i>	<i>acribūs</i>	<i>acribūs.</i>

1. Like *Acer* are declined :

1) *Alācer*, lively ; *campester*, level ; *celēber*, famous ; *cēler*,¹ swift ; *equester*, equestrian ; *paluster*, marshy ; *pedester*, pedestrian ; *pūter*, putrid ; *salūber*, healthful ; *silvester*, woody ; *terrester*, terrestrial ; *volūcer*, winged.

2) Adjectives in *er* designating the months : *Octōber*, *bris*.²

2. The Masculine in *is*, like the Fem., also occurs : *salūbris*, *silvestris*, for *salūber*, *silvester*.

¹ This retains *e* in declension : *celer*, *celēris*, *celēre* ; and has *um* in the Gen. Plur.

² See also 87. 2.

3. These forms in *er* are analogous to those in *er* (whether nouns or adjectives) of Dec. II. in dropping the ending in the Nom. and Voc. Sing. and in inserting *e* before *r*. Thus *ager*, originally *agrus*, drops *us*, giving *agr*, and then inserts *e* to facilitate pronunciation, giving *ager*; so *acer*, originally *acris*, drops *is* and inserts *e*; *acr*, *acer*.

152. II. ADJECTIVES OF TWO ENDINGS have in the nominative singular:

M. and F.	Neut.	
1. is	e ,	for positives.
2. ior (or)	ius (us) ,	for comparatives.

They are declined as follows:

Tristis, *sad*.

Tristior, *more sad*.¹

SINGULAR.

M. and F.	Neut.	M. and F.	Neut.
N. trist is	trist ē	N. tristi ōr	tristi ūs
G. trist is	trist is	G. tristi ōrīs	tristi ōrīs
D. trist ī	trist ī	D. tristi ōrī	tristi ōrī
A. trist ēm	trist ē	A. tristi ōrēm	tristi ūs
V. trist is	trist ē	V. tristi ōr	tristi ūs
A. trist ī	trist ī ;	A. tristi ōrē (ī)	tristi ōrē (ī) ;

PLURAL.

N. trist ēs	tristi ā	N. tristi ōrēs	tristi ōrā
G. trist ium	tristi um	G. tristi ōrum	tristi ōrum
D. trist ibūs	tristi būs	D. tristi ōribūs	tristi ōribūs
A. trist ēs	tristi ā	A. tristi ōrēs	tristi ōrā
V. trist ēs	tristi ā	V. tristi ōrēs	tristi ōrā
A. trist ibūs	tristi būs .	A. tristi ōribūs	tristi ōribūs .

153. III. ADJECTIVES OF ONE ENDING.—All other adjectives have but one form in the nominative singular for all genders. They generally end in *s* or *x*, sometimes in *z* or *r*, and are declined in the main like nouns of the same endings. The following are examples:

Felix, *happy*.

Prudens, *prudent*.

SINGULAR.

M. and F.	Neut.	M. and F.	Neut.
N. fel ix	fel ix	N. pr ūd ens	pr ūd ens
G. fel icis	fel icis	G. pr udentis	pr udentis
D. fel icī	fel icī	D. pr udentī	pr udentī

¹ Comparative. For the declension of *Plus*, see 165. 1.

<i>A.</i> felic ēm	felix	<i>A.</i> prudent ēm	prudens
<i>V.</i> felix	felix	<i>V.</i> prudens	prudens
<i>A.</i> felic ě , or ī	felic ě , or ī ;	<i>A.</i> prudent ě , or ī	prudent ě , or ī ;

PLURAL.

<i>N.</i> felic ēs	felic iā	<i>N.</i> prudent ēs	prudent iā
<i>G.</i> felic iūm	felic iūm	<i>G.</i> prudent iūm	prudent iūm
<i>D.</i> felic ibūs	felic ibūs	<i>D.</i> prudent ibūs	prudent ibūs
<i>A.</i> felic ēs	felic iā	<i>A.</i> prudent ēs	prudent iā
<i>V.</i> felic ēs	felic iā	<i>V.</i> prudent ēs	prudent iā
<i>A.</i> felic ibūs	felic ibūs .	<i>A.</i> prudent ibūs	prudent ibūs .

FORMATION OF CASES OF ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

154. Adjectives of the third declension form their cases in general like nouns of the same endings, but present the following peculiarities:

I. *Genitive Singular.*

155. This presents a few irregularities, but in general the same as in nouns (58-83). Thus

- The following in **ēs** form the genitive not in the regular **ītis**, but in
 - ētis**:—*hēbes, indīgēs, praepēs, tēcs*.
 - īdis**:—*dēses, rēses*.
- The following in **ēs** form it in
 - ēdis**:—compounds of *pes*, foot, as, *alīpes, bīpes, trīpes*.
 - ēris**:—*pūbes, impūbes* (sometimes *is*).
 - ētis**:—*inquēs, locūples*.
- Adjectives in **ceps** form it in
 - cīpis**, if compounded of *capio*: *princeps, principis*.
 - cīpītis**, if compounded of *cāput*: *anceps, ancipītis*.
- Four in **or** form it in **ōris**:—*mēmor, immēmor, bicorpor, tricorpor*.
- Other examples.—(1) *Compos* and *impos* form it in **ētis**.—(2) Compounds in *cors* from *cor* have *cordis*: *concors, discors*.—(3) *Caculis* has *caculibis*; *dis, dītis*; *intercus, intercūtis*; *praecox, praecōcis*; *vētus, vētēris*.

II. *Ablative Singular.*

156. I. ENDING:—**ě** or **ī**, in comparatives and adjectives of one ending: *tristīōrě* or *rī*; *audācě* or *cī*.

II. “ **ī**, in other adjectives: *acrī, tristī*.

1. Comparatives generally have *e*, and adjectives of one ending, generally *i*; but participles in *ans* and *ens* have only *e*, except when used adjectively.

2. The Ablative in *e* in many adjectives of one ending cannot be verified from ancient authors.—The ablative in *i* is in general preferable.

3. Some have only *e* in general use.—(1) *Pauper*, *paupĕre*, poor; *pūbes*, *pubĕre*, mature;—(2) those in *es*, G. *itis* or *idis*: *āles*, *dēscs*, *dīves*, *sospes*, *superstes*;—(3) *cacēbs*, *compos*, *īnpos*, *prīnceps*.

4. The Ablative in *e* sometimes occurs in poetry in positives of more than one ending: *cognomīne* for *cognomīnī*, like named.

III. Nominative, Accusative and Vocative Plural of Neuters.

157. I. ENDING:—*iā* in positives: *acriā*, *tristiā*.

II. “ *ā* in comparatives: *tristiōrā*.

1. *Vetus*, old, has *vetĕrā*; *complures*, several, has *compluriā* or *complurā*.

2. The neuter plural is wanting in most adjectives of one ending, except those in *as*, *ns*, *rs*, *ax*, *ix*, *ox*, and numerals in *plex*.

IV. Genitive Plural.

158. I. ENDING: *iūm* in positives: *acriūm*, *tristium*.

II. “ *ūm* in comparatives: *tristiōrum*.

1. Some adjectives want the genitive plural.

2. *Plures*, more, and *complures*, several, have *iūm*.

3. The following have *um*:

1) Adjectives of one ending with only *e* in the ablative singular (156). 3): *pauper*, *paupĕrum*.

2) Those with the genitive in *ĕris*, *ĉris*, *ŭris*: *vĕtus*, *vetĕrum*, old; *mēmōr*, *mēmōrum*, mindful; *cicūr*, *cicūrum*, tame.

3) Those in *ceps*: *anceps*, *ancipitum*, doubtful.

4) Those compounded with substantives which have *um*: *inops* (ops, *ōpum*), *inōpum*, helpless.

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

159. Irregular adjectives may be

I. Indeclinable: *frūgi*, frugal, good; *nēquam*, worthless; *mille*, thousand.

II. Defective: (ceterus) *cetĕra*, *cetĕrum*, the other, the rest; (sons) *sontis*, guilty.

III. Heteroclites.—Many adjectives have two distinct forms, one in *us*, *a*, *um*, of the first and second declensions, and one in *is* and *e* of the third: *hilarus* and *hilaris*, joyful; *exanimus* and *exanimis*, lifeless.

1. The Latin has but few indeclinable adjectives, except numerals (175).

2. Some adjectives want

1) The nominative singular masculine: (ceterus) *cetĕra*, *cetĕrum*, the other; (Indicer) *ludicra*, *ludicrum*, sportive.

2) One or more cases in full: (semīnex) *semīnĕcis*, half dead, defective in the nominative; *exspes*, hopeless, only used in the nominative; *exlex*, law-

less, only in nominative and accusative; *pernox*, through the night, only in nominative and ablative.

3) The neuter gender or genitive plural. See 157. 2 and 158. 1.

4) The singular: *pauci*, *ae*, *a*, few; *plērique*, the most; the latter wants also the genitive plural, supplied by *plurimi*. The singular of *plērique* occurs, but is very rare. In good prose *extērus* wants the singular; and *infērus*, *supērus*, and *postērus* are used in the singular only in particular expressions: *mare infērum*, the lower sea, i. e., south of Italy; *mare supērum*, the upper sea, i. e., north of Italy, the Adriatic; *postērus* in expressions of time: *diem postērum*, the following day; *nocte postēra*, on the following night.

3. In most heteroclitics only one form is in common use in classic prose; in a few, as in the examples under 159. III., both forms are approved.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

160. Adjectives have three forms to denote different degrees of quality. They are usually called the Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative degree: *altus*, *altior*, *altissimus*, high, higher, highest.

Comparatives and superlatives are sometimes best rendered into English by *too* and *very*, instead of *more* and *most*: *doctus*, learned; *doctior*, more learned, or too learned; *doctissimus*, most learned, or very learned.

161. The Latin, like the English, has two modes of comparison:

I. *Terminational Comparison*—by endings.

II. *Adverbial Comparison*—by adverbs.

I. TERMINATIONAL COMPARISON.

162. Adjectives are regularly compared by adding to the stem of the positive the endings:

Comparative.			Superlative.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
iōr,	iōr,	iūs.	issimūs,	issimā,	issimūm.

EXAMPLES.

Altus, *altior*, *altissimus*: *high*, *higher*, *highest*.

lēvis, *levior*, *levissimus*: *light*, *lighter*, *lightest*.

Irregular Terminational Comparison.

163. *Irregular Superlatives*.—Many adjectives with regular comparatives have irregular superlatives. Thus

1. Adjectives in **er** add **rĭmus** to the positive: *acer*, *acrior*, *acerrĭmus*, sharp.

Fĕtus has *veterrĭmus*; *matŭrus*, both *maturrĭmus* and *maturissĭmus*; *dexter*, *dextĭmus*.

2. Six in **ilis** add **lĭmus** to the stem:

Facĭlis, *difficĭlis*; *easy*, *difficult*.

simĭlis, *dissimĭlis*; *like*, *unlike*.

gracĭlis, *humĭlis*; *slender*, *low*;

thus: *facĭlis*, *facĭlior*, *facillĭmus*. *Imbecillĭs* has *imbecillĭmus*, but *imbecĭlus* is regular.

3. Four in **rus** have two irregular superlatives:

Extĕrus, exterior, *extrĕmus* and *extĭmus*, *outward*.

infĕrus, inferior, *infĭnus* and *ĭnus*, *lower*.

supĕrus, superior, *suprĕmus* and *summus*, *upper*.

postĕrus, posterior, *postrĕmus* and *postŭmus*, *next*.

164. Compounds in **dĭcus**, **fĭcus**, and **volus** are compared with the endings **entior** and **entissĭmus**, as if from forms in **ens**:

Maledĭcus, maledicentior, maledicentissĭmus, *slanderos*.

munĭfĭcus, munificentior, munificentissĭmus, *liberal*.

benevŏlus, benevolentior, benevolentissĭmus, *benevolent*.

1. *Egĕnus* and *providus* (needy and prudent), form the comparative and superlative from *ĕgens* and *providens*: hence *egentior*, *egentissĭmus*, etc.

2. *Mirificissĭmus* occurs as the superlative of *mirificus*, wonderful.

3. Many adjectives in *dĭcus* and *fĭcus* want the comparative and superlative.

165. Special Irregularities of Comparison.

Bŏnus, melior, *optĭmus*, *good*.

mălus, pĕjor, *pessĭmus*, *bad*.

magnus, mājor, *maxĭmus*, *great*.

parvus, mĭnor, *minĭmus*, *small*.

multus, plus, *plurĭmus*, *much*.

1. *Plus* is neuter, and has in the singular only N. and A. *plus*, and G. *plŭris*. In the plural it has N. and A. *plŭres* (m. and f.), *plŭra* (n.), G. *plurĭum*, D. and A. *plurĭbus*.

2. *Dĭves*, *frŭgi*, *nĕquam*:

Dĭves, { *divitior*, *divitissĭmus*, } *rich*.

frŭgi, { *ditior*, *ditissĭmus*, }

frŭgi, *frugalior*, *frugalissĭmus*, *frugal*.

nĕquam, *nequior*, *nequissĭmus*, *worthless*.

Defective Terminational Comparison.

166. Positive Wanting:

<i>Cĭterior</i> ,	<i>cĭtĭmus</i> ,	<i>nearer</i> .		<i>prior</i> ,	<i>prĭmus</i> ,	<i>former</i> .
<i>dĕterior</i> ,	<i>dĕterrĭmus</i> ,	<i>worse</i> .		<i>propior</i> ,	<i>proxĭmus</i> ,	<i>nearer</i> .
<i>ĭterior</i> ,	<i>ĭntĭmus</i> ,	<i>inner</i> .		<i>ulterior</i> ,	<i>ultĭmus</i> ,	<i>farther</i> . ¹
<i>ocior</i> ,	<i>ocissĭmus</i> ,	<i>swifter</i> .				

¹ These adjectives are formed from *citra*, *de*, *intra*, Greek *ὠκός*, *prae* or *pro*, *prope*, *ultra*.

167. Comparative Wanting.—The comparative is wanting

1. In a few participles used adjectively: *meritus*, *meritissimus*, deserving.

2. In these adjectives:

Diversus,	diversissimus,	<i>different.</i>	nōvus,	novissimus,	<i>new.</i>
falsus,	falsissimus,	<i>false.</i>	sācer,	sacerrimus,	<i>sacred.</i>
inclŭtus,	inclŭtissimus,	<i>renowned.</i>	vētus,	veterrimus,	<i>old.</i>

168. Superlative Wanting.—The superlative is wanting

1. In most verbals in *ilis* and *bilis*: *docilis*, *docilior*, docile; *optabilis*, *optabilior*, desirable. But of these

Some are compared in full: *amabilis*, *facilis*, *fertilis*, *mobilis*, *nobilis*, *utilis*, etc.

2. In many adjectives in *ālis* and *ilis*: *capitalis*, *capitalior*, capital; *civilis*, *civilior*, civil.

3. Three adjectives supply the superlative thus:

Adoleseens,	adolescentior,	minimus nātu, ¹	<i>young.</i>
juvēnis,	junior,	minimus nātu,	<i>young.</i>
sēnex,	senior,	maximus nātu, ¹	<i>old.</i>

4. A few other adjectives want the superlative: *agrestis*, *alūcer*, *caccus*, *diuturnus*, *infinitus*, *longinquus*, *opimus*, *proclivis*, *propinquus*, *salutāris*, *supīnus*, *surdus*, *tēres*, *vulgāris*.

169. Both Comparative and Superlative Wanting.—Many adjectives have no terminational comparison:

1. Many from the nature of their signification, admitting no comparison; especially such as denote *material*, *possession*, or the relations of *place* and *time*: *aureus*, golden; *adamantīnus*, adamantine; *paternus*, paternal; *Romānus*, Roman; *hesternus*, of yesterday; *æstivus*, of summer; *hibernus*, of winter.

2. Many others.—Thus

1) Those in *us* preceded by a vowel, except those in *quus*: *idoneus*, suitable; *noxius*, hurtful. But a few in *uus* have the superlative: *assiduus*, *strenuus*. Other exceptions occur, especially in the poets: *pīus*, *piissimus*; *egregius*, *egregiissimus*.

2) Many derivatives and compounds, especially (1) derivatives in *ālis*, *ilis*, *ulus*, *iculus*, *inus*, *orus*: *mortalis* (mors), mortal; (2) compounds of verbs or of nouns: *particeps* (capio), sharing; *magnanimus* (animus), magnanimous.

3) Also *albus*, *almus*, *calūcus*, *fērus*, *fessus*, *gnārus*, *lassus*, *mīrus*, *mutulus*, *nāvus*, *nefastus*, *rūdis*, etc.

II.—ADVERBIAL COMPARISON.

170. Adjectives which want the terminational comparison, form the comparative and superlative, when their signification requires it, by prefixing the adverbs *māgis*, more, and *maxime*, most, to the positive:

¹ Smallest or youngest in age; greatest or eldest in age. *Nātu* is sometimes omitted.

Arduus, māgis arduus, maxīme arduus, *arduous*.

1. Other adverbs are sometimes used with the positive to denote different degrees of the quality: *admōdum*, *valde*, *oppīdo*, very; *inprīmis*, *apprīme*, in the highest degree; *minūs*, less; *minīme*, least: *valde magna*, very great. *Per* and *prae* in composition with adjectives have the force of *very*; *perdifficilis*, very difficult; *praeclārus*, very illustrious.

2. Strengthening Particles are sometimes used.—(1) With the comparative: *etiam*, even, *multo*, *longe*, much, far: *etiam diligentior*, even more diligent; *multo diligentior*, much more diligent.—(2) With the superlative: *multo*, *longe*, much, by far; *quam*, as possible: *multo* or *longe diligentissimus*, by far the most diligent; *quam diligentissimus*, as diligent as possible.

NUMERALS.

171. Numerals comprise numeral adjectives and numeral adverbs.

I. NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

172. Numeral adjectives comprise three principal classes:

1. CARDINAL NUMBERS: *ūnus*, one; *duo*, two.
2. ORDINAL NUMBERS: *prīmus*, first; *secundus*, second.
3. DISTRIBUTIVES: *singūli*, one by one; *bīni*, two by two, two each, two apiece.

173. To these may be added

1. MULTIPLICATIVES.—These are adjectives in *plex*, G. *plēis*, denoting so many fold: *simplex*, single; *duplex*, double; *triplex*, three-fold.

2. PROPORTIONALS.—These are declined like *bōnus*, and denote so many times as great: *duplus*, twice as great; *triplus*, three times as great.

174. TABLE OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.	DISTRIBUTIVES.
1. ūnus, una, unum,	prīmus, ¹ <i>first</i> ,	singūli, <i>one by one</i> .
2. duo, duae, duo,	secundus, ¹ <i>second</i> ,	bīni, <i>two by two</i> .
3. tres, tria,	tertius, <i>third</i> ,	terni (trini).
4. quattuor,	quartus, <i>fourth</i> ,	quaterni.
5. quinque,	quintus, <i>fifth</i> ,	quīni.
6. sex,	sextus,	sēni.
7. septem,	septīmus,	septēni.
8. octo,	octāvus,	octōni.
9. nōvem,	nōnus,	novēni.
10. dēcem,	decīmus,	dēni.
11. undēcim,	undecīmus,	undēni.

¹ *Prior* is used in speaking of two, and *alter* is often used for *secundus*.

CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.	DISTRIBUTIVES.
12. duodēcim,	duodecīmus,	duodēni.
13. tredēcim <i>or</i> decem et tres,	tertius decīmus, ⁶	terni dēni.
14. quattuordēcim,	quartus decīmus,	quaterni dēni.
15. quindēcim,	quintus decīmus,	quīni dēni.
16. sedēcim <i>or</i> sexdē- cim, ¹	sextus decīmus,	sēni dēni.
17. septendēcim, ¹	septīmus decīmus,	septēni dēni.
18. duodeviginti, ²	duodevicesīmus, ⁷	duodevicēni.
19. undeviginti, ²	undevicesīmus, ⁷	undevicēni.
20. viginti,	vicesīmus, ⁸	vicēni.
21. { viginti ūnus, ūnus et viginti, ³	vicesīmus prīmus, ūnus et vicesīmus, ³	vicēni singŭli. singŭli et vicēni.
22. { viginti duo, duo et viginti,	vicesīmus secundus, alter et vicesīmus,	vicēni bīni. bīni et vicēni.
30. triginta,	tricesīmus, ⁸	tricēni.
40. quadraginta,	quadragesīmus,	quadragēni.
50. quinquaginta,	quingagesīmus,	quingagēni.
60. sexaginta,	sexagesīmus,	sexagēni.
70. septuaginta,	septuagesīmus,	septuagēni.
80. octoginta,	octogesīmus,	octogēni.
90. nonaginta,	nonagesīmus,	nonagēni.
100. centum,	centesīmus,	centēni.
101. { centum ūnus, centum et ūnus, ⁴	centesīmus prīmus, centesīmus et prīmus	centēni singŭli. centēni et singŭli.
200. ducenti, ae, a,	ducentesīmus,	ducēni.
300. trecenti,	trecentesīmus,	trecēni.
400. quadringenti,	quadringesīmus,	quadringēni.
500. quingenti,	quingentesīmus,	quingēni.
600. sexcenti,	sexcentesīmus,	sexcēni.
700. septingenti,	septingentesīmus,	septingēni.
800. octingenti,	octingentesīmus,	octingēni.
900. nongenti,	nongentesīmus,	nongēni.
1,000. millo,	millesīmus,	singŭla millia.
2,000. duo millia, ⁵	bis millesīmus,	bīna millia.

¹ Sometimes with the parts separated: *decem et sex*; *decem et septem*.

² Literally two from twenty, one from twenty, by subtraction; but these numbers may be expressed by addition: *decem et octo*; *decem et novem*; so 28, 29; 38, 39, etc., either by subtraction from *triginta*, etc., or by addition to *viginti*; *duodetriginta* or *octo et viginti*.

³ If the tens precede the units, *et* is omitted, otherwise it is generally used. So in English cardinals, twenty-one, one and twenty.

⁴ In compounding numbers above 100, units generally follow tens, tens hundreds, etc., as in English; but the connective *et* is either omitted, or used only between the two highest denominations: *mille centum viginti* or *mille et centum viginti*, 1,120.

⁵ Sometimes *bīna millia* or *bīs mille*.

⁶ Sometimes *decīmus* precedes with or without *et*: *decīmus et tertius* or *decīmus tertius*.

⁷ Sometimes expressed by addition, like the corresponding cardinals: *octāvus decīmus* and *nonus decīmus*.

⁸ Sometimes written with *g*: *vigesīmus*; *trigesīmus*.

CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.	DISTRIBUTIVES.
10,000. <i>dĕcem millia</i> ,	<i>decies millesĭmus</i> ,	<i>dĕna millia</i> .
100,000. <i>centum millia</i> ,	<i>centies millesĭmus</i> ,	<i>centĕna millia</i> .
1,000,000. <i>decies centĕna mil-</i> <i>lia</i> , ¹	<i>decies centies mille-</i> <i>sĭmus</i> ,	<i>decies centĕnamillia</i> .

1. *Ordinals with Pars*, part, expressed or understood, may be used to express fractions: *tertia pars*, a third part, a third; *quarta pars*, a fourth; *duae tertiae*, two thirds.

2. *Distributives* are used

1) To show the *number* of objects taken at a time, often best rendered by adding to the cardinal *each* or *apiece*; *ternos denarios accepĕrunt*, they received *each* three denarii, or three apiece. Hence

2) To express *Multiplication*: *decies centĕna millia*, ten times a hundred thousand, a million.

3) Instead of *Cardinals*, with nouns plural in form, but singular in sense: *bĭna castra*, two camps. Here for *singŭli* and *terni*, *ŭni* and *trĭni* are used: *unae littĕrae*, one letter; *trĭnae littĕrae*, three letters.

4) Sometimes in reference to objects spoken of in pairs: *bĭni scyphi*, a pair of goblets; and in the poets with the force of cardinals: *bĭna hastilia*, two spears.

3. Poets use numeral adverbs (181) very freely in compounding numbers: *bis sex*, for duodĕcim; *bis septem*, for quattuordĕcim.

4. *Sexcenti* and *mille* are sometimes used indefinitely for any large number, as *one thousand* is in English.

DECLENSION OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

175. On the declension of cardinals observe

1. That the units, *ŭnus*, *duo*, and *tres*, are declined.
2. That the other units, all the tens, and *centum* are indeclinable.
3. That the hundreds are declined.
4. That *mille* is sometimes declined.

176. The first three cardinals are declined as follows:

1. *Unus*, *one*.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>N.</i>	<i>ŭnŭs</i> ,	<i>ŭnā</i> ,	<i>ŭnŭm</i> ,	<i>ŭnĭ</i> ,	<i>ŭnae</i> ,	<i>ŭnā</i> ,
<i>G.</i>	<i>unĭŭs</i> ,	<i>unĭŭs</i> ,	<i>unĭŭs</i> ,	<i>unŏrŭm</i> ,	<i>unārŭm</i> ,	<i>unŏrŭm</i> ,
<i>D.</i>	<i>unĭ</i> ,	<i>unĭ</i> ,	<i>unĭ</i> ,	<i>unĭs</i> ,	<i>unĭs</i> ,	<i>unĭs</i> ,
<i>A.</i>	<i>unŭm</i> ,	<i>unām</i> ,	<i>unŭm</i> ,	<i>unŏs</i> ,	<i>unās</i> ,	<i>unā</i> ,
<i>V.</i>	<i>unĕ</i> ,	<i>unā</i> ,	<i>unŭm</i> ,			
<i>A.</i>	<i>unŏ</i> ,	<i>unā</i> ,	<i>unŏ</i> ;	<i>unĭs</i> ,	<i>unĭs</i> ,	<i>unĭs</i> .

2. *Duo*, *two*.

<i>N.</i>	<i>duŏ</i> ,	<i>duae</i> ,	<i>duŏ</i> ,
<i>G.</i>	<i>duŏrŭm</i> ,	<i>duārŭm</i> ,	<i>duŏrŭm</i> , ²

3. *Tres*, *three*.

	<i>trĕs</i> , <i>m. and f.</i>	<i>triā</i> , <i>n.</i>
	<i>triŭm</i> ,	<i>triŭm</i> ,

¹ Literally ten times a hundred thousand; the table might be carried up to any desired number by using the proper numeral adverb with *centĕna millia*: *centies centĕna millia*, 10,000,000; sometimes in such combinations *centĕna millia* is understood and only the adverb is expressed, and sometimes *centum millia* is used.

² *Duŏrum* and *duārŭm* are sometimes shortened to *duum*.

<i>D.</i> duōbūs, duābūs, duōbūs,	tribūs,	tribūs,
<i>A.</i> duōs, duō, duās, duō,	trēs,	triā,
<i>A.</i> duōbūs, duābūs, duōbūs.	tribūs,	tribūs.

1. The plural of *unus* in the sense of *alone* may be used with any noun; *uni Ubii*, the Ubii alone; but in the strict numeral sense of *one*, it is used only with such nouns as, though plural in form, are singular in sense: *una castra*, one camp; *unae littērae*, one letter.

2. Like *duo* is declined *ambo*, both.

3. *Multi*, many, and *plurimi*, very many, are indefinite numerals, and as such generally want the sing. But in the poets the sing. occurs in the sense of *many a*: *multa hostia*, many a victim.

177. Hundreds, *ducenti*, *trecenti*, etc., are declined like the plural of *bōnus*: *ducenti*, *ae*, *a*.

178. *Mille* is used both as an adjective and as a substantive. As an adjective it is indeclinable; as a substantive it is used in the singular only in the nominative and accusative, but in the plural it is declined like the plural of *māre* (50): *millia*, *millium*, *millibus*.

With the *substantive Mille*, the name of the objects enumerated is generally in the genitive: *mille hominum*, a thousand men (of men); but it is in the same case as *mille*, if a declined numeral intervenes: *tria millia trecenti milites*, three thousand three hundred soldiers.

179. Ordinals are declined like *bonus* and distributives like the plural of *bonus*, but the latter often have *um* for *ōrum* in the genitive; *binum* for *binōrum*.

180. NUMERAL SYMBOLS.

ARABIC.	ROMAN.	ARABIC.	ROMAN.	ARABIC.	ROMAN.
1.	I.	16.	XVI.	101.	CI.
2.	II.	17.	XVII.	200.	CC.
3.	III.	18.	XVIII.	300.	CCC.
4.	IV.	19.	XIX.	400.	CCCC.
5.	V.	20.	XX.	500.	IO, or D.
6.	VI.	21.	XXI.	600.	DC.
7.	VII.	22.	XXII.	700.	DCC.
8.	VIII.	30.	XXX.	800.	DCCC.
9.	IX.	40.	XL.	900.	DCCCC.
10.	X.	50.	L.	1,000.	CIO, or M.
11.	XI.	60.	LX.	2,000.	CIOCIO, or MM.
12.	XII.	70.	LXX.	10,000.	CCIOO.
13.	XIII.	80.	LXXX.	100,000.	CCCIOOO.
14.	XIV.	90.	XC.	1,000,000.	CCCCIOOOO.
15.	XV.	100.	C.		

1. Latin Numeral Symbols are combinations of: I = 1; V = 5; X = 10; L = 50; C = 100; IO or D = 500; CIO or M = 1,000.¹

¹ Thousands are sometimes denoted by a line over the symbol: \overline{II} = 2,000; \overline{V} = 5,000.

2. In the Combination of these symbols, except IO, observe

1) That the repetition of a symbol doubles the value: II = 2; XX = 20; CC = 200.

2) That any symbol standing before one of greater value, subtracts its own value, but that after one of greater value, it adds its own value: V = 5; IV = 4 (5-1); VI = 6 (5+1).

3. In the Combination of IO observe

1) That each O (inverted C) after IO increases the value ten-fold: IO = 500; IOO = $500 \times 10 = 5,000$; IOOO = $5,000 \times 10 = 50,000$.

2) That these numbers are doubled by placing C the same number of times before I as O stands after it: IO = 500; CIO = $500 \times 2 = 1,000$; IOO = 5,000; CCIOO = $5,000 \times 2 = 10,000$.

3) That smaller symbols standing after these add their value: IO = 500; IOC = 600; IOCC = 700.

II. NUMERAL ADVERBS.

181. To numerals belong also numeral adverbs. For convenience of reference we add the following table:

1. sēmel, <i>once</i>	15. { quinquiesdecies	80. octogies
2. bis, <i>twice</i>	16. { quindecies	90. nonagies
3. ter, <i>three times</i>	17. { sexiesdecies	100. centies
4. quāter	18. { sedecies	101. centies sēmel
5. quinquies	19. { septiesdecies	200. ducenties
6. sexies	20. { duodevicies	300. trecenties
7. septies	21. { octiesdecies	400. quadingenties
8. octies	22. { undevicies	500. quingenties
9. novies	23. { noviesdecies	600. sexcenties
10. dēcies	24. vicies	700. septingenties
11. undecies	25. sēmel et vicies	800. octingenties
12. duodecies	26. bis et vicies	900. noningenties ¹
13. { terdecies	30. tricies	1,000. millies
14. { quaterdecies	40. quadragies	2,000. bis millies
15. { quattuordecies	50. quinquagies	10,000. decies millies
	60. sexagies	100,000. centies millies
	70. septuagies	1,000,000. millies millies.

1. In Compounds of units and tens, the unit with *et* generally precedes, as in the table: *bis et vicies*; the tens however with or without *et* sometimes precede: *vicies et bis* or *vicies bis*, but not *bis vicies*.

2. Another Class of numeral adverbs in *um* or *o* is formed from the ordinals: *primum*, *primo*, for the first time, in the first place; *tertium*, *tertio*, for the third time.

¹ Also written *nongenties*.

² *Millies* is often used indefinitely like the English *a thousand times*.

CHAPTER III.

PRONOUNS.

182. THE Pronoun is that part of speech which properly supplies the place of nouns: *ĕgo*, I; *tu*, thou.

183. Pronouns are divided into six classes:

1. Personal Pronouns: *tu*, thou.
2. Possessive Pronouns: *meus*, my.
3. Demonstrative Pronouns: *hic*, this.
4. Relative Pronouns: *qui*, who.
5. Interrogative Pronouns: *quis*, who?
6. Indefinite Pronouns: *aliquis*, some one.

I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

184. Personal Pronouns, so called because they designate the person of the noun which they represent, are *ĕgo*, I; *tu*, thou; *sui* (Nom. not used), of himself, herself, itself.

They are declined as follows:

SINGULAR.

<i>N.</i> ĕgŏ	tŭ	
<i>G.</i> meī	tuī	suī
<i>D.</i> mihi	tibi	sibi
<i>A.</i> mē	tē	sē
<i>V.</i>	tŭ	
<i>A.</i> mē;	tē;	sē;

PLURAL.

<i>N.</i> nŏs	vŏs	
<i>G.</i> nostrŭm }	vestrŭm }	suī
nostri ¹ }	vestri ¹ }	
<i>D.</i> nŏbīs	vŏbīs	sibi
<i>A.</i> nŏs	vŏs	sē
<i>V.</i>	vŏs	
<i>A.</i> nŏbīs.	vŏbīs.	sē.

1. **Substantive Pronouns.**—Personal pronouns are also called *Substantive* pronouns, because they are always used as substantives.

2. **Reflexive Pronoun.**—*Sui*, from its reflexive signification, of *himself*, etc., is often called the *Reflexive* pronoun.

¹ On the use of these two forms see 446. 3.

3. **Emphatic Forms** in *met* occur, except in the Gen. Plur.: *egōmet*, I myself; *mihīmet*, *tēmēt*, etc. But the Nom. *tu* has *tūte* and *tutēmēt*, for *tūmet*.

4. **Reduplicated Forms**:—*sēsē*, *tētē*, *mēmē*, for *se*, *te*, *me*.

5. **Ancient and Rare Forms**:—*mis* for *mei*; *tis* for *tui*; *nī* and *mē* for *mibi*; *mēhe*, *med*, and *mepte* for *me*; *ted* for *te*.

6. **Cum**, when used with the *ablative* of these pronouns, is appended to them: *mēcum*, *tēcum*.

II. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

185. From *Personal* pronouns are formed the *Possessives*:

<i>meus</i> , <i>my</i> ,	<i>noster</i> , <i>our</i> ,
<i>tuus</i> , <i>thy</i> , <i>your</i> ,	<i>vester</i> , <i>your</i> ,
<i>suus</i> , <i>his</i> , <i>her</i> , <i>its</i> ,	<i>suus</i> , <i>their</i> .

They are declined as adjectives of the first and second declensions: *meus*, *mea*, *meum*; *noster*, *nostra*, *nostrum*; but *meus* has in the vocative singular masculine generally *mī*, sometimes *meus*.

1. **Emphatic Forms**, in *pte* and *met* occur, especially in the Abl. Sing.: *suapte*, *suāmet*.

2. The *Patrials*, *nostras*, of our country, and *vestras*, of your country, are also possessives. They have the genitive in *ātis*, and are declined as adjectives of Decl. III., but are little used.

3. **Cujus and Cujas**.—*Cujus* (a, um, whose?) and the patrial *cujas* (*ātis*, of what country?) also belong to possessives, though, not like other possessives, formed from personal pronouns, but from the interrogative *quis*, *cujus*. See 188.

III. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

186. Demonstrative Pronouns, so called because they specify the objects to which they refer, are

Hic, *ille*, *iste*, *ipse*, *is*, *idem*.

They are declined as follows:

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i> hīc	haec	hōc	hī	hae	haec
<i>G.</i> hujūs	hujūs	hujūs	hōrūm	hārūm	hōrūm
<i>D.</i> huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
<i>A.</i> hunc	hanc	hōc	hōs	hās	haec
<i>V.</i>					
<i>A.</i> hōc	hāc	hōc;	hīs	hīs	hīs.

Illě, *he or that.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i> illě	illā	illūd	illi	illae	illā
<i>G.</i> illiūs	illiūs	illiūs	illōrūm	illārūm	illōrūm
<i>D.</i> illi	illi	illi	illis	illis	illis
<i>A.</i> illūm	illām	illūd	illōs	illās	illā
<i>V.</i>					
<i>A.</i> illō	illā	illō;	illis	illis	illis.

Istě, *that.*

Istě, *that*, is declined like *illě*. It usually refers to objects which are present to the person addressed, and sometimes expresses contempt.

Ipsě, *self, he.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i> ipsě	ipsā	ipsūm	ipsī	ipsae	ipsā
<i>G.</i> ipsiūs	ipsiūs	ipsiūs	ipsōrūm	ipsārūm	ipsōrūm
<i>D.</i> ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
<i>A.</i> ipsūm	ipsām	ipsūm	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsā
<i>V.</i>					
<i>A.</i> ipsō	ipsā	ipsō;	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis.

Is, *he, that.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i> is	eā	īd	īi	eae	eā
<i>G.</i> ejūs	ejūs	ejūs	eōrūm	eārūm	eōrūm
<i>D.</i> eī	eī	eī	iis (eīs)	iīs (eīs)	iīs (eīs)
<i>A.</i> eūm	eām	īd	eōs	eās	eā
<i>V.</i>					
<i>A.</i> eō	eā	eō;	iis (eīs)	iīs (eīs)	iīs (eīs).

Idem, *the same.*

Idem, compounded of *is* and *dem*, is declined like *is*, but shortens *idem* to *īdem* and *idēm* to *īdēm*, and changes *m* to *n* before the ending *dem*; thus:

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i> idēm	eādēm	īdēm	īdēm	eacdēm	eādēm
<i>G.</i> ejusdēm	ejusdēm	ejusdēm	eōrundēm	eārundēm	eōrundēm
<i>D.</i> eidēm	eidēm	eidēm	iisdēm	iisdēm	iisdēm ¹
<i>A.</i> eundēm	eandēm	īdēm	eōsdēm	eāsdēm	eādēm
<i>V.</i>					
<i>A.</i> eōdēm	eādēm	eōdēm;	iisdēm	iisdēm	iisdēm. ¹

¹ Sometimes *eisdēm* in all genders. *Idem* and *iisdēm* are in poetry dissyllables, and are sometimes written *idem* and *isdem*.

1. **Emphatic Forms** in *ce* occur in the several cases of *hic* and sometimes in other demonstratives: *hicce*, *haecce*, *hocce* (also *hice*, *haece* or *haec*, etc.), *hujusce*, *hosce*, *hiscce*; *harumce*, *harunce* (*m* changed to *n*), *hărunc* (*e* dropped). Before the interrogative *ne*, *ce* becomes *ci*: *hiccine*, *hoscine*.

2. *Ille* and *istic* or *isthic* for *ille* and *iste* occur. They are declined alike, and are used only in certain cases. Thus

Sing., *Nom.* *illē*, *illacē*, *illōc* or *illūc*,

Acc. *illunc*, *illanc*, *illōc*,

Abl. *illōc*, *illāc*, *illōc*;

Plur. *illaec*, generally *Neut.*, sometimes *Fem.*

3. Ancient and Rare Forms:

1) Of *ILLE* and *ISTE*: *illi*, *illae*, *illi*, Gen. for *illius*; *isti*, *istae*, *isti* for *istius*; *illae* and *istae*, Dat. Fem. for *illi* and *isti*; also forms from *ollus* for *ille*: *olli*, *olla*, *ollos*, etc.

2) Of *IPSE*, compounded of *is* and *pse* (*is-pse* = *ipse*); the uncontracted forms: *Acc.* *eumpse*, *campse*, *Abl.* *eopse*, *eapse*; with *re*: *re eapse*, *reapse* for *re ipsa*, in reality; also *ipsus*, *a*, *um*, etc., for *ipse*, *a*, *um*.

3) Of *IS*: *ei*, *cae*, *ei*, Dat. for *ei*; *iibus* (*ibus*), *cābus*, *iibus* (*ibus*) for *iis*.

4) **SYNCPATED FORMS**, compounded of *ecce* or *en*, *lo*, *sec*, and some cases of demonstratives, especially the *Acc.* of *ille* and *is*; *eccum* for *ecce eum*; *eccam* for *ecce eam*; *eccos* for *ecce eos*; *eccillum*, *ecce illum*, *eccillam*, *ecce illam*; *ellum*, *en illum*; *ellam*, *en illam*.

4. **Demonstrative Adjectives**: *tālis*, *e*, such; *tantus*, *a*, *um*, so great; *tōt*, so many; *tōtus*, *a*, *um*, so great. *Tot* is indeclinable; the rest regular.

For *tālis*, the Gen. of a demonstrative with *mōdi* (Gen. of *modus*, measure, kind) is often used: *hujusmōdi*, *ejusmōdi*, of this kind, such; *illiusmōdi*, *istiusmōdi*, of that kind, such.

IV. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

187. The Relative *qui*, who, so called because it relates to some noun or pronoun, expressed or understood, called its antecedent, is declined as follows:

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i> <i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quōd</i>	<i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quae</i>
<i>G.</i> <i>cujūs</i>	<i>cujūs</i>	<i>cujūs</i>	<i>quōrūm</i>	<i>quārūm</i>	<i>quōrūm</i>
<i>D.</i> <i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>quībūs</i>	<i>quībūs</i>	<i>quībūs</i>
<i>A.</i> <i>quēm</i>	<i>quā</i>	<i>quōd</i>	<i>quōs</i>	<i>quās</i>	<i>quae</i>
<i>V.</i>					
<i>A.</i> <i>quō</i>	<i>quā</i>	<i>quō</i> ;	<i>quībūs</i>	<i>quībūs</i>	<i>quībūs</i> .

1. **Ancient and Rare Forms**: *quojus* and *quoi* for *cujus* and *cui*; *quī* for *quo*, *qua*, *quo*; *quis* (*queis*) for *quibus*.

2. *Cum*, when used with the *ablative* of the relative, is generally appended to it: *quibuscum*.

3. *Cujus*, *a*, *um*, *whose*, as a possessive formed from the genitive *cujus*, sometimes occurs.

4. **Quicunque** and **Quisquis**, *whoever*, are called from their signification *general relatives*. *Quicunque* (*quicumque*) is declined like *quī*. *Quisquis* is rare except in the forms: *quisquis*, *quidquid* (*quicquid*), *quōquō*; but an old genitive *cuicui* for *cujuscujus* occurs.

5. **Compounds resolved**.—*Quicunque* and similar compounds are sometimes resolved and their parts separated by one or more words: *qua re cunque*.

6. **Uter** and **Utercunque**, *which* and *whichever*, also occur with the force of relatives.

7. **Relative Adjectives**: *quālis*, e, such as; *quantus*, a, um, so great; *quōt*, as many as; *quōtus*, a, um, of which number; and the double and compound forms: *quālisquālis*, *qualiscunque*; *quantusquantus*, *quantuscunque*; *quotquot*, *quotecunque*; *quotuscunque*.

Quotquot is indeclinable; in the other double forms both parts are declined; in the forms in *cunque*, of course only the first part is declined.

For *Quālis* the genitive of the relative with *mōdi* is often used: *cujusmōdi* (sometimes *cuiumōdi*), *cujuscemōdi*, of what kind, such as; *cujuscunquemōdi*, *cuiucuiumōdi* (for *cujuscujusmōdi*, 4), of whatever kind.

V. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

188. Interrogative Pronouns are used in asking questions. The most important are

Quis and *qui* with their compounds.

Quis (who, which, what?) is generally used substantively, and is declined as follows:

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. quīs	quae	quīd	quī	quae	quae
G. cuijūs	cuijūs	cuijūs	quōrūm	quārūm	quōrūm
D. cui	cui	cui	quibūs	quibūs	quibūs
A. quēm	quā	quīd	quōs	quās	quae
V.					
A. quō	quā	quō;	quibūs	quibūs	quibūs.

Quī (which, what?) is generally used adjectively, and is declined like the *relative qui*.

1. *Quis* and *Quem* sometimes occur as feminine forms.

2. *Quī* as an *ablative* with an adverbial force in the sense of *how?* sometimes occurs. The other ancient forms are the same as in the relative, 187. 1.

3. **Compounds** of *quis* and *qui* are declined like the simple pronouns: *quīsnam*, *quīnam*, *ecquīs*, etc. But *ecquīs* has sometimes *ecqua* for *ecquae*.

4. **Interrogative Adjectives**: (1) *Quālis*, e, what? *quantus*, a, um, how great? *quōt*, how many? *quōtus*, a, um, of what number? *ūter*, *utra*, *utrum*, which (of two)? See 149. (2) The Possessive interrogative, *cujus*, a, um, whose? and the Patrial *cujas*, *ātis*, of what country?

Cujus is defective and little used. It has the Nom. and Acc. Sing., and in the feminine also the Abl. Sing. and the Nom. and Accus. Plur.

VI. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

189. Indefinite Pronouns do not refer to any definite persons or things. The most important are

Quis and *qui* with their compounds.

190. *Quis*, any one, and *qui*, any one, any, are the same in form and declension as the interrogatives *quis* and *qui*.

1. **Quis** and **Qui** are generally used after *si*, *nisi*, *ne*, and *num*; *si quis*, *si qui*. But they also occur without such accompaniment.

2. **Qua** for **Quae**.—After *si*, *nisi*, *ne*, and *num*, the Fem. Sing. and Neut. Plur. have *quae* or *qua*: *si quae*, *si qua*.

191. From *quis* and *qui* are formed

I. *The Indefinites*:

aliquis, *aliqua*, *aliquid* or *aliquid*, *some, some one.*
quispiam, *quaequam*, *quidpiam*¹ or *quodpiam*, *some, some one.*
quidam, *quaedam*, *quiddam* or *quoddam*, *certain, certain one.*
quisquam, *quaequam* *quidquam*,¹ *any one.*

II. *The General Indefinites*:

quisque, *quaeque*, *quidque*² or *quodque*, *every, every one.*
quivis, *quaevis*, *quidvis* or *quodvis*, *any one you please.*
quilibet, *quaelibet*, *quidlibet* or *quodlibet*, *any one you please.*

1. **Declension**.—It may be remarked

1) That these compounds are generally declined like the simple *quis* and *qui*, but have in the Neut. Sing. both *quod* and *quid*, the former used *adjectively*, the latter *substantively*.

2) That *aliquis* has *aliqua* instead of *aliquae* in the Fem. Sing. and Neut. Plur. *Alīquī* for *aliquis* occurs.

3) That *quidam* generally changes *m* to *n* before *d*: *quemdam* for *quendam*.

4) That *quisquam* generally wants the Fem. and the Plur.

5) That *unus* prefixed to *quisque* does not affect its declension: *unusquisque*, *unaquaeque*, etc.

2. **Other Indefinites** are: *alius*, *alter*, *uter*, *alteruter*, *neuter*, *ullus*, *nul-
lus*, *nemo*.

3. **Other General Indefinites** may be formed from *uter*: *uterque*, both, each; *utervis*, *uterlibet*, either you please.

4. **Indefinite Pronominal Adjectives**: *qualislibet*, *qualelibet*, of any sort; *aliquantus*, a, um, of some size; *aliquot* (indeclinable), several.

For *qualislibet* the Gen. of an indefinite pronoun with *modi* may be used: *cujusdammodi*, of some kind.

CHAPTER IV.

VERBS.

192. **VERBS** in Latin, as in English, express existence, condition, or action: *est*, he is; *dormit*, he is sleeping; *lêgit*, he reads.

¹ Sometimes written respectively, *quippiam* and *quicquam*.

² Sometimes written *quicque*.

193. Verbs comprise two principal classes:

I. TRANSITIVE VERBS,—which admit a direct object of their action: *servum verbērat*, he beats the slave.

II. INTRANSITIVE VERBS,—which do not admit such an object: *puer currit*, the boy runs.

194. Verbs have *Voice, Mood, Tense, Number, and Person*.

I. VOICES.

195. There are two Voices:

I. The ACTIVE VOICE,—which represents the subject as acting or existing: *pāter filiū amat*, the father loves his son; *est*, he is.

II. The PASSIVE VOICE,—which represents the subject as acted upon by some other person or thing: *filius a patre amātur*, the son is loved by his father.

1. **Passive Wanting.**—Intransitive Verbs generally have only the active voice, but are sometimes used impersonally in the passive. See 301. 3.

2. **Active Wanting.**—Deponent Verbs¹ are Passive in form, but not in sense: *lōquor*, to speak. But see 221.

II. MOODS.

196. Moods are either Definite or Indefinite:

I. The **Definite** or **Finite Moods** make up the Finite Verb; they are:

1. The INDICATIVE MOOD,—which either asserts something as a *fact* or inquires after the fact: *lēgit*, he is reading; *legitne*, is he reading?

2. The SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD,—which expresses not an actual fact, but a *possibility* or *conception*, often rendered by *may, can*, etc.: *lēgat*, he may read, let him read.

3. The IMPERATIVE MOOD,—which expresses a *command* or an *entreaty*: *lēge*, read thou.

II. The **Indefinite Moods** express the meaning of the verb in the form of nouns or adjectives; they are:

¹ So called from *depōno*, to lay aside, as they dispense, in general, with the active form and the passive meaning.

1. The **INFINITIVE**,—which, like the English Infinitive, gives the simple meaning of the verb without any necessary reference to person or number : *legere*, to read.

2. The **GERUND**,—which gives the meaning of the verb in the form of a verbal noun of the second declension, used only in the *genitive*, *dative*, *accusative*, and *ablative singular*. It corresponds to the English participial noun in **ING** : *amandi*, of loving ; *amandi causa*, for the sake of loving.

3. The **SUPINE**,—which gives the meaning of the verb in the form of a verbal noun of the fourth declension, used only in the *accusative* and *ablative singular* : *amatum*, to love, for loving ; *amatu*, to be loved, in loving.

4. The **PARTICIPLE**,—which, like the English participle, gives the meaning of the verb in the form of an adjective.

A Latin verb may have four participles : two in the Active, the Present and Future—*amans*, loving ; *amaturus*, about to love ;—and two in the Passive, the Perfect and Future—*amatus*, loved ; *amandus*, deserving to be loved.

III. TENSES.

197. There are six tenses :

I. THREE TENSES FOR INCOMPLETE ACTION :

1. Present : *amo*, I love.
2. Imperfect : *amābam*, I was loving.
3. Future : *amābo*, I shall love.

II. THREE TENSES FOR COMPLETED ACTION :

1. Perfect : *amāvi*, I have loved, I loved.
2. Pluperfect : *amavēram*, I had loved.
3. Future Perfect : *amavēro*, I shall have loved.

198. REMARKS ON TENSES.

1. **Present Perfect and Historical Perfect.**—The Latin Perfect sometimes corresponds to our Perfect with *have* (*have loved*), and is called the *Present Perfect* or *Perfect Definite* ; and sometimes to our Imperfect or Past (*loved*), and is called the *Historical Perfect* or *Perfect Indefinite*.

2. **Principal and Historical.**—Tenses are also distinguished as

- 1) *Principal* :—Present, Present Perfect, Future, and Future Perfect.
- 2) *Historical* :—Imperfect, Historical Perfect, and Pluperfect.

3. **Tenses Wanting.**—The Subjunctive wants the Future and Future Perfect; the Imperative has only the Present and Future; the Infinitive, only the Present, Perfect, and Future.

IV. NUMBERS.

199. There are two numbers: SINGULAR and PLURAL.¹

V. PERSONS.

200. There are three persons: FIRST, SECOND, and THIRD.¹

CONJUGATION.

201. Regular verbs are inflected, or conjugated, in four different ways, and are accordingly divided into Four Conjugations, distinguished from each other by the

INFINITIVE ENDINGS.

Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
āre,	ēre,	ĕre,	īre.

202. **Principal Parts.**—Four forms of the verb,—the Present Indicative, Present Infinitive, Perfect Indicative, and Supine,—are called from their importance the *Principal Parts* of the verb.

203. **Entire Conjugation.**—In any regular verb

1. The PRESENT STEM² may be found by dropping the infinitive ending: *amāre*; stem, *am*.

2. The PRINCIPAL PARTS may be formed from this stem by means of proper endings.

3. The ENTIRE CONJUGATION of the verb through all its parts may be readily formed from these Principal Parts by means of proper endings.³

¹ As in Nouns. See 37.

² For fuller treatment of stems, see 241. 242.

³ In the Paradigms of regular verbs, the endings, both those which distinguish the Principal Parts and those which distinguish the forms derived from those parts, are separately indicated, and should be carefully noticed.

204. Sum, *I am.*

Sum is used as an auxiliary in the passive voice of regular verbs. Accordingly its conjugation, though quite irregular, must be given at the outset.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
sūm,	essē,	fuī,	—.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
sūm,	<i>I am,</i>	sūmūs,	<i>we are,</i>
ēs,	<i>thou art,</i> ¹	estīs,	<i>you are,</i>
est,	<i>he is ;</i>	sunt,	<i>they are.</i>

IMPERFECT.

I was.

ērām,	<i>I was,</i>	ērāmūs,	<i>we were,</i>
erās,	<i>thou wast,</i>	erātīs,	<i>you were,</i>
erāt,	<i>he was ;</i>	erant,	<i>they were.</i>

FUTURE.

I shall or will be.

ērō,	<i>I shall be,</i>	ērīmūs,	<i>we shall be,</i>
erīs,	<i>thou wilt be,</i>	erītīs,	<i>you will be,</i>
erīt,	<i>he will be ;</i>	erunt,	<i>they will be.</i>

PERFECT.

I have been, was.

fuī,	<i>I have been,</i>	fuīmūs,	<i>we have been,</i>
fuistī,	<i>thou hast been,</i>	fuistīs,	<i>you have been,</i>
fuīt,	<i>he has been ;</i>	fuērunt, fuērē,	} <i>they have been.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

I had been.

fuērām,	<i>I had been,</i>	fuērāmūs,	<i>we had been,</i>
fuērās,	<i>thou hadst been,</i>	fuērātīs,	<i>you had been,</i>
fuērāt,	<i>he had been ;</i>	fuērant,	<i>they had been.</i>

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have been.

fuērō,	<i>I shall have been,</i>	fuērīmūs,	<i>we shall have been,</i>
fuērīs,	<i>thou wilt have been,</i>	fuērītīs,	<i>you will have been,</i>
fuērīt,	<i>he will have been ;</i>	fuērint,	<i>they will have been.</i>

¹ Or *you are*; *thou* is confined mostly to solemn discourse ; in ordinary English, *you are* is used both in the singular and in the plural.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or can be.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
šim,	<i>I may be,</i>	sīmūs,	<i>we may be,</i>
sis,	<i>thou mayst be,</i>	sītīs,	<i>you may be,</i>
šit	<i>he may be ;</i>	sint,	<i>they may be.</i>

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should be.

essēm,	<i>I might be,</i>	essēmūs,	<i>we might be,</i>
essēs,	<i>thou mightst be,</i>	essētīs,	<i>you might be,</i>
essēt,	<i>he might be ;</i>	essent,	<i>they might be.</i>

PERFECT.

I may or can have been.

fuērīm,	<i>I may have been,</i>	fuērīmūs,	<i>we may have been,</i>
fuērīs,	<i>thou mayst have been,</i>	fuērītīs,	<i>you may have been,</i>
fuērīt,	<i>he may have been ;</i>	fuērint,	<i>they may have been.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should have been.

fuissēm,	<i>I might have been,</i>	fuissēmūs,	<i>we might have been,</i>
fuissēs,	<i>thou mightst have been,</i>	fuissētīs,	<i>you might have been.</i>
fuissēt,	<i>he might have been ;</i>	fuissent,	<i>they might have been.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. čs,	<i>be thou,</i>	estě,	<i>be ye,</i>
FUT. estō,	<i>thou shalt be,¹</i>	estōtě,	<i>ye shall be,</i>
estō,	<i>he shall be¹;</i>	suntō,	<i>they shall be.</i>

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. essě,	<i>to be,</i>		
PERF. fuissě,	<i>to have been,</i>		
FUT. fūtūrūs ² essě,	<i>to be about to</i>	FUT. fūtūrūs, ²	<i>about to be.</i>
	<i>be.</i>		

1. Rare Forms are: *fōrēm, fōrēs, fōrēt, fōrent, and fōrě, for essem, esses, esset, essent, and futūrus esse. See 297. III. 2.*

2. Antiquated Forms are: *siēm, siēs, siēt, sient, for šim, sis, šit, sint ; also fuām, fuās, fuāt, fuant, for the same.*

¹ The Fut. may also be rendered like the Pres. or with *let*: *be thou ; let him be.*

² *Futūrus* is declined like *bonus*. So in the Infinitive: *futūrus, a, um esse.*

FIRST CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

205. Amo, *I love.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
ăm ^o ,	ăm ^ā r ^ē ,	ăm ^ā vī,	ăm ^ā t ^ū m.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I love, am loving, do love.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
ăm ^o , <i>I love,</i>	ăm ^ā m ^ū s, <i>we love,</i>
ăm ^ā s, <i>thou lovest,</i>	ăm ^ā t ^ī s, <i>you love,</i>
ăm ^{āt} , <i>he loves ;</i>	ăm ^ā n ^t , <i>they love.</i>

IMPERFECT.

I loved, was loving, did love.

ăm ^ā b ^{ām} , <i>I was loving,</i>	ăm ^ā b ^{ām} ū ^s , <i>we were loving,</i>
ăm ^ā b ^{ās} , <i>thou wast loving,</i>	ăm ^ā b ^{āt} ī ^s , <i>you were loving,</i>
ăm ^ā b ^{āt} , <i>he was loving ;</i>	ăm ^ā b ^ā n ^t , <i>they were loving.</i>

FUTURE.

I shall or will love.

ăm ^ā b ^ō , <i>I shall love,</i>	ăm ^ā b ^{īm} ū ^s , <i>we shall love,</i>
ăm ^ā b ^{īs} , <i>thou wilt love,</i>	ăm ^ā b ^{īt} ī ^s , <i>you will love,</i>
ăm ^ā b ^{īt} , <i>he will love ;</i>	ăm ^ā b ^ū n ^t , <i>they will love.</i>

PERFECT.

I loved, have loved.

ăm ^{āv} ī, <i>I have loved,</i>	ăm ^{āv} īm ^ū s, <i>we have loved,</i>
ăm ^{āv} ī ^{tī} , <i>thou hast loved,</i>	ăm ^{āv} ī ^{tī} s, <i>you have loved,</i>
ăm ^{āv} īt, <i>he has loved ;</i>	ăm ^{āv} ēr ^{ant} , ē ^{rē} , <i>they have loved.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

I had loved.

ăm ^{āv} ēr ^{ām} , <i>I had loved,</i>	ăm ^{āv} ēr ^{ām} ū ^s , <i>we had loved,</i>
ăm ^{āv} ēr ^{ās} , <i>thou hadst loved,</i>	ăm ^{āv} ēr ^{āt} ī ^s , <i>you had loved,</i>
ăm ^{āv} ēr ^{āt} , <i>he had loved ;</i>	ăm ^{āv} ēr ^{ant} , <i>they had loved.</i>

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have loved.

ăm ^{āv} ēr ^ō , <i>I shall have loved,</i>	ăm ^{āv} ēr ^{īm} ū ^s , <i>we shall have loved,</i>
ăm ^{āv} ēr ^{īs} , <i>thou wilt have loved,</i>	ăm ^{āv} ēr ^{īt} ī ^s , <i>you will have loved,</i>
ăm ^{āv} ēr ^{īt} , <i>he will have loved ;</i>	ăm ^{āv} ēr ^{īn} t, <i>they will have loved.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or can love.

SINGULAR.

ămăm,	<i>I may love,</i>
ămăs,	<i>thou mayst love,</i>
ămăet,	<i>he may love ;</i>

PLURAL.

ămămăs,	<i>we may love,</i>
ămăetis,	<i>you may love,</i>
ămăent,	<i>they may love.</i>

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should love.

ămărăm,	<i>I might love,</i>
ămărăs,	<i>thou mightst love,</i>
ămărăt,	<i>he might love ;</i>

ămărămăs,	<i>we might love,</i>
ămărătis,	<i>you might love,</i>
ămărent,	<i>they might love.</i>

PERFECT.

I may or can have loved.

ămăvărăm,	<i>I may have loved,</i>
ămăvărăs,	<i>thou mayst have loved,</i>
ămăvărăt,	<i>he may have loved ;</i>

ămăvărămăs,	<i>we may have loved,</i>
ămăvărătis,	<i>you may have loved,</i>
ămăvărăt,	<i>they may have loved.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should have loved.

ămăvissăm,	<i>I might have loved,</i>
ămăvissăs,	<i>thou mightst have loved,</i>
ămăvissăt,	<i>he might have loved ;</i>

ămăvissămăs,	<i>we might have loved,</i>
ămăvissătis,	<i>you might have loved,</i>
ămăvissent,	<i>they might have loved.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. ămă, *love thou ;*ămătэ, *love ye.*FUT. ămătэ, *thou shalt love,*
ămătэ, *he shall love ;*ămătэтэ, *ye shall love,*
ămăтэ, *they shall love.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES. ămăрэ, *to love.*PERF. ămăvissэ, *to have loved.*FUT. ămăтărăс² essэ, *to be about to love.*

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. ămăns,¹ *loving.*FUT. ămăтărăс,² *about to love.*

GERUND.

Gen. ămăndі,	<i>of loving,</i>
Dat. ămăndэ,	<i>for loving,</i>
Acc. ămăndăм,	<i>loving,</i>
Abl. ămăndэ,	<i>by loving.</i>

SUPINE.

Acc. ămăтăм,	<i>to love,</i>
Abl. ămăтă,	<i>to love, be loved.</i>

¹ Decline like *prudens*, 153.² Decline like *bonus*, 143.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE VOICE.

206. Amor, *I am loved.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
ăm or ,	ăm ări ,	ămăt us sūm .

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am loved.

SINGULAR.

ăm**or**
ăm**ări**s, or **rē**
ămăt**ur**;

PLURAL.

ăm**amūr**
ăm**amī**nī
ămant**ur**.

IMPERFECT.

I was loved.

ăm**abār**
ăm**abār**i's, or **rē**
ăm**abāt**ur;

ăm**abāmūr**
ăm**abāmī**nī
ăm**abant**ur.

FUTURE.

I shall or will be loved.

ăm**abōr**
ăm**abēr**i's, or **rē**
ăm**abit**ur;

ăm**abīmūr**
ăm**abīmī**nī
ăm**abunt**ur.

PERFECT.

I have been or was loved.

ămăt**us sūm**¹
ămăt**us ē**s
ămăt**us est**;

ămăt**ī sūm**us
ămăt**ī est**is
ămăt**ī sūnt**.

PLUPERFECT.

I had been loved.

ămăt**us ērām**¹
ămăt**us ērās**
ămăt**us ērāt**;

ămăt**ī ērām**us
ămăt**ī ērāt**is
ămăt**ī ērant**.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have been loved.

ămăt**us ērō**¹
ămăt**us ērīs**
ămăt**us ērīt**;

ămăt**ī ērīm**us
ămăt**ī ērīt**is
ămăt**ī ērunt**.

¹ *Fui, fuisti*, etc., are sometimes used for *sūm, es*, etc., thus, *amātus fui* for *amātus sūm*. So *fuēram, fuēras*, etc., for *ērām, ēras*, etc.; also *fuēro, fuēris*, etc., for *ērō, ēris*, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or can be loved.

SINGULAR.

ămă**ř**
ămă**ř**is, or ră
ămă**ř**ătŭr ;

PLURAL.

ămă**ř**mŭr
ămă**ř**mînî
ămă**ř**entŭr.

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should be loved.

ămă**ř**ăr
ămă**ř**ăris, or ră
ămă**ř**ărătŭr ;

ămă**ř**ărēmŭr
ămă**ř**ărēmînî
ămă**ř**ărentŭr.

PERFECT.

I may have been loved.

ămătŭs sî**m**¹
ămătŭs sî**s**
ămătŭs sî**t** ;

ămătî sî**m**ŭs
ămătî sî**t**is
ămătî sî**t**.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should have been loved.

ămătŭs ess**em**¹
ămătŭs ess**es**
ămătŭs ess**et** ;

ămătî ess**em**ŭs
ămătî ess**et**is
ămătî ess**ent**.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. ămă**ř**ă, *be thou loved ;*ămă**ř**mînî, *be ye loved.*FUT. ămăt**or**, *thou shalt be loved,*
ămăt**or**, *he shall be loved ;*ămant**or**, *they shall be loved.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES. ămă**ř**î, *to be loved.*PERF. ămătŭs ess**ă**¹, *to have been loved.*FUT. ămătŭm trî, *to be about to be loved.*

PARTICIPLE.

PERF. ămătŭs, *having been loved.*FUT. ămandŭs, *to be loved.*

¹ *Fuërim, fuëris*, etc., are sometimes used for *sîm, sîs*, etc. So also *fuiſsem, fuiſſes*, etc., for *essëm, esset*, etc. ; rarely *fuiſſe* for *esset*.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

207. Moneo, *I advise.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
mōneō,	mōnērē,	mōnuī,	mōnītūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I advise.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
mōneō	mōnēmūs
mōnēs	mōnētīs
mōnēt ;	mōnent.

IMPERFECT.

I was advising.

mōnēbām	mōnēbāmūs
mōnēbās	mōnēbātīs
mōnēbāt ;	mōnēbant.

FUTURE.

I shall or will advise.

mōnēbō	mōnēbīmūs
mōnēbīs	mōnēbītīs
mōnēbīt ;	mōnēbunt.

PERFECT.

I advised or have advised.

mōnuī	mōnuīmūs
mōnuistī	mōnuistīs
mōnuīt ;	mōnuērunt, or ērē.

PLUPERFECT.

I had advised.

mōnuērām	mōnuērāmūs
mōnuērās	mōnuērātīs
mōnuērāt ;	mōnuērant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have advised.

mōnuērō	mōnuērīmūs
mōnuērīs	mōnuērītīs
mōnuērīt ;	mōnuērint.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or can advise.

SINGULAR.	FLURAL.
mōncām	mōncāmūs
mōncās	mōncātīs
mōncāt;	mōncant.

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should advise.

mōncrēm	mōncrēmūs
mōncrēs	mōncrētīs
mōncrēt;	mōncrent.

PERFECT.

I may have advised.

mōnuērīm	mōnuērīmūs
mōnuērīs	mōnuērītīs
mōnuērīt;	mōnuērint.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should have advised.

mōnuissēm	mōnuissēmūs
mōnuissēs	mōnuissētīs
mōnuissēt;	mōnuissent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. mōncē, advise thou;	mōncētē, advise ye.
FUT. mōncētō, thou shalt advise,	mōncētōtē, ye shall advise,
mōncētō, he shall advise;	mōncentō, they shall advise.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. mōncrē, to advise.	PRES. mōncens, advising.
PERF. mōnuissē, to have advised.	
FUT. mōnitūrus essē, to be about to advise.	FUT. mōnitūrus, about to advise.

GERUND.

SUPINE.

Gen. mōncendī, of advising,	
Dat. mōncendō, for advising,	
Acc. mōncendūm, advising,	Acc. mōnitūm, to advise,
Abl. mōncendō, by advising.	Abl. mōnitū, to advise, be advised.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE VOICE.

208. Moneor, *I am advised.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
mōneōr,	mōnēri,	mōnītūs sūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am advised.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
mōneōr	mōnēmūr
mōnērīs, or rē	mōnēmīnī
mōnētūr;	mōnentūr.

IMPERFECT.

I was advised.

mōnēbār	mōnēbāmūr
mōnēbārīs, or rē	mōnēbāmīnī
mōnēbātūr;	mōnēbantūr.

FUTURE.

I shall or will be advised.

mōnēbōr	mōnēbīmūr
mōnēbērīs, or rē	mōnēbīmīnī
mōnēbītūr;	mōnēbuntūr.

PERFECT.

I have been or was advised.

mōnītūs sūm ¹	mōnītī sūmūs
mōnītūs ēs	mōnītī estīs
mōnītūs est;	mōnītī sunt.

PLUPERFECT.

I had been advised.

mōnītūs ērām ¹	mōnītī ērāmūs
mōnītūs ērās	mōnītī ērātīs
mōnītūs ērāt;	mōnītī ērant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have been advised.

mōnītūs ērō ¹	mōnītī ērīmūs
mōnītūs ērīs	mōnītī ērītīs
mōnītūs ērīt;	mōnītī ērunt.

¹ See 206, foot notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or can be advised.

SINGULAR.

mōnēār
mōnēārīs, or rē
mōnēātūr;

PLURAL.

mōnēāmūr
mōnēāmīnī
mōnēantūr.

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should be advised.

mōnērēr
mōnērērīs, or rē
mōnērētūr;

mōnērēmūr
mōnērēmīnī
mōnērentūr.

PERFECT.

I may have been advised.

mōnītūs sīm¹
mōnītūs sīs
mōnītūs sīt;

mōnītī sīmūs
mōnītī sītīs
mōnītī sint.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should have been advised.

mōnītūs essēm¹
mōnītūs essēs
mōnītūs essēt;

mōnītī essēmūs
mōnītī essētīs
mōnītī essent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. mōnērē, *be thou advised;* | mōnēmīnī, *be ye advised.*FUT. mōnētōr, *thou shalt be advised,*mōnētōr, *he shall be advised;*mōnentōr, *they shall be advised.*

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. mōnēri, *to be advised,*
PERF. mōnītūs essē¹, *to have been advised,*

PERF. mōnītūs, *advised,*FUT. mōnītūm irī, *to be about to be advised.*FUT. mōnendūs, *to be advised.*¹ See 206, foot notes.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

209. Rego, *I rule.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
rēgō,	rēgērē,	rexī,	rectūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I rule.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
rēgō		rēgimūs
rēgis		rēgitis
rēgit ;		rēgunt.

IMPERFECT.

I was ruling.

rēgebām		rēgebāmūs
rēgebās		rēgebātis
rēgebāt ;		rēgebant.

FUTURE.

I shall or will rule.

rēgām		rēgēmūs
rēgēs		rēgētis
rēgēt ;		rēgent.

PERFECT.

I ruled or have ruled.

rexī		reximūs
rexisti		rexistis
rexit ;		rexerunt, or ērē.

PLUPERFECT.

I had ruled.

rexerām		rexerāmūs
rexerās		rexerātis
rexerāt ;		rexerant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have ruled.

rexerō		rexerimūs
rexeris		rexeritis
rexerit ;		rexerint.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or can rule.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
rĕgām	rĕgāmūs
rĕgās	rĕgātīs
rĕgāt ;	rĕgant.

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should rule.

rĕgĕrēm	rĕgĕrēmūs
rĕgĕrēs	rĕgĕrētīs
rĕgĕrēt ;	rĕgĕrent.

PERFECT.

I may have ruled.

rexĕrīm	rexĕrīmūs
rexĕrīs	rexĕrītīs
rexĕrit ;	rexĕrint.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should have ruled.

rexissēm	rexissēmūs
rexissēs	rexissētīs
rexissēt ;	rexissent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. rĕgĕ, rule thou ;	rĕgītĕ, rule ye.
FUT. rĕgītō, thou shalt rule, rĕgītō, he shall rule ;	rĕgītōtĕ, ye shall rule, rĕguntō, they shall rule.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. rĕgĕrĕ, to rule.	PRES. rĕgens, ruling.
PERF. rexissĕ, to have ruled.	
FUT. rectūrūs essĕ, to be about to rule.	FUT. rectūrūs, about to rule.

GERUND.

SUPINE.

Gen. rĕgendī, of ruling,	
Dat. rĕgendō, for ruling,	
Acc. rĕgendūm, ruling,	Acc. rectūm, to rule,
Abl. rĕgendō, by ruling.	Abl. rectū, to rule, be ruled.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE VOICE.

210. Regor, *I am ruled.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf	Perf. Ind.
rēgōr,	rēgī,	rectūs sūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE.

I am ruled.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
rēgōr	rēgimūr
rēgēris, or rē	rēgimīni
rēgitūr ;	rēguntūr.

IMPERFECT.

I was ruled.

rēgēbār	rēgēbāmūr
rēgēbāris, or rē	rēgēbāmīni
rēgēbātūr ;	rēgēbantūr.

FUTURE.

I shall or will be ruled.

rēgār	rēgēmūr
rēgēris, or rē	rēgēmīni
rēgētūr ;	rēgentūr.

PERFECT.

I have been or was ruled.

rectūs sūm ¹	rectī sūmūs
rectūs ēs	rectī estīs
rectūs est ;	rectī sunt.

PLUPERFECT.

I had been ruled.

rectūs ērām ¹	rectī ērāmūs
rectūs ērās	rectī ērātīs
rectūs ērāt ;	rectī ērant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have been ruled.

rectūs ērō ¹	rectī ērimūs
rectūs ēris	rectī ēritīs
rectūs ērit ;	rectī ērunt.

¹ See 206, foot notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or can be ruled.

SINGULAR.

rĕgār
rĕgārīs, or rĕ
rĕgātūr ;

PLURAL.

rĕgāmūr
rĕgāmīnī
rĕgantūr.

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should be ruled.

rĕgērēr
rĕgērērīs, or rĕ
rĕgērētūr ;

rĕgērēmūr
rĕgērēmīnī
rĕgērentūr.

PERFECT.

I may have been ruled.

rectūs sīm¹
rectūs sīs
rectūs sīt ;

rectī sīmūs
rectī sītīs
rectī sint.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should have been ruled.

rectūs essēm¹
rectūs essēs
rectūs essēt ;

rectī essēmūs
rectī essētīs
rectī essent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. rĕgērĕ, *be thou ruled ;* | rĕgīmīnī, *be ye ruled.*

FUT. rĕgītōr, *thou shalt be ruled,* | rĕguntōr, *they shall be ruled.*
rĕgītōr, *he shall be ruled ;*

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. rĕgī, *to be ruled.*

PERF. rectūs essē¹, *to have been ruled.*

FUT. rectūm irī, *to be about to be ruled.*

PERF. rectūs, *ruled.*

FUT. rĕgendūs, *to be ruled.*

¹ See 206, foot notes.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

211. Audio, *I hear.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Suplne.
audiō,	audire,	audivi,	audītūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I hear.

SINGULAR.

audiō
audis
audīt ;

PLURAL.

audimūs
audītis
audiunt.

IMPERFECT.

I was hearing.

audiēbām
audiēbās
audiēbāt ;

audiēbāmūs
audiēbātis
audiēbant.

FUTURE.

I shall or will hear.

audiām
audiēs
audiēt ;

audiēmūs
audiētis
audient.

PERFECT.

I heard or have heard.

audivī
audivistī
audivīt ;

audivimūs
audivistis
audivērunt, or ērē.

PLUPERFECT.

I had heard.

audivērām
audivērās
audiverāt ;

audivērāmūs
audivērātis
audivērant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have heard.

audivērō
audivērīs
audivērīt ;

audivērīmūs
audivērītis
audivērint.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or can hear.

SINGULAR.

audiā**m**
audiā**s**
audiā**t** ;

PLURAL.

audiā**mūs**
audiā**tīs**
audiā**nt**.

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should hear.

audī**rēm**
audī**rēs**
audī**rēt** ;

audī**rēmūs**
audī**rētīs**
audī**rent**.

PERFECT.

I may have heard.

audiv**ērīm**
audiv**ērīs**
audiv**ērīt** ;

audiv**ērīmūs**
audiv**ērītīs**
audiv**ērint**.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should have heard.

audiv**issēm**
audiv**issēs**
audiv**issēt** ;

audiv**issēmūs**
audiv**issētīs**
audiv**issent**.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. audi**i**, *hear thou ;*audi**tē**, *hear ye.*FUT. aud**itō**, *thou shalt hear,*
aud**itō**, *he shall hear ;*aud**itōtē**, *ye shall hear,*
aud**iuntō**, *they shall hear.*

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. aud**irē**, *to hear.*PRES. aud**iens**, *hearing.*PERF. audiv**issē**, *to have heard.*FUT. aud**itūrus** **essē**, *to be*
*about to hear.*FUT. aud**itūrus**, *about to hear.*

GERUND.

SUPINE.

Gen. aud**iendī**, *of hearing.*Dat. aud**iendō**, *for hearing.*Acc. aud**iendūm**, *hearing.*Abl. aud**iendō**, *by hearing.*Acc. aud**itūm**, *to hear.*Abl. aud**itū**, *to hear, be heard.*

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE VOICE.

212. Audior, *I am heard*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.

audiōr,

Pres. Inf.

audīrī,

Perf. Ind.

auditūs sūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am heard.

SINGULAR.

audiōr

audīrīs, or rē

auditūr ;

PLURAL.

audīmur

audīminī

audiuntūr.

IMPERFECT.

I was heard.

audiēbār

audiēbārīs, or rē

audiēbātūr ;

audiēbāmūr

audiēbāminī

audiēbantūr.

FUTURE.

I shall or will be heard.

audiār

audiērīs, or rē

audiētūr ;

audiēmūr

audiēmīnī

audiēntūr.

PERFECT.

*I have been heard.*auditūs sūm ¹

auditūs ēs

auditūs est ;

auditī sūmūs

auditī estīs

auditī sunt.

PLUPERFECT.

*I had been heard.*auditūs ērām ¹

auditūs ērās

auditūs ērāt ;

auditī ērāmūs

auditī ērātīs

auditī ērant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have been heard.*auditūs ērō ¹

auditūs ērīs

auditūs ērit ;

auditī ērīmūs

auditī ēritīs

auditī ērunt.

¹ See 206, foot notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or can be heard.

SINGULAR.

aud*ī*ār
aud*ī*ārīs, or *rē*
aud*ī*ātūr ;

PLURAL.

aud*ī*āmūr
aud*ī*āmīnī
aud*ī*antūr.

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should be heard.

aud*ī*rēr
aud*ī*rērīs, or *rē*
aud*ī*rētūr ;

aud*ī*rēmūr
aud*ī*rēmīnī
aud*ī*rentūr.

PERFECT.

I may have been heard.

audītūs *sīm*¹
audītūs *sīs*
audītūs *sīt* ;

audītī *sīmūs*
audītī *sītīs*
audītī *sint*.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should have been heard.

audītūs *essēm*¹
audītūs *essēs*
audītūs *essēt* ;

audītī *essēmūs*
audītī *essētīs*
audītī *essent*.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. aud*ī*rē, *be thou heard* ; | aud*ī*mīnī, *be ye heard*.

FUT. audītōr, *thou shalt be heard*, | audīuntōr, *they shall be heard* ;
audītōr, *he shall be heard* ;

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. audītī, *to be heard*.

PERF. audītūs *essē*¹, *to have been heard*.

FUT. audītūm *īrī*, *to be about to be heard*.

PERF. audītūs, *heard*.

FUT. audiendūs, *to be heard*.

¹ See 206, foot notes.

VERBS IN IO OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

213. *Verbs in io* are generally of the fourth conjugation, and even the few which are of the third are inflected with the endings of the fourth wherever those endings have two successive vowels, as follows :

ACTIVE VOICE.

214. *Capio, I take.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
căpiō,	căpērē,	cēpī,	captūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

căpiō, căpīs, căpīt ;

PLURAL.

| căpīmūs, căpītīs, căpiunt.

IMPERFECT.

căpiēbām, -iēbās, -iēbāt ;

| căpiēbāmūs, -iēbātīs, -iēbant.

FUTURE.

căpiām, -iēs, -iēt ;

| căpiēmūs, -iētīs, -ient.

PERFECT.

cēpī, -istī, -īt ;

| cēpīmūs, -istīs, -ērunt, or ērē.

PLUPERFECT.

cēpērām, -ērās, -ērāt ;

| cēpērāmūs, -ērātīs, -ērant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

cēpērō, -ērīs, -ērīt ;

| cēpērīmūs, -ērītīs, -ērīnt.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

căpiām, -iās, -iāt ;

| căpiāmūs, -iātīs, -iant.

IMPERFECT.

căpērēm, -ērēs, -ērēt ;

| căpērēmūs, -ērētīs, -ērent.

PERFECT.

cēpērīm, -ērīs, -ērīt ;

| cēpērīmūs, -ērītīs, -ērīnt.

PLUPERFECT.

cēpissēm, -issēs, -issēt ;

| cēpissēmūs, -issētīs, -issent.

IMPERATIVE.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
PRES. cǎpě ;		cǎpĭtĕ.
FUT. cǎpĭtŏ, cǎpĭtŏ ;		cǎpĭtŏtĕ, cǎpiuntŏ.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. cǎpĕrĕ.		PRES. cǎpiens.
PERF. cĕpissĕ.		
FUT. captŭrŭs essĕ.		FUT. captŭrŭs.

GERUND.

SUPINE.

Gen. cǎpiendĭ.		
Dat. cǎpiendŏ.		
Acc. cǎpiendŭm.		Acc. captŭm.
Abl. cǎpiendŏ.		Abl. captŭ.

PASSIVE VOICE.

215. Capior, *I am taken.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
cǎpiŏr,	cǎpĭ,	captŭs sŭm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
cǎpiŏr, cǎpĕrĭs, cǎpĭtŭr ;		cǎpĭmŭr, cǎpĭmĭnĭ, cǎpiuntŭr.

IMPERFECT.

cǎpiebār, -iebārĭs, -iebātŭr ;		cǎpiebāmŭr, -iebāmĭnĭ, -iebantŭr.
--------------------------------	--	-----------------------------------

FUTURE.

cǎpiār, -iĕrĭs, -iĕtŭr ;		cǎpiēmŭr, -iēmĭnĭ, -ientur.
--------------------------	--	-----------------------------

PERFECT.

captŭs sŭm, ĕs, est ;		captĭ sŭmŭs, estĭs, sunt.
-----------------------	--	---------------------------

PLUPERFECT.

captŭs ĕrām, ĕrās, ĕrāt ;		captĭ ĕrāmŭs, ĕrātĭs, ĕrant.
---------------------------	--	------------------------------

FUTURE PERFECT.

captŭs ĕrŏ, ĕrĭs, ĕrĭt ;		captĭ ĕrĭnŭs, ĕrĭtĭs, ĕrunt.
--------------------------	--	------------------------------

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
căpiăr, -iărīs, -iătŭr;	căpiāmŭr, -iāmīnī, -iantŭr.

IMPERFECT.

căpērĕr, -ĕrērīs, -ĕrētŭr;	căpērēmŭr, -ĕrēmīnī, -ĕrentŭr.
----------------------------	--------------------------------

PERFECT.

captŭs sĭm, sīs, sīt;	captī sĭmŭs, sītīs, sint.
-----------------------	---------------------------

PLUPERFECT.

captŭs essĕm, essēs, essēt;	captī essēmŭs, essētīs, essent.
-----------------------------	---------------------------------

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. căpĕrĕ;	căpīmīnī.
FUT. căpītŭr,	
căpītŭr;	căpiuntŭr.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. căpī.		PERF. captŭs.
PERF. captŭs essĕ.		FUT. căpiendŭs.
FUT. captŭm irī.		

SYNOPSIS OF CONJUGATION.

216. FIRST CONJUGATION.

I. ACTIVE VOICE.

1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

ămŏ, ămărĕ, ămāvī, ămātŭm.

2. MOODS AND TENSES.¹

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>Pres.</i> ămŏ	ămĕm	ămā	ămărĕ	ămans.
<i>Imp.</i> ămābām	ămārĕm			
<i>Fut.</i> ămābŏ		ămātŏ	ămātŭrŭs essĕ	ămātŭrŭs.
<i>Perf.</i> ămāvī	ămāvĕrĭm		ămāvissĕ	
<i>Plup.</i> ămāvĕrām	ămāvissĕm			
<i>F. P.</i> ămāvĕrŏ				

Gerund, ămandī, dŏ, etc. *Supine*, ămātŭm, ũ.

¹ These tables, it will be observed, are so arranged as to exhibit not only the synopsis of each mood through the different tenses, as, *INDIC.* *amo*, *amābam*, etc., but also the synopsis of each tense through the different moods, as, *PRES.* *amo*, *amem*, *ama*, etc. The pupil should make himself so familiar with the verbs, as they occur in his reading lessons, as to be able to give the synopsis of any mood through all the tenses, or of any tense through all the moods.

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

ămör, ămārī, ămātūs sūm.

2. MOODS AND TENSES.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>Pres.</i> ămör	ămēr	ămārē	ămārī	
<i>Imp.</i> ămābār	ămārēr			
<i>Fut.</i> ămābör		ămātör	ămātūm irī	ămandūs.
<i>Perf.</i> ămātūs sūm	ămātūs sūm		ămātūs essē	ămātūs.
<i>Plup.</i> ămātūs ărăm	ămātūs essēm			
<i>F. P.</i> ămātūs ără				

217. SECOND CONJUGATION.

I. ACTIVE VOICE.

1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

möneő, mōnērē, mōnuī, mōnītūm.

2. MOODS AND TENSES.

<i>Pres.</i> möneő	möneām	mōnē	mōnērē	mōnens.
<i>Imp.</i> mōnēbām	mōnērēm			
<i>Fut.</i> mōnēbö		mōnētő	mōnītūrūs essē	mōnītūrūs.
<i>Perf.</i> mōnuī	mōnuērīm		mōnuissē	
<i>Plup.</i> mōnuērām	mōnuissēm			
<i>F. P.</i> mōnuērő				

Gerund, mōnendī, dő, etc. *Supine*, mōnītūm, ū.

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

mōneor, mōnērī, mōnītūs sūm.

2. MOODS AND TENSES.

<i>Pres.</i> mōneör	mōneār	mōnērē	mōnērī	
<i>Imp.</i> mōnēbār	mōnērēr			
<i>Fut.</i> mōnēbör		mōnētör	mōnītūm irī	mōnendūs.
<i>Perf.</i> mōnītūs sūm	mōnītūs sūm		mōnītūs essē	mōnītūs.
<i>Plup.</i> mōnītūs ărăm	mōnītūs essēm			
<i>F. P.</i> mōnītūs ără				

218. THIRD CONJUGATION.

I. ACTIVE VOICE.

1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

rēgō, rēgērē, rexī, rectūm.

2. MOODS AND TENSES.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>Pres.</i> rēgō	rēgām	rēgē	rēgērē	rēgens.
<i>Imp.</i> rēgēbām	rēgērēm			
<i>Fut.</i> rēgām		rēgītō	rectūrus essē	rectūrus.
<i>Perf.</i> rexī	rexērīm		rexissē	
<i>Plup.</i> rexērām	rexissēm			
<i>F. P.</i> rexērō				

Gerund, regendī, dō, etc. *Supine*, rectūm, ū.

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

rēgōr, rēgī, rectūs sūm.

2. MOODS AND TENSES.

<i>Pres.</i> rēgōr	rēgār	rēgērē	rēgī	
<i>Imp.</i> rēgēbār	rēgērēr			
<i>Fut.</i> rēgār		rēgītōr	rectūm irī	rēgendūs.
<i>Perf.</i> rectūs sūm	rectūs sīm		rectūs essē	rectūs.
<i>Plup.</i> rectūs ērām	rectūs essēm			
<i>F. P.</i> rectūs ērō				

219. VERBS IN IO OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

I. ACTIVE VOICE.

1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

cāpiō, cāpērē, cēpī, captūm.

2. MOODS AND TENSES.

<i>Pres.</i> cāpiō	cāpiām	cāpē	cāpērē	cāpiens.
<i>Imp.</i> cāpiebām	cāpērēm			
<i>Fut.</i> cāpiām		cāpītō	captūrus essē	cāptūrus.
<i>Perf.</i> cēpī	cēpērīm		cēpissē	
<i>Plup.</i> cēpērām	cēpissēm			
<i>F. P.</i> cēpērō				

Gerund, cāpiendī, dō, etc. *Supine*, captūm, ū.

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

cāpiōr, cāpī, captūs sūm.

2. MOODS AND TENSES.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>Pres.</i>	cāpiōr	cāpiār	cāpērē	cāpī	
<i>Imp.</i>	cāpiebār	cāpērēr			
<i>Fut.</i>	cāpiār		cāpitōr	captūm irī	cāpiendūs.
<i>Perf.</i>	captūs sūm	captūs sīm		captūs essē	captūs.
<i>Plup.</i>	captūs ērām	captūs essēm			
<i>F. P.</i>	captūs ērō				

220. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

I. ACTIVE VOICE.

1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

audiō, audirē, audivī, auditūm.

2. MOODS AND TENSES.

<i>Pres.</i>	audiō	audiām	audī	audirē	audiens.
<i>Imp.</i>	audiēbām	audirēm			
<i>Fut.</i>	audiām		auditō	auditūrūs essē	auditūrūs.
<i>Perf.</i>	audivī	audivērīm		audivissē	
<i>Plup.</i>	audivērām	audivissēm			
<i>F. P.</i>	audivērō				

Gerund, audiendī, dō, etc. *Supine*, auditūm, ū.

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

audiōr, audirī, auditūs sūm.

2. MOODS AND TENSES.

<i>Pres.</i>	audiōr	audiār	audirē	audirī	
<i>Imp.</i>	audiēbār	audirēr			
<i>Fut.</i>	audiār		auditōr	auditūm irī	audiendūs.
<i>Perf.</i>	auditūs sūm	auditūs sīm		auditūs essē	auditūs.
<i>Plup.</i>	auditūs ērām	auditūs essēm			
<i>F. P.</i>	auditūs ērō				

DEPONENT VERBS.

221. Deponent Verbs have in general the forms of the Passive Voice with the signification of the Active. But

1. They have also in the Active, the future infinitive, the participles, gerund, and supine.

2. The Future passive participle generally has the passive signification; sometimes also the perfect passive; *hortandus*, to be exhorted; *expertus*, tried.

3. The Future Infinitive of the Passive form is rare, as the Active form is generally used.

SYNOPSIS OF CONJUGATION.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

222. Hortor, *I exhort.*

I. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

hortōr, hortārī, hortātūs sūm.

II. MOODS AND TENSES.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>Pres.</i>	hortōr ¹	hortēr	hortārē	hortārī	hortans.
<i>Imp.</i>	hortābār	hortārēr			
<i>Fut.</i>	hortābōr		hortātōr	hortātūrūs essē	{ hortātūrūs.
<i>Perf.</i>	hortātūs sūm	hortātūs sīm		hortātūs essē	{ hortandūs.
<i>Plup.</i>	hortātūs ērām	hortātūsessēm			hortātūs.
<i>F. P.</i>	hortātūs ērō				

Gerund, hortandī, dō, etc. *Supine*, hortātūm, ū.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

223. Vereor, *I fear.*

I. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

vēreōr, vērerī, vēritūs sūm.

II. MOODS AND TENSES.

<i>Pres.</i> vēreōr	vēreār	vērērē	vērērī	vērens.
<i>Imp.</i> vērēbār	vērērēr			
<i>Fut.</i> vērēbōr		vērētōr	vērītūrūs essē	{ vēritūrūs. { vērendūs.
<i>Perf.</i> vēritūs sūm	vērītūs sīm		vērītūs esse	vērītūs.
<i>Plup.</i> vēritūs ērām	vērītūs essēm			
<i>F. P.</i> vēritūs ērō				

Gerund, vērendī, dō. *Supine*, vēritūm, ū.

¹ The tenses are inflected regularly through the persons and numbers; *hortōr*, *hortāris*, *hortātūr*, *hortāmūr*, *hortāmīnī*, *hortantūr*.

All the forms in this synopsis have the active meaning, *I exhort*, *I was exhorting*, etc., except the *Part. in dūs*, which has the passive force, *about to be exhorted*, *to be exhorted*. From its passive force this Part. cannot be used in intransitive Dep. verbs, except in an impersonal sense. See 301, 2 and 3.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

224. Sequor, *I follow.*

I. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

sequor, sequi, secūtūs sūm.

II. MOODS AND TENSES.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>Pres.</i> sequor	sequār	sequere	sequi	sequens.
<i>Imp.</i> sequēbār	sequerēr			
<i>Fut.</i> sequār		sequitor	secūtūrūs essē	{ secūtūrūs. sequendūs.
<i>Perf.</i> secūtūs sūm	secūtūs sīm		secūtūs essē	secūtūs.
<i>Plup.</i> secūtūs ērām	secūtūs essēm			
<i>F. P.</i> secūtūs ērō				

Gerund, sequendī, dō, etc. *Supine*, secūtūm, ū.225. Patior, *I suffer.*

I. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

patiōr, pati, passūs sūm.

II. MOODS AND TENSES.

<i>Pres.</i> patiōr	patiār	patere	pati	patiens.
<i>Imp.</i> patiēbār	patērēr			
<i>Fut.</i> patiār		patitor	passūrūs essē	{ passūrūs. patiendūs.
<i>Perf.</i> passūs sūm	passūs sīm		passūs essē	passūs.
<i>Plup.</i> passūs ērām	passūs essēm			
<i>F. P.</i> passūs ērō				

Gerund, patiendī, dō, etc. *Supine*, passūm, ū.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

226. Blandiōr, *I flatter.*

I. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

blandiōr, blandiri, blandītūs sūm.

II. MOODS AND TENSES.

<i>Pres.</i> blandiōr	blandiār	blandirē	blandiri	blandiens.
<i>Imp.</i> blandiēbār	blandirēr			
<i>Fut.</i> blandiār		blandi- tōr	blandītūrūs es- sē	{ blandītūrūs blandiendūs
<i>Perf.</i> blandītūs sūm	blandītūs sīm		blandītūs essē	blandītūs.
<i>Plup.</i> blandītūs ērām	blandītūs es- sēm			
<i>F. P.</i> blandītūs ērō				

Gerund, blandiendī, dō, etc. *Supine*, blanditūm, ū.

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

227. The Latin has also two Periphrastic conjugations, formed respectively from the two regular future participles combined with the various tenses of the auxiliary *sum*.

228. The First or Active Periphrastic conjugation, compounded of the Future Active participle and *sum*, expresses an intended or future action or state: *amatūrus sum*, I am about to love; *monitūrus sum*, I am about to advise.

229. The Second or Passive Periphrastic conjugation, compounded of the Future Passive participle and *sum*, expresses necessity or duty: *amandus sum*, I must be loved.

I. ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

230. *Amatūrus sum*, *I am about to love*.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INFINITIVE.
<i>Pres.</i>	āmātūrūs sūm ¹	āmātūrūs sīm	āmātūrūs essē.
<i>Imp.</i>	āmātūrūs ērām	āmātūrūs essēm	
<i>Fut.</i>	āmātūrūs ērō		
<i>Perf.</i>	āmātūrūs fuī	āmātūrūs fuērīm	āmātūrūs fuissē.
<i>Plup.</i>	āmātūrūs fuērām	āmātūrūs fuissēm	
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	āmātūrūs fuērō ¹		

II. PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

231. *Amandus sum*, *I must be loved*.²

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INFINITIVE.
<i>Pres.</i>	āmandūs sūm	āmandūs sīm	āmandūs essē.
<i>Imp.</i>	āmandūs ērām	āmandūs essēm	
<i>Fut.</i>	āmandūs ērō		
<i>Perf.</i>	āmandūs fuī	āmandūs fuērīm	āmandūs fuissē.
<i>Plup.</i>	āmandūs fuērām	āmandūs fuissēm	
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	āmandūs fuērō		

232. The Periphrastic Conjugation, in the widest sense of the term, includes all forms compounded of participles with *sum*: *amans est*, he is loving; *amatūrus est*, he is about to love; *amātus est*, he has been loved; *amandus est*, he is to be loved, or must be loved. But as the Pres. Part. with *sum* is equivalent to the Pres. Ind. (*amans est* = *amat*), and is accordingly seldom used, and as the Perf. Part. with *sum* is, in the strictest sense, an integral part of the regular conjugation, the term *Periphrastic* is generally limited to the two conjugations above given.

233. The First Periphrastic conjugation may be formed from either transitive or intransitive verbs; the Second from transitive verbs only, except in an impersonal sense. See 301. 2.

¹ The periphrastic forms are inflected regularly through the persons and numbers: *amatūrus sum*, *es*, *est*. The Fut. Perf. is exceedingly rare.

² Or, *I deserve* (ought) *to be loved*.

CONTRACTIONS AND PECULIARITIES IN CONJUGATION.

234. Perfects in **āvi**, **ēvi**, **īvi**, and the tenses derived from them, sometimes drop **v** and suffer contraction before **s** and **r**. Thus

A-i and **a-e** become **ā**: *amaristi* (amaisti), *amasti*; *amavēram* (amae-ram), *amāram*; *amavisse* (amaisse), *amasse*.

E-i and **e-e** become **ē**: *nēvi* (to spin), *nevisti* (neisti), *nesti*; *nevērunt*, (neerunt), *nērunt*.

I-i becomes **ī**: *audivisti* (audiisti), *audisti*; *audivissem* (audiissem), *audissem*.

1. Perfects in *īvi* sometimes drop *v* in any of their forms, but generally without contraction, except before *s*: *audīvi*, *audiī*, *audiīt*, *audiēram*; *audi-visti*, *audiisti* or *audisti*.

2. Perfects in *ōvi*.—The perfect of *nosco*, to know, and *mōveo*, to move, sometimes drops *v* and suffers contraction before *r* and *s*: *novisti*, *nostī*.

3. Perfects in *si* and *xi* sometimes drop *is*, *iss*, or *sis*: *scripsisti*, *scripsisti*; *dixisse*, *dixē*; *accessistis*, *accestitis*.

235. **Erē** for **ērunt**, as the ending of the third Pers. Pl. of the Perf. Ind. Aet., is common in the historians.

The form in *ēre* does not drop *v*. In poetry *ērunt* occurs.

236. **Re** for **ris** in the ending of the second Pers. of the Pass. is rare in the Pres. Indic.

237. **Dic**, **duc**, **fac**, and **fer**, for *dīce*, *dūce*, *fāce*, and *fēre*, are the Imperatives of *dico*, *duco*, *facio*, and *fero*, to say, lead, make, and bear.

1. *Dīce*, *dūce*, and *fāce* occur in poetry.

2. Compounds follow the simple verbs, except those of *facio* which change *a* into *i*: *confīce*.

238. **Undus** and **undi** for *endus* and *endi* occur as the endings of the Fut. Pass. Part. and of the Gerund of Conj. III. and IV.: *dīcundus* from *dico*, to say; *pōtiundus*, from *pōtior*, to obtain.

239. ANCIENT AND RARE FORMS.—Various other forms, belonging in the main to the earlier Latin, occur in the poets, even of the classical period, and occasionally also in prose, to impart to the style an air of antiquity or solemnity. Thus forms in

1. *ībam* for *īēbam*, in the Imp. Ind. of Conj. IV.: *scībam* for *scīēbam*. See Imp. of *eo*, to go, 295.

2. *ībo*, *ībor*, for *īam*, *īar*, in the Fut. of Conj. IV.: *servībo* for *servīam*; *opperībor* for *opperīar*. See Fut. of *eo*, 295.

3. *im* for *am* or *em*, in the Pres. Subj.: *edim*, *edis*, etc., for *edam*, *as*, etc.; *duim* (from *duo*, for *do*), for *dem*.—In *sim*, *velim*, *nolim*, *malim* (204 and 293), *im* is the common ending.

4. *asso*, *esso*, and *so*, in the Fut. Perf., and *assim*, *essim*, and *sim*, in the Perf. Subj. of Conj. I. II. III. : *fazo* (fascio) for *fecĕro* (from *facio*) ; *facim* for *fecĕrim* ; *ausim*, for *ausus sim* (for *ausĕrim*, from *audeo*). Rare examples are : *levasso* for *levavĕro* ; *prohibesso* for *prohibuĕro* ; *capso* for *cepĕro* ; *axo* for *egĕro* ; *jusso* for *jussĕro* ; *occĭsit* for *occiderĭt* ; *taxis* for *tetigĕris*.

5. *to* and *mino* for *tor*, the former in both numbers, the latter in the singular of the Fut. Imp. Pass. and Dep. : *arbitrĕto*, *arbitramĭno* for *arbitrĕtor* ; *utunto* for *utuntor*.

6. *ier* for *i* in the Pres. Pass. Infin. : *amarĭer* for *amĕri* ; *viderĭer* for *vidĕri*.

FORMATION OF THE VARIOUS PARTS OF THE VERB.

240. PRINCIPAL PARTS.—From an inspection of the paradigms, it will be seen, that the Principal Parts are formed in the four conjugations with the following endings :¹

I.	o,	ĕre,	ĕvi,	ĕtum.
II.	1. In a few verbs :			
	eo,	ĕre,	ĕvi,	ĕtum.
	2. In most verbs :			
	eo,	ĕre,	ui,	ĭtum.
III.	1. In consonant stems :			
	o,	ĕre,	si,	tum.
	2. In vowel stems :			
	o,	ĕre,	i,	tum.
IV.	io,	ire,	ĭvi,	ĭtum.

EXAMPLES.

I.	Amo,	amĕre,	amĕvi,	amĕtum,	to love.
II.	1. Deleo,				
	delĕre, delĕvi, delĕtum, to destroy.				
	2. Moneo,				
	monĕre, monui, monĭtum, to advise.				
III.	1. Carpo,				
	carpĕre, carpsi, carptum, to pluck.				
	2. Acuo,				
	acuĕre, acui, acĭtum, to sharpen.				
IV.	Audio,	audĭre,	audĭvi,	audĭtum,	to hear.

241. ENTIRE CONJUGATION.—Again, from an inspection of the paradigms, it will be seen, that all the forms of any regular verb, through all the moods and tenses of both voices, arrange themselves in three distinct groups or systems of forms :

¹ The forms in *ĕvi* and *ĕtum* of Conj. II. do not occur in the paradigms given above, but belong to the regular forms of those conjugations. For a fuller statement of the formation of the *Principal Parts with Exceptions*, see 246-260.

I. The PRESENT SYSTEM, with the Present Infinitive as its basis, comprises

1. The *Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative*—Active and Passive.
2. The *Present and Imperfect Subjunctive*—Active and Passive.
3. The *Imperative*—Active and Passive.
4. The *Present Infinitive*—Active and Passive.
5. The *Present Active and Future Passive Participle*.
6. The *Gerund*.

These parts are all formed from the *Present Stem*, found in the Present Infinitive of the several conjugations, by dropping the endings—*āre, ēre, ĕre, ĭre* of the Active, or—*ārī, ērī, ĭ, ĭrī*, of the Passive: *amāre*, present stem, AM; *monēre*, MON; *regēre*, REG; *audire*, AUD.

II. The PERFECT SYSTEM, with the Perfect Indicative Active as its basis, comprises in the Active voice

1. The *Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative*.
2. The *Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive*.
3. The *Perfect Infinitive*.

These parts are all formed from the *Perfect Stem*, found in the Perfect Indicative Active by dropping *i*; *amāvi*, perfect stem AMAV; *monui*, MONU.

III. The SUPINE SYSTEM, with the Supine as its basis, comprises

1. The *Supines* in *um* and *u*, the former of which with *iri* forms the *Future Infinitive Passive*.
2. The *Future Active and Perfect Passive Participles*, the former of which with *esse* forms the *Future Active Infinitive*, and the latter of which with the proper parts of the auxiliary *sum* forms in the Passive those tenses which in the Active belong to the *Perfect System*.

These parts are all formed from the *Supine Stem*, found in the Supine by dropping *um*: *amātum*, supine stem, AMAT; *monitum*, MONIT.

242. VERB STEM.—The true basis of all verbal inflections is the *Verb Stem*; but this is generally identical with the Present Stem. Accordingly in nearly all verbs the Present Stem is also the Verb Stem. Thus AM, the Present Stem of *amo*, is also its Verb Stem.

1. In a few verbs the Present Stem has assumed one or more letters not found in the Verb Stem. Thus in *fundo, vinco*, the Verb Stems are *fud, vic*, but the Present Stems are *fund, vinc*, strengthened by assuming *n*.
2. We add the following table of verbal inflections.

TABLE OF PRESENT SYSTEM.

ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

ăm	-õ	-ās,	-ăt ;	-ămūs,	-ătīs,	-ant.
mõn	-eõ,	-ēs,	-ăt ;	-ēmūs,	-ătīs,	-ent.
ręg	-õ	-īs,	-it ;	-imūs,	-itīs,	-unt.
aud	-iõ,	-īs,	-it ;	-imūs,	-itīs,	-iunt.

IMPERFECT.

ăm	-ābām,	-ābās,	-ābăt ;	-ābāmūs,	-ābătīs,	-ābant.
mõn	-ēbām,	-ēbās,	-ēbăt ;	-ēbāmūs,	-ēbătīs,	-ēbant.
ręg	-ēbām,	-ēbās,	-ēbăt ;	-ēbāmūs,	-ēbătīs,	-ēbant.
aud	-iebām,	-iebās,	-iebăt ;	-iebāmūs,	-iebătīs,	-iebant.

FUTURE.

ăm	-ābõ,	-ābīs,	-ābăt ;	-ābīmūs,	-ābītīs,	-ābunt.
mõn	-ēbõ,	-ēbīs,	-ēbăt ;	-ēbīmūs,	-ēbītīs,	-ēbunt.
ręg	-ām,	-ēs,	-ăt ;	-ēmūs,	-ătīs,	-ent.
aud	-iām,	-iēs,	-iăt ;	-iēmūs,	-iētīs,	-ient.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

ăm	-ēm,	-ēs,	-ăt ;	-ēmūs,	-ătīs,	-ent.
mõn	-eām,	-eās,	-ăt ;	-eāmūs,	-eătīs,	-eant.
ręg	-ām,	-ās,	-ăt ;	-āmūs,	-ătīs,	-ant.
aud	-iām,	-iās,	-iăt ;	-iāmūs,	-iătīs,	-iant.

IMPERFECT.

ăm	-ārēm,	-ārēs,	-ārăt ;	-ārēmūs,	-ārătīs,	-ārent.
mõn	-ērēm,	-ērēs,	-ērăt ;	-ērēmūs,	-ērătīs,	-ērent.
ręg	-ērēm,	-ērēs,	-ērăt ;	-ērēmūs,	-ērătīs,	-ērent.
aud	-irēm,	-irēs,	-irăt ;	-irēmūs,	-irătīs,	-irent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

FUTURE.

	SING.	PLUR.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
ăm	-ā,	-ătě ;	-ătõ,	-ătõtě,
mõn	-ē,	-ětě ;	-ětõ,	-ětõtě,
ręg	-ě,	-itě ;	-itõ,	-itõtě,
aud	-ī,	-itě ;	-itõ,	-itõtě,

PRES. INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

GERUND.

ăm	-ārě ;	-ans ;	-andī.
mõn	-ērě ;	-ens ;	-endī.
ręg	-ērě ;	-ens ;	-endī.
aud	-irě ;	-iens ;	-iendī.

Verbs in *io* of Conj. III. have certain endings of Conj. IV. See 213.

VERBAL INFLECTIONS.

PRESENT SYSTEM.

PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

ăm	-ör,	-ăris <i>or</i> ärē,	-ătŭr ;	-ămŭr,	-ămîni,	-antŭr.
môn	-eör,	-ērīs <i>or</i> ērē,	-ētŭr ;	-ēmŭr,	-ēmîni,	-entŭr.
ręg	-ör,	-ērīs <i>or</i> ērē,	-itŭr ;	-imŭr,	-imîni,	-untŭr.
aud	-iör,	-îris <i>or</i> îrē,	-itŭr ;	-imŭr,	-imîni,	-iuntŭr.

IMPERFECT.

ăm	-ăbăr,	-ăbăris <i>or</i> abărē,	-ăbătŭr ;	-ăbămŭr,	-ăbămîni,	-ăbantŭr.
môn	-ebăr,	-ebăris <i>or</i> ebărē,	-ebătŭr ;	-ebămŭr,	-ebămîni,	-ebantŭr.
ręg	-ebăr,	-ebăris <i>or</i> ebărē,	-ebătŭr ;	-ebămŭr,	-ebămîni,	-ebantŭr.
aud	-iebăr,	-iebăris <i>or</i> iebărē,	-iebătŭr ;	-iebămŭr,	-iebămîni,	-iebantŭr.

FUTURE.

ăm	-ăbör,	-ăberīs <i>or</i> abērē,	-ăbītŭr ;	-ăbimŭr,	-ăbimîni,	-ăbuntŭr.
môn	-ebör,	-eberīs <i>or</i> ebērē,	-ebītŭr ;	-ebimŭr,	-ebimîni,	-ebuntŭr.
ręg	-är,	-ērīs <i>or</i> ērē,	-ētŭr ;	-ēmŭr,	-ēmîni,	-entŭr.
aud	-iär,	-ierīs <i>or</i> iērē,	-ietŭr ;	-iemŭr,	-iemîni,	-ientŭr.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

ăm	-ēr,	-ērīs <i>or</i> ērē,	-etŭr ;	-ēmŭr,	-ēmîni,	-entŭr.
môn	-eär,	-eăris <i>or</i> eărē,	-eătŭr ;	-eămŭr,	-eămîni,	-eantŭr.
ręg	-är,	-ăris <i>or</i> ärē,	-ătŭr ;	-ămŭr,	-ămîni,	-antŭr.
aud	-iär,	-iăris <i>or</i> iărē,	-iătŭr ;	-iămŭr,	-iămîni,	-iantŭr.

IMPERFECT.

ăm	-ărēr,	-ărērīs <i>or</i> arērē,	-ărētŭr ;	-ărēmŭr,	-ărēmîni,	-ărentŭr.
môn	-erēr,	-erērīs <i>or</i> erērē,	-erētŭr ;	-erēmŭr,	-erēmîni,	-erentŭr.
ręg	-erēr,	-erērīs <i>or</i> erērē,	-erētŭr ;	-erēmŭr,	-erēmîni,	-erentŭr.
aud	-irēr,	-irērīs <i>or</i> irērē,	-irētŭr ;	-irēmŭr,	-irēmîni,	-irentŭr.

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

SING.	PLUR.
ăm	-ărē,
môn	-erē,
ręg	-ērē,
aud	-irē,

FUTURE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
-ătör,	— antör.
-etör,	— entör.
-itör,	— untör.
-itör,	— iuntör.

PRES. INFINITIVE.

ăm	-ărî ;
môn	-erî ;
ręg	-î ;
aud	-îrî ;

FUT. PARTICIPLE.

-andŭs.
-endŭs.
-endŭs.
-iendŭs.

TABLE OF PERFECT SYSTEM.

ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PERFECT.

ămāv mōnu rex audīv	-ī,	-istī,	-it;	-imūs,	-istīs,	-erunt, -ere.
------------------------------	-----	--------	------	--------	---------	---------------

PLUPERFECT.

ămāv mōnu rex audīv	-ērām,	-ērās,	-ērāt;	-ērāmūs,	-ērātīs,	-erant.
------------------------------	--------	--------	--------	----------	----------	---------

FUTURE PERFECT.

ămāv mōnu rex audīv	-erō,	-erīs,	-erit;	-erimūs,	-erītīs,	-erint.
------------------------------	-------	--------	--------	----------	----------	---------

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PERFECT.

ămāv mōnu rex audīv	-erim,	-erīs,	-erit;	-erimūs,	-erītīs,	-erint.
------------------------------	--------	--------	--------	----------	----------	---------

PLUPERFECT.

ămāv mōnu rex audīv	-issēm,	-issēs,	-issēt;	-issēmūs,	-issētīs,	-issent.
------------------------------	---------	---------	---------	-----------	-----------	----------

INFINITIVE PERFECT.

ămāv mōnu rex audīv	-issē.
------------------------------	--------

SUPINE SYSTEM.

INFINITIVE FUT.	PART. FUT.	SUPINE.
ămāt mōnīt reet audīt	-ūrūs essē.	-ūrūs.
		-ūm, -ū.

VERBAL INFLECTIONS.

SUPINE SYSTEM.

PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PERFECT.

ămăt	-ūs ¹					
mōnīt	-ūs	sūm,	ēs,	est;	sūmūs,	estīs,
rect	-ūs					sunt.
audīt	-ūs					

PLUPERFECT.

ămăt	-ūs					
mōnīt	-ūs	ērām,	ērās,	ērāt;	ērāmūs,	ērātīs,
rect	-ūs					ērant.
audīt	-ūs					

FUTURE PERFECT.

ămăt	-ūs					
mōnīt	-ūs	ērō,	ērīs,	ērīt;	ērīmūs,	ērītīs,
rect	-ūs					ērunt.
audīt	-ūs					

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PERFECT.

ămăt	-ūs					
mōnīt	-ūs	sīm,	sīs,	sīt;	sīmūs,	sītīs,
rect	-ūs					sint.
audīt	-ūs					

PLUPERFECT.

ămăt	-ūs					
mōnīt	-ūs	essēm,	essēs,	essēt;	essēmūs,	essētīs,
rect	-ūs					essent.
audīt	-ūs					

INFINITIVE PERFECT.

ămăt	-ūs	
mōnīt	-ūs	essē.
rect	-ūs	
audīt	-ūs	

INFINITIVE FUT.

ămăt	
mōnīt	-ūm irī.
rect	
audīt	

PART. PRET.

-ūs.

¹ In the plural, -us becomes -i: -i sumus, etc.

COMPARATIVE VIEW OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

243. The Four Conjugations, it will be seen from this table, differ from each other only in the formation of the *Principal Parts* and in the endings of the *Present System*.

244. But by a close analysis it will be found

1. That even these differences in a great measure disappear, and that the four conjugations become only varieties of one general system of conjugation.

2. That these varieties have been produced by the union of different final letters in the various stems with one general system of endings.

245. According to this analysis

1. The stems in the four conjugations end in the following letters:

I.	II.	III.	IV.
a,	e,	consonant or u, ¹	i.

2. The general endings are

1) *For Principal Parts* :

o,	ĕre,	si (i), vi,	tum.
----	------	-------------	------

2) *For Other Parts* :—the endings given above for the third conjugation, but in the Future, *bo* and *bor* are regular endings as well as *am* and *ar*, and in the Infinitive Passive, *ĕri* as well as *i*.

3. The manner in which these endings unite with the different stems may be seen in the following

COMPARATIVE VIEW OF CONJUGATIONS.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

I.	{ <i>Ama-o</i> <i>Amo</i> , ²	<i>ama-ĕre</i> <i>amāre</i> ,	<i>ama-vi</i> <i>amāvi</i> ,	<i>ama-tum</i> <i>amātum</i> .
II.	{ <i>Mone-o</i> <i>Monco</i> ,	<i>mone-ĕre</i> <i>monĕre</i> ,	{ <i>mone-vi</i> <i>mon-vi</i> <i>monui</i> ,	<i>mone-tum</i> ³ <i>mon-tum</i> <i>monĭtum</i> . ⁴
III.	{ <i>Reg-o</i> <i>Rego</i> ,	<i>reg-ĕre</i> <i>regĕre</i> ,	<i>reg-si</i> <i>rexī</i> ,	<i>reg-tum</i> <i>rectum</i> .
IV.	{ <i>Audi-o</i> <i>Audio</i> ,	<i>audi-ĕre</i> <i>audĭre</i> ,	<i>audi-vi</i> <i>audĭvi</i> ,	<i>audi-tum</i> <i>audĭtum</i> .

¹ Rarely *o*.

² By contraction: *ama-o* = *amo*.

³ Like *deleo*, *delĕre*, *delĕri*, *delĕtum*. See 240. II.

⁴ For changes see 247. 1.

PRESENT SYSTEM.—*Active Voice*.¹

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

	I.	II.	III.	IV.
1.	<i>ama-o</i> amo	<i>mone-o</i> moneo	<i>reg-o</i> rego	<i>audi-o</i> audio
2.	<i>ama-is</i> amās	<i>mone-is</i> monēs	<i>reg-is</i> regis	<i>audi-is</i> audis
3.	<i>ama-it</i> amat	<i>mone-it</i> monet	<i>reg-it</i> regit	<i>audi-it</i> audit
1.	<i>ama-īmus</i> amāmus	<i>mone-īmus</i> monēmus	<i>reg-īmus</i> regīmus	<i>audi-īmus</i> audīmus
2.	<i>ama-ītis</i> amātis	<i>mone-ītis</i> monētis	<i>reg-ītis</i> regītis	<i>audi-ītis</i> auditis
3.	<i>ama-unt</i> amant.	<i>mone-unt</i> monent.	<i>reg-unt</i> regunt.	<i>audi-unt</i> audiunt.

IMPERFECT.

<i>ama-ēbam</i> amābam.	<i>mone-ēbam</i> monēbam.	<i>reg-ēbam</i> regēbam.	<i>audi-ēbam</i> audiēbam.
----------------------------	------------------------------	-----------------------------	-------------------------------

FUTURE.

<i>ama-ēbo</i> amābo.	<i>mone-ēbo</i> monēbo.	<i>reg-am</i> regam.	<i>audi-am</i> audiam.
--------------------------	----------------------------	-------------------------	---------------------------

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

<i>ama-am</i> amem. ²	<i>mone-am</i> moneam.	<i>reg-am</i> regam.	<i>audi-am</i> audiam.
-------------------------------------	---------------------------	-------------------------	---------------------------

IMPERFECT.

<i>ama-ērem</i> amārem	<i>mone-ērem</i> monērem.	<i>reg-ērem</i> regērem.	<i>audi-ērem</i> audirem.
---------------------------	------------------------------	-----------------------------	------------------------------

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

S.	<i>ama-e</i> ama	<i>mone-e</i> mone	<i>reg-e</i> rege	<i>audi-e</i> audi
P.	<i>ama-ite</i> amāte.	<i>mone-ite</i> monēte.	<i>reg-ite</i> regite.	<i>audi-ite</i> audite.

¹ The Passive has the same changes as the Active: *ama-or* = *amor*; *ama-ēris* = *amāris*; *mone-ēris* = *monēris*; *audi-ēris* = *audīris*, etc.

² *A* changed to *e*, so throughout; *ama-as* = *amēs*, etc.

FUTURE.

2 S.	{ <i>ama-ïto</i> <i>amāto</i>	{ <i>monc-ïto</i> <i>monēto</i>	{ <i>reg-ïto</i> <i>regïto</i>	{ <i>audi-ïto</i> <i>audïto</i>
3 S.	{ <i>ama-ïto</i> <i>amāto</i>	{ <i>monc-ïto</i> <i>monēto</i>	{ <i>reg-ïto</i> <i>regïto</i>	{ <i>audi-ïto</i> <i>audïto</i>
2 P.	{ <i>ama-ïtōte</i> <i>amatōte</i>	{ <i>monc-ïtōte</i> <i>monētōte</i>	{ <i>reg-ïtōte</i> <i>regītōte</i>	{ <i>audi-ïtōte</i> <i>audītōte</i>
3 P.	{ <i>ama-unto</i> <i>amanto.</i>	{ <i>monc-unto</i> <i>monento.</i>	{ <i>reg-unto</i> <i>regunto.</i>	{ <i>audi-unto</i> <i>audiunto.</i>

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.

<i>ama-ëre</i> <i>amāre.</i>	{ <i>monc-ëre</i> <i>monëre.</i>	{ <i>reg-ëre</i> <i>regëre.</i>	{ <i>audi-ëre</i> <i>audire.</i>
---------------------------------	-------------------------------------	------------------------------------	-------------------------------------

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

<i>ama-ens</i> <i>amaus.</i>	{ <i>monc-ens</i> <i>monens.</i>	{ <i>reg-ens</i> <i>regens.</i>	{ <i>audi-ens</i> <i>audiens.</i>
---------------------------------	-------------------------------------	------------------------------------	--------------------------------------

GERUND.

<i>ama-cndi</i> <i>amandi.</i>	{ <i>monc-cndi</i> <i>monendi.</i>	{ <i>reg-cndi</i> <i>regendi.</i>	{ <i>audi-cndi</i> <i>audiendi.</i>
-----------------------------------	---------------------------------------	--------------------------------------	--

FORMATION OF PRINCIPAL PARTS.

246. The general rule for obtaining these forms has already been given (240), but as they are the basis of all verbal inflections, a fuller treatment of the subject is desirable. We notice

*I. Regular Formations.**II. Irregular Formations.*

I. REGULAR FORMATIONS.

247. The Principal Parts of verbs in the four conjugations are formed with the following endings: ¹

I.	o,	āre,	āvi,	ātum.
II.	1. <i>In a few verbs:</i>			
	eo,	ēre,	ēvi,	ētum.
III.	2. <i>In most verbs:</i>			
	eo,	ēre,	ui,	ītum.
IV.	1. <i>In consonant stems:</i>			
	o,	ēre,	si,	tum.
IV.	2. <i>In vowel stems:</i>			
	o,	ēre,	i,	tum.
IV.	io,	īre,	īvi,	ītum.

¹ For examples, see 240.

1. The ENDINGS *vi* and *itum* are only shortened forms of *ēvi* and *ētum*: thus the full forms in *monēo* would be, *monēvi*, *monētum*; by dropping *e*, we have *monvi*, *montum*; but to facilitate pronunciation, the consonant *v* after *n* is changed into its corresponding vowel *u*; *monui* (for *monvi*), and the two successive consonants in *montum* are separated by a short *i*; *monitum* (for *montum*).

2. ANALYSIS OF ENDINGS.—If we analyze the endings of the Perfect, we shall find that the final *i* is the ending of the first person, the preceding *v* the tense-sign of the Perfect, and the preceding vowel the characteristic of the conjugation. In the ending *si*, *s* is the tense-sign, while in the ending *i* the tense-sign is wanting.

3. The SUPINE ENDING is properly *tum* (245. 2), as the preceding vowels, *ā*, *ē*, and *ī*, are the characteristics of the conjugation, and *ī* in Conj. III. is the connecting vowel. Practically, however, it is more convenient and simple to treat these vowels as a part of the endings.

Euphonic Changes in the Regular Formation.

248. Before *si* and *tum* in the Principal Parts of the Third Conjugation, certain euphonic changes take place.

I. BEFORE **si** OF THE PERFECT.

1. A **k-sound** (*c*, *g*, *qu*) or **h**¹ generally² unites with the *s* and forms *x*:³ *dūco*, *duxi* (ducsi); *rēgo*, *rexī* (regsi); *cōquo*, *coxi* (coqusi); *trāho*, *traxī* (trahsi).

2. A **t-sound** (*d*, *t*) is generally dropped:⁴ *claudo*, *clausi* (claudsi); *mitto*, *mīsi* (mittsi).

3. **B** is changed to *p*: *scribo*, *scripsi* (scribsi).

4. **M** is sometimes assimilated and sometimes strengthened with *p*: *prēmo*, *pressi* (premsi); *sūmo*, *sumpsi* (sumsi).

5. **R** is sometimes assimilated: *gēro*, *gessi* (gersi).

II. BEFORE **tum** OF THE SUPINE.

1. A **k-sound** (*c*, *g*, *qu*) or **h**⁵ becomes *c*: *rēgo*, *rectum* (regtum); *cōquo*, *coctum* (coqutum); *trāho*, *tractum* (trahtum).

2. **B** becomes *p*, as in the perfect: *scribo*, *scriptum* (scribtum).

3. **M** is strengthened with *p*:⁶ *sūmo*, *sumptum* (sumtum).

4. **N** is often dropped: *vinco*, *victum* (vinctum). See 242. 253. 2.

5. **R** sometimes becomes *s*: *gēro*, *gestum* (gertum).

¹ Sometimes also *gu* or *r*: *exstinguo*, *exstingi*; *viro*, *vixi*.

² But is sometimes dropped: *mergo*, *mersi* (for *mergsi*, *merxi*); *parco*, *parsi*.

³ *Fluo*, *fluxi*, and *struo*, *struxi*, form their perfects in *xi* as if from a stem in a *k-sound*.

⁴ Sometimes assimilated: *cedo*, *cessi* (cedsi).

⁵ Sometimes also *gu* or *r*: *exstinguo*, *exstinctum*; *viro*, *victum*. But *v* is often changed into its corresponding vowel *u*: *solvo*, *solūtum* (solvum).

⁶ But dropped in *rumpo*, *raptum* (rumptum).

II. IRREGULAR FORMATIONS.

I. Present Indicative.

249. A few verbs of the Third Conjugation form the Present Indicative in **io, ior**, like verbs of the Fourth Conjugation. These are

1. The following with their compounds:

Căpio, to take; *căpio*, to desire; *făcio*, to make; *fădio*, to dig; *făgio*, to flee; *jăcio*, to throw; *părio*, to bear; ¹ *quătio*, to shake; *răpio*, to seize; *săpio*, to be wise.

2. The compounds of the obsolete *lăcio*, to entice, and *spēcio*, to look; *allicio*, *elicio*, *ilticio*, *pellicio*, etc.; *aspicio*, *conspicio*, etc.

3. The Deponent Verbs: *grădior*, to go; *mŭrior*, to die; *pătior*, to suffer.

II. Present Infinitive.

250. *Do, dăre*, to give, is irregular in having *ăre*, instead of *äre*.

III. Perfect Indicative Active.

251. The Perfect presents three distinct Irregularities.

252. **First Irregularity.**—*Formation after the Analogy of other conjugations.*—A few verbs in each conjugation form the Perfect according to the *analogy* of one or more of the other conjugations:

<i>Sŏno</i> ,	<i>sonăre</i> ,	<i>sonui</i> (2d),	<i>to sound.</i>
<i>Augeo</i> ,	<i>augĕre</i> ,	<i>auxi</i> (<i>augsi</i> , 3d),	<i>to increase.</i>
<i>Pĕto</i> ,	<i>petĕre</i> ,	<i>petivi</i> (4th),	<i>to seek.</i>
<i>Vincio</i> ,	<i>vincĕre</i> ,	<i>vinxi</i> (<i>vincsi</i> , 3d),	<i>to bind.</i>

1. EXPLANATION.—*Sŏno*, it will be observed, though a verb of the first conjugation, forms its perfect in *ui*, after the analogy of the second; *augeo*, of the second, forms its perfect in *si* (*xi* = *gsi*) after the analogy of the third; *pĕto*, of the third, follows the analogy of the fourth, and *vincio*, of the fourth, the analogy of the third. Strictly speaking, such verbs are partly of one conjugation and partly of another, but they are generally classed with the conjugation to which the infinitive belongs.

2. In the FIRST CONJUGATION, a few verbs ² follow the analogy of the SECOND: *dŏmo*, *domăre*, *domui*, to tame.

3. In the SECOND, a few ² follow the analogy of the THIRD: *augeo*, *augĕre*, *auxi* (*augsi*), to increase.

¹ Compounds are of the fourth conjugation.

² For lists, see under Classification of Verbs, 261, sqq.

4. In the THIRD, a few follow the analogy of the FIRST, SECOND, or FOURTH: *sterno, sternĕre, strāvi* (1), to strew; *frĕmo, frĕmĕre, frēmui* (2), to rage; *pĕto, petĕre, petĭvi* (4), to seek.

5. In the FOURTH, a few follow the analogy of the SECOND or THIRD: *āpĕrio, āperĭre, āperui* (2), to open; *vincio, vincĭre, vinxi* (3), to bind.

253. Second Irregularity.—Stem-vowel lengthened.—A few verbs in each conjugation form the Perfect in **i**, but lengthen the stem-vowel:

Jūvo,	jūvāre,	jūvi,	to assist.
Vīdeo,	vīdĕre,	vīdi,	to see.
Edo,	ĕdĕre,	ĕdi,	to eat.
Vēnio,	venĭre,	vēni,	to come.

1. VOWEL CHANGED.—The stem-vowels *ā* and (in compounds) *i* often become *ē*: *fācio, fēcĭ*, to make; *efficio, effēcĭ*, to effect.

2. *M* OR *N* DROPPED.—The Present Stem in a few of these verbs is strengthened by the insertion of *M* or *N*, which disappears in the Perfect: *rumpo, rūpi* (rumpi), to break; *vinco, vici* (vinci), to conquer. See 242. 1.

254. Third Irregularity.—Reduplication.—A few verbs of the First, Second, and Third conjugations form the Perfect in **i**, but reduplicate the stem:

Do,	dāre,	dĕdi,	to give.
Mordeo,	mordĕre,	mōmordi,	to bite.
Curro,	curre, re,	cūcurri,	to run.

1. The REDUPLICATION consists of the initial consonant (or consonants) of the stem with the following vowel, or with *e*,—generally with the following vowel, if that vowel is *e*, *i*, *o*, or *u*, otherwise with *e*; see examples above.

2. VOWEL CHANGED.—The stem-vowel is often changed: *cado, cēcĭdi* (for *cccādi*), to fall.

3. *N* DROPPED.—*N* is sometimes dropped, because it does not belong to the Verb Stem, but has been inserted in the Present: *tundo, tūtūdi*, to beat.

4. REDUPLICATION WITH *Sp* OR *St*.—In verbs beginning with *sp* or *st*, the reduplication retains both consonants, but the stem drops the *s*: *spondeo, spōpondi* (for *spospondi*), to promise; *sto, stĕti* (for *stesti*), to stand.

5. In COMPOUNDS the reduplication is generally dropped, but it is retained in the compounds of *do*, to give; *sto*, to stand; *disco*, to learn; *posco*, to demand; and sometimes in the compounds of *curro*, to run; *re-spondeo, re-sondi* (redup. dropped), to answer; *circum-do, circum-dĕdi* (redup. retained); *circum-sto, circum-stĕti*, to encircle. The compounds of *do* which are of the third conjugation change *e* of the reduplication into *i*: *ad-do, ad-dĭdi* (for *ad-dēdi*), to add.

IV. Supine.

255. The Supine presents two principal Irregularities.

256. First Irregularity.—Formation after the Analogy of other conjugations.—A few verbs in each conjugation

form the Supine according to the *analogy* of one or more of the other conjugations :

Sōno,	sonāre,	sonui,	sonitum (2d),	to sound.
Augeo,	augēre,	auxi,	auctum (3d),	to increase.
Pēto,	petēre,	petivi,	petitum (4th),	to seek.
Vincio,	vincire,	vinxi,	vinctum (3d),	to bind.

1. In the FIRST CONJUGATION, a few verbs¹ follow the analogy of the SECOND or THIRD: *dōmo, domāre, domui, domitum* (2d), to tame; *sēco, secāre, secui* (2d), *sectum* (3d), to cut.

2. In the SECOND, a few follow the analogy of the THIRD: *augeo, augēre, auxi, auctum*, to increase.

3. In the THIRD, a few follow the analogy of the SECOND or FOURTH: *frēmo, fremēre, fremui, fremitum* (2d), to rage; *cupio, cupere, cupivi, cupitum* (4th), to desire.

4. In the FOURTH, a few follow the analogy of the THIRD: *vēnio, venire, vēni, ventum*, to come.

257. Second Irregularity.—Ending Sum.—Some verbs of the Second conjugation, many in the Third, and a very few in the Fourth form the Supine in *sum* :

Māneo,	manēre,	mansi,	mansum,	to remain.
Claudo,	claudere,	clausi,	clausum,	to close.
Sentio,	sentire,	sensi,	sensum,	to perceive.

1. EUPHONIC CHANGES are the same in supines in *sum* as in perfects in *si* (248. I.): *claudio, clausi, clausum* (248. I. 2); *mergo, mersi, mersum* (248. I. 1), to merge; *flecto, flexi* (for *flectsi*, for *flectsi*, 248. I. 1 and 2), *flexum* (for *flectsum*, for *flectsum*, 248. I. 1 and 2), to turn.

2. In the FOURTH CONJUGATION, only *raucio*, to be hoarse, and *sentio*, to perceive, with its compounds, have *sum*.

258. The several modes above described for the formation of the Perfect and Supine may be presented for convenience of reference in the following table :

FORMATION OF THE PERFECT AND SUPINE.

I. PERFECT.

1. REGULAR PERFECT.

Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
āvi.	ēvi. ui.	si. i.	īvi.

2. IRREGULAR PERFECT.

First Irregularity.

analogy of Conj. II.	analogy of Conj. III.	analogy of Conj. I., II. or IV.	analogy of Conj. II. or III.
-------------------------	--------------------------	------------------------------------	---------------------------------

¹ For lists, see under *Classification of Verbs*, 261, sqq.

Second Irregularity.

Conj. I. stem-vowel lengthened.	Conj. II. stem-vowel lengthened.	Conj. III. stem-vowel lengthened (and often changed).	Conj. IV. stem-vowel lengthened.
---------------------------------------	--	--	--

Third Irregularity.

reduplication.	reduplication.	reduplication.
----------------	----------------	----------------

II. SUPINE.

1. REGULAR SUPINE.

ātum.	ētum. ītum.	tum.	itum.
-------	----------------	------	-------

2. IRREGULAR SUPINE.

First Irregularity.

analogy of Conj. II. or III.	analogy of Conj. III.	analogy of Conj. II. or IV.	analogy of Conj. III.
---------------------------------	--------------------------	--------------------------------	--------------------------

Second Irregularity.

sum.	sum.	sum.
------	------	------

PRINCIPAL PARTS IN COMPOUND VERBS.

259. I. Compound verbs generally form their principal parts like simple verbs :

Mōneo,	monēre,	monui,	monitum,	to advise.
Ad-mōneo,	admonēre,	admonui,	admonitum,	to admonish.

260. II. But compounds of verbs with dissyllabic supines generally change the stem-vowel in forming the principal parts :

1. *When the Present of the compound has i for e of the simple verb :*

1) The Perfect and Supine generally resume the **e** :

Rēgo,	regēre,	rexī,	rectum,	to rule.
Di-rigo,	dirigēre,	direxī,	directum,	to direct.

2) But sometimes only the Supine resumes the **e** :

Tēneo,	tenēre,	tenuī,	tentum,	to hold.
De-tīneo,	detinēre,	detinui,	detentum,	to detain.

2. *When the Present of the compound has i for a of the simple verb :*

1) The Perfect generally resumes the vowel of the simple perfect and the supine takes **e**, sometimes **a** :

Cāpio,	capēre,	cēpi,	captum,	to take.
Ae-cīpio,	accipēre,	accēpi,	acceptum,	to accept.

2) But sometimes the Perfect retains **i** and the Supine takes **e** :

Răpio,	rapĕre,	rapui,	raptum,	to seize.
Di-răpio,	diripĕre,	diripui,	direptum,	to tear asunder.

For *Reduplication in compounds*, see 254. 5 ; other peculiarities of compounds will be noticed under the separate conjugations.

CLASSIFICATION OF VERBS

*According to the Perfect-Formation.*¹

FIRST CONJUGATION.

CLASS I. REGULAR FORMATION.

261. Principal Parts in : **o**, **āre**, **āvi**, **ātum**.

These endings belong to most verbs of this conjugation : the following are examples :

Amo,	āmāre,	amāvi,	amātum,	to love.
Cūro,	curāre,	curāvi,	curātum,	to care for.
Dōno,	donāre,	donāvi,	donātum,	to bestow.
Hābito,	habitāre,	habitāvi,	habitātum,	to dwell.
Hōnōro,	honorāre,	honorāvi,	honorātum,	to honor.
Lībĕro,	liberāre,	liberāvi,	liberātum,	to free.
Nōmīno,	nomināre,	nomināvi,	nominātum,	to name.
Pugno,	pugnāre,	pugnāvi,	pugnātum,	to fight.
Spĕro,	sperāre,	sperāvi,	sperātum,	to hope.
Vōco,	vocāre,	vocāvi,	vocātum,	to call.

CLASS II. IRREGULAR FORMATION.²—*Three Irregularities.*

262. **First Irregularity.**—*Perfect (and generally Supine) after the Analogy of the Second Conjugation.*

Principal Parts in : **o**, **āre**, **ui**, **itum** (*generally*).

Crĕpo,	crepāre,	crepui,	crepĭtum,	to creak.
--------	----------	---------	-----------	-----------

Incrĕpo, āre, ui (āvi), itum, (ātum) ; discrĕpo, āre, ui (āvi) —.

Cūbo,	cubāre,	cubui,	cubĭtum,	to recline. ³
Dōmo,	domāre,	domui,	domĭtum,	to tame.
Enĕco,	enecāre,	enēcui,	enectum,	to kill. ⁴

¹ The Perfect-Formation is selected as the special basis of this classification, because the irregularities of the other principal parts are less important and can be readily associated with this formation.

² The lists contain all the simple verbs which belong to this class and such compounds as deviate in any important particular from their simple verbs.

³ Compounds which insert *m*, as *accumbo*, etc., are of Conj. III. See 276. II. 1.

⁴ The simple *nĕco* is regular, and even in the compound the forms in *āvi* and *ātum* occur.

Fricō,	fricāre,	fricui,	{ frictum, fricatūm,	to rub.
Mīco,	micāre,	micui,	_____	to glitter.

Dimīco, āre, āvi (ui), ātum; emīco, āre, ui, ātum.

Plico,	plicāre,	{ plicui, plicāvi,	{ plicitūm, plicātūm,	to fold.
--------	----------	-----------------------	--------------------------	----------

Duplico, multiplico, replico, and supplico are regular: āre, āvi, ātum.

Sēco,	secāre,	secui,	sectum,	to cut.
-------	---------	--------	---------	---------

Participle, *secatūrus*.

Sōno,	sonāre,	sonui,	sonitum,	to sound.
-------	---------	--------	----------	-----------

Participle, *sonatūrus*. Most compounds want Sup. *Resōno* has Perf. *resonāvi*.

Tōno,	tonāre,	tonui,	(tonitūm),	to thunder.
Vēto,	vetāre,	vetui,	vetitūm,	to forbid.

1. *Pōto, āre, āvi, ātum*, to drink, has also *pōtum* in the supine.

2. The Passive Participles *coenātus* and *jurātus* (*coeno*, to dine, and *jūro*, to swear) are active in signification, *having dined*, etc. *Pōtus*, from *pōto*, is also sometime active.

263. Second Irregularity.—*Perfect lengthens Stem-Vowel.*

Principal Parts in : **o, āre, i, tum.**

Jūvo,	juvāre,	jūvi,	jūtum,	to assist.
-------	---------	-------	--------	------------

Participle *juvatūrus*, but in compounds *jutūrus* is also used.

Lāvo,	lavāre,	lāvi,	{ lautum, lotum, lavātum,	to wash.
-------	---------	-------	---------------------------------	----------

In poetry this is sometimes of Conj. III.: *lāro, lavēre, lāvi*, etc.

264. Third Irregularity.—*Perfect Reduplicated.*

Principal Parts in : **o, āre, i, tum.**

Do,	dāre,	dēdi,	dātum,	to give.
Sto,	stāre,	stēti,	stātum,	to stand.

1. In *do* the characteristic is short by exception: *dābam, dābo, dārem*, etc. Four compounds of *do*, *circumdo, pessumdo, satīdo* and *venumdo*, are conjugated like the simple verb; the rest are dissyllable and of the third Conj. (250).

2. Compounds of *sto* are conjugated like the simple verb, if the first part is a dissyllable, otherwise they take *stīti* for *stēti*: *adsto, adstāre, adstīti, adstātum*. *Disto* wants Perf. and Sup.

265. DEPONENT VERBS.

In this conjugation deponent verbs are entirely regular. Thus,

Cōnor,	conāri,	conātus sum,	to endeavor.
Hortor,	hortāri,	hortātus sum,	to exhort.
Miror,	mirāri,	mirātus sum,	to admire.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

CLASS I. REGULAR FORMATION.

266. Principal Parts in: { I. eo, ēre, ēvi, ētum.¹
 II. eo, ēre, ui, ĭtum.
 III. eo, ēre, ui, tum or sum.

I. eo, ēre, ēvi, ētum.

These endings belong to the following verbs:

Compleo, complēre, complēvi, completum, to fill.

So other compounds of *pleo*; as *expleo*, *impleo*.

Dēleo, delēre, delēvi, delētum, to destroy.

Fleo, flēre, flēvi, flētum, to weep.

Neo, nēre, nēvi, nētum, to spin.

1. *Abōleo*, *abolēre*, *abolēvi*, *abolitum*, to destroy, is compounded of *ab* and *oleo* (not used). The other compounds of *oleo* generally end in *esco*, and are of the third conjugation. See *abōlesco*, 276. II. 1.

2. *Vieo*, *viēre*, *viētum*, to weave, bend, is rare, except in the participle *viētus*.

II. eo, ēre, ui, ĭtum.

These endings belong to most verbs of this conjugation. The following are examples:

Cāreo, carēre, carui, caritum, to be without.

Dēbeo, debēre, debui, debitum, to owe.

Hābeo, habēre, habui, habitum, to have.

Mōneo, monēre, monui, monitum, to advise.

Nōceo, nocēre, nocui, nocitum, to hurt.

Pāreo, parēre, parui, paritum, to obey.

Plāceo, placēre, placui, placitum, to please.

Tāceo, tacēre, tacui, tacitum, to be silent.

III. eo, ēre, ui, tum or sum.

These endings, slightly irregular in the Supine, belong to the following verbs:

Censeo, censēre, censui, censum, to think.

Perf. Part. *census* and *censitus*.—*Percenseo* wants Sup.; *recenseo* has *recensum* and *recensitum*.

Dōceo, docēre, docui, doctum, to teach.

Misceo, miscēre, miscui, { mistum, to mix.

Tēceo, tenēre, tenui, { mixtum, to hold.

Detīneo, *ēre*, *ui*, *detentum*; so *obtīneo* and *retīneo*; other compounds seldom have Sup.

Torro, torrēre, torrui, tostum, to roast.

¹ We class *ēvi* and *ētum*, though belonging to but few verbs, with the regular formations, because they are the full and original forms from which the more common *ui* and *ĭtum* are derived. See 247. 1.

267. SUPINE WANTING.—Many verbs, regular in the Perfect, want the Supine: the following are the most important:

Aceo, <i>to be sour.</i>	Mādeo, <i>to be wet.</i>	Sordeo, <i>to be sordid.</i>
Calleo, <i>to be skilled.</i>	Nīteo, <i>to shine.</i>	Splendeo, <i>to shine.</i>
Candeo, <i>to shine.</i>	Oleo, <i>to smell.</i>	Stūdeo, <i>to study.</i>
Egeo, <i>to want.</i>	Palleo, <i>to be pale.</i>	Stūpeo, <i>to be amazed</i>
Emīneo, <i>to stand forth.</i>	Pāteo, <i>to be open.</i>	Tīmeo, <i>to fear.</i>
Flōreo, <i>to bloom.</i>	Rīgeo, <i>to be stiff.</i>	Torpeo, <i>to be torpid.</i>
Frondeo, <i>to bear leaves.</i>	Rūbeo, <i>to be red.</i>	Tūmeo, <i>to swell.</i>
Horreo, <i>to shudder.</i>	Sīleo, <i>to be silent.</i>	Vīgeo, <i>to flourish.</i>
Lāteo, <i>to be hid.</i>	Sorbeo, <i>to swallow.</i>	Vīreo, <i>to be green.</i>

268. PERFECT AND SUPINE WANTING.—Some verbs, derived mostly from adjectives, want both Perfect and Supine: the following are the most important:

Albeo, <i>to be white.</i>	Hēbeo, <i>to be blunt.</i>	Polleo, <i>to be powerful.</i>
Aveo, <i>to covet.</i>	Hūmeo, <i>to be moist.</i>	Reuīdeo, <i>to shine.</i>
Calveo, <i>to be bald.</i>	Immīneo, <i>to threaten.</i>	Seāteo, <i>to gush forth.</i>
Cāneo, <i>to be gray.</i>	Lacteo, <i>to suck.</i>	Squāleo, <i>to be filthy.</i>
Flāveo, <i>to be yellow.</i>	Līveo, <i>to be livid.</i>	Vēgeo, <i>to be lively.</i>
Foetco, <i>to be fetid.</i>	Maereo, <i>to be sad.</i>	

CLASS II. IRREGULAR FORMATION.—*Three Irregularities.*

269. First Irregularity.—*Perfect in si (rarely i) after the Analogy of the Third Conjugation:*

Principal Parts in: **eo, ēre, si (i), tum or sum.**

Algeo,	algēre,	alsi,	—	<i>to be cold.</i>
Ardeo,	ardēre,	arsi,	arsum,	<i>to burn.</i>
Augeo,	augēre,	auxi (<i>gsi</i>),	auctum,	<i>to increase.</i>
Connīveo,	connīvēre.	{ connīvi,	—	<i>to wink at.</i>
		{ connīxi,		
Ferveo,	fervēre,	{ fervi,		<i>to boil.</i>
		{ ferbui,		
Frīgeo,	frigēre,	frixi (<i>rare</i>),	—	<i>to be cold.</i>
Fulgeo,	fulgēre,	fulsi,	—	<i>to shine.</i>

Poetic *fulgo, fulgēre*, etc.

Haereo,	haerēre,	haesi,	haesum,	<i>to stick.</i>
Indulgeo,	indulgēre,	indulsi,	indultum,	<i>to indulge.</i>
Jūbeo,	jubēre,	jussi,	jussum,	<i>to order.</i>
Languéo,	languēre,	langui,	—	<i>to be languid.</i>
Līqueo,	liquēre,	liqui (<i>licui</i>),	—	<i>to be liquid.</i>
Lūceo,	lucēre,	luxi,	—	<i>to shine.</i>
Lūgeo,	lugēre,	luxi,	—	<i>to mourn.</i>
Māneo,	manēre,	mansi,	mansum,	<i>to remain.</i>
Mulceo,	mulecēre,	mulsi,	mulsum,	<i>to caress.</i>

Compounds have *mulsum* or *mulctum*.

Mulgeo,	mulgēre,	mulsi,	mulsum,	<i>to milk.</i>
Prandeo,	prandēre,	prandi,	pransum,	<i>to dine.</i>

Participle, *pransus*, in an active sense, *having dined*.

Rideo,	rīdēre,	rīsi,	rīsum,	to laugh.
Strideo,	strīdēre,	strīdi,	—	to creak.
Suādeo,	suādēre,	suāsi,	suasum,	to advise.
Tergeo,	tergēre,	tersi,	tersum,	to wipe.

Tergo, of Conj. III., also occurs: *tergo, ēre, si, sum*.

Torquco,	torquēre,	torsi,	tortum,	to twist.
Turgeo,	turgēre,	tursi (<i>rare</i>),	—	to swell.
Urgeo (urgueo) urgēre,		ursi,	—	to press.

1. *Cieo, ciēre, cīvi, cītum*, to arouse, has a kindred form, *cio, cīre, cīvi, cītum*, from which it seems to have obtained its perfect. In compounds the forms of the fourth Conj. prevail, especially in the sense of *to call, call forth*.

2. For *Euphonic Changes* before *si* in the Perfect, see 248. I.

270. Second Irregularity.—Perfect lengthens Stem-Vowel.

Principal Parts in : **eo, ēre, i, tum (sum).**

Cāveo,	cavēre,	cāvi,	cautum,	to beware.
Fāveo,	favēre,	fāvi,	fautum,	to favor.
Fōveo,	fovēre,	fōvi,	fōtum,	to cherish.
Mōveo,	movēre,	mōvi,	mōtum,	to move.
Pāveo,	pavēre,	pāvi,	—	to fear.
Sēdeo,	sedēre,	sēdi,	sessum,	to sit.

So *circumsēdeo* and *supersēdeo*. Other compounds thus: *assīdeo, ēre, assēdi, assessum*; but *dissīdeo, praesīdeo*, and *resīdeo* want Supine.

Vīdeo,	vīdēre,	vīdi,	vīsum,	to see.
Vōveo,	vovēre,	vōvi,	vōtum,	to vow.

271. Third Irregularity.—Perfect Reduplicated.

Principal Parts in : **eo, ēre, i, sum.**

Mordeo,	mordēre,	mōmordi,	morsum,	to bite.
Pendeo,	pendēre,	pēpendi,	pensum,	to hang.
Spondeo,	spondēre,	spōpondi,	sponsum,	to promise.
Tondeo,	tondēre,	tōtondi,	tonsum,	to shear.

For *reduplication* in compounds, see 254. 5.

272. DEPONENT VERBS.

1. Regular.

Līceor,	licēri,	licītus sum,	to bid.
Mēreor,	merēri,	merītus sum,	to deserve.
Polliceor,	pollicēri,	pollicītus sum,	to promise.
Tueor,	tuēri,	tuītus sum,	to protect.
Vēreor,	verēri,	verītus sum,	to fear.

2. Irregular.

Fāteor,	fatēri,	fassus sum,	to confess. ¹
Mēdeor,	medēri,	—	to cure.

¹ Confīteor, ēri, confessus; so profīteor

Misēreor,	miserēri,	{ miseritus sum,	to pity.
Reor,	rēri,	{ misertus sum,	to think.
		rātus sum,	

3. *Semi-Deponent*.—Deponent in the Perfect.

Audeo,	audēre,	ausus sum,	to dare.
Gaudeo,	gaudēre,	gavisus sum,	to rejoice.
Sōleo,	solēre,	solitus sum,	to be accustomed.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

CLASS I. REGULAR FORMATION IN THE PERFECT.

273. Principal Parts in :	I. o (io),	ēre, si,	tum.
	II. o,	ēre, i,	tum.
	III. o,	ēre, si or i,	sum.

I. o (io), ēre, si, tum.

These are the regular endings in verbs whose stems end in a consonant; the following are examples: ¹

Carpō,	carpēre,	carpsi,	carptum,	to pluck.
Cingō,	cingēre,	cinxī (<i>qsi</i>),	cinctum,	to gird.
Cōmō,	comēre,	compsi,	comptum,	to adorn.
Dēmō,	demēre,	dempsi,	demptum,	to take away.
Dicō,	dicēre,	dixi,	dictum,	to say.
Dūcō,	ducēre,	duxi,	ductum,	to lead.
Fingō,	figēre,	finxi,	fictum,	to feign.
Gērō,	gerēre,	gessi,	gestum,	to carry.
Nūbō,	nubēre,	nupsi,	nuptum,	to marry.
Pingō,	pingēre,	pinxi,	pietum,	to paint.
Prōmō,	promēre,	prompsi,	promptum,	to bring out.
Rēgō,	regēre,	rexī,	rectum,	to rule.
Scalpō,	scalpēre,	scalpsi,	scalptum,	to engrave.
Sūmō,	sumēre,	sumpsi,	sumptum,	to take.
Trāhō,	trahēre,	traxi,	tractum,	to draw.
Uro,	ūrēre,	ussi,	ustum,	to burn.
Vēhō,	vehēre,	vexi,	vectum,	to carry.
Vivō,	vivēre,	vixi,	victum,	to live.

1. *Change of Stem-Vowel in Compounds*; see 260.

Carpō: de-cerpo, decerpēre, decerpsi, decerptum, to pluck off.

Rēgō: di-rīgo, dirigēre, direxi, directum (260. I.), to direct.

Here *decerpo*, though it has not the same stem-vowel as the simple *carpo*, forms its principal parts precisely like the simple verb; but *dirīgo* changes the stem-vowel in forming those parts, having *i* in the Pres. and *e* in the Perf. and Sup.

2. *Compounds of Obsolete Simple Verbs* present the same vowel changes:

Lūcio (obs.): al-lūcio, allicēre, allexi, allectum (260. II.), to allure.

So *illicio*, *pellicio*. For *clicio*, see 276. II.

Spēcio (obs.): a-spīcio, aspicēre, aspexi, aspectum, to look at.

¹ For *Euphonic Changes*, see 243.

II. o, ěre, i, tum

These are the regular endings of verbs whose stems end in *u*; the following are examples:

Acuo,	ăcuěre,	acui,	acŭtum,	to sharpen.
Arguo,	arguěre,	argui,	argŭtum,	to convict.

Coarguo and *redarguo* want the Supine.

Imbuo,	imbuěre,	imbui,	imbŭtum,	to imbue.
Minuo,	minuěre,	minui,	minŭtum,	to diminish.
Ruo,	ruěre,	rui,	rŭtum,	to fall.

Part. *ruŭtŭrus*.—*Corruo* and *irruo* want Sup.

Stătuo,	statuěre,	stătui,	statŭtum,	to place.
---------	-----------	---------	-----------	-----------

Compounds change *a* into *i*: *constituo*.

Tribuo,	tribuěre,	tribui,	tribŭtum,	to impart.
---------	-----------	---------	-----------	------------

1. *Perfect xi*.—The following in *uo* form the Perf. in *xi*.

Cŏquo,	coquěre,	coxi,	coctum,	to cook.
Exstinguo,	exstinguěre,	exstinxi,	exstinctum,	to extinguish.

So other compounds of *stinguo* (rare): *distinguo*, etc.

Fluo,	fluěre,	fluxi,	fluxum,	to flow.
Struo,	struěre,	struxi,	structum,	to build.

2. *Like verbs in uo* are the following:

Ico,	icěre,	ici,	ictum,	to strike.
Solvo,	solvěre,	solvi,	solŭtum, ¹	to loose.
Volvo,	volvěre,	volvi,	volŭtum, ¹	to roll.

III. o, ěre, si or i, sum.²

These endings, slightly irregular in the Supine, belong to the following verbs:

Accendo,	accenděre,	accendi,	accensum,	to kindle.
----------	------------	----------	-----------	------------

So other compounds of *cando* (obsolete): *incendo*, *succendo*.

Cĕdo,	ceděre,	cessi,	cessum,	to yield.
Claudo,	clauděre,	clausi,	clausum,	to close.

Compounds have *u* for *au*: *conclŭdo*, *exclŭdo*.

Cŭdo,	euděre,	cŭdi,	cŭsum,	to forge.
Dĕfendo,	defenděre,	defendi,	defensum,	to defend.

So other compounds of *fendo* (obsolete): *offendo*, etc.

Divĭdo,	dividěre,	divĭsi,	divĭsum,	to divide.
Evĕdo,	evaděre,	evĕsi,	evĕsum,	to evade.

So other compounds of *vado*, 275.

Fĭgo,	figěre,	fixi,	fixum,	to fasten.
Fĭndo,	finděre,	fĭdi (findi),	fissum,	to part.
Flecto,	flectěre,	flexi,	flexum,	to bend.

¹ *f* is here changed to its corresponding vowel *u*: *volŭtum* for *volvtum*.

² For euphonic changes before *sum*, see 257. 1.

Fluo,	fluĕre,	fluxi,	fluxum,	to flow.
Frendo,	frendĕre,	—	{ frĕsum,	to gnash.
Laedo,	laedĕre,	laesi,	{ fressum,	to hurt.
			laesum,	

Compounds have *i* for *ae*: *illido*, etc.

Lūdo,	ludĕre,	lūsi,	lūsum,	to play.
Mando,	mandĕre,	mandi,	mansum,	to chew.
Mergo,	mergĕre,	mersi,	mersum,	to dip.
Mitto,	mittĕre,	mīsi,	misum,	to send.
Necto,	nectĕre,	{ nexi,	nexum,	to bind.
		{ nexui, ¹		
Pando,	pandĕre,	pandi,	{ passum,	to open.
Pecto,	pectĕre,	pexi,	{ pansum,	to comb.
			pexum,	
Pinso (pīso),	pinsĕre,	{ pinsi,	{ pinsitum,	to pound.
		{ pinsui,	{ pistum,	
Plecto,	plectĕre,	plexi,	plexum,	to plait.
Plaudo,	plaudĕre,	plausi,	plausum,	to applaud.

So *applaudo*; other compounds have *o* for *au*: *explōdo*, etc.

Prĕhendo,	prehendĕre,	prehendi,	prehensum,	to grasp.
-----------	-------------	-----------	------------	-----------

Often written, *prendo*, *prendĕre*, etc.

Prĕmo,	premĕre,	pressi,	pressum (248. I. 4),	to press.
Quātio,	quatĕre,	quassi,	quassum (248. I. 2),	to shake.

Compounds have *eu* for *qua*: *concūto*, etc.

Rādo,	radĕre,	rāsi,	rāsum,	to shave.
Rōdo,	rodĕre,	rōsi,	rōsum,	to gnaw.
Scando,	scandĕre,	scandi,	scansum,	to climb.

Compounds have *e* for *a*: *ascendo*, *descendo*.

Scindo,	scindĕre,	scīdi,	scissum,	to rend.
Spargo,	spargĕre,	sparsi,	sparsum,	to scatter.

Compounds generally have *e* for *a*: *aspergo*, *respergo*.

Tergo,	tergĕre,	tersi,	tersum,	to wipe off.
--------	----------	--------	---------	--------------

Also *tergeo*, *tergĕre* (Conj. II.); compounds take this form.

Trūdo,	trudĕre,	trūsi,	trūsum,	to thrust.
Vello,	vellĕre,	velli (vulsi),	vulsum,	to pluck.

Compounds in good use generally have *velli*.

Verro,	verrĕre,	verri,	versum,	to brush.
Verto,	vertĕre,	verti,	versum,	to turn.

Compounds of *de*, *prae*, *re*, are generally deponent in the *Pres.*, *Imperf.*, and *Future*.

Vīso,	visĕre,	vīsi,	vīsum,	to visit.
-------	---------	-------	--------	-----------

¹ Compounds take this form in the Perfect.

274. SUPINE WANTING.—The following verbs, regular in the Perfect, want the Supine :

Ango, ěre, anxi, *to strangle.*

Annuo, ěre, i, *to assent.*

So other compounds of *nuo*, but *abnuo*, has Part. *abnuiturus*.

Bātuō, ěre, i, *to beat.*

Bibo, ěre, i, *to drink.*

Congruo, ěre, i, *to agree.*

Ingruo, ěre, i, *to assail.*

Lambo, ěre, i, *to lick.*

Luo, ěre, i, *to wash.*

Part. *luiturus*. Compounds—*abluo*, *al-luo*, etc. have Sup. *lūtum*.

Mētuō, ěre, i, *to fear.*

Ningo, ěre, ninxi, *to snow.*

Nuo, *obs.*; see *annuo*.

Pluo, ěre, i or vi, *to rain.*

Psallo, ěre, i, *to play on a stringed instrument.*

Sīdo, ěre, i, *to sit down.*

Perf. and Sup. generally supplied from *sēdeo*; hence *sēdi*, *sessum*. So in compounds.

Strīdo, ěre, i, *to creak.*

Also *strīdeo*, ěre (Conj. II.).

Sternuo, ěre, i, *to sneeze.*

275. PERFECT AND SUPINE WANTING.—Some verbs want both Perfect and Supine.

1. The following :

Clango, *to clang.*

Claudo, *to be lame.*

Glisco, *to grow.*

Hisco, *to gape.*

Stingo, *to quench;*

but *distinguo*, ěre,

distinxi, *distinctum*;

so *exstinguo*.

Temno, *to despise;* but

contemno, ěre, con-

tempsi, *contemptum*.

Vādo, *to go.* See *evā-*

do, 273. III.

Vergo, *to incline.*

2. Many Inceptives. See 281. II. 1.

CLASS II. IRREGULAR FORMATION.—*Three Irregularities.*¹

276. First Irregularity.—*Perfect after the Analogy of other Conjugations.*

I. Perfect in āvi, as in Conjugation I.

Invēterasco, inveterascēre, inveterāvi, inveterātum, *to grow old.*

Pasco, pascēre, pāvi, pastum, *to feed.*

Sterno, sternēre, strāvi, strātum, *to strew.*

Vētērasco, veterascēre, veterāvi, —, *to grow old.*

II. Perfect in ēvi, ui, as in Conjugation II.

1. The following :

Abōlesco, abolescēre, abolēvi, abolitum, *to disappear.*

So *inōlesco*; but *adōlesco* has Supine *adultum*; *exōlesco*, *exolētum*; *obsōlesco*, *obsoletum*.

Accumbo, accumbēre, accūbui, accubitum, *to recline.*

So other compounds of *cumbo*, *cubo*. See *cubo*, 262.

¹ For convenience of reference a *General List* of all verbs involving irregularities will be found on page 328.

Alo,	ālĕre,	alui,	{ alĭtum, altum,	to nourish.
Cello, <i>obsolete</i> .	See excello below.			
Cerno,	cernĕre	erĕvi,	erĕtum,	to decide.
Cŭlo,	colĕre,	colui,	cultum,	to cultivate.
Compesco,	compescĕre,	compescui,	—	to restrain.
Consŭlo,	consulĕre,	consului,	cousultum,	to consult.
Cresco,	crescere,	erĕvi,	erĕtum,	to grow.

Increseo and succresco want Supine.

Cumbo for cubo, in compounds: see accumbo.

Depso,	depsĕre,	depsui,	{ depsĭtum, depstum,	to knead.
Elicio,	ĕlicĕre,	elicui,	elicĭtum,	to elicit.

Other compounds of *lacio*, thus: *allicio*, *ĕre*, *allexi*, *allectum*.

Excello,	excellĕre,	excellui (<i>rare</i>),	—	to excel.
----------	------------	---------------------------	---	-----------

Other compounds of *cello* want Perf. and Sup., except *percello*, *percellĕre*, *percŭli*, *perculsum*.

Frĕmo,	fremĕre,	fremui,	fremĭtum,	to rage.
Fŭro,	furĕre,	furui,	—	to rage.
Gĕmo,	gemĕre,	gemui,	gemĭtum,	to groan.
Gigno,	gignĕre,	gĕnui (<i>f. gĕno</i>),	genĭtum,	to beget.

Lacio, *obsolete*. See *elicio*.

Lĭno,	linĕre,	lĕvi, livi,	lĭtum,	to smear.
Mĕto,	metĕre,	messui,	messum,	to reap.
Mŏlo,	molĕre,	molui,	molĭtum,	to grind.
Necto,	nectĕre,	{ nexui, nexi,	nexum,	to bind.
Occŭlo,	occulĕre,	occului,	occultum,	to hide.
Olesco, <i>obsolete</i> .	See <i>abolesco</i> .			

Pinso,	pinsĕre,	{ pinsui, pinsi,	{ pinsĭtum, pistum, pinsum,	to crush.
Pŏno,	ponĕre,	posui,	positum,	to place.
Quiesco,	quiescĕre,	quiĕvi,	quiĕtum,	to rest.
Răpio,	rapĕre,	rapui,	raptum,	to snatch.

Compounds thus: *corrĭpio*, *corripĕre*, *corripui*, *correptum*.

Sĕro,	serĕre,	serui,	sertum,	to connect.
Sĕro,	serĕre,	sĕvi,	sĕtum,	to sow.

Compounds thus: *consĕro*, *ĕre*, *consĕvi*, *consĭtum*.

Sperno,	spĕrĕre,	sprĕvi,	sprĕtum,	to spurn.
Sterto,	stertĕre,	stertui,	—	to snore.
Strĕpo,	strepĕre,	strepui,	strepĭtum,	to make a noise.
Suesco,	suescĕre,	suĕvi,	suĕtum,	to become accustomed.
Texo,	texĕre,	texui,	textum,	to weave.
Trĕmo,	tremĕre,	tremui,	—	to tremble.
Vŏmo,	vomĕre,	vomui,	vomĭtum,	to vomit.

2. Many Inceptives in *esco* form the Perfect in *ui* from their primitives. See 281. I. 2.

III. Perfect in *ivi*, as in Conjugation IV.

1. The following:

Arcesso,	arcessĕre,	arcessĭvi,	arcessĭtum,	to call for.
Cāpresso,	capessĕre,	capessĭvi,	capessĭtum,	to lay hold of.
Cūpio,	cupĕre,	cupĭvi,	cupĭtum,	to desire.
Fācesso,	facessĕre,	{ facessĭvi,	facessĭtum,	to make.
		{ facessi,		
Incesso,	incessĕre,	incessĭvi or -cessi,	—	to attack.
Lācesso,	laccessĕre,	laccessĭvi,	laccessĭtum,	to provoke.
Līno,	linĕre,	livi or lĕvi,	lĭtum,	to smear.
Pĕto,	petĕre,	petĭvi,	petĭtum,	to ask.
Quacro,	quaerĕre,	quacsĭvi,	quacsĭtum,	to seek.

Compounds thus: *acquĭro*, *ĕre*, *acquisĭvi*, *acquisĭtum*.

Rūdo,	rudĕre,	rudĭvi,	rudĭtum,	to bray.
Sāpio.	sapĕre,	sapĭvi, sapui,	—	to taste.

Compounds have *i* for *a*, as *resĭpio*. *Desĭpio* wants Perf. and Sup.

Sĭno.	sinerĕ,	sĭvi,	sĭtum,	to permit.
Tĕro,	teĕre,	trĭvi,	trĭtum,	to rub.

2. A few Inchoatives in *isco* form the Perfect in *ivi* from their primitives. See 281. I. 2.

277. PERFECT IN *ōvi*.—*Nosco* and its compounds form the perfect in *ōvi* after the analogy of *ŭvi*, *ēvi*, and *īvi*:

Nosco,	noscĕre,	nōvi,	nōtum,	to know.
--------	----------	-------	--------	----------

So *ignosco*.—*Agnosco* and *cognosco* have *ĭtum* in Sup., *agnĭtum*; *dignosco* and *internosco* want Supine.

278. VOWEL CONJUGATION.—*Nosco*, verbs in *uo*, and regular verbs of the first, second, and fourth conjugations form a complete *vowel-conjugation*, whose Perfects and Supines in the full form are entirely analogous, as follows:

ao,	āvi,	ātum;	amo (ao),	amāvi,	amātum.
eo,	ēvi,	ētum;	deleo,	delēvi,	delētum.
io,	īvi,	ītum;	audio,	audīvi,	audītum.
oo,	ōvi,	ōtum;	nosco (noo),	nōvi,	nōtum.
uo,	u(v)i,	ūtum;	acuō,	acu(v)i,	acūtum.

279. Second Irregularity.—*Perfect lengthens Stem-Vowel*. See 253. 1 and 2.

Ago,	āgĕre,	ēgi,	actum,	to drive.
------	--------	------	--------	-----------

So *circumāgo* and *perāgo*; *satāgo* wants Perf. and Snp. Other compounds change *a* into *i* in the Pres.: *alĭgo*, *ĕre*, *abēgi*, *abactum*; but *coĭgo* becomes *cōgo*, *ĕre*, *coēgi*, *coactum*, and *deĭgo*, *dēgo*, *ĕre*, *dēgi*, without Sup. *Prodĭgo* wants Sup., and *ambĭgo*, Perf. and Sup.

Cāpio,	capĕre,	cēpi,	captum,	to take.
--------	---------	-------	---------	----------

So *anteēpio*; other compounds thus: *accĭpio*, *ĕre*, *accēpi*, *acceptum*.

Edo,	ēdere,	ēdi,	ēsum,	to eat.
Emo,	ēmēre,	ēmi,	emptum,	to buy.

So *coēmo*; other compounds thus: *adīmo, ēre, adēmī, ademptum*.

Facio,	facere,	feci,	factum,	to make.
--------	---------	-------	---------	----------

Passive irregular: *fiō, fieri, factus sum*. See 294.

So *satisfacio* and compounds of *facio* with verbs, but compounds with prepositions thus: *conficio, conficere, confeci, confectum*, with regular Pass. *conficior, confici, confectus sum*.—Compounds of *facio* with nouns and adjectives are of Conj.

I.: *significo, are, avi, atum*.

Fodio,	fodere,	fodi,	fossum,	to dig.
Frango,	frangere,	frēgi,	fractum,	to break.

Compounds thus: *confringo, ēre, confrēgi, confractum*.

Fugio,	fugere,	fūgi,	fugitum,	to flee.
Fundo,	fundere,	fūdi,	fusum,	to pour.
Jacio,	jacere,	jēci,	jactum,	to throw.

Superjacio has *jactum* or *jectum* in Sup.; other compounds thus: *abjicio, ēre, abjēci, abjectum*.

Lēgo,	legere,	lēgi,	lectum,	to read.
-------	---------	-------	---------	----------

So compounds, except (1) *colligo, ēre, collēgi, collectum*; so *deligo, eligo, seligo*,—(2) *diligo, ēre, dilēxi, dilectum*; so *intelligo, negligo*.

Linquo,	linquere,	liqui,	—	to leave.
---------	-----------	--------	---	-----------

Compounds with Sup.: *relinquo, ēre, reliqui, relictum*.

Rumpo,	rumpere,	rūpi,	ruptum,	to burst.
Scābo,	scabere,	scābi,	—	to scratch.
Vinco,	vincere,	vīci,	victum,	to conquer.

280. Third Irregularity.—Perfect Reduplicated. See 254. 1–5.

Abdo,	abdere,	abdīdi,	abditum,	to hide.
-------	---------	---------	----------	----------

So all compounds of *do*, except those of Conj. I. (264): *addo, condo, crēdo, dēdo, ēdo, indo, obdo, perdo, prōdo, reddo, trādo, rendo*; but *abs-condo* generally drops reduplication: *abs-condi*.

Cādo,	cadere,	cēcīdi,	cāsum,	to fall.
-------	---------	---------	--------	----------

Incido, ēre, incīdi, incāsum; so *occido* and *recido*; other compounds want *supine*.

Caedo,	caedere,	cēcīdi,	caesum,	to cut.
--------	----------	---------	---------	---------

Compounds thus: *concido, ēre, concīdi, concīsum*.

Cāno,	canere,	cēcīni,	cantum,	to sing.
-------	---------	---------	---------	----------

Concīno, ēre, concīnui, —; so *cecīno* and *praececīno*; other compounds want Perf. and Sup.

Crēdo,	credere,	credīdi,	creditum, ¹	to believe.
--------	----------	----------	------------------------	-------------

¹ Explained as compound of *do*; see *abdo*.

281. INCEPTIVES.

Inceptives end in *sco*, and denote the beginning of an action. When formed from verbs, they are called *Verbal Inceptives*, and when formed from nouns or adjectives, *Denominative Inceptives*.

I. Verbal Inceptives.

1. Most verbal inceptives want the *Supine*, but take the *Perfect* of their primitives.

The following are examples:

Acesco	(<i>aceo</i>),	acescere,	acui,	—	to become sour.
Aresco	(<i>areo</i>),	arescere,	arui,	—	to become dry.
Călesco	(<i>căleo</i>),	calescere,	calui,	—	to become warm.
Flăresco	(<i>flăreo</i>),	florescere,	florui,	—	to begin to bloom.
Mădesco	(<i>mădeo</i>),	madescere,	madui,	—	to become moist.
Tăpesco	(<i>tăpeo</i>),	tepscere,	tăpui,	—	to become warm.
Viresco	(<i>vireo</i>),	virescere,	vîrui,	—	to become green.

2. The following take the *Perfect* and *Supine* of their primitives:

Abălesco	(<i>ab, oleo</i>),	ěre,	ăbolěvi,	abolĭtum, ¹	to disappear.
Coălesco	(<i>con, alo</i>),	ěre,	coălui,	coalĭtum,	to coalesce.
Concŭpisco	(<i>con, cupio</i>),	ěre,	concupĭvi,	concupĭtum,	to desire.
Convălesco	(<i>con, valeo</i>),	ěre,	convălui,	convălĭtum,	to grow strong.
Exardesco	(<i>ex, ardeo</i>),	ěre,	exarsi,	exarsum,	to burn.
Invětėrasco	(<i>invětėro</i>),	ěre,	inveterăvi,	inveterătum,	to grow old.
Obdormisco	(<i>ob, dormio</i>),	ěre,	obdormĭvi,	obdormĭtum,	to fall asleep.
Rěvĭsco	(<i>re, vivo</i>),	ěre,	revixi,	revictum,	to revive.
Scisco	(<i>scio</i>),	ěre,	scĭvi,	scĭtum,	to enact.

3. The following are Inceptives only in form:

Cresco	crescere,	crěvi,	crětum,	to grow.
Fătisco	faticere,	—	—	to gape.
Glisco	gliscere,	—	—	to swell.
Nosco	noscere,	nōvi,	nōtum,	to know.
Pasco	pascere,	pāvi,	pastum,	to feed.
Quiesco	quiescere,	quiěvi,	quiětum,	to be quiet.
Suesco	suscere,	suěvi,	suětum,	to be accustomed.

II. Denominative Inceptives.

1. Most denominative inceptives want both *Perfect* and *Supine*. Thus

Aegresco	(<i>aeger</i>),	to grow sick.	Jŭvėnesco	(<i>jŭvėnis</i>),	to become a youth.
Dĭtesco	(<i>dĭves</i>),	to grow rich.	Mĭtesco	(<i>mĭtis</i>),	to grow mild.
Dulcesco	(<i>dulcis</i>),	to become sweet.	Mollesco	(<i>mollis</i>),	to grow soft.
Grandesco	(<i>grandis</i>),	to grow large.	Puėrasco	(<i>puer</i>),	to become a boy.
Grăvesco	(<i>grăvis</i>),	to grow heavy.	Pinguesco	(<i>pĭnguis</i>),	to grow fat.

2. The following have the *Perfect* in *ui*:

Crėbresco	(<i>creber</i>),	ěre,	crėbrui,	to become frequent.
Dŭresco	(<i>durus</i>),	ěre,	dŭrui,	to become hard.

¹ So *inŭl-sco*; but *adol-sco* has Sup. *adultum*; *exŭlesco*, *exolĕtum*; *obsŭlesco*, *obsolĕtum*.

Evānesco	(<i>e, vanus</i>),	ěre,	ěvānui,	to vanish.
Innōtesco	(<i>in, notus</i>),	ěre,	innōtui,	to become known.
Macresco	(<i>macer</i>),	ěre,	macrui,	to become lean.
Mātūresco	(<i>matūrus</i>),	ěre,	mātūrui,	to ripen.
Nigresco	(<i>niger</i>),	ěre,	nigrui,	to become black.
Obmūtesco	(<i>ob, mātus</i>),	ěre,	obmūtui,	to grow dumb.
Obsurdesco	(<i>ob, surdus</i>),	ěre,	obsurđui,	to become deaf.
Recrūdesco	(<i>re, crūdus</i>),	ěre,	recrūdui,	to bleed afresh.
Vīlesco	(<i>vīlis</i>),	ěre,	vīlui,	to become worthless.

282. DEPONENT VERES.

Amplector,	i,	amplexus sum,	to embrace.
------------	----	---------------	-------------

So compector, circumpector.

Apiscor,	i,	aptus sum,	to obtain.
----------	----	------------	------------

Adīpiscor, i, adeptus sum, so indīpiscor.

Commīniscor,	i,	commentus sum,	to devise.
--------------	----	----------------	------------

Remīniscor wants Perf.

Expergiscor,	i,	experrectus sum,	to awake.
--------------	----	------------------	-----------

Fātiscor,	i,	_____	to gape.
-----------	----	-------	----------

Defētiscor, i, defessus sum.

Fruor,	frui,	{ fructus sum,	to enjoy.
		{ frūitus sum,	

Part. fruitūrus.

Fungor,	i,	functus sum,	to perform.
---------	----	--------------	-------------

Grādior,	i,	gressus sum,	to walk.
----------	----	--------------	----------

Compounds thus: aggrēdior, i, aggressus sum.

Irascor,	i,	_____	to be angry.
----------	----	-------	--------------

Lābor,	i,	lapsus sum,	to fall.
--------	----	-------------	----------

Līquor,	i,	_____	to melt.
---------	----	-------	----------

Lōquor,	i,	locūtus sum,	to speak.
---------	----	--------------	-----------

Miniscor, obsolete; see commīniscor.

Mōrior,	i (īri, rare),	mortuus sum,	to die.
---------	----------------	--------------	---------

Part. morītūrus.

Nanciscor,	i,	nactus (nactus) sum,	to obtain.
------------	----	----------------------	------------

Nascor,	i,	nātus sum,	to be born.
---------	----	------------	-------------

Part. nascītūrus.

Nītor,	i,	{ nīsus sum,	to strive.
		{ nīsus sum,	

Obliviscor,	i,	oblītus sum,	to forget.
-------------	----	--------------	------------

Pāciscor,	i,	pactus sum,	to bargain
-----------	----	-------------	------------

Pātior,	i,	passus sum,	to suffer.
---------	----	-------------	------------

Perpētior, i, perpessus sum.

Plector, not used as Dep.; see amplector.

Prōfīciscor,	i,	profectus sum,	to set out.
--------------	----	----------------	-------------

Quēror,	i,	questus sum,	to complain.
---------	----	--------------	--------------

Rēmīniscor,	i,	_____	to remember.
-------------	----	-------	--------------

Ringor,	i,	_____	to growl.
---------	----	-------	-----------

Sēquor,	i,	secūtus sum,	to follow.
---------	----	--------------	------------

Tuor, *antiquated form for tueor*, 272. 1.

Ulcisor, i, ultus sum, *to avenge.*

Utor, i, ūsus sum, *to use.*

Vertor; *see* devertor, praevertor, revertor, 273. III.

Vescor, i, ——— *to eat.*

Semi-Deponent.

Fido, fidere, fīsus sum, *to trust.*

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

CLASS I. REGULAR FORMATION.

283. Principal Parts in: **io, ire, īvi, itum.**

The following are examples:

Audio,	audire,	audivi,	auditum,	<i>to hear.</i>
Condio,	condire,	condivi,	conditum,	<i>to season.</i>
Finio,	finire,	finivi,	finitum,	<i>to finish.</i>
Lēnio,	lenire,	lenivi,	lenitum,	<i>to alleviate.</i>
Mūnio,	munire,	munivi,	munitum,	<i>to fortify.</i>
Pūnio,	punire,	punivi,	punitum,	<i>to punish.</i>
Scio,	scire,	scivi,	scitum,	<i>to know.</i>
Sēpēlio,	sepelire,	sepelivi,	sepultum, ¹	<i>to bury.</i>
Sitio,	sitire,	sitivi,	————	<i>to thirst.</i>
Vāgio,	vagire,	vagivi,	————	<i>to cry.</i>

1. *Perfect in ii for īvi.*—*V* is often dropped in the ending of the Perfect; *audi* for *audivi*. See 234. 1.

2. *Perfect and Supine Wanting.*—Desideratives (332. III.), except *exūrio*, *ire*, —, *itum*; *nuptūrio*, *ire*, *īvi*, and *partūrio*, *ire*, *īvi*, want both Perf. and Sup. Also a few others:

Balbūtio,	<i>to stammer.</i>	Gannio,	<i>to bark.</i>	Singultio, <i>to sob.</i>
Caecūtio,	<i>to be blind.</i>	Ineptio,	<i>to trifle.</i>	Sūperbio, <i>to be proud.</i>
Fērio,	<i>to strike.</i>	Sēgio,	<i>to be wise.</i>	Tussio, <i>to cough.</i>
Fērōcio,	<i>to be fierce.</i>			

CLASS II. IRREGULAR FORMATION.—*Two Irregularities.*

284. **First Irregularity.**—*Perfect after the Analogy of the Second and Third Conjugations.*

I. Perfect in ui, as in Conjugation II.

Principal Parts in: **io, ire, ui, tum.**

Amīcio,	āmīciare,	(amicui ²),	amictum,	<i>to clothe.</i>
Apērio,	āpērire,	aperui,	apertum,	<i>to open.</i> ³
Opērio,	ōpērire,	operui,	opertum,	<i>to cover.</i> ³
Sālio,	salire,	salui (ii),	(saltum),	<i>to leap.</i>

Compounds thus: *desūlio*, *ire*, *ui* (ii), (*desultum*).

¹ Supine irregular.

² Probably not in actual use.

³ From *pārio* of Conj. III.

II. Perfect in **si (i)**, as in Conjugation III.

Principal Parts in : **io, ire, si (i), tum (sum).**

Compērio,	comperīre,	compēri,	compertum,	to learn. ¹
Farcio,	fareīre,	farsi,	{ fartum, fartum,	to stuff.
Compounds thus: <i>confercio, īre, confersi, confertum.</i>				
Fulcio,	fulcīre,	fulsi,	fultum,	to prop.
Haurio,	haurīre,	hausi,	haustum, haustum,	to draw.
Raucio,	raucīre,	rausi,	ransum,	to be hoarse.
Rēpērio,	reperīre,	repēri,	reperitum,	to find. ¹
Sancio,	sancīre,	sansi,	{ sancitum, sanctum,	to ratify.
Sarcio,	sarcīre,	sarsi,	sartum,	to patch.
Sentio,	sentīre,	sensi,	sensum, ²	to feel.
Sēpio,	sepīre,	sepsi,	septum,	to hedge in.
Vincio,	vincīre,	vinxi,	vincitum,	to bind.

285. Second Irregularity.—Perfect lengthens Stem Vowel.

Vēnio,	venire,	vēni,	ventum,	to come.
So compounds: <i>advenio, convenio, devenio, invenio, obvenio, pervenio, etc.</i>				

286. DEPONENT VERBS.

1. Regular.

Blandior,	īri,	blandītus sum,	to flutter.
Largior,	īri,	largītus sum,	to bestow.
Mentior,	īri,	mentītus sum,	to lie.
Mōlior,	īri,	molītus sum,	to strive.
Partior,	īri,	partītus sum,	to divide.

Impertior, īri, impertitus sum: so *dispertior*.

Pōtior,	īri,	potītus sum, ³	to obtain.
Sortior,	īri,	sortītus sum,	to draw lots.

2. Irregular.

Assentior,	īri,	assensus sum, ⁴	to assent.
Expērior,	īri,	expertus sum, ⁵	to try.
Mētior,	īri,	mensus sum,	to measure.
Oppērior,	īri,	{ oppertus sum, ⁵ opperitus sum,	to await.
Ordior,	īri,	orsus sum,	to begin.
Orior,	īri,	ortus sum,	to rise.

Part. *orītūrus*.—Pres. Ind. of Conj. III., *orēris, oritur*. Imp. Subj., *orīrer* or *orērer*.—So compounds, but *adorior* follows Conj. IV.

¹ From *pārio* of Conj. III.

² Comp. *assentio* has a deponent form, *assentior*. See 286. 2.

³ In the Pres. Ind. and Imp. Subj., forms of Conj. III. occur.

⁴ Compounded of *ad* and *sentio*. See *scutio*, 284. II.

⁵ Compounded of *ex* and *pārio*; *ob* and *pārio*. See *comperio*, 284. II.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

287. A few verbs which have unusual personal endings, are called by way of preëminence *Irregular* or *Anomalous Verbs*. They are

Sum, edo, fero, volo, fio, eo, queo,
and their compounds.

288. *Sum, I am.*

The conjugation of *sum* has been already given (204.); its numerous compounds—*absum*,¹ *adsum*, *dēsum*, *praesum*,¹ etc.—except *possum* and *prōsum*, are conjugated in the same way.

289. *Possum, I am able.*

possum, possē, pōtūi.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

possum, pōtēs, pōtest; possumūs, pōtestīs, possunt.

IMPERFECT.

pōtērām, -ērās, -ērāt; pōtērāmūs, -ērātīs, -ērant.

FUTURE.

pōtērō, -ērīs, -ērīt; pōtērīmūs, -ērītīs, -ērunt.

PERFECT.

pōtūi, -istī, -īt; pōtūimus, -istīs, -ērunt or ērē.

PLUPERFECT.

pōtuērām, -ērās, -ērāt; pōtuērāmūs, -ērātīs, -ērant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

pōtuērō, -ērīs, -ērīt; pōtuērīmūs, -ērītīs, -ērint.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

possim, possīs, possit; possimūs, possitīs, possint.

IMPERFECT.

possēm, possēs, possēt; possēmūs, possētīs, possent.

PERFECT.

pōtuērīm, -erīs, -erīt; pōtuērīmūs, -erītīs, -erint.

¹ *Absum* and *praesum*, like *possum*, have Pres. Participles, *absens* and *praesens*.

PLUPERFECT.

pōtuissēm, -issēs, -issēt; pōtuissēmūs, -issētīs, -issent.

IMPERATIVE.—*Wanting.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES. possē.
PERF. pōtuissē.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. pōtens (*as an adjective*).

1. COMPOSITION.—*Possum* is compounded of *pōtis*, able, and *sum*, to be. The parts are sometimes separated, and then *potis* is indeclinable: *pōtis sum*, *pōtis sūmus*, etc.

2. IRREGULARITIES.—In *possum* observe

1) That *potis* drops *is* and that *t* final of the stem is assimilated before *s*: *possum* for *potsum*.

2) That *f* of the simple is dropped after *t*: *potui* for *potfui*.

3) That the Infin. *posse* and Subj. *possem* are shortened forms for *potesse* and *potessem*.

3. OLD AND RARE FORMS. See 204. 1 and 2.

290. *Prōsum*, I profit, is compounded of *pro*, for, and *sum*, to be. It inserts *d* when the simple verb begins with *e*; *prōsum*, *prōdēs*, *prōdest*, etc. Otherwise it is conjugated like *sum*.

291. *Edo*, I eat.

This verb is sometimes regular, and sometimes takes forms like those of *sum* which begin in *es*. Thus:

Edō, ēdērē, ēdī, ēsum.

INDICATIVE.—*Present.*

ēdō, —	ēdis, ēs,	ēdit; est;	ēdimūs, —	ēditīs, estis,	ēdunt. —
-----------	--------------	---------------	--------------	-------------------	-------------

SUBJUNCTIVE.—*Imperfect.*

ēdērēm, essēm.	ēdērēs, essēs,	ēdērēt; essēt;	ēdērēmūs, essēmūs,	ēdērētīs, essētīs,	ēdērent. essent.
-------------------	-------------------	-------------------	-----------------------	-----------------------	---------------------

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	{ ēdē; ēs;	ēditē. estē.	
FUT.	{ ēditō; estō;	ēditōtē, estōtē,	ēduntō. —

INFINITIVE.—*Present.*

ēdērē, essē.

1. PASSIVE FORMS.—*Estūr* for *ēdītūr* (Indic. Pres.) and *essētūr* for *ēdērētūr* (Subj. Imp.) also occur.

2. FORMS IN *IM* for *am* occur in Pres. Subj.: *ēdim*, *ēdis*, *ēdit*, etc., for *ēdām*, *ēdiās*, *ēdiāt*, etc.

3. COMPOUNDS are conjugated like the simple verb, but *comēdo* has in Sup. *comēsūm* or *comestūm*.

292. *Fero, I bear.*

ACTIVE VOICE.

Fērō, ferrē, tūli, lātūm.

INDICATIVE.

SINGULAR.

PRES. fērō, fers, fert;
IMP. fērēbām;
FUT. fērām;
PERF. tūli;
PLUP. tūlērām;
FUT. PERF. tūlērō;

PLURAL.

fērīnūs, fertis,¹ fērunt.
fērēbāmūs.
fērēmūs.
tūlīmūs.
tūlērāmūs.
tūlērīmūs.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES. fērām;
IMP. ferrēm;
PERF. tūlērīm;
PLUP. tūlissēm;

fērāmūs.
ferrēmūs.²
tūlērīmūs.
tūlissēmūs.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. fēr;³
FUT. fertō,
 fertō;

fertē.
fertōtē
feruntō.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. ferrē.²
PERF. tūlissē.
FUT. lātūrūs essē.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. fērens.
FUT. lātūrūs.

GERUND.

Gen. fērendī.
Dat. fērendō.
Acc. fērendūm.
Abl. fērendō.

SUPINE.

Acc. lātūm.
Abl. lātū.

PASSIVE VOICE.

fērōr, ferrī, latus sum.

INDICATIVE.

PRES. fērōr, ferrīs, fertūr;⁴
IMP. fērēbār;
FUT. fērār;
PERF. lātūs sūm;
PLUP. lātūs ērām;
FUT. PERF. lātūs ērō;

fērīmūr, fērīmīnī, fēruntūr.
fērēbāmūr.
fērēmūr.
lātī sūmūs.
lātī ērāmūs.
lātī ērīmūs.

¹ *Fers* for *fēris*; *fert* for *fērīt*, *fertis* for *fērītis* (*i* dropped).

² *Ferrem*, etc. for *fērērēm*, etc.; *ferrē* for *fērērē* (*e* dropped).

³ *Fēr* for *fērē*; *fertō*, *fertē*, *fertōtē* for *fērītō*, *fērītē*, *fērītōtē* (*i* dropped).

⁴ *Ferrīs* for *fērērīs*; *fertūr* for *fērītūr*.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	fērār ;	fērāmūr.
IMP.	ferrēr ;	ferrēmūr. ¹
PERF.	lātūs sīm ;	lāti sīmūs.
PLUP.	lātūs essēm ;	lāti essēmūs.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	ferrē ; ¹	fērīmīnī.
FUT.	fertōr, ² fertōr ; ²	— fēruntōr.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES.	ferī. ³	
PERF.	lātūs essē.	PERF. lātūs.
FUT.	lātūm irī.	FUT. fērendūs.

1. IRREGULARITIES.—*Fero*, it will be seen, has two principal irregularities :

- 1) It forms its Perf. and Sup. *tūli* (rarely *tetūli*) and *lātum* from obsolete stems.
- 2) It drops the connecting vowel *e* or *i* in certain forms of the Pres. Indic. and Infinitive, the Imperf. Subj. and the Imperat. It doubles *r* in the Pres. Infinitive. Pass.

2. COMPOUNDS of *fero* are conjugated like the simple verb, but in a few of them the preposition suffers a euphonic change :

<i>ab-</i>	<i>aufēro</i> ,	<i>auferre</i> ,	<i>abstūli</i> ,	<i>ablātum</i> .
<i>ad-</i>	<i>affēro</i> ,	<i>afferre</i> ,	<i>attūli</i> ,	<i>allātum</i> .
<i>con-</i>	<i>confēro</i> ,	<i>conferre</i> ,	<i>contūli</i> ,	<i>collātum</i> .
<i>dis-</i>	<i>diffēro</i> ,	<i>differre</i> ,	<i>distūli</i> ,	<i>dilātum</i> .
<i>ex-</i>	<i>effēro</i> ,	<i>efferre</i> ,	<i>extūli</i> ,	<i>elātum</i> .
<i>in-</i>	<i>infēro</i> ,	<i>inferre</i> ,	<i>intūli</i> ,	<i>illātum</i> .
<i>ob-</i>	<i>offēro</i> ,	<i>offerre</i> ,	<i>obtūli</i> ,	<i>oblātum</i> .
<i>sub-</i>	<i>suffēro</i> ,	<i>sufferre</i> ,	<i>sustūli</i> ,	<i>sublātum</i> .

Sustūli and *sublātum* are not used in the sense of *suffēro*, to bear, but they supply the Perf. and Sup. of *tollo*, to raise. See 280.

293. *Volo*, *I am willing*.—*Nolo*, *I am unwilling*.—*Malo*, *I prefer*.

vōlō,	vellē,	vōlui.
nōlō	nollē,	nōlui.
mālō,	mallē,	mālui.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

vōlō,	nōlō,	mālō,
vīs,	non vīs,	māvīs,
vult ;	non vult ;	māvult ;
vōlūmūs,	nōlūmūs,	mālūmūs,
vultīs,	non vultīs,	māvultīs,
vōlunt.	nōlunt	mālunt.

¹ *Ferrēr*, etc., for *fērērēr*, etc. ; *ferrē* for *fērērē*.

² *Fertōr* for *fērītōr*.

³ *Ferī* for *fērī* (Conj. III.).

IMPERFECT.

vôlēbām, bās, etc.		nôlēbām, bās, etc.		mālēbām, bās, etc.
--------------------	--	--------------------	--	--------------------

FUTURE.

vôlām.		nôlām.		mālām.
--------	--	--------	--	--------

PERFECT.

vôluī.		nôluī.		māluī.
--------	--	--------	--	--------

PLUPERFECT.

vôluērām.		nôluērām.		māluērām.
-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------

FUTURE PERFECT.

vôluērō.		nôluērō.		māluērō.
----------	--	----------	--	----------

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

vělīm		nōlīm		mālīm
vělīs		nōlīs		mālīs
vělīt		nōlīt		mālīt
vělīmūs		nōlīmūs		mālīmūs
vělītīs		nōlītīs		mālītīs
vělīnt.		nōlīnt.		mālīnt.

IMPERFECT.

vellēm ¹		nollēm		mallēm
vellēs		nollēs		mallēs
vellēt		nollēt		mallēt
vellēmūs		nollēmūs		mallēmūs
vellētīs		nollētīs		mallētīs
vellent.		nollent.		mallent.

PERFECT.

vôlučřīm.		nôlučřīm.		mālučřīm.
-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------

PLUPERFECT.

vôluissēm.		nôluissēm.		māluissēm.
------------	--	------------	--	------------

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

	nōlī, nōlītě.	
--	---------------	--

FUTURE.

	nōlītō, nōlītōtě; nōlītō, nōluntō.	
--	---------------------------------------	--

¹ *Vellēm* and *vellē* are syncopated forms for *velērem*, *velēre*; *e* is dropped and *r* assimilated; *velērem*, *velrem*, *vellem*; *velēre*, *velre*, *velle*. So *nollem* and *nolle*, for *nolērem* and *nolēre*; *mallem* and *malle*, for *malērem* and *malēre*.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.

vellě.		nollě.		mallě.
--------	--	--------	--	--------

PERFECT.

võluissě.		nõluissě.		mõluissě.
-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------

PARTICIPLE.

võlens.		nõlens.	
---------	--	---------	--

1. COMPOSITION.—*Nõlo* is compounded of *ne* or *non* and *võlo*; *mõlo*, of *mõgis* and *võlo*.

2. RARE FORMS.—(1) Of *võlo*: *volt*, *voltis*, for *vult*, *vultis*; *sīs*, *sultis*, for *sīs*, *sī vultis*; *vin* for *visne*.—(2) Of *nõlo*: *nevīs*, *nevult* (*nevolt*), *nevelle*, for *non* *vis*, *non* *vult*, *nolle*.—(3) Of *malo*: *marõlo*, *marẽlim*, *mavellem*, for *malo*, *malim*, *mallem*.

294. *Fio*, *I become*.

<i>Fio</i> ,	<i>fiẽrĩ</i> ,	<i>factũs sum</i> .
--------------	----------------	---------------------

INDICATIVE.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
PRES.	<i>fio</i> , <i>fis</i> , <i>fĩt</i> ;	<i>fiũs</i> , <i>fiĩs</i> , <i>fiũnt</i> .
IMP.	<i>fiẽbãm</i> ;	<i>fiẽbãmũs</i> .
FUT.	<i>fiãm</i> ;	<i>fiẽmũs</i> .
PERF.	<i>factũs sũm</i> ;	<i>factĩ sũmũs</i> .
PLUP.	<i>factũs ẽrãm</i> ;	<i>factĩ ẽrãmũs</i> .
FUT. PERF.	<i>factũs ẽrõ</i> ;	<i>factĩ ẽrĩmũs</i> .

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	<i>fiãm</i> ;	<i>fiãmũs</i> .
IMP.	<i>fiẽrẽm</i> ;	<i>fiẽrẽmũs</i> .
PERF.	<i>factũs sĩm</i> ;	<i>factĩ sĩmũs</i> .
PLUP.	<i>factũs essẽm</i> ;	<i>factĩ essẽmũs</i> .

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	<i>fĩ</i> ;	<i>fiťẽ</i> .
-------	-------------	---------------

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	<i>fiẽrĩ</i> .
PERF.	<i>factũs essě</i> .
FUT.	<i>factũm iřĩ</i> .

PARTICIPLE.

PERF.	<i>factũs</i> .
FUT.	<i>fãciendũs</i> .

1. IRREGULARITY.—*Fio* is only slightly irregular, as will be seen from the paradigm.

2. MEANING.—*Fio* means (1) *to become*, (2) *to be made*, *appointed*. In the second sense it is used as the passive of *facio*. See 279.

3. COMPOUNDS of *fio* are conjugated like the simple verb, but *confĩt*, *deřĩt*, and *ĩnfĩt* are defective. See 297. III. 2.

295. *Eo, I go.*

Eō, *irē,* *ivī,* *itūm.*

INDICATIVE.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
PRES.	<i>eō, is, it;</i>	<i>imūs, itīs, eunt.</i>
IMP.	<i>ibām;</i>	<i>ibāmūs.</i>
FUT.	<i>ibō;</i>	<i>ibimūs.</i>
PERF.	<i>ivī;</i>	<i>ivimūs.</i>
PLUP.	<i>ivērām;</i>	<i>ivērāmūs.</i>
FUT. PERF.	<i>ivērō;</i>	<i>ivērīmūs.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	<i>eām;</i>	<i>eāmūs.</i>
IMP.	<i>irēm;</i>	<i>irēmūs.</i>
PERF.	<i>ivērīm;</i>	<i>ivērīmūs.</i>
PLUP.	<i>ivissēm;</i>	<i>ivissēmūs.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	<i>ī;</i>	<i>itē.</i>
FUT.	<i>itō,</i> <i>itō;</i>	<i>itōtē</i> <i>euntō.</i>

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	<i>irē.</i>
PERF.	<i>ivissē.</i>
FUT.	<i>itūrūs essē.</i>

PARTICIPLE.

PRES.	<i>iens. Gen. euntīs,</i>
FUT.	<i>itūrūs.</i>

GERUND.

<i>Gen.</i>	<i>eundī.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>eundō.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>eundūm.</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>eundō.</i>

SUPINE.

<i>Acc.</i>	<i>itūm.</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>itū.</i>

1. IRREGULARITIES.—*Eo* is a verb of the fourth conjugation, but it forms the Sup. with a short vowel (*itum*) and is irregular in several parts of the present system. It admits contraction according to 234: *istis* for *ivistis*, etc.

2. PASSIVE INFINITIVE.—*Eo* as an intransitive verb wants the Passive, except when used impersonally in the third singular *itur, ibatur*, etc. (301. 3), but *iri*, the Pass. Infin., occurs as an auxiliary in the Fut. Infin. Pass. of the regular conjugations: *amatum iri*, etc.

3. COMPOUNDS OF *eo* are generally conjugated like *eo*, but shorten *iri* into *ii*.—*Veneo* (*venum eo*) has sometimes *veniēbam* for *venibam*. Many compounds want the supine, and a few admit in the Fut. a rare form in *eam, ies, iet*.

Transitive compounds have also the Passive: *adeo*, to approach, *adeor, adiris, aditur*, etc.

Ambio is regular like *audio*, though *ambibam* for *ambiēbam* occurs.

296. *Quco, I am able. Nequeo, I am unable.*

Quco, quīre, quīvi, quītum, and *Nequeo, nequīre, nequīvi (ii), nequītum*, are conjugated like *eo*, but they want the Imperative and Gerund, and are rare, except in the Present tense.¹

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

297. Defective Verbs want certain parts: we specify the following.²

I. PRESENT SYSTEM WANTING.

Coepi, I have begun. Memīni, I remember. Odi, I hate.

INDICATIVE.

PERF.	coepī.	mēmīnī.	ōdī.
PLUP.	coepērām.	mēmīnērām.	ōdērām.
FUT. PERF.	coepērō.	mēmīnērō.	ōdērō.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PERF.	coepērīm.	mēmīnērīm.	ōdērīm.
PLUP.	coepissēm.	mēmīnissēm.	ōdissem.

IMPERATIVE.

S. mēmentō.
P. mēmentōte.

INFINITIVE.

PERF.	coepissē.	memīnisse.	ōdisse.
FUT.	coeptūrū essē.		ōsūrū essē.

PARTICIPLE.

PERF.	coeptūs.	ōsūs. ³
FUT.	coeptūrūs.	ōsūrūs.

1. PASSIVE FORM.—With passive infinitives *coepi* generally takes the passive form: *coeptus sum, eram*, etc. The Part. *coeptus* is passive in sense.

2. PRESENT IN SENSE.—*Memīni* and *ōdī* are present in sense; hence in the Pluperf. and Fut. Perf. they have the sense of the Imperf. and Fut.—*Nōvī*, I know, Perf. of *nosco*, to learn, and *consuēvi*, I am wont, Perf. of *consuesco*, to accustom one's self, are also present in sense.

¹ A passive form, *quītur, nequītur*, etc., sometimes occurs before a Pass. Infin.

² Many, which want the Perf. or Sup. or both, have been mentioned under the Classification of Verbs.

³ *Osus* is active in sense, *hating*, but is rare except in compounds: *exōsus, perōsus*.

II. PARTS OF EACH SYSTEM WANTING.

1. Aio, *I say, say yes.*¹

INDIC.	Pres.	āio,	aīs, ²	aīt ;	—	—	āiunt.
	Imp.	āiebām,	-ēbās,	-ēbāt ;	-ēbāmūs,	-ēbātīs,	-ēbant. ³
	Perf.	—	—	aīt ;	—	—	—
SUBJ.	Pres.	—	āiās,	āiāt ;	—	—	āiant.
IMPER.	Pres.	ai (<i>rare</i>).					
PART.	Pres.	āiens (<i>as adjective</i>).					

2. Inquam, *I say.*

INDIC.	Pres.	inquām,	inquīs,	inquīt ;	inquīmūs,	inquītīs,	inquiunt.
	Imp.	—	—	inquiēbāt ; ⁴	—	—	—
	Fut.	—	inquiēs,	inquiēt ;	—	—	—
	Perf.	—	inquistī,	inquīt ;	—	—	—
IMPER.	Pres.	inque.	Fut. inquītō. ⁵				

3. Fari, *to speak.*⁶

INDIC.	<i>Pres.</i>	—	—	fātūr ;	—	—	—
	<i>Fut.</i>	fābōr,	—	fābitūr ;	—	—	—
	<i>Perf.</i>	fātūs sūm,	es,	est ;	fāti sūmūs,	estīs,	sunt.
	<i>Plup.</i>	fātūs erām,	erās,	erāt ;	fāti erāmūs,	erātīs,	erant.
SUBJ.	<i>Perf.</i>	fātūs sim,	sis,	sīt ;	fāti simūs,	sītīs,	sint.
	<i>Plup.</i>	fātūs essēm,	essēs,	essēt ;	fāti essēmūs,	essētīs,	essent.
IMPER.	<i>Pres.</i>	fārē.					
INFIN.	<i>Pres.</i>	fārī.					
PART.	<i>Pres.</i>	(fans) fantis, <i>Perf.</i> fātūs, <i>Fut.</i> fandūs.					
GERUND, <i>Gen.</i> and <i>Abl.</i>	fandī, dō. SUPINE, <i>Abl.</i> fātū.						

III. IMPERATIVES AND ISOLATED FORMS.

1. IMPERATIVES.—	āvē,	avēte ;	avētō ;	INF. avēre,	<i>hail.</i>
	salvē,	salvētē,	salvētō ; ⁷	salvēre,	<i>hail.</i>
	eēdō,	ettō,			<i>tell me, give me.</i>
	āgē, ⁸	āgītē,			<i>come.</i>
	āpāgē,				<i>begone.</i>

¹ In this verb *a* and *i* do not form a diphthong ; before a vowel the *i* has the sound of *y*: *a-yo, a'-is*. See § 2.

² The interrogative form *aisne* is often shortened to *ain'*.

³ *Aibam, aibas*, etc., occur in comedy.

⁴ Also written *inquibat*.

⁵ A few forms of the Subj. are sometimes given, but they are not found in the classics.

⁶ *Fārī* is used chiefly in poetry. Compounds have some forms not found in the simple ; thus: *affāmur, affamūni, affābar, effabēris*. Subj. Imp. *fārer* also occurs in compounds.

⁷ The Fut. *salvēbis* is also used for the Imperat.

⁸ *Age* is also used in the sense of the Plural.

2. ISOLATED FORMS.

INDIC. Pres.	Fut.	SUB. Pres. Imp.	INFIN.
confīt, —	—	confiāt, confīrēt,	confīrī, <i>to be done.</i>
defīt, defīunt, defīet,	—	defiāt, —	defīrī, <i>to be wanting.</i>
infīt, infīunt, —	—	—	— <i>to begin.</i>

SUB. Imp. fōrēm, fōrēs, fōrēt, — — fōrent. INF. fōrē.¹
 IND. Pres. ōvāt. PART. ōvans, *he rejoices.*
 IND. Pres. quaesō, quaesūmus,² *I pray.*

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

298. Impersonal Verbs never admit a personal subject. They correspond to the English Impersonal with *it*: *licet*, it is lawful, *oportet*, it behooves.³ They are conjugated like other verbs, but are used only in the third person singular of the Indicative and Subjunctive and in the Present and Perfect Infinitive.

299. Strictly Impersonal are only:

Dēcēt, dēcūit,	<i>it becomes.</i> ⁴	Pīgēt, { pīguīt,	<i>it grieves.</i>
Lībēt, { libuīt,	<i>it pleases.</i> ⁴	Poenītēt, poenītuīt,	<i>it causes re-</i>
Līcēt, { licītūm est,		gret; poenītet me,	<i>I repent.</i>
Līquēt, licītūm est,	<i>it is lawful.</i> ⁴	Pūdēt, { pūduīt,	<i>it shames.</i>
Līquēt, licītūm est,	<i>it is evident.</i> ⁴	Pūdēt, { pūdītūm est,	
Misērēt, misērītūm est,	<i>it excites pity;</i>	Taedēt, it wearies; pertaedēt, per-	
me misēret,	<i>I pity.</i>	tacsūm est.	
Oportēt, oportuīt,	<i>it behooves.</i>		

1. PARTICIPLES are generally wanting, but a few occur, though with a somewhat modified sense: (1) from LIBET: *libens*, willing; (2) from LICET: *licens*, free; *licitus*, allowed; (3) from POENITET: *poenitens*, penitent; *poenitendus*, to be repented of; (4) from PUDET: *pudens*, modest; *pudendus*, shameful.

2. GERUNDS are generally wanting, but occur in rare instances; *poenitendum*, *pudendū*.

300. Generally Impersonal are several verbs which designate the changes of weather, or the operations of nature:

Fulmīnāt,	<i>it lightens.</i>	Pluīt (P. pluīt),	<i>it rains.</i>
Grandīnāt,	<i>it hails.</i>	Rōrāt,	<i>dew falls.</i>
Lāpidāt,	<i>it rains stones.</i>	Tōnāt (tōnuīt),	<i>it thunders.</i>
Lūcescīt,	<i>it grows light.</i>	Vespērascīt,	<i>evening approaches.</i>
Ningīt (ninxīt),	<i>it snows.</i>		

¹ *Forem* = *essem*: *fore* = *futurum esse*. See 204. 1.

² Old forms for *quaero* and *quaerimus*.

³ The real subject is generally an infinitive or clause, sometimes a neuter pronoun: *hoc fieri oportet*, that this should be done is necessary.

⁴ These four occur in the third person plural, but without a personal subject. So the Comp. *dēdicet*. So also some of the others in rare instances.

301. Many other verbs are often used impersonally. Thus

1. The following :

Accidit,	<i>it happens.</i>	Fit,	<i>it happens.</i>
Appāret,	<i>it appears.</i>	Intērest,	<i>it concerns.</i>
Attinet,	<i>it concerns.</i>	Jūvat,	<i>it delights.</i>
Condūcit,	<i>it is useful.</i>	Pātet,	<i>it is plain.</i>
Constat,	<i>it is evident.</i>	Pertinet,	<i>it pertains.</i>
Contingit,	<i>it happens.</i>	Plācet,	<i>it pleases.</i>
Convēnit,	<i>it is fitting.</i>	Praestat,	<i>it is better.</i>
Delectat,	<i>it delights.</i>	Practērit (me),	<i>it escapes (me).</i>
Displicet,	<i>it displeases.</i>	Rēfert,	<i>it concerns.</i>
Dōlet,	<i>it grieves.</i>	Restat,	<i>it remains.</i>
Evēnit,	<i>it happens.</i>	Sūbit,	<i>it occurs.</i>
Expēdit,	<i>it is expedient.</i>	Sufficit,	<i>it suffices.</i>
Fallit } (me),	<i>it escapes (me).</i>	Supērest,	<i>it remains.</i>
Fūgit }		Vācat,	<i>there is leisure.</i>

2. The Second Periphrastic Conjugation (233) is often used impersonally. The participle is then neuter :

Mihi scribendum est, *I must write* ; tibi scribendum est, *you must write* ; illi scribendum est, *he must write*.

3. Verbs which are intransitive in the active, i. e., do not govern the accusative, can only be used impersonally in the passive, and many others may be so used. The participle is then neuter :

Mihi creditur, *it is credited to me, I am believed* ; tibi creditur, *you are believed* ; illi creditur, *he is believed* ; certatur, *it is contended* ; curritur, *there is running, people run* ; pugnatur, *it is fought, they, we, etc., fight* ; scribitur, *it is written* ; venitur, *they come, we come, etc.* ; vivitur, *we, you, they live*.

CHAPTER V.

PARTICLES.

302. THE Latin has four parts of speech sometimes called *Particles* : the *Adverb*, the *Preposition*, the *Conjunction*, and the *Interjection*.

ADVERBS.

303. The Adverb is the part of speech which is used to qualify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs : *celeriter currere*, to run swiftly ; *tam celer*, so swift ; *tam celeriter*, so swiftly.

304. Adverbs may be divided, according to their signification, into four principal classes :

I. ADVERBS OF PLACE.

Hic,	<i>here ;</i>	hūc,	<i>hither ;</i>	hīnc,	<i>hence.</i>
illuc,	<i>there ;</i>	illūc,	<i>thither ;</i>	illinc,	<i>thence.</i>
istic,	<i>there ;</i>	istūc,	<i>thither ;</i>	istinc,	<i>thence.</i>
ūbi,	<i>where ?</i>	quō,	<i>whither ?</i>	undē,	<i>whence ?</i>

II. ADVERBS OF TIME.

Hōdie,	<i>to-day.</i>	nondum,	<i>not yet.</i>	saepē,	<i>often.</i>
ibi,	<i>then.</i>	nuuc,	<i>now.</i>	sēmēl,	<i>once.</i>
jam,	<i>now.</i>	nunquam,	<i>never.</i>	tum,	<i>then.</i>
jamdiū,	<i>long since.</i>	ōlim,	<i>formerly.</i>	unquam,	<i>ever.</i>

III. ADVERBS OF MANNER, MEANS, DEGREE.

Adeo,	<i>so.</i>	paenē,	<i>almost.</i>	sic,	<i>so.</i>
aliter,	<i>otherwise.</i>	pālam,	<i>openly.</i>	ūt,	<i>as.</i>
ita,	<i>so.</i>	prorsus,	<i>wholly.</i>	valdē,	<i>much.</i>
māgis,	<i>more.</i>	rīte,	<i>rightly.</i>	vix,	<i>scarcely.</i>

IV. ADVERBS OF CAUSE, INFERENCE.

Cūr,	<i>why ?</i>	eo,	<i>for this reason.</i>
quārē,	<i>wherefore.</i>	īdeo,	<i>on this account.</i>
quamobrem,	<i>wherefore.</i>	idcirco,	<i>therefore.</i>
quapropter,	<i>wherefore.</i>	proptēreā,	<i>therefore.</i>

305. COMPARISON.—Most Adverbs are derived from adjectives, and are dependent upon them for their comparison. The comparative is the neuter singular of the adjective, and the superlative changes the ending *us* of the adjective into *ē* :

altus,	altior,	altissimus,	<i>lofty.</i>
alte,	altius,	altissime,	<i>loftily.</i>
prūdēns,	prudentior,	prudentissimus,	<i>prudent.</i>
prūdentē,	prudentius,	prudentissime,	<i>prudently.</i>

1. MAGIS AND MAXIME.—When the adjective is compared with *māgis* and *maxime*, the adverb is compared in the same way :

egregius,	māgis egregius,	maxime egregius,	<i>excellent.</i>
egregie,	māgis egregie,	maxime egregie,	<i>excellently.</i>

2. IRREGULAR COMPARISON.—When the adjective is irregular, the adverb has the same irregularity :

bōnus,	melior,	optīmus,	<i>good.</i>
bēne,	melius,	optīme,	<i>well.</i>
māle,	pejus,	pessīme,	<i>badly.</i>

3. DEFECTIVE COMPARISON.—When the adjective is defective, the adverb is generally defective :

—	deterior,	detrerrimus,	worse.
—	deterius,	detrerrime,	worse.
nōvus,	—	novissimus,	new.
nōve,	—	novissime,	newly.

4. COMPARED.—A few not derived from adjectives are compared :

diū,	diutius,	dintissime,	for a long time.
sæpē,	sæpius,	sæpissime,	often.
sātis,	satiùs,	—	sufficiently.
nūper,	—	nuperrime,	recently.

5. NOT COMPARED.—Most adverbs not derived from adjectives, as also those from adjectives incapable of comparison (169), are not compared: *hic*, here; *nunc*, now; *vulgariter*, commonly.

6. SUPERLATIVES IN *o* OR *um* are used in a few adverbs: *primo*, *primum*, *potissimum*.

PREPOSITIONS.

306. The Preposition is the part of speech which shows the relations of objects to each other: *in Italia esse*, to be in Italy; *ante me*, before me.

For list of prepositions, see 433–435.

307. INSEPARABLE PREPOSITIONS.—*Ambi*, *amb*, around, about; *dis*, *di*, asunder; *re*, *red*, back; *se*, aside, apart; *ne* and *ve*, not, are called inseparable prepositions, because they are used only in composition.

CONJUNCTIONS.

308. Conjunctions are mere connectives: *pater ET filius*, the father and son; *pater AUT filius*, the father or son.

309. Conjunctions are divided, according to their use, into two classes:

I. COÖRDINATE CONJUNCTIONS,—which connect similar constructions: *labor voluptasque*, labor and pleasure; *Carthaginem cepit ac diruit*, he took and destroyed Carthage.

II. SUBORDINATE CONJUNCTIONS,—which connect subordinate with principal constructions: *hæc dum colligunt, effugit*, while they collect these things, he escapes.

I. COÖRDINATE CONJUNCTIONS.

310. Coördinate Conjunctions comprise five subdivisions:

1. COPULATIVE CONJUNCTIONS, denoting union:

Et, quē, atquē, ac, and. Etiam, quōquē, also. Nēquē, nēc, and not. Nēquē—nēquē, nēc—nēc, nēquē—nēc, neither—nor.

2. DISJUNCTIVE CONJUNCTIONS, denoting separation :

Aut, vĕl, vĕ, sĭvĕ (scu), *or*. Aut—aut, vĕl—vĕl, *either—or*. Sĭvĕ—sĭvĕ, *either—or*.

3. ADVERSATIVE CONJUNCTIONS, denoting opposition :

Sĕd, autem, vĕrum, vĕro, *but*. At, *but, on the contrary*. Atquĭ, *but rather*. Cĕtĕrum, *but still*. Tămen, *yet*.

4. ILLATIVE CONJUNCTIONS, denoting inference :

Ergo, ĭġĭtŭr, inde, proinde, ĭtăque, *hence, therefore*. See also 587, IV. 2.

5. CAUSAL CONJUNCTIONS, denoting cause :

Nam, namque, ĕnim, etĕnim, *for*.

II. SUBORDINATE CONJUNCTIONS.

311. Subordinate Conjunctions comprise eight subdivisions :

1. TEMPORAL CONJUNCTIONS, denoting time :

Quando, quum, *when*. Ut, ŭbi, *as, when*. Quum prĭmum, ut prĭmum, ŭbi prĭmum, sĭmŭl, sĭmŭlac, sĭmŭlatque, *as soon as*. Dum, dŏnĕc, quoad, quamdiu, *while, until, as long as*. Antĕquam, priusquam, *before*. Postĕāquam, *after*.

2. COMPARATIVE CONJUNCTIONS, denoting comparison :

Ut, ŭtĭ, sĭcŭt, sĭcŭtĭ, *as, so as*. Vĕlŭt, *just as*. Pracŭt, proŭt, *according as, in comparison with*. Quam, *as*. Tanquam, quăsi, ŭt sĭ, ĕc sĭ, vĕlŭt sĭ, *as if*.

3. CONDITIONAL CONJUNCTIONS, denoting condition :

Sĭ, *if*. Sĭ nŏn, nĭsĭ, nĭ, *if not*. Sĭn, *but if*. Sĭ quĭdem, *if indeed*. Sĭ mŏdŏ, dum, mŏdŏ, dummŏdŏ, *if only*.

4. CONCESSIVE CONJUNCTIONS, denoting concession :

Quamquam, licet, quum, *although*. Etsĭ, tămetsĭ, etiamsĭ, *even if*. Quamvĭs, quantumvĭs, quantumlibet, *however much, although*. Ut, *grant that*. Nĕ, *grant that not*.

5. FINAL CONJUNCTIONS, denoting purpose or end :

Ut, ŭtĭ, *that, in order that*. Nĕ, nĕvĕ (neu), *that not*. Quŏ, *that*. Quŏmĭnŭs, *that not*.

6. CONSECUTIVE CONJUNCTIONS, denoting consequence or result :

Ut, *so that*. Ut nŏn, quĭn, *so that not*.

7. CAUSAL CONJUNCTIONS, denoting cause :

Quiā, quōd, *because*. Quum, *since*. Quōniam, quāndō, quāndōquīdem, sīquīdem, *since indeed*.

8. INTERROGATIVE CONJUNCTIONS, denoting inquiry :

Nē, nouně, num, utrum, an, *whether*. Au nōn, necne, *or not*.

INTERJECTIONS.

312. Interjections are certain particles used as expressions of feeling or as mere marks of address. They may express

1. Astonishment : ō, hem, ehem, hui, aha, ātat, pāpac, vah, ēn, eccē.
2. Joy : io, ha, he, eu, ēvoe.
3. Sorrow : vae, hei, heu, ēheu, ohē, ah, au, prō or proh.
4. Disgust : ahā, phuī, āpāgě.
5. Calling : heus, o, cho, ehodum.
6. Praise : eugě, ejā, hejā.



CHAPTER VI.

FORMATION OF WORDS.

313. WORDS may be formed in two ways :

I. By DERIVATION ; i. e., by the addition of certain endings to the stems of other words : *amor*, love, from *amo*, to love.

II. By COMPOSITION ; i. e., by the union of two or more words or their stems : *benevōlens*, well-wishing, from *bene*, well, and *volens*, wishing.

1. SIMPLE and COMPOUND.—Words formed by composition are called *Compounds* ; those not thus formed are called *Simple Words*.

2. PRIMITIVE and DERIVATIVE.—Simple words formed by derivation are called *Derivatives* ; those not thus formed are called *Primitives*.

DERIVATION OF WORDS.

N O U N S.

314. Nouns are derived from other *Nouns*, from *Adjectives*, and from *Verbs*.

I. NOUNS FROM NOUNS.

315. DIMINUTIVES generally end in

ŭlus, ŭla, ŭlum, cŭlus, cŭla, cŭlum.

hort-ŭlus,	a small garden,	from	hortus,	garden.
virg-ŭla,	a small branch,	"	virga,	branch.
oppid-ŭlum,	a small town,	"	oppidum,	town.
flos-cŭlus,	a small flower,	"	flos,	flower.
part-i-cŭla,	a small part,	"	pars,	part.
munus-cŭlum,	a small present,	"	munus,	present.

1. **Ulus, ŭla, ŭlum** are generally added to the stems of nouns of Dec. I. and II., and to some of Dec. III.

2. **Olus, ōla, ōlum** are used for *ŭlus, ŭla, ŭlum*, when a vowel precedes: *filiŏlus*, little son, from *filius*; *filiŏla*, little daughter, from *filia*; *atriŏlum*, small hall, from *atrium*.

3. **Ellus, ella, ellum; illus, illa, illum**, are sometimes used, especially with primitives of Dec. I. and II., whose stems end in **l, n, or r**; but *el* and *il* in these endings generally displace the last syllable of the stem: *ocellus*, small eye, from *ocŭlus*; *fabella*, short fable, from *fabŭla*; *bacillum*, small staff, from *bacŭlum*.

4. **Cŭlus, cŭla, cŭlum** are used with primitives of Dec. IV. and V., and with some of Dec. III. These are appended

1) To the *Nominative*: *flos, flos-cŭlus*; *mulier, muliereŭla*; *munus, munus-cŭlum*.

2) To the *Stem* with a connecting vowel **i**, sometimes **e**: *pons* (bridge), *pont-i-cŭlus*; *pars, particŭla*; *vulpes* (fox), *vulpecŭla*.

3) To the *Stem* of nouns in **o** (G. **onis, inis**), with stem-vowel changed to **u**: *homo* (man), *homun-cŭlus*; *virgo* (maiden), *virguncŭla*. Like nouns in **o**, a few other words form diminutives in *uncŭlus, uncŭla*: *avus* (uncle), *avuncŭlus*; *domus* (house), *domuncŭla*.

5. **Uleus** and **cio** are rare: *equuleus*, a small horse, from *equus*; *homuncio*, a small man, from *homo*.

316. PATRONYMS, or names of descent, generally end in

ĭdes,	īdes,	iădes,	ădes,	<i>masculine.</i>
īs,	ēis,	ias,	as,	<i>feminine.</i>
Tantal-ĭdes,	son of Tantalus;	Tantăl-is,	daughter of Tantalus.	
Thes-ĭdes,	son of Theseus;	Thes ēis,	daughter of Theseus.	
Laert-iădes,	son of Laertes;	Laert-ias,	daughter of Laertes.	
Thesti-ădes,	son of Thestius;	Thesti-as,	daughter of Thestius.	

1. **Ides** (ĭ) and **īs** are the common endings.

2. **Ides** (ī) and **ēis** are used especially with primitives in *eus*.

3. **Iădes,ădes,** and **ias, as,** are used principally with primitives in *ius*, and in those in *as* and *es* of Dec. I.—*Aenĕas* has *Aenĕădes*, masc. and *Aenĕīs*, fem.

4. **Ine** and **ōne** are rare feminine endings: *Nēptun-īne*, daughter of Neptune; *Acrisi-ōne*, daughter of Acrisius.

317. DESIGNATIONS OF PLACE are often formed with the endings

ārium,	ētum,	ile.
columb-ārium,	a dovecot,	from columba.
querc-ētum,	a forest of oaks,	" quercus.
ov-īle,	a sheepfold,	" ovis.

1. **Arium** designates the place where anything is kept, a receptacle: *aerārium*, treasury, from *aes*.

2. **Etum**, used with names of trees and plants, designates the place where they flourish: *olivētum*, an olive grove, from *olīva*.

3. **Ile**, used with names of animals, designates their stall or fold: *bovīle*, stall for cattle, from *bos*.

318. DERIVATIVES are also formed with several other endings, especially with

ārius,	io,	ium,	ītium,	tus (ītus),	ātus.
statu-ārius,		<i>a statuary,</i>	from	statua.	
lud-io,		<i>a player,</i>	"	ludus.	
sacerdot-ium,		<i>priesthood,</i>	"	sacerdos.	
serv-ītium,		<i>servitude,</i>	"	servus.	
vir-tus,		<i>virtue,</i>	"	vir.	
consul-ātus,		<i>consulship,</i>	"	consul.	

1. **Arius** and **io** generally designate one's occupation.

2. **Ium** and **itium** denote office, condition, or collection: *servitium*, servitude, sometimes a collection of servants.

3. **Tus** and **ītus** designate some characteristic or condition: *virtus*, manliness, virtue, from *vir*; *juventus*, youth, from *juvēnis*.

4. **Atus** denotes rank, office, collection: *consulātus*, consulship, from *consul*; *senātus*, senate, collection of old men, from *senex*.

5. PATRIAL OR GENTILE NOUNS.—See 326. 3.

II. NOUNS FROM ADJECTIVES.

319. From Adjectives are formed various *Abstract Nouns* with the endings

ia,	ītia,	ītas,	ītūdo,	īmōnia.
diligent-ia,		diligence,	from	diligens.
amic-ītia,		friendship,	"	amicus.
bon-ītas,		goodness,	"	bonus.
sol-ītūdo,		solitude,	"	solus.
acr-īmōnia,		sharpness,	"	acer.

1. **Itas**, **tas**, **ētas**.—*Itas* sometimes drops *i*: *libertas*, liberty, from *liber*; *ētas* is used with primitives in *ius*: *piētas*, piety, from *pius*. Sometimes

the stem of the adjective is slightly changed : *facilis*, *facultas*, faculty ; *difficilis*, *difficultas*, difficulty ; *potens*, *potestas*, power ; *honestus*, *honestas*, honesty.

2. **Itūdo** and **ītas**.—A few adjectives form abstracts with both these endings : *firmus*, *firmitas*, *firmitūdo*, firmness. Polysyllabic adjectives in *tus* generally change *tus* into *tūdo* : *solicītus*, *solicītūdo*, solicitude.

3. **Imonia** is rare : *Parsimonia*, parsimony, from *parcus*, changes *c* into *s*.

III. NOUNS FROM VERBS.

1. From the Present Stem.

320. From the Present stem are formed *Verbal Nouns* with various endings, especially with

or ; ium ; men, mentum ; būlum, cūlum, brum, crum, trum.

am-or,	love,	from	amo.
tīm-or,	fear,	"	timeo.
gaud-ium,	joy,	"	gaudeo.
cert-ā-men,	contest,	"	certo.
orn-ā-mentum,	ornament,	"	orno.
voc-a-būlum,	appellation,	"	voco.
veh-ī-cūlum,	vehicle,	"	veho.
fl-a-brum,	blast,	"	flo.
simul-ā-crum,	image,	"	simūlo.
ar-ā-trum,	plough,	"	aro.

1. **Or** designates the *action* or *state* denoted by the verb.

2. **Ium** has nearly the same force, but sometimes designates the *thing done* : *aedificium*, edifice, from *aedifico*.

3. **Men** and **mentum** generally designate the *means* of an action, or its involuntary *subject* : *flumen*, a stream, something which flows, from *fluo* ; *agmen*, an army in motion, from *ago*.

These endings are generally preceded by a connecting vowel : *orn-a-mentum*, ornament ; *vest-i-mentum*, clothing. Sometimes the stem itself is shortened or changed : *fragmentum*, fragment, from *frango* ; *momentum*, moving force, from *moveo*.

4. **Būlum**, **cūlum**, **brum**, **crum**, **trum** designate the *instrument* or the *place* of the action : *vehicūlum*, vehicle, instrument of the action, from *veho* ; *stabūlum*, stall, place of the action, from *sto*.

These endings generally take a connecting vowel. Sometimes the stem itself is changed : *sepulcrum*, sepulchre, from *sepelio*.

5. **Ulum**, **ūla**.—*Ulum* for *cūlum* occurs after *c* and *g* : *vinc-ūlum*, a bond, from *vincio* ; *cing-ūlum*, girdle, from *cingo*. *Ula* also occurs : *regūla*, rule, from *rego*.

6. **Us**, **a**, **o** sometimes designate the *agent* of the action : *coquus*, cook, from *coquo* ; *scriba*, writer, from *scribo* ; *erro*, wanderer, from *erro*.

7. **Ela**, **ido**, **igo** and a few other endings also occur : *querēla*, complaint, from *queror* ; *cupīdo*, desire, from *cupio* ; *orīgo*, origin, from *orior*.

2. From the Supine Stem.

321. From the Supine stem are formed *Verbal Nouns* with the endings

or,	io,	us,	ūra.
amāt-or,	lover,	from	amo.
audīt-or,	hearer,	"	audio.
monit-io,	advising,	"	moneo.
audit-io,	hearing,	"	audio.
audit-us,	hearing,	"	audio.
cant-us,	singing,	"	cano.
piet-ūra,	painting,	"	pingo.

1. **Or** denotes the *agent* or *doer*. When *t* precedes, corresponding feminine nouns are generally formed by changing *tor* into *trix*: *victor*, *victrix*.

2. **Io, us,** and **ūra** form *abstract* nouns, and denote the *act* itself.

ADJECTIVES.

322. Derivative adjectives are formed from *Nouns*, *Adjectives*, *Verbs*, and *Adverbs*.

I. ADJECTIVES FROM NOUNS.

1. From Common Nouns.

323. **FULNESS.**—Adjectives denoting *fulness*, *abundance*, *supply*, generally end in

ōsus,	lentus,	ātus,	ītus,	ūtus.
anim-ōsus,	<i>full of courage,</i>	from		anīmus.
op-u-lentus,	<i>opulent,</i>	“		opes.
al-ātus,	<i>winged,</i>	“		ala.
turr-ītus,	<i>turreted,</i>	“		turris.
corn-ūtus,	<i>horned,</i>	“		cornu.

1. **Uōsus** is used for *ōsus* in adjectives from nouns of Dec. IV. and in some others: *fructuōsus*, fruitful.

2. **Lentus** takes a connecting vowel, generally *u*, sometimes *o*: *op-u-lentus*, *vin-o-lentus*.

3. **Estus** and **ustus** also occur, but generally with a change in the stem: *modestus*, modest, from *modus*; *justus*, just, from *jus*.

324. **MATERIAL.**—Adjectives designating the material of which anything is made generally end in

eus, īnus, nus, neus; rarely **āceus**, and **īcius**.

aur-eus,	golden,	from	aurum.
cedr-īnus,	cedar,	"	cedrus.
popul-nus,	of poplar,	"	popūlus.
popul-neus,	of poplar,	"	popūlus.

papyr- <i>āceus</i> ,	<i>of papyrus,</i>	from	papyrus.
later- <i>īcius</i> ,	<i>of brick,</i>	"	later.

325. CHARACTERISTIC.—Adjectives signifying *belonging to, derived from*, generally end in

īcus, ilis, īnus, ius; ālis, ānus, āris, ārius, ensis.

civ- <i>īcus</i> ,	<i>relating to a citizen,</i>	from	civis.
civ- <i>ilis</i> ,	<i>relating to a citizen,</i>	"	civis.
equ- <i>īnus</i> ,	<i>of, pertaining to a horse,</i>	"	equus.
reg- <i>ius</i> ,	<i>royal,</i>	"	rex.
mort- <i>ālis</i> ,	<i>mortal,</i>	"	mors.
urb- <i>ānus</i> ,	<i>of, pertaining to a city,</i>	"	urbs.
salut- <i>āris</i> ,	<i>salutary,</i>	"	salus.
auxili- <i>ārius</i> ,	<i>auxiliary,</i>	"	auxilium.
for- <i>ensis</i> ,	<i>fornsic,</i>	"	forum.

1. **Tīcus** is sometimes added to the Nom. : *rus, rus-tīcus*, rustic.

2. **Ernus, ester, ītimus** and a few other endings also occur : *pater, paternus*, paternal ; *campus, campester*, level ; *mare, marītimus*, maritime.

2. From Proper Nouns.

326. Adjectives from proper nouns generally end in

ānus, iānus, īnus; iācus, īcus, ius, ensis, iensis; as, aeus, ēus.

Sull- <i>ānus</i> ,	<i>of Sylla,</i>	from	Sulla.
Rom- <i>ānus</i> ,	<i>Roman,</i>	"	Roma.
Ciceron- <i>iānus</i> ,	<i>Ciceronian,</i>	"	Cicēro.
Lat- <i>īnus</i> ,	<i>Latin,</i>	"	Latium.
Corinth- <i>iācus</i> ,	<i>Corinthian,</i>	"	Corinthus.
Corinth- <i>ius</i> ,	<i>Corinthian,</i>	"	Corinthus.
Britann- <i>īcus</i> ,	<i>British,</i>	"	Britannus.
Cann- <i>ensis</i> ,	<i>of Cannae,</i>	"	Cannae.
Athen- <i>iensis</i> ,	<i>Athenian,</i>	"	Athēnae.
Fidēn- <i>as</i> ,	<i>of Fidēnae,</i>	"	Fidēnae.
Smyrn- <i>aeus</i> ,	<i>Smyranean,</i>	"	Smyrna.
Pythagor- <i>ēus</i> ,	<i>Pythagorean,</i>	"	Pythagōras.

1. **Iānus** is the ending generally used in derivatives from *Names of Persons* ; but *ānus, īnus, ius*, and the Greek endings *ēus* and *īcus* also occur.

2. **E_{nsis}** and **cānus** (*ānus*) in derivatives from names of countries signify merely *being in the country*, in distinction from *belonging to it* : thus *exercitus Hispaniēnsis* is an army stationed in Spain, but *exercitus Hispanīcus* is a Spanish army.

3. **Patrials**.—Many of these adjectives from names of places are also used substantively as *Patrial* or *Gentile Nouns* to designate the citizens of the place : *Corinthii*, the Corinthians ; *Athenienses*, the Athenians.

II. ADJECTIVES FROM ADJECTIVES.

327. DIMINUTIVES from other adjectives generally end like diminutive nouns (315) in

ŭlus, ŭla, ŭlum, cŭlus, cŭla, cŭlum.

long-ŭlus, a, um,	rather long,	from	longus.
pauper-cŭlus, a, um,	rather poor,	"	pauper.

1. **Olus, ellus**, and **illus** also occur as in nouns.

2. **Cŭlus** is sometimes added to comparatives: *durius-cŭlus*, somewhat hard, from *durius*.

III. ADJECTIVES FROM VERBS.

328. Verbal adjectives generally end in

bundus, cundus; ŭlus, ŭlis, bŭlis, ax.

mir-ā-bundus,	wondering,	from	miror.
ver-e-cundus,	diffident,	"	vercor.
cal-ŭlus,	warm,	"	caleo.
pav-ŭlus,	fearful,	"	paveo.
doc-ŭlis,	docile,	"	doceo.
am-a-bŭlis,	worthy of love,	"	amo.
pugn-ax,	pugnacious,	"	pugno.
aud-ax,	daring,	"	audeo.

1. **Bundus** and **cundus** have nearly the force of the present participle; but *bundus* is somewhat more expressive than the Part.: *luctabundus*, rejoicing greatly; and *cundus* generally denotes some characteristic rather than a single act or feeling: *verecundus*, diffident.

These endings take a connecting vowel. See examples.

2. **Idus** retains the simple meaning of the verb.

3. **Ilis** and **bŭlis** denote *capability*, generally in a passive sense: *amabilis*, capable or worthy of being loved; sometimes in an *active* sense: *terribilis*, terrible, capable of producing terror.

These endings are generally added to the Present Stem (*bŭlis* with a connecting vowel), but sometimes to the Supine Stem: *flexibilis*, flexible.

4. **Ax** denotes *inclination*, generally a faulty one: *loquax*, loquacious.

5. **Uus, ŭlus, ŭcius, and ŭvus** also occur:—(1) *uus* in the sense of *ŭlus*: *vacuus*, vacant.—(2) *ulus* in the sense of *ax*: *credŭlus*, credulous.—(3) *ŭcius* and *ŭvus* (added to Sup. Stem) in the sense of the Perf. Part.: *fictŭcius*, feigned, from *finŭo* (*fictum*); *captŭvus*, captive, from *capio* (*captum*).

IV. ADJECTIVES FROM ADVERBS AND PREPOSITIONS.

329. A few adjectives are formed from adverbs and prepositions:

hodiernus,	of this day,	from	hodie.
contrarius,	contrary,	"	contra.

V E R B S .

330. Derivative Verbs are formed from *Nouns*, *Adjectives*, and *Verbs*.

I. VERBS FROM NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.

331. Verbs formed from nouns and adjectives end in

Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. IV.
o,	eo,	io.

Conjugation I.—Transitive.

armo,	to arm,	from	arma.
cūro,	to cure,	"	cura.
nomīno,	to name,	"	nomen.
caeco,	to make blind,	"	caceus.
libéro,	to liberate,	"	liber.

Conjugation II.—Intransitive.

fłoreo,	to bloom,	from	flos.
lūceo,	to shine,	"	lux.
albeo,	to be white,	"	albus.
flāveo,	to be yellow,	"	flavus.

Conjugation IV.—Generally Transitive.

finio,	to finish,	from	finis.
vestio,	to clothe,	"	vestis.
mollio,	to soften,	"	mollis.
saevio (<i>intrans.</i>),	to rage,	"	saevus.

1. **Asco** and **esco** occur in Inceptives. See 332. II.
2. **Deponent**.—Derivatives, like other verbs, may of course be deponent: *domīnor*, to domineer, from *domīnus*.

II. VERBS FROM VERBS.

332. Verbs derived from other verbs are—*Frequentatives*, *Inceptives*, *Desideratives*, and *Diminutives*.

I. **FREQUENTATIVES** denote *repeated* or *continued* action. They are of the first conjugation and are formed

1. From Supines in **ātum** by changing **ātum** into **īto**:

clam-īto,	to exclaim,	from	clamo,	clamātum.
vol-īto,	to flit,	"	volo,	volātum.

2. From other Supines by changing **um** into **o**, sometimes **īto**:

adjūt-o,	to assist often,	from	adjūvo,	adjūtum.
habīt-o,	to have often,	"	habeo,	habītum.
lect-īto,	to read often,	"	lego,	lectum.

- 1) **Itō** is sometimes added to the Present Stem of verbs of Conj. III.: *ago*, *agīto*; *quaero*, *quaerīto*.

- 2) **Esso** and **isso** form derivatives which are generally classed with

frequentatives, though they are *intensive* in force, denoting *earnest* rather than *repeated* action, and are of Conj. III.: *facio, facesso*, to do earnestly; *incipio, incipisso*, to begin eagerly. The regular frequentatives sometimes have the same force: *rapio, rapto*, to seize eagerly.

II. INCEPTIVES, or INCHOATIVES, denote the beginning of the action. They are of the third conjugation, and end in

asco,	esco,	isco.
göl-asco,	to begin to freeze,	from gëlo, âre.
rûb-esco,	to grow red,	“ rûbeo, ěre.
trêm-isco,	to begin to tremble,	“ trêmo, ěre.
obdorm-isco,	to fall asleep,	“ obdormio, îre.

1. **Asco** is used in inceptives from verbs of Conj. I., and in a few from nouns and adjectives: *puer, puerasco*, to become a boy.

2. **Esco** is by far the most common ending, and is used in inceptives from verbs of Conj. II., and in many from nouns and adjectives: *dûrus, dûresco*, to grow hard.

III. DESIDERATIVES denote a *desire* to perform the action. They are of the fourth conjugation and are formed from the Supine by changing **um** into **ûrio**:

ĕs-ûrio,	to desire to eat,	from ědo,	ĕsum.
empt-ûrio,	to desire to buy,	“ ěmo,	emptum.

IV. DIMINUTIVES denote a *feeble* action. They are of the first conjugation and are formed from the Present by changing the ending into **illo**:

cant-illo,	to sing feebly,	from	canto.
conscrib-illo,	to scribble,	“	conscribo.

ADVERBS.

333. Adverbs are formed from *Nouns, Adjectives, Participles, Pronouns, and Prepositions*.

I. ADVERBS FROM NOUNS.

334. Adverbs are formed from nouns

1. By simply taking a case-ending, especially that of the ablative:

tempore, tempõri, in time; *forte*, by chance; *jũre*, with right, rightly.

2. By taking special endings:

1) *âtim, tim*, denoting MANNER: *græc, gregâtim*, by herds; *fur, furtim*, by stealth.

2) *itus* denoting ORIGIN, SOURCE: *coelum*, *coelitus*, from heaven; *fundus*, *funditus*, from the foundation.

II. ADVERBS FROM ADJECTIVES AND PARTICIPLES.

335. Adverbs from adjectives and participles generally end in

e, er, iter.

doctus, *docte*, learnedly; *liber*, *libère*, freely; *elégans*, *eleganter*, elegantly; *prūdēns*, *prudenter*, prudently; *cēler*, *celeriter*, quickly.

1. **E** is added to the stems of most adjectives and participles of Dec. I. and II. See examples.

2. **Er** and **iter** are added to the stems of adjectives of Dec. III.—**er** to stems in *nt*, **iter** to other stems.—*Er* and *iter* also occur in adverbs from adjectives and participles of Dec. I. and II.

3. **Atim**, **im**, and **itus** also occur in adverbs from primitives of Dec. I. and II.: *singūli*, *singulātim*, one by one; *passus*, *passim*, everywhere; *divīnus*, *divinītus*, divinely.

4. OTHER FORMS.—Certain forms of adjectives sometimes become adverbs:

1) Neuters in **e**, **um**, rarely **a**: *fīcīle*, easily; *multum*, *multa*, much.

2) Ablatives in **a**, **o**, **is**: *dextra*, on the right; *consulto*, designedly; *paucis*, briefly, in few words.

3) Accusatives in **am**: *bifuriam*, in two parts; *multifariam*, in many parts or places (*partem*, understood).

5. NUMERAL ADVERBS.—See 181.

III. ADVERBS FROM PRONOUNS.

336. Various adverbs are formed from Pronouns: thus from *hic*, *ille*, and *iste* are formed

<i>hic</i> ,	<i>here</i> ;	<i>hūc</i> ,	<i>hither</i> ;	<i>hinc</i> ,	<i>hence</i> .
<i>illīc</i> ,	<i>there</i> ;	<i>illūc</i> ,	<i>thither</i> ;	<i>illinc</i> ,	<i>thence</i> .
<i>istīc</i> ,	<i>there</i> ;	<i>istūc</i> ,	<i>thither</i> ;	<i>istinc</i> ,	<i>thence</i> .

IV. ADVERBS FROM PREPOSITIONS.

337. A few adverbs are formed from Prepositions, or are at least related to them:

intra, *intro*, within; *ultra*, *ultra*, beyond; *in*, *intus*, within; *sub*, *subtus*, beneath.

COMPOSITION OF WORDS.

338. The elements of a compound may unite in three distinct ways:

I. The two elements unite without change of form:¹ *decem-vīri*, the decemvirs, ten men; *ab-eo*, to go away; *ante-pōno*, to place before.

II. One element, generally the first, is put in an oblique case, generally the genitive, dependent upon the other: *legis-lātor*, legislator, from *lex*, *legis*, and *lātor*.

III. The stem of the first element unites with the second element, either with or without a connecting vowel—generally *i*, sometimes *e* or *u*: *bell-i-gĕro*, to wage war, from *bellum* and *gĕro*, with connecting vowel; *magn-anĭmus*, magnanimous, from *magnus* and *anĭmus*, without connecting vowel.

1. PREPOSITIONS IN COMPOSITION admit the following *euphonic changes*.

A, ab, abs:—**a** before *m* and *v*; **abs** before *c*, *p*, *t*; **ab** before the vowels and the other consonants: *a-mitto*; *abs-condo*; *ab-eo*, *ab-jicio*. But *abs* before *p* drops *b*: *as-porto* for *abs-porto*. *Ab* becomes *au* in *au-fĕro* and *au-fugio*.

Ad,—unchanged before vowels and before *b*, *d*, *h*, *j*, *m*, and *v*; **d** generally assimilated before the other consonants, but changed to *c* before *q* and dropped before *gn* and often before *sc*, *sp*, and *st*; *ad-co*, *ad-do*, *ad-jungo*; *af-fĕro*, *al-lĭgo*; *ac-quĭro*, *a-gnosco* (*ad* and *gnosco*), *a-scendo*.

Ante,—unchanged, except in *anti-cĭpo* and *anti-sto*.

Circum,—unchanged, except in *circu-eo*.

Com for *cum*,—(1) unchanged before *b*, *m*, *p*: *com-bĭbo*, *com-mitto*,—(2) **m** generally dropped before vowels, *h*, and *gn*: *co-eo*, *co-haereō*, *co-gnosco*,—(3) **m** assimilated before *l*, *n*, *r*: *col-lĭgo*, *cor-rumpo*,—(4) **m** changed to *n* before the other consonants: *con-fĕro*, *con-gĕro*.

E, ex:—**ex** before vowels and before *c*, *h*, *p*, *q*, *s*, *t*, and with assimilation before *f*; **e** generally before the other consonants and sometimes before *p* and *s*: *ex-eo*, *ex-pōno*, *ef-fĕro*; *e-dūco*, *e-lĭgo*, *e-pōto*, *e-scendo*. *S* after *ex* is often dropped: *exspecto* or *expecto*.

In,—**n** assimilated before *l*, *m*, *r*, changed to *m* before *b*, *p*; dropped before *gn*; in other situations unchanged: *il-lūdo*, *im-mitto*; *im-buo*, *im-pōno*; *i-gnosco*; *in-eo*, *in-dūco*.

Inter,—unchanged, except in *intel-lĭgo*.

Ob,—**b** assimilated before *c*, *f*, *g*, *p*; in other situations generally unchanged: *oc-curro*, *of-ficio*, *og-gĕro*, *op-pōno*; *ob-jicio*, *ob-sto*. But *b* is dropped in *o-mitto*, and an old form *obs* occurs in a few words: *obs-olesco*, *os-tendo* for *obs-tendo* (*b* dropped).

Per,—unchanged, except in *pel-lĭcio*, *pel-lūcco*, and *pe-jĕro*.

Post,—unchanged, except in *po-moerium* and *po-meridiānus*.

¹ Except of course euphonic changes.

Pro,—sometimes *prod* before a vowel: *prod-eo*, *prod-igo*.

Sub,—**b** assimilated before *c, f, g, p*, generally before *m* and *r*; dropped before *sp*; in other situations unchanged; *suc-cumbo*, *su-spicio* for *sub-spicio*; *sub-eo*, *sub-dūco*. An old form *subs* shortened to *sus* occurs in a few words: *sus-cipio*, *sus-pendo*.

Trans,—drops *s* before *s*, and often *ns* before *d, j, n*: *trans-eo*, *trans-fēro*; *tran-silio* for *trans-silio*; *tra-do* for *trans-do*; *tra-jicio* for *trans-jicio*; *tra-no* for *trans-no*.

2. INSEPARABLE PREPOSITIONS (307) also admit *euphonic changes*:

Ambi, amb:—*amb* before vowels; *ambi, am, or an* before consonants: *amb-igo*; *ambi-dens*, *am-pūto*, *an-quiro*.

Dis, di:—*dis* before *c, p, q, t, s* before a vowel, and, with assimilation, before *f*; *di* in most other situations; *dis-curro*, *dis-pōno*, *dif-fluo*; *di-dūco*, *di mōveo*. But *dir* occurs in *dir-imo* and *dir-ibeo* (*dis* and *habeo*), and both *dis* and *di* occur before *j*: *dis-jungo*, *di-judico*.

Re, red:—*red* before vowels, before *h*, and in *red-do*; *re* in other situations: *red-eo*, *red-igo*, *red-hibeo*; *re-clūdō*, *re-vello*.

COMPOUND NOUNS.

339. In compound nouns the first part is generally a noun, but sometimes an adjective, adverb, or preposition; the second part is a verb or noun:

art-ī-fex,	artist,	from	ars and facio.
capr-ī-eornus,	capricorn,	"	caper and cornu.
acqu-ī-noctium,	equinox,	"	aequus and nox.
ne-mo,	nobody,	"	ne and homo.
pro-nōmen,	pronoun,	"	pro and nomen.

1. GENITIVE IN COMPOUNDS.—In compounds of two nouns, or of a noun and an adjective, the first part is often a genitive: *legis-lātor*, legislator; *juris-consultus*, lawyer.

2. COMPOUNDS IN **fex**, **cen**, and **cōla** are among the most important compounds of nouns and verbs; *fex* from *fūcio*; *cen* from *cano*; *cola* from *colo*; *art-ī-fex*, artist; *tub-ī-cen*, trumpeter; *agr-ī-cōla*, husbandman.

COMPOUND ADJECTIVES.

340. In compound adjectives the first part is generally a noun, adjective, or preposition, and the second a noun, adjective, or verb:

lēt-ī-fēr,	death-bearing,	from	lētum and fēro.
magn-anīmus,	magnanimous,	"	magnus and anīmus.
per-fācilis,	very easy,	"	per and fācilis.

COMPOUND VERBS.

341. In compound verbs the first part is a noun, adjective, verb, adverb, or preposition, and the second is a verb:

aed-ĭ-fĭco,	to build,	from	aedes and facio.
ampl-ĭ-fĭco,	to enlarge,	"	amplus and facio.
pat-ĕ-fācio,	to open,	"	pateo and facio.
bene-fācio,	to benefit,	"	bene and facio.
ab-eo,	to go away,	"	ab and eo.

1. Two VERBS.—When the first part is a verb, the second is always *facio* as above; *pat-e-facio*.

2. NOUN OR ADJECTIVE and VERB.—When the first part is a noun or adjective, the second part is generally, but not always, *fācio* or *āgo*. These verbs then become *fĭco* and *ĭgo* of Conj. I.: *aed-ĭ-fĭco*, āre, to build; *nav-ĭgo*, āre, to sail, from *navis* and *ago*.

3. VOWEL CHANGES.—Verbs compounded with prepositions often undergo certain vowel-changes.

1) *A* short and *ĕ* generally become *ĭ*: *hābeo*, *ad-hĭbeo*; *tĕneo*, *con-tĭneo*. But *ā* sometimes becomes *ĕ* or *u*: *carpo*, *de-cerpo*; *calco*, *con-culco*.

2) *Āe* becomes *ī*: *caedo*, *in-cĭdo*.

3) *Au* generally becomes *o* or *u*: *plaudo*, *ex-plōdo*; *claudio*, *in-clūdo*.

4. CHANGES IN PREPOSITIONS.—See 338. 1 and 2.

COMPOUND ADVERBS.

342. Compound Adverbs are variously formed, but most of them may be divided into three classes:

1. Such as consist of an oblique case with its preposition: *ad-mōdum*, very, to the full measure; *ob-vĭam*, in the way.

2. Such as consist of a noun with its adjective: *ho-die* (*hoc* and *die*), to-day, on this day; *qua-re*, wherefore, by which thing.

3. Such as consist of two particles: *ad-huc*, hitherto; *inter-dum*, sometimes; *in-sūper*, moreover.

PART THIRD.
S Y N T A X.

CHAPTER I.

SYNTAX OF SENTENCES.

SECTION I.

CLASSIFICATION OF SENTENCES.

343. SYNTAX treats of the construction of sentences.

344. A sentence is thought expressed in language.

345. In their STRUCTURE, sentences are either *Simple*, *Complex*, or *Compound*:

I. A SIMPLE SENTENCE expresses but a single thought:

Deus mundum aedificāvit, God made the world. Cic.

II. A COMPLEX SENTENCE expresses two (or more) thoughts so related that one is dependent upon the other:

Dōnec ēris felix, multos nūmērābis āmīcos; So long as you are prosperous, you will number many friends. Ovid.

1. CLAUSES.—In this example two simple sentences, (1) "*You will be prosperous*," and (2) "*You will number many friends*," are so united that the first only specifies the *time* of the second: *You will number many friends* (when?), *so long as you are prosperous*. The parts thus united are called *Clauses* or *Members*.

2. PRINCIPAL AND SUBORDINATE.—The part of the complex sentence which makes complete sense of itself—*multos numerābis amīcos*—is called the *Principal Clause*; and the part which is dependent upon it—*donec eris felix*—is called the *Subordinate Clause*.

III. A COMPOUND SENTENCE expresses two or more independent thoughts:

Sol ruit et montes umbrantur, The sun descends and the mountains are shaded. Virg.

346. In their USE, sentences are either *Declarative*, *Interrogative*, *Imperative*, or *Exclamatory*.

I. A DECLARATIVE SENTENCE has the form of an assertion:

Miltiādes accūsātus est, Miltiades was accused. Nep.

II. AN INTERROGATIVE SENTENCE has the form of a question :

Quis non paupertatem extimescit, Who does not fear poverty? Cic

1. INTERROGATIVE WORDS.—Interrogative sentences generally contain some interrogative word—either an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb, or one of the interrogative particles, *ne, nonne, num* :

1) Questions with *ne* ask for information: *Scribitne*, Is he writing? *Ne* is always thus appended to some other word. But *ne* appended to the principal verb often suggests the answer *yes*, while appended to any other word, it often suggests the answer *no*. It is sometimes appended to *utrum, num*, or *an*, without affecting their meaning, and sometimes inserted in the clause after *utrum* :

Utrum taceamne, an praedicem, Shall I be silent, or shall I speak? Ter.

2) Questions with *nonne* expect the answer *yes*: *Nonne scribit*, Is he not writing? *Non* for *nonne* indicates surprise that there should be any doubt on the question: *Non rides*, Do you really not see?

3) Questions with *num* expect the answer *no*: *Num scribit*, Is he writing?

4) Questions with *an*. See 2. 4) below.

5) The interrogative word is sometimes omitted, and sometimes *numquid* is used for *num*, and *ecquid* for *ne* or *nonne*: *Ecquid rides*, Do you not see?

2. DOUBLE QUESTIONS.—Double or disjunctive questions offer a choice or alternative, and generally take one of the following forms :

1) The first clause has *utrum, num*, or *ne*, and the second *an* :

Utrum ea vestra an nostra culpa est, Is that your fault or ours? Cic.

2) The first clause omits the particle, and the second has *an* or *ne* :

Elôquar an sileam, Shall I utter it, or keep silence? Virg.

3) When the second clause is negative, the particle generally unites with the negative, giving *annon* or *necne* :

Sunt haec tua verba necne, Are these your words or not? Cic.

4) By the omission of the first clause, the second often stands alone with *an*, in the sense of *or* :

An hoc timemus, Or do we fear this? Liv.

5) Other forms are rare.

3. ANSWERS.—In answers the verb or some emphatic word is usually repeated, often with *prorsus, vëro*, and the like; or if negative, with *non* :

Dixitne causam? Dixit. Did he state the cause? He stated it. Cic. Possûmusne tûti esse? Non possûmus. Can we be safe? We cannot. Cic.

1) Sometimes the simple particle is used; affirmatively, *sâne, etiam, ita, vëro, certe*, etc., negatively, *non, minime*, etc.

Venitne? Non. Has he come? No. Plaut.

III. AN IMPERATIVE SENTENCE has the form of a command, exhortation, or entreaty :

Justitiam côle, Cultivate justice. Cic.

IV. AN EXCLAMATORY SENTENCE has the form of an exclamation :

Rêliquit quos viros, What heroes he has left! Cic.

Exclamatory sentences are often elliptical.

SECTION II.

SIMPLE SENTENCES.

ELEMENTS OF SENTENCES.

347. The simple sentence in its *most simple form* consists of two distinct parts, expressed or implied :

1. The SUBJECT, or that of which it speaks.
2. The PREDICATE, or that which is said of the subject :

Cluilius mōrītur, Cluilius dies. Liv.

Here *Cluilius* is the subject, and *mōrītur* the predicate.

348. The simple sentence in its *most expanded form* consists only of these same parts with their various modifiers :

In his castris *Cluilius, Albānus rex, mōrītur* ; *Cluilius, the Alban king, dies in this camp.* Liv.

Here *Cluilius, Albānus rex*, is the subject in its enlarged or modified form, and *in his castris mōrītur* is the predicate in its enlarged or modified form.

349. PRINCIPAL AND SUBORDINATE.—The subject and predicate, being essential to the structure of every sentence, are called the *Principal* or *Essential* elements ; but their modifiers, being subordinate to these, are called the *Subordinate* elements.

350. SIMPLE AND COMPLEX.—The elements, whether principal or subordinate, may be either simple or complex :

1. *Simple*, when not modified by other words.
2. *Complex*, when thus modified.

SIMPLE SUBJECT.

351. The subject of a sentence, expressed or implied, must be a noun or some word or words used as a noun :

Rex dēcrēvit, The king decreed. Nep. *Ego scribo, I write.* Cic. *Vīdeo idem vālet, The word video has the same meaning.* Quint.

COMPLEX SUBJECT.

352. The subject admits the following modifiers :

I. AN ADJECTIVE :

Pōpulus Rōmānus dēcrēvit, The Roman people decreed. Cic.

II. A NOUN either in apposition with the subject, in the genitive, or in an oblique case with a preposition :

Cluilius rex mōrītur, Cluilius the king dies. Liv. *Rex Rūtulōrum, the king of the Rutuli.* Liv. *Liber de officiis, The book on duties.* Cic.

1. MODIFIERS OF NOUNS.—Any noun may be modified like the subject.

2. APPOSITIVE AND ITS SUBJECT.—The noun in apposition with another is called an *Appositive*, and the other noun is called the *Subject* of the appositive.

3. ADVERBS WITH NOUNS.—Sometimes adverbs and adverbial expressions occur as modifiers of nouns:

Non ignāri sūmus ante mālōrum, We are not ignorant of past misfortunes. Virg. *Victōria āpud Cnidum, The victory at Cnidus.* Nep.

SIMPLE PREDICATE.

353. The simple predicate must be either a verb or the copula *sum* with a noun or adjective:

Miltiādes est accūsātus, Miltiades was accused. Nep. *Tu es testis, You are a witness.* Cic. *Fortūna caeca est, Fortune is blind.* Cic.

1. Like *Sum* several other verbs sometimes unite with a noun or adjective to form the predicate. See 362. 2. A noun or adjective thus used is called a *Predicate Noun* or *Predicate Adjective*.

2. *Sum* with an *Adverb* sometimes forms the predicate:

Omnia recte sunt, All things are right. Cic.

COMPLEX PREDICATE.

354. I. The VERB admits the following modifiers:

I. OBJECTIVE MODIFIERS:

1. A *Direct Object* in the Accusative—that upon which the action is directly exerted:

Miltiādes Athēnas liberāvit, Miltiades liberated Athens. Nep.

2. An *Indirect Object* in the Dative—that *to* or *for* which something is or is done:

Lābōri stūdent, They devote themselves to labor. Caes.

3. *Combined Objects* consisting of two or more cases:

Me rogāvit sententiam, He asked me my opinion. Cic. *Pons iter hostibus dedit, The bridge furnished a passage to the enemy.* Liv.

II. ADVERBIAL MODIFIERS:

1. *Adverbs*:

Bella feliciter gessit, He waged wars successfully. Cic.

2. *Adverbial Expressions*—consisting of oblique cases of nouns, with or without prepositions:

In his castris mōrītur, He dies (where ?) in this camp. Liv. Vire convēnere, They assembled (when ?) in the spring. Liv.

355. II. The PREDICATE NOUN is modified in the various ways specified for the subject (352).

356. III. The PREDICATE ADJECTIVE admits the following modifiers :

I. An ADVERB :

Sātis hūmīlis est, He is sufficiently humble. Liv.

II. A NOUN in an oblique case :

1. *Genitive* : *Avīdi laudis fuērunt, They were desirous of praise. Cic.*
2. *Dative* : *Omni aetātī mors est commūnis, Death is common to every age. Cic.*
3. *Ablative* : *Digni sunt āmīcītia, They are worthy of friendship. Cic.*

SECTION III.

COMPLEX SENTENCES.

357. A Complex sentence differs from a Simple one only in taking a sentence or clause as one (or more) of its elements :

I. A Sentence as an Element :

“Civis Rōmānus sum” audiēbātur, “I am a Roman citizen” was heard. Cic. Aliquis dicat mihi : “Nulla hābes vitia ;” Some one may say to me, “Have you no faults ?” Hor.

1. In the first example, an entire sentence—*Civis Rōmānus sum*—is used as the *Subject* of a new sentence ; and in the second example, the sentence—*Nulla habes vitia*—is the *Object* of *dicat*.

2. Any sentence may be thus quoted and introduced without change of form as an element in a new sentence.

II. A Clause as an Element :

Trādītum est Hōmērum caecum fuisse, That Homer was blind has been handed down by tradition. Cic. Quālis sit ānīmus, ānīmus nescit, The soul knows not what the soul is. Cic.

1. In these examples the clauses used as elements have undergone certain changes to adapt them to their subordinate rank. The clause *Hōmērum caecum fuisse*, the subject of *trādītum est*, if used as an independent sentence, would be *Hōmērus caecus fuit* ; and the clause *Qualis sit ānīmus*, the object of *nescit*, would be *Qualis est ānīmus*, What is the soul ?

2. Forms of Subordinate Clauses.

1) Infinitive with Subject Accusative :

Hoc majōres dicēre audīvi, I have heard that our ancestors said this. Cic.

2) Indirect Questions :

Quid dies fērat, incertum est, *What a day may bring forth is uncertain.* Cic.

3) Relative Clauses :

Sententia, quae tūtissima vidēbātur, *The opinion which seemed the safest.* Liv.

4) Clauses with Conjunctions :

Mos est ut dicat, *It is his custom to speak.* Cic. Priusquam lūcet, adsunt, *They are present before it is light.* Cic.

358. Infinitive Clauses sometimes drop their subjects :

Diligi jūeundum est, *It is pleasant to be loved.* Cic. Vivere est cōgītāre, *To live is to think.* Cic. See 545. 2.

359. Participles often supply the place of subordinate clauses.

Plāto scribens mortuus est, *Plato died while writing, or while he was writing.* Cic. See 576-578.

SECTION IV.

COMPOUND SENTENCES.

360. Compound sentences express two or more independent thoughts, and are of five varieties :

I. COPULATIVE SENTENCES—in which two or more thoughts are presented in harmony with each other :

Sol ruit et montes umbrantur, *The sun descends and the mountains are shaded.* Virg.

II. DISJUNCTIVE SENTENCES—in which a choice between two or more thoughts is offered :

Audendum est āliquid aut omnia pātienda sunt, *Something must be risked or all things must be endured.* Liv.

III. ADVERSATIVE SENTENCES—in which the thoughts are opposed to each other :

Gyges a nullo vidēbātur, ipse autem omnia vidēbat, *Gyges was seen by no one, but he himself saw all things.* Cic.

IV. ILLATIVE SENTENCES—which contain an inference :

Nihil lābōras, ideo nihil hābes ; *You do nothing, therefore you have nothing.* Phaed.

V. CAUSAL SENTENCES—which contain a cause or reason :

Difficile est consilium, sum enim sōlus ; *Consultation is difficult, for I am alone.* Cic.

1. The CONNECTIVES generally used in these several classes of compounds are the corresponding classes of conjunctions, i. e., *copulative*, *disjunctive*, *adversative*, *illative*, and *causal* conjunctions. See 310. But the connective is often omitted.

2. DISJUNCTIVE QUESTIONS have special connectives. See 346. II. 2.

361. Compound sentences are generally abridged when their members have parts in common. Such sentences have compound elements :

1. Compound Subjects :

Abōrīgīnes Trojānīque dūcem amīsēre, *The Aborigines and the Trojans lost their leader.* Liv.

The two members here united are: *Aborigines ducem amisere* and *Trojani ducem amisere*; but as they have the same predicate, *ducem amisere*, that predicate is expressed but once, and the two subjects are united into the compound subject: *Aborigines Trojanique*.

2. Compound Predicates :

Rōmāni pārant consultantque, *The Romans prepare and consult.* Liv.

3. Compound Modifiers :

Athēnas Graeciamque libērāvit, *He liberated Athens and Greece.* Nep.



CHAPTER II.

SYNTAX OF NOUNS.



SECTION I.

AGREEMENT OF NOUNS.

RULE I.—Predicate Nouns.

362. A Predicate Noun denoting the same person or thing as its Subject agrees with it in CASE:¹

Ego sum nuntius, *I am a messenger.* Liv. Servius rex est dēclārātus, *Servius was declared king.* Liv. Orestem se esse dixit, *He said that he was Orestes.* Cic. See 353.

1. In GENDER AND NUMBER Agreement either may or may not take place. But

1) If the Predicate Noun has different forms for different genders, it must agree with its subject in gender :

Usus māgister est, *Experience is an instructor.* Cic. Hīstōria est māgistra (not magister), *History is an instructress.* Cic.

¹ For Pred. Noun denoting a different person or thing from its subject, see 401. For convenience of reference the *Rules* will be presented in a body on page 274.

2. WITH FINITE VERBS.—Predicate Nouns are most frequent

1) With *Sum* and a few intransitive verbs : *ēvādo*, *exsisto*, *appāreo*, and the like :

Ego sum nuntius, I am a messenger. Liv. *Hōmo magnus ēvāsērat, He had become (turned out) a great man.* Cic. *Exstitit vindex libertātis, He became (stood forth) the defender of liberty.* Cic.

2) With Passive verbs of *appointing, making, naming, regarding, esteeming*, and the like :

Servius rex est dēclārātus, Servius was declared king. Liv. *Mundus cīvitas existimātur, The world is regarded as a state.* Cic.

(1) In the poets, Predicate Nouns are used with great freedom after verbs of a great variety of significations. Thus with *audio* = *appellor* : *Rex audisti, You have been called king* ; i. e., have heard yourself so called. Hor.

(2) For *Predicate Accusative*, see 373. 1.

(3) The Dative of the object for which (390), *pro* with the Abl., and *lōco* or *in nūmēro* with the Gen. are often kindred in force to Predicate Nouns : *hosti, pro hoste, lōco hostis, in nūmēro hostium*, for or as an enemy. See also Pred. Gen. 401.

3. WITH INFINITIVES, PARTICIPLES, ETC.—Predicate Nouns are used not only with finite verbs, but also with Infinitives and Participles, and sometimes without verb or participle :

Dēclārātus rex Nūma, Numa having been declared king. Liv. *Cānīnio consūle, Caninius being consul.* Cic. See 431, also *Orestem* under the rule.

1) For *Predicate Nominative* after *esse*, see 547.

2) For Infinitive or Clause as Predicate, see 553, I. ; 495, 3.

RULE II.—Appositives.

363. An Appositive agrees with its Subject in CASE :

Cluilius rex mōrītur, Cluilius the king dies. Liv. *Urbes Carthāgo atque Nūmantia, the cities Carthage and Numantia.* Cic. See 352. 2.

1. In GENDER and NUMBER the appositive conforms to the same rule as the predicate noun. See 362. 1.

2. The SUBJECT of the appositive is often omitted :

Hostis hostem occidēre vōlui, I (ego understood) an enemy wished to slay an enemy. Liv.

3. FORCE OF APPOSITIVES.—Appositives are generally kindred in force to Relative clauses, but sometimes to Temporal clauses :

Cluilius rex, Cluilius (who was) the king. Liv. *Fūrius puer dīdicit, Furius learned, when a boy, or as a boy.* Cic.

4. PARTITIVE APPOSITIVE.—The parts are sometimes in apposition with the whole :

Duo rēges, ille bello, hic pāce cīvilitatem auxcrunt, Two kings advanced the state, the former by war, the latter by peace. Liv.

Conversely the whole may be in apposition with its parts.

5. CLAUSES.—A noun or pronoun may be in apposition with a clause, or a clause in apposition with a noun or pronoun. See 445, 7 ; 553, II.

SECTION II.

NOMINATIVE.

364. CASES.—Nouns have different forms or cases to mark the various relations in which they are used. These cases, in accordance with their general force, may be arranged and characterized as follows :

I. Nominative,	Case of the Subject.
II. Vocative,	Case of Address.
III. Accusative,	Case of Direct Object.
IV. Dative,	Case of Indirect Object.
V. Genitive,	Case of Adjective Relations.
VI. Ablative,	Case of Adverbial Relations. ¹

365. KINDRED CASES.—The cases naturally arrange themselves in pairs : the Nominative and Vocative require no governing word ; the Accusative and Dative are the regular cases of the Object of an action ; the Genitive has usually the force of an Adjective, and the Ablative that of an Adverb.

366. NOMINATIVE.—The Nominative is either the Subject of a Sentence or in agreement with another Nominative.

RULE III.—Subject Nominative.

367. The Subject of a Finite Verb is put in the Nominative :²

Servius regnāvit, Servius reigned. Liv. Pātent portae, The gates are open. Cic. Rex vīcit, The king conquered. Liv.

1. The Subject is always a substantive, a pronoun, or some word or clause used substantively :

Ego rēges ejēci, I have banished kings. Cic.

2. SUBJECT OMITTED.—The subject is generally omitted

1) When it is a Personal Pronoun, unless expressed for contrast or emphasis, and when it can be readily supplied from the context :

Discipūlos mōneo, ut stūdia āment, I instruct pupils to love their studies. Quint.

2) When it means men, people : *Fērunt, They say.*

3) When the verb is impersonal : *Pluit, It rains.*

3. VERB OMITTED.—The Verb is sometimes omitted, when it can be readily supplied, especially *est* and *sunt* :

¹ This arrangement is adopted in the discussion of the cases, because, it is thought, it will best present the force of the several cases and their relation to each other.

² For the Subject of the Infinitive, see 545. For the agreement of the verb with its subject, see 460.

Ecce tuæ littærae, *Lo your letter (comes)*. Cic. Tot sententiae, *There are (sunt) so many opinions*. Ter. Consul præfectus (est), *The consul set out*. Liv.

1) *Ficio* is often omitted in short sentences and clauses. Thus with *nihil aliud* (amplius, minus, etc.) *quam*, *nihil præterquam* = merely, *si nihil aliud, finem*, etc. : *Nihil aliud quam steterunt*, *They merely stood* (did nothing other than). Liv. Also in brief expressions of opinion: *Recte ille*, *He does rightly*. Cic.

368. AGREEMENT.—A Nominative in agreement with another nominative is either a Predicate Noun or an Appositive. See 362 and 363.

For the Predicate Nominative after a verb with *esse*, see 547.

SECTION III.

VOCATIVE.

RULE IV.—Case of Address.

369. The Name of the person or thing addressed is put in the Vocative :

Perge, Laeli, *Proceed*, *Laelius*. Cic. Quid est, Cætília, *Why is it*, *Catiline?* Cic. Tuum est, Servi, regnum, *The kingdom is yours*, *Servius*. Liv. O dii immortales, *O immortal gods*. Cic.

1. WITH INTERJECTIONS.—The vocative is used both with and without interjections.

2. NOMINATIVE FOR VOCATIVE.—In poetry and sometimes in prose, the nominative in apposition with the subject occurs where we should expect the vocative :

Andi tu, pópulus Albānus, *Hear ye*, *Alban people*. Liv. Here *populus* may be treated as a Nom. in apposition with *tu*, though it may also be treated as an irregular Voc. See 45. 5. 3).

3. VOCATIVE FOR NOMINATIVE.—Conversely the vocative by attraction sometimes occurs in poetry where we should expect the nominative :

Quibus, Hector, ab óris expectáte vénis, *From what shores*, *Hector*, *do you anxiously awaited come?* Virg.

SECTION IV.

ACCUSATIVE.

370. The Accusative is used

- I. As the Direct Object of an Action.
- II. As the Subject of an Infinitive.
- III. In Agreement with another Accusative.
- IV. In an Adverbial Sense—with or without Prepositions.
- V. In Exclamations—with or without Interjections.

I. ACCUSATIVE AS DIRECT OBJECT.

RULE V.—Direct Object.

371. The Direct Object of an action is put in the Accusative:

Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God made the world.* Cic. Libēra rem publicam, *Free the republic.* Cic. Pōpūli Rōmāni sālūtem dēfendite, *Defend the safety of the Roman people.* Cic.

1. The DIRECT OBJECT may be

1) The *Object*, person or thing, on which the action of the verb is directly exerted, as *sālūtem* above.

2) The *Effect* of the action, i. e., the object produced by it, as *mundum* above.

3) The *Cognate Accusative*. Many verbs, generally intransitive, sometimes become so far transitive as to admit an accusative of *cognate* or *kindred* meaning:

Eam vitam vīvĕre, *to live that life.* Cic. Mirum somniāre somnium, *to dream a wonderful dream.* Plaut. Servitūtem servīre, *to serve a servitude.* Ter.

(1) This accusative is usually qualified by an adjective as in the first two examples.

(2) Neuter Pronouns and Adjectives often supply the place of the Cognate accusative:

Eādem peccat, *He makes the same mistakes.* Cic. Hoc stūdet ūnum, *He studies this one thing* (this one study). Hor. Id assentior, *I make this assent.* Cic. Idem glōriāri, *to make the same boast.* Cic.

(3) The object is often omitted when it is a reflexive (184, 2) or can be easily supplied: *mōveo* = *mōveo me*, I move (myself); *vertit* = *vertit se*, he moves (himself).

(4) Some verbs are sometimes transitive and sometimes intransitive: *augeo*, *dūro*, *incēpio*, *laxo*, *ruo*, *suppēdīto*, *turbo*, etc.

2. WITH OR WITHOUT OTHER CASES.—The direct object may be used with all transitive verbs, whether with or without other cases. See 384. 410. 419.

3. TRANSITIVE AND INTRANSITIVE VERBS.—Many verbs transitive in English are intransitive in Latin. See 385. Conversely some verbs intransitive in English are transitive in Latin, or at least are often so used, especially verbs denoting

1) *Feeling or Mental State*: *despĕro*, to despair of; *dōleo*, to grieve for; *gĕmo*, to sigh over; *horreo*, to shudder at; *lācĕrimo*, to weep over; *moereo*, to mourn over; *mīror*, to wonder at; *rīdeo*, to laugh at; *sitio*, to thirst for, etc.

Hōnōres despĕrat, *He despairs of honors.* Cic. Haec gĕmēbant, *They were sighing over these things.* Cic. Dētrīmenta rīdet, *He laughs at losses.* Hor.

2) *Taste or Smell*: *ūleo*, *sūpio*, and their compounds, both literally and figuratively:

Olet unguenta, *He smells of perfumes.* Ter. Oratio rēdōlet antīquītātem, *The oration smacks of antiquity.* Cic.

4. COMPOUNDS OF PREPOSITIONS.—We notice two classes :

1) Many compounds become transitive by the force of the prepositions with which they are compounded, especially compounds of *circum*, *per*, *prae*, *trans*, *super*, and *subter* :

Murmur conciōnem pervāsīt, *A murmur went through the assembly.* Liv. Rhēnum transiēruūt, *They crossed (went across) the Rhine.* Caes.

2) Many compounds, without becoming strictly transitive, admit an Accus. dependent upon the preposition :

Circumstant sēnātum, *They stand around the senate.* Cic.

5. CLAUSE AS OBJECT.—An Infinitive or a Clause may be used as Direct Object :

Impērāre cūpiunt, *They desire to rule.* Just. Sentīmus cālēre ignem, *We perceive that fire is hot.* Cic.

6. PASSIVE CONSTRUCTION.—When a verb takes the passive construction

1) The direct object of the active becomes the subject of the passive, and
2) The subject of the active becomes the Ablative of Cause (414) or the Ablative of Agent with *a* or *ab* (414. 5).

Thēbāni Lysandrum occidērunt, *The Thebans slew Lysander.* Passive : Lysander occisus est a Thēbānis, *Lysander was slain by the Thebans.* Nep.

7. ACCUSATIVE IN SPECIAL INSTANCES.—Participles in *dus*, verbal adjectives in *bundus*, and in Plautus a few verbal nouns, occur with the accusative :

Vitābundus castra, *avoiding the camp.* Liv. Quid tibi hanc cūrātio est rem, *What care have you of this ?* Plaut.

372. TWO ACCUSATIVES.—Two accusatives without any connective, expressed or understood, may depend upon the same verb. They may denote

1. The same person or thing.
2. Different persons or things.

Any number of accusatives connected by conjunctions, expressed or understood, may of course depend upon the same verb.

RULE VI.—Two Accusatives—Same Person.

373. Verbs of MAKING, CHOOSING, CALLING, REGARDING, SHOWING, and the like, admit two Accusatives of the same person or thing :

Hāmilcārem impērātōrem fēcērunt, *They made Hamilcar commander.* Nep. Ancum rēgem pōpulus creāvit, *The people elected Ancus king.* Liv. Summum consilium appellārunt Senātum, *They called their highest council Senate.* Cic. Se praestitit prōpugnātōrem libertātis, *He showed*

himself the champion of liberty. Cic. Flaccum hābuit collēgam, *He had Flaccus as colleague.* Nep.

1. PREDICATE ACCUSATIVE.—One of the two accusatives is the *Direct Object*, and the other an essential part of the Predicate. The latter may be called a *Predicate Accusative*. See 362. 2. (2).

2. VERBS WITH PREDICATE ACCUSATIVE.—The verbs which most frequently admit a Direct Object with a Predicate Accusative are verbs of

1) *Making, electing*: fūcio, efficio, reddo,—creo, ēligo, dēsigno, dēclāro.

2) *Calling, regarding*: appello, nōmīno, vōco, dīco,—arbitror, existīmo, dūco, jūdīco, hābeo, pūto.

3) *Showing*: praesto, praebeo, exhibeo.

3. ADJECTIVE AS PREDICATE ACCUSATIVE.—The Predicate Accusative may be either Substantive or Adjective:

Hōmīnes caecos reddit āvāritia, *Avarice renders men blind.* Cic.

4. PASSIVE CONSTRUCTION.—In the Passive these verbs take two Nominatives, a *Subject* and *Predicate*, corresponding to the two Accusatives of the Active:

Servius rex est dēclārātus, *Servius was declared king.* Liv. See 362. 2. 2.)

RULE VII.—Two Accusatives—Person and Thing.

374. Some verbs of ASKING, DEMANDING, TEACHING, and CONCEALING, admit two Accusatives in the Active, and one in the Passive:

Me sententiam rōgāvit, *He asked me my opinion.* Cic. Ego sententiam rōgātus sum, *I was asked my opinion.* Cic. Philōsōphia nos res omnes dōcuit, *Philosophy has taught us all things.* Cic. Artes ēdoctus fuerat, *He had been taught the arts.* Liv. Non te cēlāvi sermōnem, *I did not conceal from you the conversation.* Cic.

1. PERSON AND THING.—One accusative generally designates the *person*, the other the *thing*: with the Passive the accusative of the Person becomes the subject and the accusative of the thing is retained: see examples.

2. VERBS WITH TWO ACCUSATIVES.—Those most frequently so used are

1) *Regularly*: cēlo—dōceo, cōdōceo, dēdōceo.

2) *Sometimes*: ōro, exōro, rōgo, interrōgo, percontor, flāgīto, posco, rēposco.

3. OTHER CONSTRUCTIONS also occur:

1) *Cēlo*: Ablative with a preposition:

Me de hoc libro cēlāvit, *He kept me ignorant of this book.* Cic. Passive: Accus. of Neuter pronoun or Abl. with *de*: Hoc cēlāri, *to be kept ignorant of this.* Ter. Cēlāri de consīlio, *to be kept ignorant of the plan.* Cic. The Dative is rare: Id Alcībīādī cēlāri non pōtuit, *This could not be concealed from Alcibiades.* Nep.

2) *Verbs of Teaching*: Ablative with or without a preposition:

De sua re me dōcet: *He informs me in regard to his case.* Cic. Sōcrātem fidibus dōcuit, *He taught Socrates (with) the lyre.* Cic.

3) *Verbs of Asking, Demanding*: Ablative with a preposition:

Hoc a me poscere, *to demand this from me*. Cic. Te hisdem de rebus interrōgo, *I ask you in regard to the same things*. Cic.

4) *Peto, postulo, and quæro* take the Ablative of the person with a preposition:

Pacem a Rōmānis pētiērunt, *They asked peace from the Romans*. Caes.

4. INFINITIVE OR CLAUSE as Accusative of thing:

Te sapiere docet, *He teaches you to be wise*. Cic.

5. A NEUTER PRONOUN OR ADJECTIVE as a second accusative occurs with many verbs which do not otherwise take two accusatives:

Hoc te hortor, *I exhort you to this, I give you this exhortation*. Cic. Ea mōnemur, *We are admonished of these things*. Cic.

6. COMPOUND VERBS.—A few compounds of *trans, circum, ad,* and *in* admit two accusatives, dependent the one upon the verb, the other upon the preposition:

Ibērum cōpias trajecit, *He led his forces across the Ebro*. Liv.

In the Passive, not only these, but even other compounds sometimes admit an Accus. depending upon the preposition:

Practervēhor ostia Pantāgiæ, *I am carried by the mouth of the Pantagia*. Virg.

7. POETIC ACCUSATIVE.—In poetry, rarely in prose, verbs of clothing, unclothing—*induo, exuo, cingo, accingo, induco*, etc.—sometimes take in the Passive an accusative in imitation of the Greek:

Gāleam induitur, *He puts on his helmet*. Virg. Inūtile ferrum cingitur, *He girds on his useless sword*. Virg. Virgīnes longam indūtæ vestem, *maidens attired in long robes*. Liv.

II. ACCUSATIVE AS SUBJECT OF INFINITIVE.

375. The Accusative is used as the Subject of an Infinitive; see 545:

Plātōnem fērunt in Itāliam vēnisse, *They say that Plato came into Italy*. Cic.

Plātōnem is the subject of *venisse*.

III. ACCUSATIVE IN AGREEMENT WITH AN ACCUSATIVE.

376. The Accusative in agreement with another Accusative is either a Predicate Noun or an Appositive:

Orestem se esse dixit, *He said that he was Orestes*. Cic. Apud Hērōdōtum, patrem histōriæ, *in Herodotus, the father of history*. Cic. See 362 and 363.

IV. ACCUSATIVE IN AN ADVERBIAL SENSE.

377. In an Adverbial sense the Accusative is used either with or without Prepositions.

1. WITH PREPOSITIONS. See 433.

2. WITHOUT PREPOSITIONS.—The Adverbial use of the Accusative without Prepositions is presented in the following rules.

RULE VIII.—Accusative of Time and Space.

378. DURATION OF TIME and EXTENT OF SPACE are expressed by the Accusative :

Römulus septem et triginta regnāvit annos, *Romulus reigned thirty-seven years.* Liv. Quinque millia passuum ambŭlāre, *to walk five miles.* Cic. Pēdes octōginta distāre, *to be eighty feet distant.* Caes. Nix quatuor pēdes alta, *snow four feet deep.* Liv. But

1. DURATION OF TIME is sometimes expressed by the Ablative or the Accusative with a Preposition :

1) By the *Ablative* : Pugnātum est hōris quinque, *The battle was fought five hours.* Caes.

2) By the *Accusative with Preposition* : Per annos vīginti certātum est, *The war was waged for twenty years.* Liv.

2. DISTANCE is sometimes expressed by the Ablative :

Millibus passuum sex consēdit, *He encamped at the distance of six miles.* Caes. Sometimes with a preposition : Ab millibus passuum duobus, *at the distance of two miles.* Caes.

RULE IX.—Accusative of Limit.

379. The Name of a Town used as the Limit of motion is put in the Accusative :

Nuntius Rōmam rēdit, *The messenger returns to Rome.* Liv. Plāto Tārentum vēnit, *Plato came to Tarentum.* Cic. Fūgit Tarquīnios, *He fled to Tarquinii.* Cic. But

1. The Accusative with *Ad* occurs :

1) In the sense of—*to, toward, in the direction of, into the vicinity of* :

Tres sunt viae ad Mūtīnam, *There are three roads to Mutina.* Cic. Ad Zāmam pervēnit, *He came to the vicinity of Zama.* Sall.

2) In contrast with *a* or *ab* :

A Diānio ad Sīnōpen, *from Dianium to Sinope.* Cic.

2. *Urbs* or *Oppidum* with a Preposition :

Pervēnit in oppidum Cirtam, *He came into the town of Cirta.* Sall.

3. Like Names of Towns are used

1) The Accusatives *dŏmum, dŏmos, rus*:

Seĭpio dŏmum rēductus est, Scipio was conducted home. Cic. Dŏmos abducti, led to their homes. Liv. Rus ēvŏlāre, to hasten into the country. Cic.

2) Sometimes the Accusative of names of Islands and Peninsulas:

Lātŏna confūgit Dēlum, Latona fled to Delos. Cic. Pervēnit Chersŏnēsum, He went to the Chersonesus. Nep.

4. Names of Other Places used as the limit of motion are generally in the Accusative with a Preposition:

In Asiā rēdit, He returns into Asia. Nep.

But the preposition is sometimes omitted before names of countries, and, in the poets, before names of nations and even before common nouns:

Aegyptum prŏfūgit, He fled to Egypt. Cic. Itāliā vēnit, He came to Italy. Virg. Ibimus Afros, We shall go to the Africans. Virg. Lāvīnia vēnit litŏra, He came to the Lavinian shores. Virg.

5. A Poetic Dative for the accusative with or without a preposition occurs:

It clāmor coelo (for ad coelum), The shout ascends to heaven. Virg.

RULE X.—Accusative of Specification.

380. A Verb or Adjective may take an Accusative to define its application:

Căpita vĕlāmur, We have our heads veiled (are veiled as to our heads). Virg. Nūbe hŭmĕros āmictus, with his shoulders enveloped in a cloud, Hor. Miles fractus membra lābŏre, the soldier with limbs shattered with labor (broken as to his limbs). Hor. Aenēas os deo sĭmilis, Aeneas like a god in appearance. Virg.

1. In a strict sense, the Accusative of Specification generally specifies the part to which the action or quality particularly belongs. In this sense, it is mostly poetic, but occurs also in prose. See 429.

2. In a freer sense, this Accusative includes the adverbial use of *partem, vicem, nihil*, of *id* and *genus* in *id tempŏris, id aetātis* (at this time, age), *id gĕnus, omne gĕnus, quod gĕnus* (for *ejus gĕneris*, etc.), etc.; also of *sĕcus, libra* and of many neuter pronouns and adjectives; *hoc, illud, id, quid* (454, 2), *multum, summum, cĕtera, reliqua*, etc. In this sense, it is common in prose.

Maximam partem lacte vĭvunt, They live mostly (as to the largest part) upon milk. Caes. Nihil mŏti sunt, They were not at all moved. Liv. Lŏcus id tempŏris vacuus ērat, The place was at this time vacant. Cic. Alĭquid id gĕnus scribĕre, to write something of this kind. Cic. Quacrit, quid possint, He inquires how powerful they are. Caes. Quid vĕnis, Why do you come?

V. ACCUSATIVE IN EXCLAMATIONS.**RULE XI.—Accusative in Exclamations.**

381. The Accusative either with or without an Interjection may be used in Exclamations:

Heu me mīserum, *Ah me unhappy!* Cic. Me mīserum, *Me miserable!*¹ Cic. O fallācem spem, *O deceptive hope!* Cic. Me caecum, *Blind that I am!* Cic. Pro deōrum fidem, *In the name of the gods!* Cic. But

1. An Adjective or Genitive generally accompanies this accusative, as in the examples.

2. O, ēheu, heu are the Interjections most frequently used with the Accusative, though others occur.

3. Other Cases also occur in exclamations:

1) The *Vocative*—when an address as well as an exclamation is intended:

Pro sancte Jūpiter, *O holy Jupiter.* Cic. Infelix Dido, *Unhappy Dido.* Virg.

2) The *Nominative*—when the exclamation approaches the form of a statement:

En dextra, *Lo the right hand* (there is, or that is the right hand)! Virg. Ecce tuae littērae, *Lo your letter* (comes)! Cic.

3) The *Dative*—to designate the person after *hei*, *vae*, and sometimes after *ecce*, *en*, *hem*.

Hei mihi, *Woe to me.* Virg. Vae tibi, *Woe to you.* Ter. Ecce tibi, *Lo to you* (lo here is to you = observe). Cic. En tibi, *This for you* (lo I do this for you). Liv. See 389. 2.

SECTION V.

DATIVE.

382. The Dative is the Case of the Indirect Object, and is used

I. With Verbs.

II. With Adjectives.

III. With their Derivatives—Adverbs and Substantives.

I. DATIVE WITH VERBS.

383. INDIRECT OBJECT.—A verb is often attended by a noun designating the object indirectly affected by the action, that TO or FOR which something is or is done. A noun thus used is called an Indirect Object.

RULE XII.—Dative with Verbs.

384. The INDIRECT OBJECT is put in the Dative:

I. With INTRANSITIVE and PASSIVE Verbs:

Tempōri cedit, *He yields to the time.* Cic. Sibi timuērant, *They had feared for themselves.* Caes. Lābōri stūdent, *They devote themselves to labor.* Caes. Mundus deo pāret, *The world obeys God.*² Cic. Caesāri supplicābo, *I will supplicate Caesar.*³ Cic. Nōbis vīta dāta est, *Life has*

¹ Milton, *Par. Lost*, iv. 73

² Is subject to God.

³ Will make supplication to Caesar.

been granted to us. Cic. Nūmītōri dēditur, *He is delivered to Numitor.* Liv.

II. With TRANSITIVE Verbs, in connection with the ACCUSATIVE :

Pons īter hostībūs dēdit, *The bridge gave a passage to the enemy.* Liv. Lēges cīvītātībūs suis scripsērunt, *They prepared laws for their states.* Cic.

1. DOUBLE CONSTRUCTION.—A few verbs admit (1) the Dative of the person and the Accusative of the thing, or (2) the Accusative of the person and the Ablative of the thing: *alīcui rem dōnāre*, to present a thing to any one, or *aliquem re dōnāre*, to present any one with a thing. For the Dat. of the person, the Dat. of a thing sometimes occurs, especially if it involves persons or is in a measure personified :

Mūrum urbi circumdēdit, *He surrounded the city with a wall.* Nep.

This double construction occurs chiefly with: *aspergo, circumdo, circumfundo, dōno, exuo, impertio, induo, inspergo, interclūdo.*

2. To and For are not always signs of the Dative : thus

1) To, denoting mere *motion* or *direction*, is generally expressed by the Accusative with or without a preposition (379. and 379. 4) :

Vēni ad urbem, *I came to the city.* Cic. Dēlum vēnimus, *We came to Delos.* Cic. But the Dative occurs in the poets: It clāmōr coelo, *The shout goes to heaven.* Virg.

2) For, *in defence of*, *in behalf of*, is expressed by the Abl. with *pro* ; *for the sake of*, *for the purpose of*, sometimes by the Accus. with *in*.

Pro patria mōri, *to die for one's country.* Hor. Dīmīcāre pro libertātē, *to fight for liberty.* Cic. Sātis in ūsum, *enough for use.* Liv.

3. OTHER ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS.—Conversely the dative is often used where the English either omits TO or FOR, or employs some other preposition. We proceed to specify the cases in which this difference of idiom requires notice.

385. The Dative of Advantage and Disadvantage is used with verbs signifying *to benefit* or *injure*, *please* or *displease*, *command* or *obey*, *serve* or *resist* ; also, *indulge*, *spare*, *pardon*, *envy*, *threaten*, *be angry*, *believe*, *persuade*, and the like :

Sībi prōsunt, *They benefit themselves.* Cic. Nōcēre altēri, *to injure another.* Cic. Zēnōni plācuit, *It pleased Zeno.* Cic. Displicet Tullo, *It displeases Tullus.* Liv. Cūpīditātībūs impērāre, *to command desires.* Cic. Deo pārēre, *to obey God.* Cic. Rēgi servīre, *to serve the king.* Cic. Hostībūs rēsistēre, *to resist the enemy.* Caes. Sībi indulgēre, *to indulge one's self.* Cic. Vitae parcēre, *to spare life.* Nep. Mihi ignoscēre, *to pardon me.* Cic. Mīnītans patriae, *threatening his country.* Liv. Irasci āmicis, *to be angry with friends.* Cic. Mihi crēde, *Believe me.* Cic. Iis persuādēre, *to persuade them.* Caes.

1. OTHER CASES.—Some verbs of this class take the Accusative: *dilecto*, *jūvo*, *laedo*, *offendo*, etc.; *fido* and *confido* generally the Ablative (419):
Mārium jūvit, *He helped Marius*. Nep.

2. SPECIAL VERBS.—With a few verbs the force of the dative is found only by attending to the strict meaning of the verb: *nūbo*, to marry, strictly to veil one's self, as the bride for the bridegroom; *mēdeor*, to cure, to administer a remedy to; *satisfacio*, to satisfy, to do enough for, etc.

3. ACCUSATIVE OR DATIVE with a difference of signification: *cavēre aliquem*, to ward off some one; *cavēre ālicui*, to care for some one; *consulēre āliquem*, to consult, etc.; *ālicui*, to consult for; *mētūere*, *tīmēre āliquem*, to fear, etc.; *ālicui*, to fear for; *prospicere*, *prōvidēre āliquid*, to foresee; *ālicui*, to provide for; *tempērare*, *mōdērāri āliquid*, to govern, direct; *ālicui*, to restrain, put a check upon; *tempērare (sibi) ab āliquo*, to abstain from.

A few verbs admit either the Acc. or Dat. without any special difference of meaning: *ādūlor*, to flatter; *cōmitor*, to accompany, etc.

4. DATIVE rendered FROM, occurs with a few verbs of *differing*, *dissenting*, *repelling*, *taking away*: *diffēro*, *discrepo*, *disto*, *dissentio*, *arceo*, etc. .
Differre cuius, to differ from any one. Nep. *Discrepāre istis*, to differ from those. Hor. *Sibi dissentire*, to dissent from himself. Cic. See 412.

5. DATIVE rendered WITH, occurs with *misceo*, *admisceo*, *permisceo*, *jungo*, *certo*, *décerto*, *lucto*, *altercor*, and sometimes *facio* (434. 2):

Sēvēritātem miscere cōmitāti, to unite severity with affability. Liv.

Misceo and its compounds, as also *junctus* and *conjunctus*, also take the Abl. with or without *cum*.

386. Dative with Compounds.—The dative is used with many verbs compounded with the prepositions:

ad,	ante,	con,	in,	inter,
ob,	post,	prae,	sub,	super:

Adsum āmicis, *I am present with my friends*. Cic. *Omnibus antestāre*, to surpass all. Cic. *Terris cohaeret*, *It cleaves to the earth*. Sen. *Vōluptāti inhaerere*, to be connected with pleasure. Cic. *Interfuit pugnae*, *He participated in the battle*. Nep. *Consiliis obstāre*, to oppose plans. Nep. *Libertāti ōpes postferre*, to sacrifice wealth to liberty. Liv. *Pōpūlo praesunt*, *They rule the people*. Cic. *Succumbere dōloribus*, to yield to sorrows. Cic. *Sūperfuit patri*, *He survived his father*. Liv.

1. TRANSITIVE Verbs thus compounded admit both the Accusative and Dative: *Se oppōsuit hostibus*. *He opposed himself to the enemy*. Cic.

2. COMPOUNDS OF OTHER PREPOSITIONS, especially *ab*, *de*, *ex*, *pro*, and *circum*, sometimes admit the Dative; while several of the compounds specified under the rule admit the Abl.: *assuesco*, *consuesco*, *insuesco*, *acquiesco*, *sūpersēdeo* (also with Acc.), etc.

Hoc Caesāri dēfuit, *This failed (was wanting to) Caesar*. Caes.

3. MOTION OR DIRECTION.—Compounds expressing mere motion or direction generally take the Accusative or repeat the preposition:

Adire aras, to approach the altars. Cic. *Ad consules adire, to go to the consuls.* Cic.

In some instances where no motion is expressed, several of these compounds admit some other construction for the Dative :

In oratore inest scientia, In the orator is knowledge. Cic.

387. The Dative of Possessor is used with the verb *Sum* :

Mihi est nōverca, I have (there is to me) a stepmother. Virg. *Fonti nōmen Arēthūsa est, The fountain has (there is to the fountain) the name Arethusa.* Cic. But

1. The DATIVE OF THE NAME as well as of the possessor is common in expressions of naming: *nōmen est, nomen datur*, etc. :

Scipioni Africāno cognōmen fuit, Scipio had the surname Africanus. Sall. Here *Africāno*, instead of being in apposition with *cognōmen*, is put by attraction in apposition with *Scipioni*.

2. The GENITIVE OF THE NAME dependent upon *nomen* occurs :

Nōmen Mercūrii est mihi, I have the name of Mercury. Plaut.

3. By a GREEK IDIOM, *vōlens, cūpiens, or invitus* sometimes accompanies the dative of possessor :

Quibus bellum vōlentibus erat, They liked the war (it was to them wishing). Tac.

388. Dative of Agent.—The Dative of Agent is used with the Participle in *dus* :

Suum cuique incommōdum fērendum est, Every one has his own trouble to bear, or must bear his own trouble. Cic.

1. DATIVE WITH COMPOUND TENSES.—The Dative of the Agent is sometimes used with the compound tenses of passive verbs :

Mihi consilium captum jam diu est, I have a plan long since formed. Cic.

1) The Dative of Agent, with the Participle in *dus*, as in the Periphrastic Conjugation, designates the person who has the work to do; while with the Compound Tenses of passive verbs, it designates the person who has the work already done. See examples above.

2) HABEO with the Perfect Participle has the same force as EST MIHI with the Perfect Participle (388, 1) :

Bellum habuit indictum, He had a war (already) declared. Cic.

3) The Ablative with *a* or *ab* occurs :

Est a vōbis consulendum, Measures must be taken by you. Cic.

2. The REAL AGENT with Passive verbs is denoted by the Ablative with *a* or *ab*. The Dative, though the regular construction with the Passive Periphrastic conjugation, does not regard the person strictly as agent, but rather as possessor or indirect object. Thus, *Suum cuique incommōdum est*, means, Every one has his trouble (*cuique* Dative of Possessor), and *Suum cuique incommōdum fērendum est*, Every one has his trouble to bear. So too, *Mihi consilium est*, I have a plan; *Mihi consilium captum est*, I have a plan (*already*) formed.

3. DATIVE WITH SIMPLE TENSES.—The Dative is used with the tenses for incomplete action, to designate the person who is at once *Agent* and *Indirect Object*, the person BY whom and FOR (TO) whom the action is performed :

Hōnesta bōnis vīris quaeruntur, *Honorable things are sought by good men*, i. e., for themselves. Cic.

4. DATIVE OF AGENT IN POETS.—In the poets the Dative is often used for the *Ablative* with *a* or *ab*, to designate simply the agent of the action :

Non intelligor ulli, *I am not understood by any one*. Ovid.

389. Ethical Dative.—A Dative of the person to whom the thought is of special interest is often introduced into the Latin sentence when it cannot be imitated in English :

At tibi vēnit ad me, *But lo, he comes to me*. Cic. Ad illa mihi intendat ānimum, *Let him, I pray, direct his attention to those things*. Liv. Quid mihi Celsus āgit? *What is my Celsus doing?* Hor. But

1. The ETHICAL DATIVE is always a personal pronoun.

2. ETHICAL DATIVE with VOLO and INTERJECTIONS :

1) With VOLO: Quid vōbis vultis? *What do you wish, intend, mean?* Liv. Avāritia quid sibi vult, *What does avarice mean, or what object can it have?* Cic.

2) With INTERJECTIONS: *hei, vae* and some others: *Hei mihi, ah me*. Virg. *Vae tibi, Woe to you*. Ter. See §81. 3. 3).

RULE XIII.—Two Datives—To which and For which.

390. Two Datives—the OBJECT TO WHICH and the OBJECT FOR WHICH—occur with a few verbs :

I. With INTRANSITIVE and PASSIVE Verbs :

Mālo est hōmīnibus āvāritia, *Avarice is an evil to men* (lit. *is to men for an evil*). Cic. Est mihi cūrae, *It is a care to me*. Cic. Dōmus dēdēcōri dōmīno fit, *The house becomes a disgrace to its owner*. Cic. Vēnit Atticis auxilio, *He came to the assistance of the Athenians*. Nep. Hoc illi tribuēbātur ignāviae, *This was imputed to him as cowardice* (for *cowardice*). Cic. Iis subsīdio missus est, *He was sent to them as aid*. Nep.

II. With TRANSITIVE Verbs in connection with the ACCUSATIVE :

Quinque cohortes castris praesidio rēliquit, *He left five cohorts for the defence of the camp* (lit. *to the camp for a defence*). Caes. Pēricles agros suos dōno rei pūblicae dēdit, *Pericles gave his lands to the republic as a present* (lit. *for a present*). Just.

1. Verbs with Two DATIVES are

1) Intransitives signifying *to be, become, go, and the like*; *sum, fio*, etc.

2) Transitives signifying *to give, send, leave, impute, regard, choose, and the like*: *do, dōno, dūco, hābeo, mitto, rēlinquo, tribuo, verto*, etc. These take in the Active two datives with an accusative, but in the Passive two datives only, as the Accusative of the active becomes the subject of the passive. See §71. 6.

2. ONE DATIVE OMITTED.—One dative is often omitted or its place supplied by a Predicate Noun :

Ea sunt ūsui, *These things are of use* (for use). Caes. Tu illi pāter es, *You are a father to him*. Tac.

3. With *Audiens* two Datives sometimes occur, the Dat. *dicto* dependent upon *audiens* and a personal Dat. dependent upon *dicto*-*audiens* treated as a verb of obeying (385) :

Dicto sum audiens, *I am listening to the word, I obey*. Plaut. Nōbis dicto audiens est, *He is obedient to us*. Cic. Sometimes *dicto obēdiens* is used in the same way : Māgistro dicto obediens, *obedient to his master*. Plaut.

II. DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

RULE XIV.—Dative.

391. With Adjectives the OBJECT TO WHICH the quality is directed is put in the Dative :

Patriae solum omnibus cārum est, *The soil of their country is dear to all*. Cic. Id aptum est tempōri, *This is adapted to the time*. Cic. Omni aetāti mors est communis, *Death is common to every age*. Cic. Cānis similis lūpo est, *A dog is similar to a wolf*. Cic. Nātūrae accommodātum, *adapted to nature*. Cic. Graeciae ūtile, *useful to Greece*. Nep.

1. ADJECTIVES WITH DATIVE.—The most common are those signifying : *Agreeable, easy, friendly, like, near, necessary, suitable, subject, useful*, together with others of a similar or opposite meaning, and verbals in *bilis*.

Such are : accommodātus, aequalis, āliēnus, āmicus and inimicus, aptus, cārus, fācilis and difficilis, fidēlis and infidēlis, finitimus, grātus and ingrātus, idōneus, jūcundus and injūcundus, mōlestus, nēcessārius, nōtus and ignōtus, noxius, par and dispar, perniciosus, prōpinquus, proprius, sālūtāris, similis and dissimilis, vicinus, etc.

2. OTHER CONSTRUCTIONS sometimes occur where the learner would expect the Dative :

1) *Accusative with a Preposition* : (1) **in**, **erga**, **adversus** with adjectives signifying *friendly, hostile, etc.*, and (2) **ad**, to denote the *object* or *end* for which, with adjectives signifying *useful, suitable, inclined, etc.* :

Pērindulgens in patrem, *very kind to his father*. Cic. Multas ad res pērūtīlis, *very useful for many things*. Cic. Ad cōmītātem prōclīvis, *inclined to affability*. Cic. Prōnus ad luctum, *inclined to mourning*. Cic.

2) *Accusative without a Preposition* with *prōpior, proximus* :

Prōpior montem, *nearer the mountain*. Sall. Proximus ināre, *nearest to the sea*. Caes. See 433 and 437.

3) *Ablative with or without a Preposition* :

Aliēnum a vīta mea, *foreign to my life*. Ter. Hōmīne ālienissimum, *most foreign to man*. Cic. Eī cum Roscio communis, *common to him and Roscius* (with Roscins). Cic.

4) *Genitive* : (1) with *proprius, communis, contrārius* ; (2) with *similis*,

dissimilis, assimilis, consimilis, par and *dispar*, especially to express likeness in character; (3) with adjectives used substantively, sometimes even in the superlative; (4) sometimes with *affinis, alienus, insuetus*, and a few others:

Pöpli Römäni est propria libertas, Liberty is characteristic of the Roman people. Cic. *Alexandri similis, like Alexander*, i. e., in character. Cic. *Dispar sui, unlike itself.* Cic. *Cujus pares, like whom.* Cic. *Amicissimus hominum, the best friend of the men*, i. e., the most friendly to them. Cic.

3. **Idem** occurs with the Dative, especially in the poets:

Idem facit occidenti, He does the same as kill, or as he who kills. Hor.

4. For the GENITIVE AND DATIVE with an adjective, see 399. 6.

III. DATIVE WITH DERIVATIVE NOUNS AND ADVERBS.

RULE XV.—Dative.

392. A few Derivative Nouns and Adverbs take the Dative after the analogy of their primitives:

I. VERBAL NOUNS.—*Justitia est obtemperatio legibus, Justice is obedience to laws.* Cic. *Sibi responsio, replying to himself.* Cic. *Opulento homini servitus dura est, Serving a rich man (servitude to) is hard.* Plaut.

II. ADVERBS.—*Congruenter naturae vivere, to live in accordance with nature.* Cic. *Sibi constanter dicere, to speak consistently with himself.* Cic. *Proxime hostium castris, next to the camp of the enemy.* Caes.

1. DATIVE WITH NOUNS.—Nouns construed with the Dative are derived from verbs which govern the Dative. With other nouns the Dative is generally best explained as dependent upon some verb, expressed or understood:

Tegumenta galeis milites facere jubet, He orders the soldiers to make coverings for their helmets. Caes. Here *galeis* is probably the indirect object of *facere* and not dependent upon *tegumenta*. In *conspectum venerat hostibus, He had come in sight of the enemy.* Caes. Here *hostibus* is dependent not upon *conspectum*, but upon *venerat*; the action, *coming in sight*, is conceived of as done to the enemy. See 398. 5.

2. DATIVE WITH ADVERBS.—A few adverbs not included in the above rule occur with the Dative: *huic una = una cum hoc, with him.*

SECTION VI.

GENITIVE.

393. The Genitive in its primary meaning denotes *source* or *cause*, but in its general use, it corresponds to the English possessive, or the objective with *of*, and expresses various adjective relations.

1. But sometimes, especially when Objective (396, II.), the Genitive is best rendered by *to, for, from, in, on account of*, etc.:

Beneficii gratia, gratitude for a favor. Cic. *Laborum fuga, escape from labors.* Cic.

394. The Genitive is used

- I. With Nouns.
- II. With Adjectives.
- III. With Verbs.
- IV. With Adverbs.

I. GENITIVE WITH NOUNS.

RULE XVI.—Genitive.

395. Any Noun, not an Appositive, qualifying the meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive :

Cātōnis ōrātiōnes, *Cato's orations*. Cic. Castra hostium, *the camp of the enemy*. Liv. Mors Hāmīlcāris, *the death of Hamilcar*. Liv. Deum mētus, *the fear of the gods*. Liv. Vir consīlii magni, *a man of great prudence*. Caes. See 363.

396. Varieties of Genitive with Nouns.—The principal varieties of the Genitive are the following :

I. The SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE designates the *subject* or *agent* of the action, feeling, etc., including the *author* and *possessor* :

Serpentis morsus, *the bite of the serpent*. Cic. Pāvcr Nūmīdārūm, *the fear of the Numidians*. Liv. Xēnōphontis libri, *the books of Xenophon*. Cic. Fānum Neptūni, *the temple of Neptune*. Nep.

II. The OBJECTIVE GENITIVE designates the *object* toward which the action or feeling is directed :

Amor glōriæ, *the love of glory*. Cic. Mēmōria mālōrūm, *the recollection of sufferings*. Cic. Deum mētus, *the fear of the gods*. Liv.

III. The PARTITIVE GENITIVE designates the *whole* of which a *part* is taken :

Quis vestrum, *which of you?* Cic. Vītæ pars, *a part of life*. Cic. Omnium sāpientissīmus, *the wisest of all men*. Cic.

1. NOSTRUM and VESTRUM.—As partitive genitives, *nostrum* and *vestrum* are generally used instead of *nostri* and *vestri*.

2. USE.—The Partitive Genitive is used

1) With *pars*, *nōmo*, *nihil* ; nouns of quantity, number, weight, etc. : *mōdius*, *līgio*, *tālentum*, and any nouns used partitively :

Equōrū pars, *a part of the horses*. Liv. Mēdimnum trītīci, *a bushel of wheat*. Cic. Pēcūniæ tālentum, *a talent of money*. Nep. Quōrū Cāius, *of whom Caius*. Cic.

2) With *Numerals* used Substantively :

Quōrum quattuor, *four of whom*. Liv. Sāpientum octāvus, *the eighth of the wise men*. Hor.

(1) But the Genitive should not be used when the two words refer to the same number of objects, even though *of* be used in English: Vivī qui (not *quōrum*) duo sūpersunt, *the living, of whom two survive*. Cic.

3) With Pronouns and Adjectives used substantively, especially (1) with *hic, ille, quis, qui, alter, ūter, neuter*, etc.; (2) with comparatives and superlatives; (3) with neuters: *hoc, id, illud, quid; multum, plus, plurimum, minus, minimum, tantum, quantum*, etc.; (4) with *omnes* and *cuncti*, rarely:

Quis vestrum, *which of you?* Cic. Consūlum alter, *one of the consuls*. Liv. Prior hōrum, *the former of these*. Nep. Gallōrum fortissīmi, *the bravest of the Gauls*. Caes. Id temporis, *that (of) time*. Cic. Multum ōpērae, *much (of) service*. Cic. Hōmīnum cuncti, *all of the men*. Ovid. But *omnes* and *cuncti* generally agree with their nouns: Omnes hōmīnes, *all men*. Cic.

Pronouns and Adjectives, except neuters, when used with the Part. Gen. take the gender of the Gen. unless they agree directly with some other word; see *Consūtum alter* above.

4) With a few *Adverbs* used substantively; (1) with adverbs of Quantity—*abunde, affātīm, nīmis, pārūm, partīm, quoad, sātis*, etc.; (2) with adverbs of Place—*hic, huc, nusquam, ūbi*, etc.; (3) with adverbs of Extent, degree, etc.—*eo, huc, quo*; (4) with superlatives:

Armōrum affātīm, *abundance of arms*. Liv. Lūcis nīmis, *too much (of) light*. Ovid. Sāpientiae pārūm, *little (of) wisdom*. Sall. Partīm cōpiārum, *a portion of the forces*. Liv. Quoad ejus facere pōtest, *as far as (as much of it as) he is able to do*. Cic. Nusquam gentium, *nowhere in the world*. Cic. Huc arrōgantiae, *to this degree of insolence*. Tac. Maxīme omnium, *most of all*. Cic.

3. Lōci and lōcōrum occur as partitive genitives in expressions of time:

Intērea lōci, *in the mean time*. Ter. Adhuc lōcōrum, *hitherto*. Plaut.

4. For *id gēnus* = *ejus gēnēris, sēcus, libra*, etc., see 380. 2.

5. For Predicate Genitive, see 401.

IV. The GENITIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC designates *character* or *quality*, including *value, price, size, weight, age*, etc.

Vir maxīmi consīlii, *a man of very great prudence*. Nep. Mītis ingēnii jūvēnis, *a youth of mild disposition*. Liv. Vestis magni prētīi, *a garment of great value*. Cic. Exsīlium dēcem annōrum, *an exile of ten years*. Nep. Cōrōna parvi pondēris, *a crown of small weight*. Liv. See 402, III. 1.

1. A noun designating *character* or *quality* may be either in the Gen. or in the Abl. See 428.

1) But it must be accompanied by an adjective, numeral, or pronoun, unless it be a compound containing such modifier; as *hujusmodi* = *hujus modi* : *tridui*, from *tres dies*; *bidui*, from *duo (bis) dies*. With *tridui* and *bidui*, *via* or *spātium* is sometimes omitted: *Abērant bidui*, *They were two days' journey distant*. Cic.

V. The GENITIVE OF SPECIFICATION has the general force of an Appositive (363) :

Virtus continentiae, *the virtue of self-control*. Cic. *Verbum vōluptātis*, *the word (of) pleasure*. Cic. *Oppidum Antiōchiae*, *the city of Antioch*. Cic. *Tellus Ausōniae*, *the land of Ausonia*. Virg.

397. Peculiarities.—We notice the following :

1. The GOVERNING WORD is often omitted. Thus

Aedes, *templum*, *discipulus*, *hōmo*, *jūvenis*, *puer*, etc.; *causa*, *grātia*, and indeed any word when it can be readily supplied :

Ad Jōvis (*sc. aedem*), *near the temple of Jupiter*. Liv. *Hannibal annōrum novem* (*sc. puer*), *Hannibal a boy nine years of age*. Liv. *Nāves sui commōdi* (*causa*) *fēcērat*, *He had built vessels for his own advantage*. Caes. *Conferre vītā Trēbonii cum Dōlābellae* (*sc. vīta*), *to compare the life of Trebonius with that of Dolabella*. Cic.

1) The governing word is generally omitted when it has been expressed before another Gen. as in the last example; and then the second Gen. is sometimes attracted into the case of the governing word: *Nātūra hōmīnis bēluis* (for *beluārū natūrae*) *antecēdit*, *The nature of man surpasses* (that of) *the brutes*. Cic.

2) In many cases where we supply *son*, *daughter*, *husband*, *wife*, the ellipsis is only apparent, the Gen. depending directly on the proper noun expressed :

Hasdrūbal Giscōnis, *Gisco's Hasdrubal*, or *Hasdrubal the son of Gisco*. Liv. *Hectōris Andrōmachē*, *Hector's Andromache*, or *Andromache the wife of Hector*. Virg.

2. Two GENITIVES are sometimes used with the same noun—generally one Subjective and one Objective :

Memmii ōdium pōtēntiae, *Memmius's hatred of power*. Sall.

3. GENITIVE AND POSSESSIVE.—A Genitive sometimes accompanies a Possessive, especially the Gen. of *ipse*, *solus*, *ūnus*, *omnis* :

Tua ipsius amicitia, *your own friendship*. Cic. *Meum solius peccātum*, *my fault alone*. Cic. *Nōmen meum absentis*, *my name while absent*. Cic.

Here *ipsius* agrees with *tui* (of you) involved in *tua*; *solius* and *absentis*, with *mei* (of me) involved in *meum*.

398. Other Constructions—for the Genitive occur.

1. ABLATIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC. See 428.

2. An ADJECTIVE is sometimes used for the Genitive :

Bellīca glōria = *belli glōria*, *the glory of war*. Cic. *Conjux Hectōrea* = *conjux Hectōris*, *the wife of Hector*. Virg.

3. The POSSESSIVE is regularly used for the Subjective Gen. of Personal pronouns, rarely for the Objective :

Mea dñms, *my house*. Cic. Fāma tua, *your fame*. Cic.

4. CASE WITH PREPOSITION.—A case with a preposition may be used for the Gen. ; especially, 1) For the *Objective Genitive*, the Accusative with **in**, **erga**, **adversus** :—2) For the *Partitive Genitive*, the Accusative with **inter**, **ante**, **āpud**, or the Ablative with **ex**, **de**, **in** :

Odiū in hñmibū gñus, *hatred of or towards the race of men*. Cic. Erga vos āmor, *love towards you*. Cic. Inter rēges ōpñlentissimū, *the most wealthy of (among) kings*. Sen. Unus ex vīris, *one of the heroes*. Cic.

5. A DATIVE depending on the VERB is sometimes used, instead of the Genitive depending on a noun :

Urbi fundāmenta jācēre, *to lay the foundations of (for) the city*. Liv. Caesāri ad pēdes projicēre, *to cast at the feet of Caesar*, i. e., before Caesar at his feet. Caes. See 392. 1.

1) The two constructions, the Gen. and the Case with Prep., are sometimes combined in the same sentence.

II. GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

RULE XVII.—Genitive.

399. Many Adjectives take a Genitive to complete their meaning :

Avīdus laudis, *desirous of praise*. Cic. Otii cūpīdus, *desirous of leisure*. Liv. Amans sui virtus, *virtue fond of itself*. Cic. Efficiens vōluptātis, *productive of pleasure*. Cic. Glōriae mēmōr, *mindful of glory*. Liv.

1. FORCE OF THIS GENITIVE.—The genitive here retains its usual force—*of*, *in respect of*—and may be used after adjectives which admit this relation.

2. ADJECTIVES WITH THE GENITIVE.—The most common are

1) Verbs in **ax** and participles in **ans** and **ens** used adjectively :

Virtūtum fērax, *productive of virtues*. Liv. Tēnax prōpōsiti, *tenacious (steadfast) of purpose*. Hor. Amans patriae, *loving (fond of) his country*. Cic. Fūgiens lābōris, *shunning labor*. Caes.

2) Adjectives denoting *desire*, *knowledge*, *skill*, *recollection*, *participation*, *mastery*, *fulness*, and their contraries :

(1) DESIRE, AVERSION—*avīdus*, *cūpīdus*, *stūdīōsus* ; *fastīdiōsus*, etc. ; sometimes *aemūlus* and *invidus*, which also take the Dative :

Contentiōnis cūpīdus, *desirous of contention*. Cic. Sāpientiae stūdīōsus, *studious of (student of) wisdom*. Cic.

(2) KNOWLEDGE, SKILL, RECOLLECTION with their contraries—*gnārus*,

ignārus, consultus, conscius, inscius, nescius, certus, incertus, suspensus; prōvidus, prūdēns, imprūdēns; pēritus, impēritus, rūdis, insuētus; mēmōr, immēmōr, etc.:

Rei gnārus, acquainted with the thing. Cic. Prūdēns rei militāris, skilled in military science. Nep. Pēritus belli, skilled in war. Nep. Insuētus lābōris, unaccustomed to labor. Caes. Glōriāe mēmōr, mindful of glory. Liv. Immēmōr bēnēficii, forgetful of kindness. Cic.

(3) PARTICIPATION, FULNESS, MASTERY, with their contraries—*affinis, consors, exsors, expers, particeps; plēnus, fertilis, refertus, egēnus, inops, vācuus; pōtēns, impōtēns, compos, impos, etc.:*

Affinis culpaē, sharing the fault. Cic. Rātiōnis particeps, endowed with (sharing) reason. Cic. Rātiōnis expers, destitute of reason. Cic. Vīta mētus plēna, a life full of fear. Cic. Mei pōtēns sum, I am master of myself. Liv. Virtūtis compos, capable of virtue. Cic.

3. OTHER ADJECTIVES also occur with the Genitive.

1) A few of a signification kindred to the above:

Mānifestus rērum cāpitālium, convicted of capital crimes. Sall. Noxius conjūrātiōnis, guilty of conspiracy. Tac.

2) *Similis, assimilis, consimilis, dissimilis; par and dispar*, especially to denote internal or essential likeness. See 391. 2. 4).

3) Sometimes *aliēnus, communis, proprius, publicus, sacer, vicinus:*

Aliēnus dignitātis, inconsistent with dignity. Cic. Vīri proprius, characteristic of a man. Cic.

4) In the poets and late prose writers, especially Tacitus, a Genitive of Cause occurs with a few adjectives, especially those denoting *emotion or feeling*, and a Gen. having the force of—*in, in respect of, for*, especially *ānīmī* and *ingēniī*, with many adjectives:

Anxius pōtentiae, anxious for power. Tac. Lassus militiae, tired of military service. Hor. See Gen. with Verbs, 409. 2 and 4. Aeger ānīmī, afflicted in mind. Liv. Anxius ānīmī, anxious in mind. Sall. Intēger aevī, whole in respect of age, i. e., in the bloom of youth. Virg.

4. PARTITIVE GENITIVE with Adjectives. See 396. III. 3).

5. OTHER CONSTRUCTIONS for the Genitive also occur:

1) DATIVE: *Mānus sūbitis āvidae, hands ready for sudden events. Tac. Insuētus mōrībūs Rōmānis, unaccustomed to Roman manners. Liv. Fāciūri mens conscia, a mind conscious of crime. Cic.*

2) ACCUSATIVE WITH PREPOSITION: *Insuētus ad pugnam, unaccustomed to battle. Liv. Fertilis ad omnia, productive for all things. Plin. Avidus in novās res, eager for new things. Liv.*

3) ABLATIVE WITH OR WITHOUT PREPOSITION: *Prūdēns in jūre cīvili, learned in civil law. Cic. Rūdis in jūre cīvili, uninstructed in civil law. Cic. His de rēbus conscius, aware of those things. Cic. Vācuus de dēfensōribus, destitute of defenders. Caes. Cūris vācuus, free from cares. Cic. Rēfertus bōnis, replete with blessings. Cic.*

6. The GENITIVE AND DATIVE occur with the same adjective:

Sibi conscil culpaē, conscious to themselves of fault. Cic.

III. GENITIVE WITH VERBS.

400. The Genitive with Verbs includes

- I. Predicate Genitive.
- II. Genitive of Place.
- III. Genitive in Special Constructions.

I. Predicate Genitive.

RULE XVIII.—Predicate Genitive.

401. A Predicate Noun denoting a different person or thing from its Subject is put in the Genitive :

*Omnia hostium erant, All things belonged to the enemy.*¹ Liv. *Sēnātus Hannibālis erat, The senate was Hannibal's*, i. e., in his interest. Liv. *Jūdicis est vērū sēqui, To follow the truth is the duty of a judge.*² Cic. *Parvi pretiū est, It is of small value.* Cic.

1. PREDICATE GENITIVE AND PREDICATE NOMINATIVE.—The Predicate Genitive is distinguished from the Predicate Nominative and Accusative by the fact that it always designates a different person or thing from its subject, while they always designate the same person or thing as their subjects. See 362.

2. PREDICATE GENITIVE AND PREDICATE ADJECTIVE.—The genitive is often nearly or quite equivalent to a predicate adjective (353. 1): *hōmīnis est = hūmānum est*, it is the mark of a man, is human; *stultī est = stultum est*, it is foolish. The Gen. is the regular construction in adjectives of one ending: *sāpientis est* (for *sāpiens est*), it is the part of a wise man, is wise.

402. Varieties of Predicate Genitive.—The principal are,

I. SUBJECTIVE OR POSSESSIVE GENITIVE—generally best rendered by—*of, property of, duty, business, mark, characteristic of* :

Haec hostium erant, These things were of (belonged to) the enemy. Liv. *Est impērātōris sup̄rāre, It is the duty of a commander to conquer.* Caes.

II. PARTITIVE GENITIVE :

Fies nōbīlium fontium, You will become one of the noble fountains. Hor.

III. GENITIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC—including *value, price, size, weight*, etc. :

Summae facultātis est, He is (a man) of the highest ability. Cic. *Op̄era magni fuit, The assistance was of great value.* Nep.

1. The Genitive of *Price* or *Value* is generally an adjective belonging to *pretiū* understood; but sometimes *pretiū* is expressed :

¹ Lit. *were of the enemy, or were the enemy's.*

² Lit. *is of a judge.*

Parvi pretii est, *It is of little value.* Cic. See 396. IV.

2. *Price and Value* with verbs of *buying, selling,* and the like, are expressed

1) Regularly by the Ablative. See 416.

2) Sometimes by the Genitive of adjectives, like the Pred. Gen. of price: Vendo frumentum plūris, *I sell grain at a higher price.* Cic.

But the Gen. is thus used only in *indefinite* and *general* expressions of price and value. A definite price or value regularly requires the Ablative.

3) In familiar discourse sometimes by the genitives, *assis, flocci, nihili, pili* and a few others:

Non flocci pendere, *not to care a straw (lock of wool) for.* Plaut.

3. *Bōni* and *Aequi*, as Predicate Genitives, occur in such expressions as *aequi bōni facere* and *bōni consilire*, to take in good part.

403. Verbs with Predicate Genitive.—The Predicate genitive occurs most frequently with *sum* and *facio*, but sometimes also with verbs of *seeming* and *regarding*:

Haec hostium erant, *These things were the enemy's.* Liv. Oram Rōmānae ditionis fecit, *He brought the coast under (of) Roman rule.* Liv.

1. Transitive Verbs of this class admit in the active, an Accusative with the Genitive, as in the second example.

2. With Verbs of *Seeming* and *Regarding*—*videor, habeo, dūco, puto*, etc.—*esse* may generally be supplied:

Hōmīnis videtur, *It seems to be (esse) the mark of a man.* Cic.

404. Other Constructions for the Genitive also occur.

1. The *Possessive* is regularly used for the Pred. Gen. of personal pronouns:

Est tuum (not *tui*) videre, *It is your duty to see.* Cic.

2. The Genitive with *Officium, Mānus, Nēgōtium, Proprium*:

Sēnātus officium est, *It is the duty of the senate.* Cic. Fuit proprium pōpuli, *It was characteristic of the people.* Cic.

The Predicate Genitive could in most instances be explained by supplying some such word, but it seems to be more in accordance with the idiom of the Latin to regard the genitive as complete in itself.

3. The *Ablative of Characteristic.* See 428.

II. Genitive of Place. See 421. II.

III. Genitive in Special Constructions.

405. The Genitive, either alone or with an Accusative, is used in a few constructions which deserve separate mention.

RULE XIX.—Genitive with Certain Verbs.

406. The Genitive is used

I. With *miserere* and *miserescere*:

Miserere laborum, *Pity the labors*. Virg. *Miserescite regis*, *Pity the king*. Virg.

II. With *recordor*, *memini*, *remniscor*, and *obliscor*:

Meminit praeteritorum, *He remembers the past*. Cic. *Oblitus sum mei*, *I have forgotten myself*. Ter. *Flagitiorum recordari*, *to recollect base deeds*. Cic. *Remnisci virtutis*, *to remember virtue*. Caes.

III. With *refert* and *interest*:

Illorum refert, *It concerns them*. Sall. *Interest omnium*, *It is the interest of all*. Cic.

1. EXPLANATION.—The Genitive may be explained as dependent upon *re* in *refert*, and upon *re* or *causa* to be supplied with *interest*. With the other verbs it accords with the Greek idiom, and with verbs of *remembering* and *forgetting*, it also conforms to the analogy of the Gen. with the adjectives *memor* and *immemor* (399. 2. 2).

2. CONSTRUCTION ACCORDING TO SENSE.—The expression *Venit mihi in mentem*, It occurs to my mind, equivalent to *remniscor*, is sometimes construed with the Gen.:

Venit mihi Platonis in mentem, *The recollection of Plato comes to my mind*, or *I recollect Plato*. Cic. But the Nom. is also admissible: *Non venit in mentem pugna*, *Does not the battle come to mind?* Liv.

407. OTHER CONSTRUCTIONS with verbs of *Remembering* and *Forgetting* also occur:

1. The Accusative: *Memineram Paulum*, *I remembered Paulus*. Cic.

This is the regular construction for the *thing* (not person), with *recordor*, and, if it be a neuter pronoun or adjective, also with other verbs:

Triumphos recordari, *to recall triumphs*. Cic. *Ea remniscere*, *Remember those things*. Cic.

2. The Ablative with *De*: *Recordare de ceteris*, *Bethink yourself of the others*. Cic.

This is the regular construction for the *person* with *recordor*, and occurs also with *memini*, though that verb takes the *Acc.* of a *contemporary*.

408. The CONSTRUCTION with *Refert* and *Interest* is as follows:

1. The PERSON or THING interested is denoted

1) By the Genitive as under the rule.

2) By the *Ablative Feminine* of the *Possessive* :

Meā rēfert, *It concerns me.* Ter. Intērest meā, *It interests me.* Cic.

This possessive regularly takes the place of the Gen. of personal pronouns, and may be explained as agreeing with *re* in *rēfert*, and with *re* or *causa* to be supplied with *interest*.

3) By the *Dative*, or *Accusative with* or *without Ad* ; but rarely, and chiefly with *rēfert*, which moreover often omits the person :

Quid rēfert vīventi, *What does it concern one living?* Hor. Ad me rēfert, *It concerns me.* Plant.

2. The SUBJECT OF IMPORTANCE, or that which involves the interest, is expressed by an Infinitive or Clause, or by a Neuter Pronoun :

Intērest omnium recte faciēre, *To do right is the interest of all.* Cic. Vestrā hoc intērest, *This interests you.* Cic.

3. The DEGREE OF INTEREST is expressed by an Adverb, by a Neuter used adverbially, or by a Gen. of Value (402. 1 and 2) :

Vestrā maxime intērest, *It especially interests you.* Cic. Quid nostrā rēfert, *What does it concern us?* Cic. Magni intērest meā, *It greatly interests me.* Cic.

4. The OBJECT or END for which it is important is expressed by the Accusative with *ad*, rarely by the Dative :

Ad hōnōrem nostrum intērest, *It is important for our honor.* Cic.

409. GENITIVE WITH OTHER VERBS.—Many other verbs sometimes take the Genitive :

1. Some Verbs of *Plenty* and *Want*, as *ēgeo*, *indīgeo*, like adjectives of the same meaning (399. 2. 2) :

Virtus exercitiātōnis indīget, *Virtus requires exercise.* Cic. Auxilli ēgēre, *to need aid.* Caes.

2. Some Verbs of *Emotion* or *Feeling* like adjectives (399. 3. 4) :

Animi pendeo, *I am uncertain in mind.* Cic. Diserūciōr animi, *I am troubled in mind.* Plant.

3. A few Verbs denoting *Mastery* or *Participation* like adjectives (399. 2. 2)), *pōtior*, *ādīpiscor*, *regno* :

Siciliæ pōtītus est, *He became master of Sicily.* Nep. Rērum ādeptus est, *He obtained the power.* Tac. Regnāvit pōpūlōrum, *He was king of the people.* Hor.

4. A Genitive of *Separation* or *Cause* occurs in the poets, with a few verbs—*abstīneo*, *dēcīpio*, *dēsino*, *dēsisto* ; *mīror* :

Abstīnēre irārūm, *to abstain from anger.* Hor. Lābōrūm dēcīpitur, *He is beguiled of his labors.* Hor. Dēsine quērēlārūm, *Cease from complaints.* Hor. Dēsistēre pugnae, *to desist from the battle.* Virg.

5. *Sātūgo* and *Sātūgito* admit a genitive dependent upon *sat* (396. 4)), and verbs of *Promising* admit the Gen. *damni infecti* :

Rērum sātūgēre, *to be occupied with (have enough of) business.* Ter.

6. Genitive of *Gerunds* and *Gerundives*. See 563 and 563. 5.

RULE XX.—Accusative and Genitive.

410. A few transitive verbs take both the Accusative of the Person and the Genitive of the Thing :

I. Verbs of *Reminding, Admonishing.*

II. Verbs of *Accusing, Convicting, Acquitting.*

III. *Misēret, Poenitet, Pūdet, Taedet, and Piget.*

I. REMINDING, ETC.—Te amicitiae commōnēfacit, *He reminds you of friendship.* Cic. Milites nēcessitātis mōnet, *He reminds the soldiers of the necessity.* Ter.

II. ACCUSING, ETC.—Vīros scēlēris arguis, *You accuse men of crime.* Cic. Lēvītātis eum convincēre, *to convict him of levity.* Cic. Absolvēre injūriā eum, *to acquit him of injustice.* Cic.

III. MISERET, POENITET, ETC.—Eōrum nos mīsēret, *We pity them* (it moves our pity of them). Cic. Consilii me poenitet, *I repent of my purpose.* Cic. Me stultitiā meae pūdet, *I am ashamed of my folly.* Cic.

1. The GENITIVE OF THING designates, with verbs of *reminding*, etc., that to which the attention is called ; with verbs of *accusing*, etc., the crime, charge, and with *mīsēret, poenitet*, etc., the object which produces the feeling. See examples.

2. PASSIVE CONSTRUCTION.—The personal verbs included under this Rule retain the Genitive in the Passive :

Accūsātus est prōditiōnis, *He was accused of treason.* Nep.

3. Verbs of REMINDING, *mōneo, admōneo, commōneo, commōnēfacio*, sometimes take, instead of the Genitive,

1) The *Accusative* of a neuter pronoun or adjective, rarely of a substantive, thus admitting two accusatives :

Illud me admōnes, *You admonish me of that.* Cic.

2) The *Ablative* with *de, mōneo* generally so :

De proelio vos admōnui, *I have reminded you of the battle.* Cic.

4. Verbs of ACCUSING, CONVICTING, sometimes take, instead of the Genitive of the crime, etc.,

1) The *Genitive* with *nōmīne* or *crīmīne* :

Nōmīne conjūrātiōnis damnāti sunt, *They were condemned on the charge of conspiracy.* Cic.

2) The *Accusative* of a neuter pronoun or adjective, rarely :

Id me accūsas, *You accuse me of that.* Plaut.

3) The *Ablative* alone or with a preposition, generally *de* :

De pēcūniis rēpētundis damnātus est, *He was convicted of extortion.* Cic.

5. With Verbs of CONDEMNING, the *Punishment* may be expressed

1) By the *Genitive* :

Căpitis condemnāre, *to condemn to death*. Cic.

(1) *Vōti damnāri*, to be condemned to fulfill a vow = to obtain a wish.

2) By the *Accusative* with a preposition, generally *ad* :

Ad bestias condemnāre, *to condemn to the wild beasts*. Suet.

3) By the *Ablative*; and, in the poets, sometimes by the *Dative* :

Căpīte damnāre, *to condemn to death*. Cic.

6. With MISERET, POENITET, PUDET, TAEDET, and PIGET, an Infinitive or Clause is sometimes used, rarely a neuter pronoun or *nihil* :

Me poenitet vixisse, *I repent having lived*. Cic.

1) Like *Miseret* are sometimes used *miserescit*, *commiserescit*, *miseritur*, *commiseritur*. Like *Tuedet* are used *pertaedet*, *pertaesum est*.

2) *Pudet* sometimes takes the Gen. of the Person before whom one is ashamed: Me tui pudet, *I am ashamed in your presence*. Ter. *Pudet hominum*, *It is a shame in the sight of men*. Liv.

3) *Pertaesus* admits the Accusative of the object:

Pertaesus ignāviam suam, *disgusted with his own inaction*. Suet.

7. The ACCUSATIVE and GENITIVE occur with other Verbs.—Thus

1) With some Verbs of FREEING with the accessory notion of ACQUITTING: Eum culpae liberāre, *to free him from blame*, i. e., to acquit him of fault. Liv. So *purgo*, *dēcipio*, and the like.

2) With a few Verbs of FILLING, like adjectives and verbs of plenty (399. 2. 2) and 409. 1), especially *compleo* and *impleo* :

Multitudinem religiōnis implēvit, *He inspired (filled) the multitude with religion*. Liv. See 419. 2.

3) With a few transitive verbs of EMOTION or FEELING (409. 2), rarely :

Te angis ānīmi, *You make yourself anxious in mind*. Plaut.

IV. GENITIVE WITH ADVERBS.

411. The Genitive is used with a few Adverbs :

1. With *Partitives*. See 396. III. 2.

2. With *Prīdie* and *Postrīdie*, perhaps dependent upon *die* contained in them, and with *Ergo* and *Tēnus*, originally nouns :

Prīdie ejus diēi, *on the day before that day*. Caes. *Postrīdie ejus diēi*, *on the day after that day*. Caes. *Virtūtis ergo*, *on account of virtuc*. Cic. *Lumbōrum tēnus*, *as far as the loins*. Cic. For *tēnus* with the Abl., see 434.

SECTION VII.

ABLATIVE.

412. The Ablative in its primary meaning is closely related to the Genitive; but in its general use, it corresponds to the English objective with—*from*, *by*, *in*, *with*, and expresses various adverbial relations. It is accordingly used

with Verbs and Adjectives, while the genitive, as the case of adjective relations, is most common with Nouns. See 393.

413. The Ablative is used as

I. Ablative of Cause, Manner, Means—including

1. Ablative of Price.
2. Ablative after Comparatives.
3. Ablative of Difference.
4. Ablative in Special Constructions.

II. Ablative of Place.

III. Ablative of Time.

IV. Ablative of Characteristic.

V. Ablative of Specification.

VI. Ablative Absolute.

VII. Ablative with Prepositions.

I. ABLATIVE OF CAUSE, MANNER, MEANS.

RULE XXI.—Cause, Manner, Means.

414. Cause, Manner, and Means are denoted by the Ablative:

Ars ūtilitāte laudātur, An art is praised because of its usefulness. Cic. Glōria dūcitur, He is led by glory. Cic. Duōbus mōdis fit, It is done in two ways. Cic. Sol omnia lūce collustrat, The sun illumines all things with its light. Cic. Aeger ērat vulnērībus, He was ill in consequence of his wounds. Nep. Laetus sorte tua, pleased with your lot. Hor.

1. APPLICATION OF RULE.—This ablative is of very frequent occurrence, and is used both with verbs and adjectives.

2. The ABLATIVE OF CAUSE designates that *by which, by reason of which, because of which, in accordance with which* anything is or is done.

1) This includes such ablatives as *meo iūdicio*, in accordance with my opinion; *mea sententia, jussu, impulsu, mōnitu*, etc.; also the Abl. with *dōleo, gaudeo, glōrior, lābōro*, etc.

The Abl. with *affīcio*, and with *sto* in the sense of *depend upon, abide by*, is best explained as *Means*. *Affīcio* and the Abl. are together often equivalent to another verb: *hōnōre affīcere* = *hōnōrāre*, to honor; *admirationē affīcere* = *admirāri*, to admire.

2) With *Passive* and *Intransitive* verbs, *Cause* is regularly expressed by the Abl., though a preposition with the Acc. or Abl. sometimes occurs:

Amicītia propter se expētītur, Friendship is sought for itself. Cic.

3) With *Transitive* verbs the Abl. without a Prep. is rare; but *causa, grātia* and ablatives in *u* of nouns used only in that case (134), *jussu, rōgātu, mandātu*, etc., are thus used; sometimes also other words

In other cases, *Cause* in the sense of—*on account of, because of*, is generally expressed—(1) by a Preposition with its case: *ob, propter, de, ex, prae*, etc.; or (2) by a Perfect Participle with an Ablative:

In oppidum propter timorem sese recipiunt, *They betake themselves into the city on account of their fear*. *Caes. Regni cupiditate inductus conjurationem fecit*, *Influenced by the desire of ruling, he formed a conspiracy*. *Caes.*

Cupiditate in the 2d example really expresses the *cause* of the action *fecit*, but by the use of *inductus*, it becomes the Abl. of Cause with that participle.

3. ABLATIVE OF MANNER.—This ablative is regularly accompanied by some modifier, or by the Prep. *cum*; but a few ablatives, chiefly those signifying *manner*—*more, ordine, ratione*, etc.—occur without such accompaniment:

Vi summa, with the greatest violence. *Nep. More Persarum, in the manner of the Persians*. *Nep. Cum silentio audire, to hear in silence*. *Liv.*

Per with the Acc. sometimes denotes *Manner*: *per vim*, violently.

4. ABLATIVE OF MEANS.—This includes the *Instrument* and all other *Means* employed. See also 434. 2; 414, 2, 1).

5. ABLATIVE OF AGENT.—This designates the Person by whom anything is done as a voluntary agent, and takes the Prep. *A* or *Ab*:

Occisus est a Thebanis, *He was slain by the Thebans*. *Nep.*

1) The Abl. without a Prep. or the Accus. with *per* is sometimes used, especially when the Person is regarded as the *Means*, rather than as the *Agent*.

Cornua Numidis firmat, *He strengthens the wings with Numidians*. *Liv.* *Per Fabricium, by means of* (through the agency of) *Fabricius*. *Cic.*

2) Dative of *Agent*. See 388.

6. PERSONIFICATION.—When anything is personified as agent, the ablative with *A* or *Ab* may be used as in the names of persons:

Vinci a voluptate, to be conquered by pleasure. *Cic. A fortuna datam occasionem, an opportunity furnished by fortune*. *Nep.*

7. ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT.—This generally takes *cum*:

Vivit cum Balbo, *He lives with Balbus*. *Cic. But*

In describing military movements, the preposition is often omitted, especially when the Abl. is qualified by an adjective:

Ingenti exercitu profectus est, *He set out with a large army*. *Liv.*

415. KINDRED USES OF THE ABLATIVE.—Kindred to the Ablative of Cause, etc., are

I. The Ablative of Price—that by which the trade is effected.

II. The Ablative with Comparatives—that by which the comparison is effected.

III. The Ablative of Difference—that by which one object differs from another.

IV. The Ablative in Special Constructions.

RULE XXII.—Ablative of Price.

416. PRICE is generally denoted by the Ablative :

Vendidit auro patriam, *He sold his country for gold.* Virg. Conduxit magno dōmum, *He hired a house at a high price.* Cic. Multo sanguine Poenis victōria stētit, *The victory cost the Carthaginians (stood to the Carthaginians at) much blood.* Liv. Quinquāginta tālentis aestīmāri, *to be valued at fifty talents.* Nep. Vile est vīginti mīnis, *It is cheap at twenty minae.* Plaut.

1. Th ABLATIVE OF PRICE is used

1) With verbs of buying, selling, hiring, letting, *ēmo, vendo, condūco, lōco, rēneo*, etc.

2) With verbs of costing, of being cheap or dear, *sto, consto, liceo, sum*, etc.

3) With verbs of valuing, *aestimo*, etc.

4) With adjectives of value, *cārus, vēnālis*, etc.

2. EXCHANGING.—With verbs of exchanging—*mūto, commūto*, etc.—the thing received is generally treated as the price, as with verbs of *selling* :

Pāce bellum mūtāvit, *He exchanged war for peace.* Sall. But sometimes the thing given is treated as the price, as with verbs of *buying*, or is put in the Abl. with *cum* : Exsīlium patria mūtāvit, *He exchanged country for exile.* Curt.

3. ADVERBS OF PRICE are sometimes used : *bene ēmere*, to purchase well, i. e., at a low price ; *cāre aestīmāre*, to value at a high price.

4. GENITIVE OF PRICE. See 402. III.

RULE XXIII.—Ablative with Comparatives.

417. Comparatives without QUAM are followed by the Ablative :

Nihil est amābilius virtūte, *Nothing is more lovely than virtue.* Cic. Quid est melius bonitāte, *What is better than goodness?* Cic.

1. COMPARATIVES WITH QUAM are followed by the Nominative, or by the case of the corresponding noun before them :

Hibernia minor quam Britannia existimātur, *Hibernia is considered smaller than Britannia.* Caes. Agris quam urbi terribilior, *more terrible to the country than to the city.* Liv.

2. ABLATIVE, WHEN ADMISSIBLE.—The construction with *quam* is the full form for which the Ablative is an abbreviation. This abbreviation is admissible only in place of *quam* with the Nominative or Accusative, but is not necessary even here except for *quam* with a Relative :

Scimus sōlem majōrem esse terrā, *We know that the sun is larger than the earth.* Cic. Amīcītia, qua nihil mēlius hābēmus; *friendship, than which we have nothing better.* Cic. See also examples under the Rule.

1) In the first example the Ablative (*terra*) is admissible but not necessary, *quam terram* might have been used; but in the second example the Ablative (*quā*) is necessary, the conjunction *quam* would be inadmissible.

2) In the examples under the rule the ablatives *virtūte* and *bonitāte* are both equivalent to *quam* with the Nom. *quam virtus* and *quam bonitas*, which might have been used.

3) Instead of the Abl., a Preposition with its case, *ante*, *prae*, *praeter*, or *supra* is sometimes used: *Ante alios immānior, more monstrous than (before) the others.* Virg.

3. CONSTRUCTION WITH PLUS, MINUS, ETC.—*Plus*, *minus*, *amplius*, or *longius*, with or without *quam*, is often introduced in expressions of number and quantity, without influence upon the construction; sometimes also *major*, *minor*, etc.:

Tecum plus annum vixit, *He lived with you more than a year.* Cic. Minor duo millia, *less than two thousand.* Liv.

So in expressions of age: *nātus plus triginta annos, having been born more than thirty years.* The same meaning is also expressed by—*major triginta annos nātus, major triginta annis, major quam triginta annōrum, or major triginta annōrum.*

4. ATQUE OR AC FOR QUAM occurs chiefly in poetry and late prose: *Aretius atque hēdērā, more closely than with ivy.* Hor.

5. ALIUS WITH THE ABLATIVE sometimes occurs. It then involves a comparison, *other than*:

Quaerit alia his, *He seeks other things than these.* Plaut.

6. PECULIARITIES.—*Quam pro* denotes disproportion, and many ablatives—*opīniōne, spe, aequo, justo, sōlito*, etc.—are often best rendered by clauses:

Minor caedes quam pro victōria, *less slaughter than was proportionate to the victory.* Liv. Sērius spe vēnit, *He came later than was hoped (than hope).* Liv. Plus aequo, *more than is fair.* Cic.

RULE XXIV.—Ablative of Difference.

418. The MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE is denoted by the Ablative:

Uno die longiōrem mensem faciunt, *They make the month one day longer (longer by one day).* Cic. Bīduo me antecessit, *He preceeded me by two days.* Cic. Sunt magnitudīne paulo infra ēlēphantos, *They are in size a little below the elephant.* Caes.

1. The Ablative is thus used with all words involving a comparison, but adverbs often supply its place: *Multum rōbustior*, much more robust.

2. The Ablative of *Difference* includes the Abl. of *Distance* (378. 2), and the Abl. with *ante*, *post*, and *abhinc* in expressions of time (427).

RULE XXV.—Ablative in Special Constructions.

419. The Ablative is used

I. With **utor**, **fruo**, **fungo**, **pōtio**, **vesco**, and their compounds:

Plūrimis rēbus fruimur et ūtimur, *We enjoy and use very many things.* Cic. Magna est praeda pōtītus, *He obtained great booty.* Nep. Vescimur bestiis, *We live upon animals.* Cic.

II. With **fido**, **confido**, **nitor**, and **innitor**:

Nemo pōtest fortūnae stābilitate confidēre, *No one can trust (confide in) the stability of fortune.* Cic. Sālus vērītate nititur, *Safety rests upon truth.* Cic.

III. With VERBS and ADJECTIVES OF **PLENTY** and **WANT**:

Non ēgeo mēdicīna, *I do not need a remedy.* Cic. Vācāre culpa, *to be free from fault.* Cic. Villa ābundat lacte, cāseo, melle; *The villa abounds in milk, cheese, and honey.* Cic. Urbs nūda praesidio, *a city destitute of defence.* Cic. Virtūte praeditus, *endowed with virtue.* Cic.

IV. With **dignus**, **indignus**, **contentus**, and **frētus**:

Digni sunt āmīcītia, *They are worthy of friendship.* Cic. Nātūra parvo contenta, *nature content with little.* Cic. Frētus āmīcis, *relying upon his friends.* Liv.

V. With **opus** and **usus**:

Auetōritāte tua nōbis ōpus est, *We need (there is to us a need of) your authority.* Cic. Usus est tua mihi ōpēra, *I need your aid.* Plaut.

1. EXPLANATION.—This Ablative may in most instances be readily explained as the Ablative of *Cause* or *Means*: thus *utor*, I use, serve myself by means of; *fruo*, I enjoy, delight myself with; *vesco*, I feed upon, feed myself with; *fido*, *confido*, I confide in, am confident because of, etc.

2. ACCUSATIVE AND ABLATIVE.—*Dignor* and transitive verbs of *Plenty* and *Want* take the Accusative with the Ablative:

Me dignor hōnōre, *I deem myself worthy of honor.* Virg. Armis nāves ōnērat, *He loads the ships with arms.* Sall. Oculis se privat, *He deprives himself of his eyes.* Cic. See 371. 2.

1) Transitive verbs of *Plenty* and *Want* signify to fill, furnish with, deprive of, etc.: *afficio*, *cūmulo*, *compleo*, *impleo*, *imbuo*, *instruo*, *ōnēro*, *orno*, etc.—*orbo*, *prīvo*, *spōlio*, etc. *Dignor* in the best prose admits only the Abl.

2) For the *Accusative* and *Genitive* with some of these verbs, see 410. 7. 2).

3. DATIVE AND ABLATIVE.—*Opus est* and *usus est* admit the Dative of the person with the Ablative of the thing. See examples.

1) The Ablative is sometimes a Perfect Participle, or, with *opus est*, a Noun and Participle :

Consulto ōpus est, *There is need of deliberation*. Sall. Opus fuit Hirtio convento, *There was need of meeting Hirtius*. Cic.

2) With *opus est*, rarely with *usus est*, the thing needed may be denoted—

(1) By the Nominative, rarely by the Genitive or Accusative :

Dux nōbis ōpus est, *We need a leader, or a leader is necessary* (a necessity) *for us*. Cic. Tempōris ōpus est, *There is need of time*. Liv. Opus est cibum, *There is need of food*. Plaut.

(2) By an Infinitive, a Clause, or a Supine :

Opus est te vālēre, *It is necessary that you be well*. Cic. Opus est ut lāvem, *It is necessary for me to bathe* (that I bathe). Plaut. Dictu est ōpus, *It is necessary to be told*. Ter.

4. OTHER CONSTRUCTIONS also occur. Thus

1) *Utor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *pōtior*, and *rescor*, originally transitive, are occasionally so used in classic authors. Their participle in *dus* is passive in sense. *Utor* admits two ablatives of the same person or thing:

Me ūtētur pātre, *He will find (use) me a father*. Ter.

2) *Fīdo*, *confīdo*, and *innitor* admit the Dative, rarely the Abl. with *in*.

Virtūti confīdere, *to confide in virtue*. Cic. See 385. 1.

3) *Dignus* and *indignus* admit the Gen., *frētus* the Dat., *nītor* and *innītor* the Acc. or Abl. with Prep., and some verbs of *Want* the Abl. with Prep.

Dignus sālūtis, *worthy of safety*. Plaut. Rei frētus, *relying upon the thing*. Liv. Vācīre āb ōpēre, *to be free from work*. Caes.

4) *Genitive*.—For the *genitive* with *pōtior*, see 409. 3. For the *genitive* with verbs and adjectives of *Plenty* and *Want*, see 409. 1, 410. 7, and 399. 2. 2).

II. ABLATIVE OF PLACE.

420. This Ablative designates

I. The PLACE IN WHICH anything is or is done :

II. The PLACE FROM WHICH anything proceeds;—including *Source* and *Separation*.

RULE XXVI.—Ablative of Place.

421. I. The PLACE IN WHICH and the PLACE FROM WHICH are generally denoted by the Ablative with a Preposition. But

II. NAMES OF TOWNS omit the Preposition, and in the Singular of the First and Second declensions designate the PLACE IN WHICH by the Genitive :

I. Hannibal in Itālia fuit, *Hannibal was in Italy*. Nep. In nostris castris, *in our camp*. Caes. In Appia via, *on the Appian way*. Cic. Ab urbe proficiscitur, *He departs from the city*. Caes. Ex Afrīca, *from Africa*. Liv.

II. Athēnis fuit, *He was at Athens*. Cic. Bābŷlōne mortuus est, *He died at Babylon*. Cic. Fūgit Cōrintho, *He fled from Corinth*. Cic. Rōmae fuit, *He was at Rome*. Cic.

422. NAMES OF PLACES NOT TOWNS sometimes omit the preposition :

1. The Ablative of PLACE IN WHICH, sometimes omits the preposition :

1) Generally the Ablatives—*lōco, lōcis, parte, partibus, dextra, laeva, sinistra, terra, mārī*, and other Ablatives when qualified by *tōtus* :

Aliquid lōco pōnere, *to put anything in its place*. Cic. Terra mārīque, *on land and sea*. Liv. Tōta Graecia, *in all Greece*. Nep.

2) Sometimes other Ablatives, especially when qualified by adjectives :
Hoc libro, *in this book*. Cic.

In poetry the preposition is often omitted even when the ablative has no modifier :
Silvis agrisque, *in the forests and fields*. Ov.

2. The Ablative of PLACE FROM WHICH sometimes omits the preposition, especially in poetry :

Cādere nūbibus, *to fall from the clouds*. Virg. Lābi ēquo, *to fall from a horse*. Hor.

423. NAMES OF TOWNS differ in their construction from other names of places,

I. Generally in simply omitting the preposition. But

II. In the Singular of the First and Second declensions they designate the PLACE IN WHICH by the Genitive. See examples under the Rule.

1. PREPOSITION RETAINED.—The preposition is sometimes retained, especially for emphasis or contrast :

Ab Ardea Rōmam vēnērunt, *They came from Ardea to Rome*. Liv. So also when the *vicinity* rather than the town itself is meant : Discessit a Brundisio, *He departed from Brundisium*, i. e., from the port. Caes. Apud Mantinēam, *near Mantinea*. Cic. Ad Trēbiam, *at or near the Trebia*. Liv.

2. The GENITIVE, it must be observed, never denotes the PLACE FROM WHICH.

The Genitive-Forms denoting the *place in which*, are genitives only in form. They probably belonged originally to a case called the *Locative*, afterward blended with the Ablative, except in the Sing. of Dec. I. and II., where it is united with the Gen. Accordingly these genitives are in force old Ablatives.

3. OTHER CONSTRUCTIONS for the Genitive also occur :

1) *Ablative by Attraction* :

In monte Albāno Lāviniōque, *on the Alban mount and at Lavinium*. Liv.

2) *Ablative without Attraction*, generally with a preposition :

In ipsa Alexandria, *in Alexandria itself*. Cic. Longa Alba, *at Alba Longa*. Virg.

This is the regular construction when the noun takes an adjective or adjective pronoun, but the Gen. *dōmi* (424. 2) admits a *possessive* or *aliēnus* :

Dōmi suae, *at his home*. Cic.

3) With an Appellative—*urbis, oppidum*—the name of the town is in the Gen. or Abl., but the appellative itself is in the Abl., generally with a Prep. :

In oppīdo Antiochiāe, *in the city of Antioch*. Cic. In oppīdo Cītio, *in the town Cītium*. Nep. Albae, *in urbe opportūna, at Alba, a convenient city*. Cic.

424. LIKE NAMES OF TOWNS are used

1. Many names of Islands :

Vixit Cypri, *He lived in Cyprus*. Nep. Dēlo prōfēiscitur, *He proceeds from Delos*. Cic.

2. Dōmus, rus and the genitives hūmi, milītiāe and belli :

Rūri āgēre vitam, *to spend life in the country*. Liv. Dōmi milītiāeque, *at home and in the field*. Cic. Dōmo prōfūgit, *He fled from home*. Cic.

3. The Genitive of other nouns also occurs :

1) By *Attraction* after names of towns :

Rōmae Nūmīdiāeque, *at Rome and in Numidia*. Sall.

2) *Without Attraction* in a few proper names and rarely also the genitives *ārēnae, fōci, terrae, vicīniāe* :

Dōmum Chersōnēsi hābuit, *He had a house in the Chersonesus*. Nep. Truneum rēliquit ārēnae, *He left the body in the sand*. Virg.

RULE XXVII.—Ablative of Source and Separation.

425. SOURCE and SEPARATION are denoted by the Ablative, generally with a preposition :

SOURCE.—Hoc audīvi de pārente meo, *I heard this from my father*. Cic. Oriundi ab Sābinis, *descended from the Sabines*. Liv. Stātua ex aere facta, *a statue made of bronze*. Cic. Jōve nātus, *son of Jupiter*. Cic.

SEPARATION.—Caedem a vōbis dēpello, *I ward off slaughter from you*. Cic. Hunc a tuis āris arcēbis, *You will keep this one from your altars*. Cic. Expulsus est patria, *He was banished from his country*. Cic.

1. The ABLATIVE OF SOURCE designates that from which anything is derived, including *parentage, material*, etc.

2. The ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION designates that from which anything is separated, or of which it is deprived, and is used :

1) With Intransitive verbs signifying, *to abstain from, be distant from, etc.*

2) In connection with the Accusative after transitive verbs signifying, *to hold from, separate from, free from, and the like*: *arceo, abstīneo, deterreo, ejicio, excludo, exsolvo, libéro, pello, prōhibeo, rēmōveo, solvo, etc.* :

3) A few verbs of separation admit the Dative: *ŭliēno, fūrōr, etc.* See 385. 4.

3. Preposition Omitted.—This generally occurs

1) With Perfect Participles denoting *parentage* or *birth*—*gēnitus, nātus, ortus, etc.* :

Jōve nātus, *son of Jupiter.* Cic.

2) With Verbs of *Freeing*, except *libéro*, which is used both with and without a preposition :

Somno solvi, *to be released from sleep.* Cic. But in the sense of *acquitting* these verbs admit the genitive (410. 7) : *Aliquem culpae liberāre, to free one from blame, i. e., acquit him.* Liv.

3) With *Mōveo* before the ablatives—*lōco, sēnātu* and *trību* :

Signum mōvēre lōco, *to move the standard from the place.* Cic.

4) The preposition is sometimes omitted with other words, especially in poetry.

III. ABLATIVE OF TIME.

RULE XXVIII.—Time.

426. The TIME of an Action is denoted by the Ablative :

Octōgēsīmo anno est mortuus, *He died in his eightieth year.* Cic. Vēre convēnēre, *They assembled in the spring.* Liv. Nātālī die suo, *on his birthday.* Nep. Hiēme et aestāte, *in winter and summer.* Cic.

1. DESIGNATIONS OF TIME.—Any word, so used as to involve the time of an action or event, may be put in the ablative: *bello*, in the time of war; *pugna*, in the time of battle; *lūdīs*, at the time of the games; *mēmōria*, in memory, i. e., in the time of one's recollection.

2. The ABLATIVE WITH IN is used to denote

1) The *circumstances* of the time, rather than time itself:

In tāli tempōre, *under such circumstances.* Liv.

2) The time *in* or *within* which anything is done:

In diēbus proximis decem, *in the next ten days.* Sall.

(1) This is used especially after numeral adverbs and in designating the periods of life: *bis in die*, twice in the day; *in puēritia*, in boyhood.

(2) In a kindred sense occur also the Abl. with *de* and the Accus. with *inter* or *intra*: *De mēdia nocte, in the middle of the night.* Caes. *Inter annos quattuordēcim, in (within) fourteen years.* Caes.

(3) The Ablative with or without *in* sometimes denotes the time within which or after which: *paucis diēbus*, within (or after) a few days.

427. ACCUSATIVE OR ABLATIVE.—The time since an action or event is denoted by *Abhinc* or *Ante* with the Accusative or Ablative, and the time between two events, by *Ante* or *Post* with the Accusative or Ablative :

Abhinc annos trēcentos fuit, He lived (was) three hundred years since. Cic. Abhinc annis quattuor, four years since. Cic. Hōmērus annis multis fuit ante Rōmūlum, Homer lived many years before Romulus. Cic. Paucis ante diēbus, a few days before. Cic. Post dies paucos vēnit, He came after a few days. Liv.

1. EXPLANATION.—(1) The Accusative with *abhinc* is explained as Duration of Time (378), with *ante* and *post* as dependent upon those prepositions. (2) The Ablative in both cases is explained as the Ablative of Difference (418).

With the Abl. *ante* and *post* are used adverbially unless an Accus. is expressed after them. *Paucis his (illis) diēbus*, means *in these (those) few days*.

2. NUMERALS WITH ANTE AND POST.—These may be either cardinal or ordinal. Thus: five years after = *quinque annis post*, or *quinto anno post*; or *post quinque annos*, or *post quintum annum*; or with *post* between the numeral and the noun, *quinque post annis*, etc.

3. QUAM WITH ANTE AND POST.—*Quam* may follow *ante* and *post*, may be united with them, or may even be used for *postquam* :

Quartum post annum quam rēdiērat, four years after he had returned. Nep. Nōno anno postquam, nine years after. Nep. Sexto anno quam ērat expulsus, six years after he had been banished. Nep.

4. THE ABLATIVE OF THE RELATIVE OF QUAM may be used for *postquam*: *Quātrīduo, quo occisus est, four days after he was killed. Cic.*

IV. ABLATIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC.

RULE XXIX.—Characteristic.

428. The Ablative with an adjective may be used to characterize a person or thing :

Summa virtūte adōlescens, a youth of the highest virtue. Caes. Cātīlina ingēnio mālo fuit, Catiline was a man of a bad spirit. Sall.

1. ABLATIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC is used

1) With Substantives as in the first example.

2) In the Predicate with *sum*, and the other verbs which admit a Predicate Genitive (403) as in the second example.

2. THE ABLATIVE WITH A GENITIVE instead of the ablative with an adjective is sometimes used :

Uri sunt spēcie tauri, The urus is of the appearance of a bull. Caes.

3. GENITIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC.—See 396. IV.

4. GENITIVE AND ABLATIVE DISTINGUISHED.—The Genitive generally expresses permanent and essential qualities; the Ablative is not limited to any particular kind of qualities.

V. ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION.

RULE XXX.—Specification.

429. The Ablative may be used with a word to define its application :

Agēsīlāus nōmīne, non pōtēstāte fuit rex, *Agcsilaus was king in name, not in power.* Nep. Claudus altēro pēde, *lame in one foot.* Nep. Mōribus sīmīles, *similar in character.* Cic.

1. FORCE OF ABLATIVE.—This shows in *what respect* or *particular* anything is true: thus, *king* (in what respect?) *in name*: *similar* (in what respect?) *in character.*

2. ACCUSATIVE OF SPECIFICATION. See 380.

VI. ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

430. A noun and a participle, a noun and an adjective, or two nouns may be grammatically independent of (*absolved from*) the rest of the sentence, and yet may express various adverbial modifications of the predicate. When so used they are said to be in the case Absolute.

RULE XXXI.—Ablative Absolute.

431. The Ablative is used as the CASE ABSOLUTE:

Servio regnante vīguērunt, *They flourished in the reign of Servius* (Servius reigning). Cic. Rēgibus exactis, consūles creāti sunt, *After the banishment of the kings, consuls were appointed.* Liv. Sērēno coelo, *when the sky is clear.* Sen. Cānīnio consūle, *in the consulship of Caninius.* Cic.

1. USE.—The Ablative Absolute is much more common than the English Nominative Absolute, and expresses a great variety of relations,—*time, cause, reason, means, condition, concession,* etc.

2. HOW RENDERED.—This ablative is generally best rendered (1) by a *Clause* with—*when, while, for, since, if, though,* etc., (2) by a *Noun* with a *Preposition*,—*in, during, after, by, from, through,* etc., or (3) by an *Active Participle* with its *Object*:

Servio regnante, *while Servius reigned,* or *in the reign of Servius.* Cic. Rēlīgiōne neglecta, *because religion was neglected.* Liv. Perdītis rēbus omnībus, tāmen, etc., *Though all things are lost, still,* etc. Cic. Equitātu praemisso, *subsequēbātur, Having sent forward his cavalry, he followed.* Caes.

3. A Connective sometimes accompanies the Ablative:

Nīsi mūnītis castris, *unless the camp should be fortified.* Caes.

4. AN INFINITIVE OR CLAUSE may be in the Abl. Absolute with a neuter participle or adjective:

Audito Dārīum mōvisse, pergit, *Having heard that Darius had withdrawn* (that Darius had, etc., having been heard), *he advanced*. Curt. Multi, incerto quid vitarent, interiērunt, *Many, uncertain what they should avoid* (what they, etc., being uncertain), *perished*. Liv.

5. A PARTICIPLE OR ADJECTIVE may stand alone in the Abl. Absolute:

Multum certāto, pervēit, *He conquered after a hard struggle* (it having been much contested). Tac.

6. QUISQUE IN THE NOMINATIVE may accompany the Abl. Absolute:

Multis sibi quisque pētentibus, *while many sought, each for himself*. Sall.

VII. ABLATIVE WITH PREPOSITIONS. See 432 and 434.

SECTION VIII.

CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS.

RULE XXXII.—Cases with Prepositions.

432. The Accusative and Ablative may be used with Prepositions:

Ad amicum scripsi, *I have written to a friend*. Cic. In curiam, *into the senate house*. Liv. In Italiā, *in Italy*. Nep. Pro castris, *before the camp*.

433. The ACCUSATIVE is used with

Ad, adversus (adversum), ante, apud, circa, circum, circiter, eis, citra, contra, erga, extra, infra, inter, intra, juxta, ob, pēnes, per, pōne, post, praeter, prōpe, propter, sēcundum, supra, trans, ultra, versus:

Ad urbem, *to the city*. Cic. Adversus deos, *toward the gods*. Cic. Ante lucem, *before light*. Cic. Apud concilium, *in the presence of the council*. Cic. Circa fōrum, *around the forum*. Cic. Citra flūmen, *on this side of the river*. Cic. Contra nātūrā, *contrary to nature*. Cic. Intra mūros, *within the walls*. Cic. Post castra, *behind the camp*. Caes. Sēcundum nātūrā, *according to nature*. Cic. Trans Alpes, *across the Alps*. Cic.

1. Like *Prōpe*, the derivatives *prōpior* and *proximus* take the Accus. dependent perhaps upon *ad* understood. *Exadversus* (um) also occurs with the Accus.:

Prōpior montem, *nearer to the mountain*. Sall. Proximus mare, *nearest to the sea*. Caes. See also 437, and for compounds, 371. 4. and 374. 6.

2. *Versus* (um) and *usque* as adverbs often accompany prepositions, especially *ad* and *in*: Ad Alpes versus, *towards the Alps*.

434. The ABLATIVE is used with

A or ab (abs),	absque,	cōram,	eum,	de,
e or ex,	prac,	pro,	sine,	tēnus:

Ab urbe, *from the city*. Caes. Cōram conventu, *in the presence of the assembly*. Nep. Cum Antiōcho, *with Antiochus*. Cic. De fōro, *from the forum*. Cic. Ex Asia, *from Asia*. Nep. Sine corde, *without a heart*. Cic.

1. Many verbs compounded with *ab*, *de*, *ex*, or *sūper*, admit the Ablative dependent upon the preposition :

Abire māgistrātū, *to retire from office*. Tac. Pugna excēdunt, *They retire from the battle*. Caes.

Sometimes the Prep. is repeated, or one of kindred meaning is used :

De vīta dēcēdēre, *to depart from life*. Cic. Dēcēdēre ex Asia, *to depart from Asia*. Cic.

2. The Ablative with or without *De* is sometimes used with *Fūcio*, *Fio*, or *Sum*, as follows :

Quid hoc hōmīne fācias, *What are you to do with this man?* Cic. Quid te (or de te) fūtūrum est, *What will become of you?* Cic.

The Dative occurs in nearly the same sense :

Quid huic hōmīni fācias, *What are you to do with (or to) this man?* Cic.

3. *A*, *ab*, *abs*, *e*, *ex*.—*A* and *e* are used only before consonants, *ab* and *ex* either before vowels or consonants. *Abs* is antiquated, except before *te*.

4. *Tēnus* follows its case :

Collo tēnus, *up to the neck*. Ov.

5. *Cum* with the Abl. of a Pers. Pronoun is appended to it: *mēcum*, *tēcum*, etc., generally also with a relative: *quōcum*, *quibuscum*.

435. The ACCUSATIVE OR ABLATIVE is used with

In, sub, subter, sūper :

In Asiam prōfūgit, *He fled into Asia*. Cic. Hannībal in Itālia fuit, *Hannibal was in Italy*. Nep. Sub montem, *toward the mountain*. Caes. Sub monte, *at the foot of the mountain*. Liv. Subter tōgam, *under the toga*. Liv. Subter testūdine, *under a tortoise or shed*. Virg. Sūper Nūmīdiam, *beyond Numidia*. Sall. Hac sūper re scribam, *I will write on this subject*. Cic.

1. *In* and *Sub* take the Accusative in answer to the question *whither?* the Ablative in answer to *where?* In Asiam (*whither?*), *into Asia*; In Itālia (*where?*), *in Italy*.

2. *Subter* and *Sūper* generally take the Accusative, but *sūper* with the force of—*concerning*, *of*, *on* (of a subject of discourse), takes the Ablative; see examples.

436. PREPOSITIONS AS ADVERBS.—The prepositions were originally adverbs, and many of them are sometimes so used in classical authors.

437. ADVERBS AS PREPOSITIONS.—Conversely several adverbs are sometimes used as prepositions with an oblique case, though in most instances a preposition could readily be supplied. Such are

1. With Accusative: *prōpius*, *proxīme*, *prīdie*, *postrīdie*, *usque*, *dēsūper* :

Prōpius pēricūlum (ad), *nearer to danger*. Liv. Prīdie Idus (ante), *the day before the Ides*. Cic. Usque pēdes (ad), *even to the feet*. Curt.

2. With Ablative: *pālam*, *prōcul*, *simul* (poetic) :

Pālam pōpūlo, *in the presence of the people*. Liv. Prōcul castris, *at a distance from the camp*. Tac. Simul his, *with these*. Hor.

3. With Accusative or Ablative: *clam*, *insūper* :

Clam patrem, *without the father's knowledge*. Plaut. Clam vōbis, *without your knowledge*. Caes.

CHAPTER III.

SYNTAX OF ADJECTIVES.

RULE XXXIII.—Agreement of Adjectives.

438. An Adjective agrees with its Noun in GENDER, NUMBER, and CASE :

Fortūna caeca est, *Fortune is blind.* Cic. Vērae amīcītiæ, *true friendships.* Cic. Māgister optīmus, *the best teacher.* Cic.

1. This Rule includes Adjectives, Adjective Pronouns, and Participles.

2. ATTRIBUTIVE AND PREDICATE ADJECTIVES.—An adjective is called *attributive*, unless it unites with the verb (generally *sum*), to form the *predicate*; it is then called a *predicate-adjective*: as *caeca est*, above.

3. AGREEMENT WITH CLAUSE, ETC.—An adjective may agree with any word or words used substantively, as a *pronoun*, *clause*, *infinitive*, etc.:

Quis clārīor, *Who is more illustrious?* Cic. Certum est libēros amāri, *It is certain that children are loved.* Quint. See 35. III.

An adjective agreeing with a clause is sometimes plural, as in Greek.

4. NEUTER WITH MASCULINE.—Sometimes the Predicate Adjective is neuter, when the subject is *Masc.* or *Fem.*:

Mors est extrēmum, *Death is the last (thing).* Cic.

5. NEUTER WITH GENITIVE.—A neuter adjective with a genitive is often used instead of an adjective with its noun:

Multum op̄eræ (for *multa op̄era*), *much service* (much of service). Cic. Id tempōris, *that time.* Cic. Vāna r̄erum (for *vānæ res*), *vain things.* Hor.

6. CONSTRUCTION ACCORDING TO SENSE.—Sometimes the adjective or participle conforms to the *real meaning* of its noun, without regard to grammatical gender or number:

Pars certāre pārātī, *a part (some), prepared to contend.* Virg. Nōbis (for *me*, 446, 2), *præsentē, we* (1) *being present.* Plaut. Dēmōsthēnes cum cētēris erant expūsi, *Demosthenes with the others had been banished.* Nep.

7. AGREEMENT WITH PREDICATE NOUN OR APPOSITIVE.—See 462.

8. AGREEMENT WITH ONE NOUN FOR ANOTHER.—When a noun governs another in the Genitive, an adjective belonging in sense to one of the two nouns, sometimes agrees with the other:

Majōra (for *majōrum*) īnītia r̄erum, *the beginnings of greater things.* Liv. Cursus justī (*justus*) amnis, *the regular course of the river.* Liv.

439. WITH TWO OR MORE NOUNS.—An adjective or participle, belonging to two or more nouns, may agree with them all conjointly, or may agree with one and be understood with the others :

Castor et Pollux vīsi sunt, *Castor and Pollux were seen.* Cic. Tēmēritas ignōrātiōque vitiōsa est, *Rashness and ignorance are bad.* Cic.

1. THE ATTRIBUTIVE ADJECTIVE generally agrees with the nearest noun : Agri omnes et mǎria, *all lands and seas.* Cic.

2. DIFFERENT GENDERS.—When the nouns are of different genders, they may denote

1) *Persons* : then the adjective or participle agreeing with them conjointly is masculine : Pāter et māter mortui sunt, *Father and mother are dead.* Ter.

2) *Persons and Things* : then the adjective generally takes the gender of the person : Rex rēgiāque classis prōfecti sunt, *The king and the royal fleet set out.* Liv.

3) *Things* : then the adjective is generally neuter : Hōnōres, victōriae fortuīta sunt, *Honors and victories are accidental (things).* Cic.

3. NEUTER WITH MASCULINE OR FEMININE.—With masculine or feminine nouns denoting inanimate objects, the adjective is often neuter :

Lābor et dōlor sunt finītīma, *Labor and pain are kindred (things).* Cic. Nox atque praeda hostes rēmōrāta sunt, *Night and plunder detained the enemy.* Sall.

4. TWO OR MORE ADJECTIVES.—Two or more adjectives in the singular may belong to a plural noun :

Prima et vicēsīma lēgiōnes, *the first and the twentieth legions.* Tac.

So in proper names : Cnaeus et Publius Scipiōnes, *Cnaeus and Publius Scipio.* Cic.

440. USE OF ADJECTIVES.—The Adjective in Latin corresponds in its general use to the Adjective in English.

1. An adjective may qualify the complex idea formed by a noun and an adjective : *aes aliēnum grande*, a great debt. Here *grande* qualifies not *aes* alone, but *aes aliēnum*. In such cases no connective is used between the adjectives.

But the Latin uses the conjunction after *multi* even where the English omits it : *multae et magnae tempestates*, many great emergencies.

441. Adjectives are often used substantively : *docti*, the learned ; *multi*, many persons ; *multa*, many things.

1. In the Plural, Masculine Adjectives often designate persons, and Neuter Adjectives things : *fortes*, the brave ; *divites*, the rich ; *paupēres*, the poor ; *multi*, many : *pauci*, few ; *omnes*, all ; *mei*, my friends ; *utilia*, useful things ; *mea*, *nostra*, my, our things ; *omnia*, all things ; *haec*, *illa*, these, those things.

2. In the Singular, Adjectives are occasionally used substantively, especially in the Neuter with an abstract sense : *doctus*, a learned man ;

vĕrum, a true thing, the truth; *nihil sincĕrĕ*, nothing of sincerity, nothing sincere.

3. NOUN UNDERSTOOD.—Many adjectives become substantives, by the omission of their nouns: *patriā* (terra), native country; *dextra* (manus), right hand; *fĕra* (bestia), wild beast; *hiberna* (castra), winter-quarters.

4. WITH RES.—Adjectives with *res* are used with great freedom: *res adversae*, adversity; *res sĕcundae*, prosperity; *res publica*, republic.

5. FROM PROPER NAMES.—Adjectives from proper names are often equivalent to the English objective with *of*: *pugna Mārāthōnia*, the battle of Marathon; *Diāna Ephĕsia*, Diana of Ephesus; *Hercŭles Xĕnōphontĭus*, the Hercules of Xenophon.

6. DESIGNATING A PART.—A few adjectives sometimes designate a particular part of an object: *prĭmus*, *mĕdius*, *ultĭmus*, *extrĕmus*, *postrĕmus*, *intĭmus*, *summus*, *infĭmus*, *imĭus*, *suprĕmus*, *reliquus*, *cĕtĕra*, etc.: *prĭma nox*, the first part of the night; *summus mons*, the highest part of the mountain.

In Livy and late writers, the neuter of these adjectives with a genitive sometimes occurs:

Ad ultĭmum inōpiæ, for *ad ultĭmam inōpiam*, to extreme destitution. Liv.

442. EQUIVALENT TO A CLAUSE.—Adjectives, like nouns in apposition, are sometimes equivalent to clauses:

Nĕmo saltat sobrius, No one dances when he is sober, or when sober. Cic. *Hortensium vĭvum āmāvĭ*, I loved Hortensius, while he was alive. Cic. *Hōmo nunquam sobrius*, a man, who is never sober. Cic.

1. *Prior*, *prĭmus*, *ultĭmus*, *postrĕmus*, are often best rendered by a relative clause:

Prĭmus mōrem solvit, He was the first who broke the custom. Liv.

With the adverb *prĭmum*, the thought would be, he first broke the custom, and then did something else.

443. INSTEAD OF ADVERBS.—Adjectives are sometimes used where our idiom employs adverbs:

Socrātes vĕnĕnum lactus hausit, Socrates cheerfully drank the poison. Sen. *Sĕnātus frĕquens convĕnit*, The senate assembled in great numbers. Cic. *Roseius ĕrat Rōmæ frĕquens*, Roscius was frequently at Rome. Cic.

Adjectives thus used are: (1) Those expressive of joy, knowledge, and their opposites: *lactus*, *libens*, *invĭtus*, *tristis*, *sciens*, *insciens*, *prŭdens*, *imprŭdens*, etc. (2) *Nullus*, *sŏlus*, *tŏtus*, *ūnus*; *prior*, *prĭmus*, *prŏpior*, *proxĭmus*, etc. (3) In the Poets several adjectives of time and place:

Dŏmesticus ōtior, I idle about home. Hor. *Vespertinus pĕte tectum*, At evening seek your abode. Hor. See Examples above; also 335. 4.

444. COMPARISON.—A comparison between two objects requires the comparative degree; between more than two, the superlative:

Prior hŏrum, the former of these (two). Nep. *Gallŏrum fortissĭmi*, the bravest of the Gauls. Caes.

1. WITH THE FORCE OF TOO OR VERY.—The comparative sometimes has the force of *too*, *unusually*, *somewhat*, and the superlative, the force of *very*: *doctior*, too learned, or somewhat learned; *doctissimus*, very learned.

2. COMPARATIVE AFTER QUAM.—When an object is said to possess one quality in a higher degree than another, both adjectives are put in the comparative; but when it is said to possess one quality rather than another, both are in the positive, the former with *māgis* or *pōtius*:

Clārior quam grātior, more illustrious than pleasing. Liv. *Dīsertus māgis quam sāpiens*, fluent rather than wise. Cic.

In the first case the positive is sometimes used in one or both members; and in the second case *māgis* is sometimes omitted, and occasionally the adjective before *quam* is in the comparative.

3. STRENGTHENING WORDS.—Comparatives and Superlatives are often strengthened by a Prep. with its case, *ante*, *prae*, *praeter*, *supra* (417. 2. 3), *ūnus*, *ūnus omnium*, alone, alone of all, far, by far; Comparatives also by *etiam*, even, still; *multo*, much, and Superlatives by *longe*, *multo*, by far, much, *quam*, *quantus*, as possible:

Multo maxīma pars, by far the largest part. Cic. *Res ūna omnium diffīcillīma*, a thing by far the most difficult of all. Cic. *Quam maxīmae cōpiæ*, forces as large as possible. Sall. *Quanta maxīma vastitas*, the greatest possible devastation. Liv.

4. COMPARISON IN ADVERBS has the same force as in adjectives:

Quam saepissīme, as often as possible. Cic. *Fortius quam fēlicius*, with more bravery than success. Liv.



CHAPTER IV.

SYNTAX OF PRONOUNS.

RULE XXXIV.—Agreement of Pronouns.

445. A Pronoun agrees with its antecedent in GENDER, NUMBER, and PERSON:

Animāl quod sanguīnem hābet, an animal which has blood. Cic. *Ego, qui te confirmo*, I who encourage you. Cic. *Vis est in virtūtibus*; eas excitā, There is strength in virtues, arouse them. Cic.

1. APPLICATION OF RULE.—This rule applies to all Pronouns when used as nouns. Pronouns used as adjectives conform to the rule for adjectives. See 438.

The *Antecedent* is the word or words to which the pronoun refers, and whose place it supplies. Thus, in the examples under the rule, *animāl* is the antecedent of *quod*, and *virtūtibus* the antecedent of *eas*.

2. AGREEMENT WITH PERSONAL PRONOUN.—When the antecedent is a Demonstrative in agreement with a Personal pronoun, the relative agrees with the latter :

Tu es is qui me ornasti, *You are the one who commended me.* Cic.

3. WITH TWO ANTECEDENTS.—When a relative or other pronoun, refers to two or more antecedents, it generally agrees with them conjointly, but it sometimes agrees with the nearest :

Puēri mūliēresque, qui, *boys and women, who.* Caes. Peccātum ac culpa, quae, *error and fault, which.* Cic.

1) With antecedents of different genders, the pronoun conforms in gender to the rule for adjectives (439. 2 and 3); hence *puēri mulieresque qui*, above.

2) With antecedents of different persons, the pronoun prefers the first person to the second, and the second to the third, conforming to the rule for verbs. See 463. 1.

4. WITH PREDICATE NOUN OR APPOSITIVE.—A pronoun sometimes agrees with a Predicate-Noun or an Appositive instead of the antecedent :

Animāl quem (for *quod*) vōcāmus hōmīnem, *the animal which we call man.* Cic. Thēbae, quod (*quae*) cāput est, *Thebes which is the capital.* Liv. Ea (*id*) ērat confessio, *That (i. e., the action referred to) was a confession.* Liv. Flūmen Rhēnus, qui, *the river Rhine, which.* Caes.

In the last example, *qui* agrees with the appositive *Rhenus*; in the other examples, the pronouns *quem*, *quod*, and *ea*, are attracted to agree with their predicate nouns *hōmīnem*, *caput*, and *confessio*.

5. CONSTRUCTION ACCORDING TO SENSE.—Sometimes the pronoun is construed according to the *real meaning* of the antecedent, without regard to grammatical form; and sometimes it refers to the *class of objects* to which the antecedent belongs :

Equitātūs, qui vidērunt, *the cavalry who saw.* Caes. Eārum rērum utrumque, *each of these things.* Cic. Dēmōcritum ōmītāmus; āpud istos; *let us omit Democritus; with such (i. e., as he).* Cic.

6. ANTECEDENT OMITTED.—The antecedent of the relative is often omitted when it is indefinite, is the pronoun *is*, or is implied in a possessive :

Sunt qui censeant, *There are some who think.* Cic. Terra reddit quod accēpit, *The earth returns what it has received.* Cic. Vestra, qui cum integritāte vixistis, hoc intērest, *This interests you who have lived with integrity.* Cic. Here the antecedent is *vos*, implied in *vestra*.

7. CLAUSE AS ANTECEDENT.—When the antecedent is a sentence or clause, the pronoun, unless attracted (445. 4), is in the Neuter Singular, but the relative generally adds *id* as an appositive to such antecedent :

Nos, id quod dēbet, patria dēlectat, *Our country delights us, as it ought (lit. that which it owes).* Cic.

8. RELATIVE ATTRACTED.—The relative is sometimes attracted into the case of the antecedent, and sometimes agrees with the antecedent repeated :

Jūdīce quo (for *quem*) nosti, *the judge whom you know.* Hor. Dies m-

stat, quo die, *The day is at hand, on which day.* Caes. Cūmae, quam urbem tēnēbant, *Cumae, which city they held.* Liv.

9. ANTECEDENT ATTRACTED.—In Poetry, rarely in prose, the antecedent is sometimes attracted into the case of the relative; and sometimes incorporated in the relative clause in the same case as the relative:

Urbem quam stātuō, vestra est, *The city which I am building is yours.* Virg. Mālārū, quas āmor cūras hābet, oblivisci (for *malārū curārū quas*), *to forget the wretched cares which love has.* Hor.

I. PERSONAL AND POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

446. The Nominative of Personal Pronouns is used only for emphasis or contrast:

Significāmus, quid sentiāmus, *We show what we think.* Cic. Ego rēges ejēci, vos tyrannos intrōducītis, *I have banished kings, you introduce tyrants.* Cic.

1. With *quīdem* the pronoun is usually expressed, and then the third person is supplied by *hic*, *is*, *ille*, which are then often redundant: *tu quīdem*, you indeed, *ille quīdem*, he indeed. *Quīdem* adds emphasis; *equīdem* = *ēgo quīdem*.

2. The writer sometimes speaks of himself in the plural, using *nos* for *ego*, *nos-ter* for *meus*, and the plural verb for the singular.

3. For *Nostrum* and *Vestrum*, see 396. 1.

447. Possessive Pronouns, when not emphatic, are seldom expressed, if they can be supplied from the context:

Mānus lāva, *Wash your hands.* Cic. Mihi mea vīta cāra est, *My life is dear to me.* Plaut.

For Possessive with Genitive in the sense of own, see 397. 2.

Reflexive use of Pronouns.

448. *Sui* and *Suus* have a reflexive sense (*himself*, etc.); sometimes also the other Personal and Possessive pronouns, together with *Is*, *Ille*, and *Ipsē*:

Se dilīgit, *He loves himself.* Cic. Sua vī mōvētur, *He is moved by his own power.* Cic. Me consōlor, *I console myself.* Cic. Persuādēt Tulingis ūti cum iis prōficiscantur, *They persuade the Tulingi to depart with them.* Caes.

1. *Inter nos*, *inter vos*, *inter se*, have a reciprocal force, *each other*, *one another*, together; but instead of *inter se*, the noun may be repeated in an oblique case:

Collōquimur inter nos, *We converse together.* Cic. Amant inter se, *They love one another.* Cic. Hōmīnes hōmīnibus ūtīles sunt, *Men are useful to men*, i. e., to each other. Cic.

449. *Sui* and *Suus* generally refer to the Subject of the clause in which they stand :

Se diligit, He loves himself. Cic. *Iustitia propter sese colenda est, Justice should be cultivated for its own sake.* Cic. *Anulum suum dedit, He gave his ring.* Nep.

1. In SUBORDINATE CLAUSES expressing the sentiment of the principal subject, *Sui* and *Suus* generally refer to that subject :

Sentit animus se vi sua moveri, The mind perceives that it is moved by its own power. Cic. *A me petivit ut secum essem, He asked (from) me to be with him (that I would be).* Cic. *Pervestigat quid sui cives cogitent, He tries to ascertain what his fellow citizens think.* Cic.

1) As *Sui* and *Suus* thus refer to subjects, the demonstratives, *Is, Ille*, etc., generally refer either to other words, or to subjects, which do not admit *sui* and *suus*.

Deum agnoscis ex ejus operibus, You recognize a god by (from) his works. Cic. *Obligat civitatem nihil eos mutatuos, He binds the state not to change anything (that they will).* Just.

2) In some subordinate clauses the writer may at pleasure use either the Reflexive or the Demonstrative, according as he wishes to present the thought as that of the principal subject, or as his own. Thus in the last example under 448, *cum iis* is the proper language for the writer without reference to the sentiment of the principal subject ; *secum*, which would be equally proper, would present the thought as the sentiment of that subject.

3) Sometimes the Reflexive occurs where we should expect the Demonstrative, and the Demonstrative where we should expect the Reflexive.

2. *Suus* = *His own*, etc.—*Suus* in the sense of *his own*, *fitting*, etc., may refer to subject or object :

Iustitia suum cuique tribuit, Justice gives to every man his due (his own). Cic.

3. CONSTRUCTION ACCORDING TO SENSE.—When the subject of the verb is not the real agent of the action, *sui* and *suus* refer to the latter :

A Caesare invitator sibi ut sim legatus, I am invited by Caesar (real agent) to be his lieutenant. Cic.

4. *Suus* SUBSTANTIVELY.—The Plural of *Suus* used substantively—*his, their, friends, possessions*, etc.—is used with great freedom, often referring to oblique cases :

Fuit hoc luctuosum suis, This was afflicting to his friends. Cic. Here *suis* refers to an oblique case in the preceding sentence.

5. *Sui* and *Suus* sometimes refer to an omitted subject :

Deforme est de se praedicare, To boast of one's self is disgusting. Cic.

6. REFLEXIVES REFERRING TO DIFFERENT SUBJECTS.—Sometimes a clause has one reflexive referring to the principal subject, and another referring to the subordinate subject :

Respondit neminem secum sine sua pernicie contendisse, He replied that no one had contended with him without (his) destruction. Caes.

Here *se* refers to the subject of *respondit* and *sua* to *neminem*, the subject of the subordinate clause.

II. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

450. *Hic, Iste, Ille*, are often called respectively demonstratives of the First, Second, and Third Persons, as *hic* designates that which is near the speaker; *iste*, that which is near the person addressed, and *ille*, that which is remote from both, and near only to some third person.

Custos hujus urbis, the guardian of this city. Cic. *Mūta istam mentem, Change that purpose of yours.* Cic. *Si illos negligis, if you disregard those.* Cic.

1. *HIC AND ILLE IN CONTRASTS.*—*Hic* designates an object conceived as near, and *ille* as remote, whether in space or time :

Non antiquo illo mōre, sed hoc nostro fuit erūdītus, He was educated, not in that ancient, but in this our modern way. Cic.

2. *HIC AND ILLE, FORMER AND LATTER.*—In reference to two objects previously mentioned, (1) *Hic* generally follows *Ille* and refers to the latter object, while *Ille* refers to the former; but (2) *Hic* refers to the more important object, and *Ille* to the less important :

Ignāvia, lābor : illa, hic ; Indolence, labor : the former, the latter. Cels. *Pax, victōria : haec (pax) in tua, illa in deōrum pōtestāte est ; Peace, victory : the former is in your power, the latter in the power of the gods.* Liv.

3. *Hic* and *Ille* are often used of what immediately follows in discourse, and *Iste* sometimes indicates contempt : *haec verba*, these words, i. e., the following words ; *iste*, that man, such a one.

4. *Ille* is often used of what is well known, famous :

Mēdēa illa, that well-known Medea. Cic.

1) *Hic* with or without *hōmo*, is sometimes equivalent to *ēgo*. Alone it is sometimes equivalent to *meus* or *noster*.

2) *Hic, ille*, and *is* are sometimes redundant, especially with *quīdem* : *Scīpio non multum ille quīdem dīcēbat, Scīpio did not indeed say much.* Cic. See 446. 1.

3) A Demonstrative or Relative is sometimes equivalent to a Genitive or a Prep. with its case : *hic dōlor* = *dōlor hujus rei*, grief on account of this; *haec cūra* = *cūra de hoc*, care concerning this.

451. *Is* and *Idem* refer to preceding nouns, or are the antecedents of relatives :

Dionysius aufūgit : is est in prōvincia, Dionysius has fled : he is in the province. Cic. *Is qui sātis hābet, he who has enough.* Cic. *Eādem audire mālunt, They prefer to hear the same things.* Liv.

1. *Is* is often omitted, especially before a relative or a genitive :

Flēbat pāter de filii morte, de patris filius, The father wept over the death of the son, the son over (that) of the father. Cic. See also 445. 6.

2. *Is* or *Ipse* with a Conjunction is often used for emphasis, like the English *and that too*, *and that indeed* :

Unam rem explicābo eamque maximam, *One thing I will explain and that too a most important one.* Cic.

Id thus used often refers to a clause or to the general thought, and *et ipse* is often best rendered, *too* or *also*: Audire Cratippum, idque Athēnis, *to hear Cratippus, and that too at Athens.* Cic.

3. *Idem* is sometimes best rendered, *also, yet*:

Nihil ūtile, quod non idem honestum, *Nothing useful, which is not also honorable.* Cic. Quum dicat—nēgat idem, *Though he asserts—he yet denies* (the same denies). Cic.

4. *Is—qui* = *he—who*, such—as, such—that:

Iti sūmus, qui esse dēbēmus, *We are such as we ought to be.* Cic. Ea est gens quae nesciat, *The race is such that it knows not.* Liv.

5. *Idem—qui*; *idem—ac, atque, quam, quāsi, ut, cum* with Abl. = the same—who, the same—as:

Idem mōres, qui, *The same manners which or as.* Cic. Est idem ac fuit, *He is the same as he was.* Ter.

6. *Is Reflexive.* See 448.

452. *Ipsē* adds emphasis, generally rendered *self*:

Ipsē Caesar, *Caesar himself.* Cic. Fac ut te ipsum custōdias, *See that you guard yourself.* Cic.

1. *IPSE* WITH SUBJECT.—*Ipsē* belongs to the emphatic word, whether subject or object, but with a preference for the subject:

Me ipse consōlor, *I myself* (not another) *console myself.* Cic.

2. *IPSE, VERY.*—*Ipsē* is often best rendered by *very*:

Ipsē ille Gorgias, *that very Gorgias.* Cic.

3. With Numerals *Ipsē* has the force of—*just so many, just*:

Trīginta dies ipsi, *just thirty days.* Cic.

4. *Ipsē* in the Genitive with possessives has the force of *own, one's own*:

Nostra ipsōrum amicitia, *Our own friendship.* Cic. See 397. 3.

5. *Ipsē Reflexive*, sometimes supplies the place of an emphatic *sui* or *suus*:

Lēgātos misit qui ipsi vitam pētērent, *He sent messengers to ask life for himself.* Sall.

III. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

453. The relative is often used where the English idiom requires a demonstrative or personal pronoun; sometimes even at the beginning of a sentence:

Res loquītur ipsa; quae semper vālet; *The fact itself speaks, and this* (which) *ever has weight.* Cic. Qui proclium committunt, *They engage battle.* Caes. Quae quum ita sint, *since these things are so.* Cic.

1. RELATIVE WITH DEMONSTRATIVE.—Relatives and Demonstratives are often correlatives to each other: *hic—qui, iste—qui*, etc. These combinations generally retain the ordinary force of the separate words, but see *is—qui, idem—qui*, 451. 4 and 5.

1) *Quicumque* and *Quisquis*, whoever, whatever, sometimes have the force of *every* by the ellipsis of *fieri pōtest*: *quicumque ratiōne*, in every way, *i. e.*, in whatever way it is possible.

2. A DEMONSTRATIVE may supply the place of a Relative when otherwise two relative clauses would be brought together :

Quae nec hăbērēmus nec his ūtērēmur, *Which we should neither have nor use.* Cic.

1) A Relative Clause with *is* is often equivalent to a substantive: *ii qui audiunt* = *auditores, hearers.*

3. Two RELATIVES sometimes occur in the same clause :

Artes quas qui tēnent, *arts, whose possessors* (which, who possess). Cic.

4. A RELATIVE CLAUSE is sometimes equivalent to *Pro* with the Abl. :

Quae tua prŭdentia est = *qua es prŭdentia* = *pro tua prŭdentia* = *such is your prudence*, or *you are of such prudence*, or *in accordance with your prudence*, etc. : Spēro, quae tua prŭdentia est, te vālère, *I hope you are well, such is your prudence* (which is, etc.).

5. RELATIVE WITH ADJECTIVE.—Adjectives belonging in sense to the antecedent, sometimes stand in the relative clause in agreement with the relative, especially comparatives, superlatives, and numerals :

Vāsa, quae pulcherrīma vidērat, *the most beautiful vessels which he had seen* (vessels, which the most beautiful he had seen). Cic. De servis suis, quem hăbuit fīdēlissimū, mīsīt, *He sent the most faithful of the slaves which he had.* Nep.

6. *Quod Expletive*, or apparently so, often stands at the beginning of a sentence, especially before *nī, nīsi, etsi*, and sometimes before *quia, quōniam, ūtinam*, etc. In translating it is sometimes omitted, and sometimes rendered by *now, but, and* :

Quod si cecidērīnt, *if or but if they should fall.* Cic.

7. *Qui dicitur, qui vocātur*, or the corresponding active *quem dicunt, quem vocant*, are often used in the sense of *so called, the so called, what they or you call*, etc. :

Vestra quae dīcitur vīta, mors est, *Your so called life* (lit. *your, which is called life*) *is death.* Cic. Lex ista quam vōcas non est lex, *That law as you call it, is not a law.* Cic.

IV. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

454. The Interrogative *quis*, is used substantively ; *qui*, adjectively :

Quis ěgo sum, *Who am I?* Cic. Quid faciēt, *What will he do?* Cic. Qui vir fuit, *What kind of a man was he?* Cic.

1. QUIS AND QUL.—Occasionally *quis* is used adjectively and *qui* substantively :

Quis rex unquam fuit, *What king was there ever?* Cic. Qui sis, cōsidēra, *Consider who you are.* Cic.

2. QUID, *why, how is it that*, etc., is often used adverbially (§80. 2), or stands apparently unconnected, by the ellipsis of *propter* or a verb: *Quid ěnim*, *why then?* what indeed (*est* or *dīcam*)? *Quid quod*, *what of the fact that?*

3. Two INTERROGATIVES sometimes occur in the same clause :

Quis quem fraudāvit, *who defrauded, and whom did he defraud* (lit. *who defrauded whom*)? Cic.

4. ATTRACTION.—The interrogative often agrees with the predicate noun :

Quam (for *quid*) dīcam vōluptātem vidētis, *You see what I call pleasure.* Cic.

V. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

455. *Aliquis, quis, qui, and quispiam*, are all indefinite, *some one, any one*:

Est *āliquis*, *there is some one*. Liv. Dixit *quis*, *some one said*. Cic. Si *quis rex*, *if any king*. Cic. Alia res *quaepiam*, *any other thing*. Cic.

1. *Aliquis* is less indefinite than *quis, qui, and quispiam*.

2. *Quis* and *qui* are used chiefly after *si, nisi, ne, and num*. *Quis* is generally used substantively and *qui* adjectively. *Aliquis* after *si, etc.*, is emphatic.

456. *Quīdam*, a certain one, is less indefinite than *aliquis*:

Quīdam rhētor antiquus, *a certain ancient rhetorician*. Cic. Accurrit *quīdam*, *A certain one runs up*. Hor.

1. *Quīdam* with an Adjective is sometimes used to qualify or soften the statement:

Iustitia mirifica quaedam videtur, *Justice seems somewhat wonderful*. Cic.

2. *Quīdam* with *quāsi* and sometimes without it, has the force of *a certain, a kind of, as it were*:

Quāsi ālumna quaedam, *a certain foster child as it were*. Cic.

457. *Quisquam* and *ullus* are used chiefly in negative and conditional sentences, and in interrogative sentences implying a negative:

Neque me *quisquam* agnōvit, *Nor did any one recognize me*. Cic. Si *quisquam*, *if any one*. Cic. Num censes *ullum ānimal esse*, *do you think there is any animal?* Cic.

1. *Nemo* is the negative of *quisquam*, and like *quisquam* is generally used substantively, rarely adjectively:

Nēmīnem laesit, *He harmed no one*. Cic. *Nemo poēta*, *no poet*. Cic.

2. *Nullus* is the negative of *ullus*, and is generally used adjectively, but it sometimes supplies the Gen. and Abl. of *nemo*, which generally wants those cases:

Nullum ānimal, *no animal*. Cic. *Nullius aures*, *the ears of no one*. Cic.

3. *Nullus* for *non*.—*Nullus* and *nihil* are sometimes used for an emphatic *non*: *Nullus vēnit*, *He did not come*. Cic. *Mortui nulli sunt*, *The dead are not*. Cic.

458. *Quīvis, Quilibet*, any one whatever, and *Quisque*, every one, each one, are general indefinites (191):

Quaelibet res, *any thing*. Cic. *Tuōrum quisque nēcessāriōrum*, *each one of your friends*. Cic.

1. *Quisque* with Superlatives and Ordinals is generally best rendered by *all or by ever, always*, with *prīmus* by *very, possible*:

Epīcūrēos doctissimus quisque contemnit, *All the most learned despise the Epicureans, or the most learned ever despise, etc.* Cic. *Prīmo quōque die*, *the earliest day possible, the very first*. Cic.

2. *Ut Quisque—ita* with the superlative in both clauses is often best rendered, *the more—the more*:

Ut quisque sibi plūrimū confidit, ita maxime excellit, *The more one confides in himself, the more he excels*. Cic.

459. *Alius* and *Alter* are often repeated: *ālius—ālius*, one—another; *alii—alii*, some—others; *alter—alter*, the one—the other; *altēri—altēri*, the one party—the other:

Alii glōriæ serviunt, ālii pēcūniæ, Some are slaves to glory, others to money. Cic. Altēri dimīcant, altēri timent, One party contends, the other fears. Cic.

1. *Alius* repeated in different cases often involves an ellipsis:

Alius ālia via civitātem auxerunt, They advanced the state, one in one way, another in another. Liv. So also with ālius or ālīter: Aliter ālii vivunt, Some live in one way, others in another. Cic.

2. After *Alius*, *Alīter*, and the like, *atque*, *ac*, and *et* often mean *than*:

Non ālius essem atque sum, I would not be other than I am. Cic.

3. *Alter* means *the one, the other* (of two), *the second*; *ālius*, *another, other*. When *alter—alter* refers to objects previously mentioned, the first *alter* usually refers to the latter object, but may refer to either:

Inimicus, compētitor, cum altēro—cum altēro, an enemy, a rival, with the latter—with the former. Cic.

4. *Uterque* means *both, each of two*, and in the Plu. *both, each of two parties*.

CHAPTER V.

SYNTAX OF VERBS.

SECTION I.

AGREEMENT OF VERBS.

RULE XXXV.—Verb with Subject.

460. A Finite Verb agrees with its Subject in NUMBER and PERSON:

Deus mundum aedificāvit, God made the world. Cic. Ego rēges ejēcī, vos tȳrannos intrōdūcītis, I have banished kings, you introduce tyrants. Cic.

1. PARTICIPLES IN COMPOUND TENSES agree with the subject according to 438. See also 301. 2 and 3:

Thebāni accūsāti sunt, The Thebans were accused. Cic.

1) In the Infinitive, the Participle in *um* sometimes occurs without any reference to the gender or number of the subject:

Diffidentia fūtūrum quæ imprāvīssēt, from doubt that those things which he had commanded would take place. Sall.

2. SUBJECT OMITTED. See 367. 2.

1) An Indefinite Subject is often denoted by the Second Pers. Sing., or by the First or Third Plur.: *dicas*, you (any one) may say; *dicimus*, we (people) say; *dicunt*, they say.

3. VERB OMITTED.—See 367. 3.

461. CONSTRUCTION ACCORDING TO SENSE.—Sometimes the Predicate is construed according to the *real meaning* of the subject without regard to grammatical gender or number. Thus

1. With Collective Nouns, *pars*, *multitudo*, and the like :

Multitudo abeunt, *The multitude depart*. Liv. *Pars* per agros dilapsi, *a part (some) dispersed through the fields*. Liv.

1) Here *multitudo* and *pars*, though Sing. and Fem. in form, are Plur. and Masc. in sense. See also 438. 6.

2) Conversely the Imperative Singular may be used in addressing a multitude individually: Adde defectionem Siciliae, *Add (to this, soldiers,) the revolt of Sicily*. Liv.

3) Of two verbs with the same collective noun, the former is often Sing., and the latter Plur.: *Juventus* ruit certantque, *The youth rush forth and contend*. Virg.

2. With *Millia*, often masculine in sense :

Caesi sunt tria millia, *Three thousand men were slain*. Liv.

3. With *Quisque*, *Uterque*, *Alius—Alium*, *Alter—Alterum*, and the like .

Uterque educunt, *they each lead out*. Caes. *Alter alterum* videmus, *We see each other*. Cic.

4. With Singular Subjects accompanied by an Ablative with *cum* :

Dux cum principibus capiuntur, *The leader with his chiefs is taken*. Liv. See 438. 6.

5. With *Partim—Partim* in the sense of *pars—pars* :

Bonorum partim necessaria, *partim non necessaria* sunt, *Of good things some are necessary, others are not necessary*. Cic.

462. AGREEMENT WITH APPOSITIVE OR PREDICATE NOUN.—Sometimes the verb agrees, not with its subject, but with an Appositive or Predicate Noun :

Volsinii, oppidum Tuscorum, concrematum est, *Volsinii, a town of the Tuscans, was burned*. Plin. *Non omnis error stultitia est dicenda*, *Not every error should be called folly*. Cic.

1. The Verb regularly agrees with the appositive when that is *urbs, oppidum*, or *civitas*, in apposition with plural names of places, as in the first example.

1) The verb sometimes agrees with a noun in a subordinate clause after *quam*, *nisi*, etc. : *Nihil aliud nisi pax quaesita est* (not *quaesitum*), *Nothing but peace was sought*. Cic.

2. The verb agrees with the predicate noun, when that is nearer or more emphatic than the subject, as in the second example.

463. AGREEMENT WITH COMPOUND SUBJECT.—With two or more subjects the verb agrees—

I. With one subject and is understood with the others :

Aut mōres spectāri aut fortūna sōlet, *Either character or fortune is wont to be regarded.* Cic. Hōmērus fuit et Hēsiodus ante Rōmam conditam, *Homer and Hesiod lived (were) before the founding of Rome.* Cic.

II. With all the subjects conjointly, and is accordingly in the Plural Number :

Lentūlus, Scīpio pēriērunt, *Lentulus and Scipio perished.* Cic. Ego et Cicerō vālemus, *Cicero and I are well.* Cic. Tu et Tullia vālētis, *You and Tullia are well.* Cic.

1. PERSON.—With subjects differing in Person, the verb takes the First Person rather than the Second, and the Second rather than the Third, as in the examples just given.

2. PARTICIPLES.—See 439.

3. TWO SUBJECTS AS A UNIT.—Two singular subjects forming in sense a unit or whole, admit a singular verb :

Sēnātus pōpulusque intellīgit, *The senate and people (i. e., the state as a unit) understand.* Cic. Tempus nēcēssitasque postulat, *Time and necessity (i. e., the crisis) demand.* Cic.

4. SUBJECTS WITH AUT OR NEC.—With singular subjects connected by *aut*, *vel*, *nec*, *nēque* or *seu*, the verb generally agrees with the nearest subject, but with subjects differing in person, it is generally Plur. :

Aut Brūtus aut Cassius iūdicāvit, *Either Brutus or Cassius judged.* Cic. Haec nēque ego nēque tu fēcimus, *Neither you nor I have done these things.* Ter.

SECTION II.

USE OF VOICES.

464. In a transitive verb, the Active voice represents the subject as acting upon some object, the Passive, as acted upon by some other person or thing :

Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God made the world.* Cic. A Deo omnia facta sunt, *All things were made by God.* Cic.

465. ACTIVE AND PASSIVE CONSTRUCTION.—With transitive verbs, a thought may at the pleasure of the writer be expressed either actively or passively. But

I. That which in the active construction would be the object must be the subject in the passive ; and

II. That which in the active would be the subject must be put in the ablative with *a* or *ab*, for persons, without it for things : (371.6) :

Deus omnia constituit, *God ordained all things*, or: A Deo omnia constituta sunt, *All things were ordained by God*. Cic. Dei providentia mundum administrat, *The providence of God rules the world*, or: Dei providentia mundus administratur, *The world is ruled by the providence of God*. Cic.

1. The PASSIVE VOICE is sometimes equivalent to the Act. with a reflexive pronoun, like the Greek Middle:

Lāvantur in flūmīnibus, *They bathe (wash themselves) in the rivers*. Caes.

2. INTRANSITIVE VERBS (193) have regularly only the active voice, but they are sometimes used impersonally in the passive:

Curritur ad praetorium, *They run to the praetorium (it is run to)*. Cic.

3. DEPONENT VERBS, though Passive in form, are in signification transitive or intransitive:

Illud mirābar, *I admired that*. Cic. Ab urbe proſcisci, *to set out from the city*. Caes.

4. SEMI-DEPONENTS (272. 3) have some of the Active forms and some of the Passive, without change of meaning.

SECTION III.

TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE.

I. PRESENT INDICATIVE.

466. The Present Indicative represents the action of the verb as taking place at the present time:

Ego et Cicerō vālemus, *Cicero and I are well*. Cic. Hoc te rōgo, *I ask you for this*. Cic.

467. Hence the Present Tense is used,

I. Of actions and events which are actually taking place at the present time, as in the above examples.

II. Of actions and events which, as belonging to all time, belong of course to the present, as *general truths and customs*:

Nihil est amābilius virtute, *Nothing is more lovely than virtue*. Cic. Fortes fortuna adiuvat, *Fortune helps the brave*. Ter.

III. Of past actions and events which the writer wishes, for effect, to picture before the reader as present. The Present, when so used, is called the Historical Present:

Jūgurtha vallo moenia circumdat, *Jugurtha surrounds the city with a rampart*. Sall.

1. HISTORICAL PRESENT.—The historical present may sometimes be best rendered by the English Imperfect, and sometimes by the English Present, as that has a similar historical use.

2. PRESENT WITH JAMDIU, JAMDUDUM.—The Present is often used of a *present* action which has been going on for some time, rendered *have*, especially after *jamdiu*, *jamdūdum*, etc.

Jamdiu ignōro quid āgas, I have not known for a long time what you are doing. Cic.

1) The Imperfect is used in the same way of a *past* action which had been going on for some time. Thus in the example above, *Jamdru ignōrābam*, would mean, *I had not known for a long time.*

2) The Present in the Infinitive and Participle is used in the same way of an action which has been or had been going on for some time.

3. PRESENT APPLIED TO AUTHORS.—The Present in Latin, as in English, may be used of authors whose works are extant:

Xēnōphon fācit Socrātem dispūtāntem, Xenophon represents Socrates discussing. Cic.

4. PRESENT WITH DUM.—With *dum*, in the sense of *while*, the Present is generally used, even of past actions:

Dum ea pārant, Sāguntum oppugnābātur, While they were (are) making these preparations, Saguntum was attacked. Liv.

5. PRESENT FOR FUTURE.—The Present is sometimes used of an action really future, especially in conditions:

Si vincīmus, omnia tūta ērunt, If we conquer, all things will be safe. Sall.

II. IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.

468. The Imperfect Indicative represents the action as taking place in past time:

Stābant nōbīlīssīmī jūvēnes, There stood (were standing) most noble youths. Liv. *Colles oppīdum cingēbant, Hills encompassed the town.* Caes.

469. Hence the Imperfect is used especially

I. In *lively description*, whether of scenes or events:

Ante oppīdum plānitiēs pātēbat, Before the town extended a plain. Caes. *Fulgentes glādīos vidēbant, They saw (were seeing) the gleaming swords.* Cic.

II. Of *customary* or *repeated* actions and events, often rendered by *was wont*, etc.:

Pausānias ēpūlābātur mōre Persārum, Pausanias was wont to banquet in the Persian style. Nep.

1. IMPERFECT OF ATTEMPTED ACTION.—The Imperfect is sometimes used of an attempted or intended action:

Sēdābant tūmultus, They attempted to quell the seditions. Liv.

2. IMPERFECT IN LETTERS.—See 472. 1.

III. FUTURE INDICATIVE.

470. The Future Indicative represents the action as one which will take place in future time :

Scribam ad te, *I will write to you.* Cic. Nunquam aberrabimus, *We shall never go astray.* Cic.

1. FUTURE WITH IMPERATIVE FORCE.—In Latin as in English, the Future Indicative sometimes has the force of an Imperative :

Curabis et scribes, *You will take care and write.* Cic.

2. LATIN FUTURE FOR ENGLISH PRESENT.—Actions which really belong to future time are almost invariably expressed by the Future Tense, though sometimes put in the present in English :

Naturam si sequemur, nunquam aberrabimus, *If we follow nature, we shall never go astray.* Cic.

3. FUTURE INDICATIVE WITH MELIUS.—With *melius* the Future Indicative has often the force of the Subjunctive :

Melius peribimus, *We would perish rather, or it would be better for us to perish.* Liv.

IV. PERFECT INDICATIVE.

471. The Perfect Indicative has two distinct uses :

I. As the PRESENT PERFECT or PERFECT DEFINITE, it represents the action as at present completed, and is rendered by our Perfect with *have* :

De genere belli dixi, *I have spoken of the character of the war.* Cic.

II. As the HISTORICAL PERFECT or PERFECT INDEFINITE, it represents the action as a simple historical fact :

Miltiades est accusatus, *Miltiades was accused.* Nep.

1. PERFECT OF WHAT HAS CEASED TO BE.—The Perfect is sometimes used where the emphasis rests particularly on the *completion* of the action, implying that what was true of the past, is not true of the present :

Habuit, non habet, *He had, but has not.* Cic. Fuit Ilium, *Ilium was.* Virg.

2. PERFECT INDICATIVE WITH PAENE, PROPE.—The Perfect Indicative with *paene*, *prope*, may often be rendered by *might*, *would*, or by the Pluperfect Indicative :

Brutum non minus amo, *paene dixi*, quam te, *I love Brutus not less, I might almost say, or I had almost said, than I do you.* Cic.

3. PERFECT FOR ENGLISH PRESENT.—The Latin sometimes employs the Perfect and Pluperfect where the English uses the Present and Imperfect, especially in repeated actions, and in verbs which want the Present (297).

Mēmīnit praetērītūrum, *He remembers the past.* Cic. Quum ad villam vēni, hoc me dēlectat, *When I come (have come) to a villa, this pleases me.* Cic. Mēmīnēram Paulum, *I remembered Paulus.* Cic.

4. PERFECT WITH POSTQUAM.—*Postquam, ut, ut primum*, etc., in the sense of *as soon as*, are usually followed by the Perfect; sometimes by the Imperfect or Historical Present. But the Pluperfect is generally used of repeated actions; also after *postquam* when a long or definite interval intervenes:

Postquam cecidit Ilium, *after (as soon as) Ilium fell.* Virg. Anno tertio postquam profugerat, *in the third year after he had fled.* Nep.

1) As a Rare Exception the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive occur after *postquam* (*posteaquam*): *Posteaquam aedificasset classes, after he had built fleets.* Cic.

V. PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE.

472. The Pluperfect Indicative represents the action as completed at some definite past time:

Cōpias quas pro castris collocāverat, rēduxit, *He led back the forces which he had stationed before the camp.* Caes.

1. TENSES.—In letters the writer often adapts the tense to the time of the reader, using the Imperfect or Perfect for the Present, and the Pluperfect for the Imperfect or Perfect:

Nihil habēbam quod scribērem: ad tuas omnes epistōlas rescripsēram, *I have (had) nothing to write: I have already replied to all your letters (I had replied, i. e., before writing this).* Cic.

1) The Perfect is sometimes used of Future actions, as events which happen *after* the writing of the letter but *before* the receipt of it will be *Future* to the writer but *Past* to the reader.

2. PLUPERFECT FOR ENGLISH IMPERFECT.—See 471. 3.

3. PLUPERFECT TO DENOTE RAPIDITY.—The Pluperfect sometimes denotes rapidity or completeness of action:

Urbem luctu complēverant, *They (had) filled the city with mourning.* Curt.

VI. FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE.

473. The Future Perfect Indicative represents the action as one which will be completed at some future time:

Rōmam quum vēnēro, scribam ad te, *When I shall have reached Rome, I will write to you.* Cic. Dum tu haec lēges, ego illum fortasse convēnēro, *When you read this, I shall perhaps have already met him.* Cic.

1. FUTURE PERFECT TO DENOTE CERTAINTY.—The Future Perfect is sometimes used to denote the *speedy* or *complete* accomplishment of the work:

Ego meum officium praestitēro, *I will surely discharge my duty.* Caes.

2. The FUTURE PERFECT FOR ENGLISH PRESENT OR FUTURE is rare, but occurs in conditional clauses :

Si interpretāri pōtuēro, his verbis ūtītur, *If I can (shall have been able to) understand him, he uses these words.* Cic.

SECTION IV.

USE OF THE INDICATIVE.

RULE XXXVI.—Indicative.

474. The Indicative is used in treating of facts :

Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God made the world.* Cic. Nonne expulsus est patria, *Was he not banished from his country?* Cic. Hoc fēci, dum licuit, *I did this as long as it was permitted.* Cic.

475. SPECIAL USES.—The Indicative is sometimes used where our idiom would suggest the Subjunctive :

1. The *Indicative* of the *Periphrastic Conjugations* is often so used in the historical tenses, especially in conditional sentences (512. 2) :

Haec conditio non accipiēda fuit, *This condition should not have been accepted.* Cic.

2. The *Historical Tenses* of the *Indicative*, particularly the *Pluperfect*, are sometimes used for *Effect*, to represent as an actual fact something which is shown by the context never to have become fully so :

Vicērāmus, nīsi rēcēpisset Antōnium, *We should have (lit. had) conquered, had he not received Antony.* Cic. See 511. 2.

3. *Pronouns* and *Relative Adverbs*, made general by being doubled or by assuming the suffix *cunque* (187. 4), take the Indicative :

Quisquis est, is est sapiens, *Whoever he is, he is wise.* Cic. Hoc ultimum, utcunque initum est, proelium fuit, *This, however it was commenced, was the last battle.* Liv.

4. In *Expressions of Duty, Necessity, Ability*, and the like, the Latin often uses the Indicative where the English does not :

Tardius quam debuerat, *more slowly than he should have done.* Cic.

1) So also in *sum* with *aequum, par, justum, melius, utilius, longum, difficile*, and the like : Longum est persēqui utilitātes, *It would be tedious (is a long task) to enumerate the uses.* Cic.

SECTION V.

TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

476. Tense in the Subjunctive does not designate the time of the action as definitely as in the Indicative, but it marks with great exactness its continuance or completion.

477. The Present and Imperfect express *Incomplete* action:

Văleant cives, *May the citizens be well.* Cic. Utinam vëra invēnīre possem, *O that I were able to find the truth.* Cic.

478. The Perfect and Pluperfect express *Completed* action:

Oblitus es quid dixërim, *You have forgotten what I said.* Cic. Thëmistocles, quum Graeciam libërasset, expulsus est, *Themistocles was banished, though he had liberated Greece.* Cic.

479. The Future Tenses are wanting in the Subjunctive: the mood itself—used only of that which is merely *conceived* and *uncertain*—is so nearly related to the Future, that those tenses are seldom needed. Their place is however supplied, when necessary, by the periphrastic forms in *rus* (481. III. 1).

480. SEQUENCE OF TENSES.—The Subjunctive Tenses in their use conform to the following

RULE XXXVII.—Sequence of Tenses.

Principal tenses depend upon Principal tenses: Historical upon Historical:

Nititur ut vincat, *He strives to conquer.* Cic. Nëmo ërit qui censeat, *There will be no one who will think.* Cic. Quacsiëras nonne pütärem, *You had asked, whether I did not think.* Cic.

481. APPLICATION OF THE RULE.—In accordance with this rule,

I. The Subjunctive dependent upon a Principal tense—*present, present perfect, future, future perfect*—is put,

1. In the Present for Incomplete Action:

Vïdeo quid ägas,	<i>I see what you are doing.</i>
Vidi quid agas,	<i>I have seen what you are doing.</i>
Vidëbo quid agas,	<i>I shall see what you do.</i>
Vidëro quid agas,	<i>I shall have seen what you do.</i>

2. In the Perfect for Completed Action:

Vïdeo quid ëgëris,	<i>I see what you have done.</i>
Vidi quid egeris,	<i>I have seen what you have done.</i>
Vidëbo quid egeris,	<i>I shall see what you have done.</i>
Vidëro quid egeris,	<i>I shall have seen what you have done.</i>

II. The Subjunctive dependent upon a Historical tense—*imperfect, historical perfect, pluperfect*—is put,

1. In the Imperfect for Incomplete Action :

Vidēbam quid āgēres,	<i>I saw what you were doing.</i>
Vidi quid āgeres,	<i>I saw what you were doing.</i>
Vidēram quid āgeres,	<i>I had seen what you were doing.</i>

2. In the Pluperfect for Completed Action :

Vidēbam quid ēgisses,	<i>I saw what you had done.</i>
Vidi quid egisses,	<i>I saw what you had done.</i>
Vidēram quid egisses,	<i>I had seen what you had done.</i>

III. The Periphrastic Forms in *rus* conform to the rule :

Vīdeo quid actūrus sis,	<i>I see what you are going to do.</i>
Vidēbam quid actūrus esses,	<i>I saw what you were going to do.</i>

1. FUTURE SUPPLIED.—The Future is supplied when necessary (479), (1) by the Present¹ or Imperfect Subjunctive of the periphrastic forms in *rus*, or (2) by *fūtūrum sit ut*,² with the regular Present, and *fūtūrum esset ut*, with the regular Imperfect. The first method is confined to the Active, the second occurs in both voices :

Incertum est quam longa vīta fūtūra sit, *It is uncertain how long life will continue.* Cic. Incertum erat quo missūri classem fōrent, *It was uncertain whether they would send the fleet.* Liv.

2. FUTURE PERFECT SUPPLIED.—The Future Perfect is supplied, when necessary, by *fūtūrum sit ut*, with the Perfect, and *fūtūrum esset ut*, with the Pluperfect. But this circumlocution is rarely necessary. In the Passive it is sometimes abridged to *fūtūrus sim* and *fūtūrus essem*, with the Perfect participle :

Non dūbīto quin confecta jam res fūtūra sit, *I do not doubt that the thing will have been already accomplished.* Cic.

IV. The HISTORICAL PRESENT is treated sometimes as a Principal tense, as it really is in Form, and sometimes as a Historical tense, as it really is in Sense :

1. As Principal tense according to its Form :

Ubī orant, ut sibi pareat, *The Ubī implore him to spare them.* Caes.

2. As Historical tense according to its Sense :

Persuādet Castīco ut regnum occūpāret, *He persuaded Castīcus to seize the government.* Caes.

V. The IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE often refers to *present* time, especially in conditional sentences (510. 1); accordingly, when thus used, it is treated as a Principal tense :

¹ The Present, of course, after Principal tenses, and the Imperfect after Historical tenses, according to 480.

² *Fūtūrum sit*, etc., after Principal tenses, and *fūtūrum esset*, etc., after Historical tenses.

Mēmōrāre possem quibus in locis hostes fūdērit, *I might (now) state in what places he routed the enemy.* Sall.

VI. THE PRESENT AND FUTURE INFINITIVES, Present and Future PARTICIPLES, as also GERUNDS and SUPINES, share the tense of the verb on which they depend, as they express only *relative* time (540. 571):

Spēro fōre¹ ut contingat, *I hope it will happen* (I hope it will be that it may happen). Cic. Non spērāvērat fōre ut ad se dēficērent, *He had not hoped that they would revolt to him.* Liv.

482. PECULIARITIES IN SEQUENCE.—The following peculiarities in the sequence of tenses deserve notice:

1. AFTER PERFECT TENSE.—The Latin Perfect is sometimes treated as a Historical tense, even when rendered with *have*, and thus admits the *Imperfect* or *Pluperfect*:

Quōniam quae subſidia hābēres expōſui,² nunc dīcam, *Since I have shown what aids you have (or had), I will now speak.* Cic.

2. AFTER HISTORICAL TENSES.—Conversely Historical tenses, when followed by clauses denoting *consequence* or *result*, often conform to the law of sequence for Principal tenses, and thus admit the *Present* or *Perfect*:

Epāmīnondas fīde sic ūsus est, ut possit jūdīcārī, *Epaminondas used such fidelity that it may be judged.* Nep. Adeo excellēbat Aristīdes abstīnētia, ut Justus sit appellātus, *Aristides so excelled in self-control, that he has been called the Just.* Nep.

This peculiarity arises from the fact that the *Result* of a *past* action may itself be *present* and may thus be expressed by a Principal tense. When the result belongs to the present time, the Present is used: *possit jūdīcārī*, may be judged now; when it is represented as at present completed, the Perfect is used: *sit appellātus*, has been called i. e. even to the present day; but when it is represented as simultaneous with the action on which it depends, the Imperfect is used in accordance with the general rule of sequence (480).

3. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE, ORATIO OBLIQUA.—In indirect discourse (528. and 533. 1) dependent upon a Historical tense, the narrator often uses the Principal tenses to give a lively effect to his narrative; occasionally also in direct discourse:

Exitus fuit ōrātiōnis: Nēque ullos vācāre agros, qui dārī possint; *The close of the oration was, that there were (are) not any lands unoccupied which could (can) be given.* Caes.

¹ Here *fōre* shares the tense of *spēro*, and is accordingly followed by the Present *contingat*, but below it shares the tense of *spērāvērat*, and is accordingly followed by the Imperfect *dēficērent*.

² *Expōſui*, though best rendered by our Perf. Def. with *have*, is in the Latin treated as the Historical Perf. The thought is as follows: *Since in the preceding topics I set forth the aids which you had, I will now speak*, &c.

SECTION VI.

USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

483. The Subjunctive represents the action of the verb, not as an actual fact, but as something supposed or conceived. It may denote that the action is conceived,

1. As Possible, Potential.
2. As Desirable.
3. As a Purpose or Result.
4. As a Condition.
5. As a Concession.
6. As a Cause or Reason.
7. As an Indirect Question.

8. As dependent upon another subordinate action: (1) By Attraction after another Subjunctive, (2) In Indirect Discourse.

484. VARIETIES.—The Subjunctive in its various uses may accordingly be characterized as follows:

- I. The Potential Subjunctive.
- II. The Subjunctive of Desire.
- III. The Subjunctive of Purpose or Result
- IV. The Subjunctive of Condition.
- V. The Subjunctive of Concession.
- VI. The Subjunctive of Cause or Reason.
- VII. The Subjunctive in Indirect Questions.
- VIII. The Subjunctive by Attraction.
- IX. The Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse.

I. THE POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE.

RULE XXXVIII.—Potential Subjunctive.

485. The Potential Subjunctive represents the action not as real, but as *possible*:

Forsitan quaerātis, *Perhaps you may inquire*. Cic. Hoc nēmo dixērit, *No one would say this*. Cic. Huic cēdāmus, hujus conditiōnes audiāmus, *Shall we yield to him, shall we listen to his terms?* Cic. Quis dūbitet (= nēmo dūbitat), *Who would doubt, or who doubts (= no one doubts)?* Cic. Quid faciērem, *What was I to do, or what should I have done?* Virg.

486. APPLICATION OF THE RULE.—In the Potential sense, the Subjunctive is used,

I. In *Declarative Sentences*, to express an affirmation *doubtfully* or *conditionally*, as in the first and second examples.

II. In *Questions of Appeal*,¹ to ask not what is, but what *may be* or *should be*, generally implying a negative answer, as in the last example under the rule.

III. In *Subordinate Clauses*, whatever the connective, to represent the action as *possible* rather than *real* :

Quamquam ĕpŭlis cāreat sēnectus, *though old age may be without its feasts*. Cic. Quōniam non possent, *since they would not be able*. Caes. Ubi res poscēret, *whenever the case might demand*. Liv.

Here the Subjunctive after *quamquam*, *quōniam*, and *ūbi*, is entirely independent of those conjunctions. In this way many conjunctions which do not require the Subjunctive, admit that mood whenever the thought requires it.

1. USE OF THE POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE.—This Subjunctive, it will be observed, has a wide application, and is used in almost all kinds of sentences and clauses, whether declarative or interrogative, principal or subordinate, whether introduced by conjunctions or relatives.

2. *How rendered*.—The Potential Subjunctive is generally best rendered by our Potential signs—*may, can, must, might, etc.*, or by *shall* or *will*.

3. INCLINATION.—The Subjunctive sometimes denotes inclination :

Ego censcam, *I should think, or I am inclined to think*. Liv.

4. IMPERFECT FOR PLUPERFECT.—In the Potential sense, the Imperfect is often used where we should expect the Pluperfect : *dīcēres*, you would have said ; *crēdēres, pŭtāres*, you would have thought ; *vidēres, cernēres*, you would have seen :

Moesti, *crēdēres* victos, rēdeunt in castra, *Sad, vanquished you would have thought them, they returned to the camp*. Liv.

5. SUBJUNCTIVE OF REPEATED ACTION.—Subordinate clauses in narration sometimes take the Subjunctive to denote that the action is *often* or *indefinitely repeated*. Thus with *ūbi*, whenever, *quōties*, as often as, *quicunque*, whoever, *ut quisque*, as each one, and the like :

Id fētiālis ūbi dixisset, hastam mittēbat, *The fetial priest was wont to hurl a spear whenever* (i. e., every time) *he had said this*. Liv.

6. PRESENT AND PERFECT.—In the Potential Subjunctive the Perfect often has nearly the same force as the Present :

Tu Plātōnem laudāvēris, *You would praise Plato*. Cic.

1) The Perfect with the force of the Present occurs also in some of the other uses of the Subjunctive.

7. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.—The Subjunctive in the conclusion of conditional sentences is the Potential Subjunctive, but conditional sentences will be best treated by themselves. See 502.

¹ These are also variously called *Deliberative, Doubting, or Rhetorical Questions*.

II. THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF DESIRE.

RULE XXXIX.—Desire, Command.

487. The Subjunctive of Desire represents the action not as real, but as *desired* :

Văleant cives, *May the citizens be well.* Cic. Amēmus patriam, *Let us love our country.* Cic. Rōbore ūtare, *Use your strength.* Cic. Scribere ne pigrēre, *Do not neglect to write.* Cic.

488. APPLICATION OF THE RULE.—The Subjunctive of Desire is used,

I. To express a WISH, as in *prayers, exhortations, and entreaties*, as in the first and second examples.

II. To express a COMMAND mildly, as in *admonitions, precepts, and warnings*, as in the third and fourth examples.

1. WITH UTINAM.—The Subjunctive of *Desire* is often accompanied by *utinam*, and sometimes—especially in the poets, by *ut, si, o si* :

Utinam cōnāta effīcere possim, *May I be able to accomplish my endeavors.* Cic.

2. FORCE OF TENSES.—The Present and Perfect imply that the wish may be fulfilled ; the Imperfect and Pluperfect, that it cannot be fulfilled :

Sint beāti, *May they be happy.* Cic. Ne transiēris Ibērum, *Do not cross the Ebro.* Liv. Utinam possem, ūtinam pōtuissem, *Would that I were able, would that I had been able.* Cic. See also 486. 6. 1).

The Imperfect and Pluperfect may often be best rendered, *should have been, ought to have been* :

Hec dicēret, *He should have said this.* Cic. Mortem oppētiisses, *You should have met death.* Cic.

3. NEGATIVE NE.—With this Subjunctive the negative is *ne*, rarely *non* :
Ne audeant, *Let them not dare.* Cic. Non recēdāmus, *Let us not recede.* Cic.

4. IN ASSEVERATIONS.—The first person of the subjunctive is often found in earnest or solemn affirmations or asseverations :

Mōriar, si pūto, *May I die, if I think.* Cic. Ne sim salvus, si scribo, *May I not be safe, if I write.* Cic.

So with *ita* and *sic* : Sollicitat, ita vīvam, *As I live, it troubles me.* Cic.

Here *ita vivam* means literally, *may I so live*, i. e., may I live only in case this is true.

5. IN RELATIVE CLAUSES.—The Subjunctive of desire is sometimes used in relative clauses :

Quod faustum sit, rēgem creāte, *Elect a king, and may it be an auspicious event* (may which be auspicious). Liv. Sēnectus, ad quam ūtinam pervēniātis, *old age, to which may you attain.* Cic.

III. SUBJUNCTIVE OF PURPOSE OR RESULT.

RULE XL.—Purpose or Result.

489. The Subjunctive of Purpose or Result is used,

I. With *ut*, *ne*, *quo*, *quin*, *quōmīnus* :

PURPOSE.—*Enītūtur ut vincat, He strives that he may conquer.* Cic. *Pūnit ne peccētur, He punishes that crime may not be committed.* Sen.

RESULT.—*Ita vixit ut Athēniensibus esset cārissīmus, He so lived that he was very dear to the Athenians.* Nep.

II. With *qui* = *ut is*, *ut ēgo*, *tu*, etc. :

PURPOSE.—*Missi sunt, qui (ut ii) consūlērēt Apollīnem, They were sent to consult Apollo (who should or that they should).* Nep.

RESULT.—*Non is sum qui (ut ego) his ūtar, I am not such an one as to use these things.* Cic.

1. *Ut* with the Subjunctive sometimes forms with *fācio*, or *āgo*, rarely with *est*, a circumlocution for the Indicative : *fācio ut dicam* = *dīco* ; *fācio ut scribam* = *scribo* : *Invītus fācio ut rēcorder, I unwillingly recall.* Cic.

Conjunctions of Purpose or Result.

490. *UT* AND *NE*.—*Ut* and *ne* are the regular conjunctions in clauses denoting Purpose or Result. *Ut* and *ne* denote Purpose ; *ut* and *ut non*, Result.

1. With connective *ne* becomes *nēve*, *neu*, rarely *nēque*. *Nēve*, *neu*, = *aut ne* or *et ne* : *Lēgem tūlit nēquis accūsārētur nēve multārētur, He proposed a law that no one should be accused or punished.* Nep.

491. PURE PURPOSE.—*Ut* and *ne*—*that, in order that, that not, in order that not, lest*, etc.—are used after verbs of a great variety of significations to express simply the Purpose of the action. A correlative—*īdeo*, *īdeirco*, etc.—may or may not precede :

Lēgum īdeirco servi sūmus, ut libēri esse possīmus, We are servants of the law for this reason, that we may be free. Cic. See also the examples under the Rule.

492. MIXED PURPOSE.—In their less obvious applications, *ut* and *ne* are used to denote a Purpose which partakes more or less of the character of a *Direct Object*, sometimes of a *Subject*, *Predicate* or *Appositive*—Mixed Purpose. Thus with verbs and expressions denoting

1. EFFORT.—striving for a purpose ; attaining a purpose :

nītor, *contendo*, *stūdeo*,—*cūro*, *id āgo*, *ōpēram do*, etc., *fācio*, *efficio*, *impetro*, *consēquor*, etc. :

Contendit, ut vincat, *He strives to conquer*. Cic. Cūrāvi ut bēne vīvērem, *I took care to lead a good life*. Sen. Effēcit ut impērātor mittērētur, *He caused a commander to be sent* (attained his purpose). Nep. But see 495.

2. EXHORTATION, IMPULSE—urging one to effort :

admōneo, mōneo, hortor,—cōgo, impello, mōveo,—ōro, rōgo,—impēro, praecipio, etc. :

Te hortor ut lēgas, *I exhort you to read*. Cic. Mōvēmur ut bōni sīmus, *We are influenced to be good*. Cic. Te rōgo ut eum jūves, *I ask you to aid him*. Cic. See also 551. II. 1 and 2 ; 558. VI.

3. DESIRE AND ITS EXPRESSION : hence *decision, decree*, etc. :

opto, postūlo,—censeo, dēcerno, stātuo, consītuō, etc.—rarely vōlo, nōlo, mālo :

Opto ut id audiātis, *I desire (pray) that you may hear this*. Cic. Sēnātus censuērat, ūti Aeduos dēfendēret, *The senate had decreed that he should defend the Aedui*. Caes. See 551. II. and 558. II. and VI.

4. FEAR, DANGER :

mētuo, tīmeo, vēreor,—pēricūlum est, cūra est, etc. :

Tīmeo, ut sustīneas, *I fear you will not endure them*. Cic. Vēreor ne lābōrem augeam, *I fear that I shall increase the labor*. Cic.

1) By a Difference of Idiom *ut* must here be rendered *that not*, and *ne* by *that* or *lest*. The Latin treats the clause as a wish, a desired purpose.

2) After verbs of fearing *ne non* is sometimes used for *ut*, regularly so after negative clauses: Vēreor ne non possit, *I fear that he will not be able*. Cic.

3) After verbs of fearing, especially *vēreor*, the infinitive is sometimes used: Vēreor laudāre, *I fear (hesitate) to praise*. Cic.

493. PECULIARITIES.—Expressions of Purpose present the following peculiarities :

1. *Ut ne*, rarely *ut non*, is sometimes used for *ne* :

Praedixit, ut ne lēgātos dīmīttērent, *He charged them not to* (that they should not) *release the delegates*. Nep. Ut plūra non dicam, *not to say more*, i. e., that I may not. Cic.

2. *Ut* is sometimes omitted, especially with *vōlo*, *nōlo*, *mālo*, *fācio*, and verbs of directing, urging, etc. *Ne* is often omitted with *cāre* :

Tu vēlim sis, *I desire that you may be*. Cic. Fac hābeas, *see (make) that you have*. Cic. Sēnātus decrēvit, dārent ōpēram consūlos, *The senate decreed that the consuls should see to it*. Sall. See also 535. 1, 2).

3. Clauses with *Ut* and *Ne* may depend upon a noun or upon a verb omitted :

Fēcit pācem his condītiōnībus, ne qui affīcērentur exsīlio, *He made peace on these terms, that none should be punished with exile*. Nep. Ut ita dicam, *so to speak* (that I may speak thus). Cic. This is often inserted in a sentence, like the English *so to speak*.

4. *Nēdum* and *Ne* in the sense of *much less*, *not to say*, are used with the Subjunctive :

Vix in tectis frīgus vitātur, nēdum in mări sit făcile, *The cold is avoided with difficulty in our houses, much less is it easy (to avoid it) on the sea.* Cic.

494. PURE RESULT.—*Ut* and *ut non*—*so that*, *so that not*—are often used with the Subjunctive, to express simply a *Result* or a *Consequence* :

Ita vixit ut Athēniensibus esset cārissīmus, *He so lived that he was very dear to the Athenians.* Nep. *Ita laudo, ut non pertimescam*, *I so praise as not to fear.* Cic.

A correlative—*ita* in these examples—generally precedes: thus, *ita, sic, tam, adeo, tantōpère,—tālis, tantus, ejusmodi.*

495. MIXED RESULT.—In their less obvious applications, *ut* and *ut non* are used with the Subjunctive to denote a *Result* which partakes of the character of a *Direct Object*, *Subject*, *Predicate*, or *Appositive*: Thus

1. Clauses as OBJECT AND RESULT occur with *făcio*, *efficio*, of the action of irrational forces :

Sol efficit ut omnia flōreant, *The sun causes all things to bloom*, i. e., produces that result. Cic. See 492. 1.

2. Clauses as SUBJECT AND RESULT occur with impersonal verbs signifying *it happens*, *remains*, *follows*, *is distant*, etc. :

accidit, contingit, evenit, fit, restat,—sēquitur,—ābest, etc.

Fit ut quisque dēlectētur, *The result is (it happens) that every one is delighted.* Cic. *Sēquitur ut falsum sit*, *It follows that it is false.* Cic.

1) The Subjunctive is sometimes, though rarely, used when the predicate is a Noun or Adjective with the copula *sum* :

Mos est ut nōlint, *It is their custom not to be willing* (that they are unwilling). Cic. *Proximum est, ut dōceam*, *The next point is, that I show.* Cic. See 556. I. 1 and 2.

2) Subjunctive Clauses with *ut*, in the form of questions expressive of surprise, sometimes stand alone, by the omission of some predicate, as *crēdendum est, rērisimile est*, *is it to be credited, is it probable?*

Tu ut unquam te corrīgas, *that you should ever reform?* i. e., *Is it to be supposed that you will ever reform?* Cic.

3) See also 556 with its subdivisions.

3. Clauses as APPOSITIVE AND RESULT, or PREDICATE AND RESULT, occur with Demonstratives and a few Nouns :

Hābet hoc virtus ut dēlectet, *Virtue has this advantage, that it delights.* Cic. *Est hoc vitium, ut invidia glōriac cōmes sit*, *There is this fault, that envy is the companion of glory.* Nep.

496. PECULIARITIES.—Expressions of Result present the following peculiarities :

1. *Ut* is sometimes omitted, regularly so with *oportet*, generally with *opus est* and *necesse est* :

Te *oportet* virtus trāhat, *It is necessary that virtue should attract you.*
Cic. Causam hābeat *necesse est*, *It is necessary that it should have a cause.*
Cic.

2. The Subjunctive occurs with *Quam*—with or without *ut* :

Liberālius quam ut posset, *too freely to be able* (more freely than so as to be able). Nep. Impōnēbat amplius quam ferre possent, *He imposed more than they were able to bear.*

3. *Tantum ābest*.—After *tantum ābest ut*, denoting result, a second *ut* of result sometimes occurs :

Philōsōphia, tantum ābest, ut laudētur ut ētiam vītūpērētur, *So far is it from the truth (so much is wanting), that philosophy is praised that it is even censured.* Cic.

497. QUO.—*Quo*, *by which, that*, is sometimes used for *ut*, especially with comparatives :

Mēdico dāre quo sit stūdiōsior, *to give to the physician, that* (by this means) *he may be more attentive.* Cic.

For *non quo* of Cause, see 520. 3.

498. QUIN.—*Quin* (*quī* and *ne*), *by which not, that not*, is often used to introduce a Purpose or Result after negatives and interrogatives implying a negative. Thus

1. *Quin* is often used in the ordinary sense of *ne* and *ut non* :

Rētīnēri non pōtērant, quin tēla conjicērent, *They could not be restrained from hurling* (that they might not) *their weapons.* Caes. Nihil est tam diffīcile quin (*ut non*) investigāri possit, *Nothing is so difficult that it may not be investigated.* Ter.

After verbs of *hindering, opposing*, and the like, *quin* has the force of *ne*.

2. *Quin* is often used after *Nemo, Nullus, Nihil, Quis?*

Adest nēmo, quin vīdeat, *There is no one present who does not see.* Cic.
Quis est quin cernat, *Who is there who does not perceive?* Cic.

Is or *id* is sometimes expressed after *quin* :

Nihil est quin id intēreat, *There is nothing which does not perish.* Cic.

3. *Quin* is often used in the sense of *that, but that, without* with a participial noun, especially after negative expressions, implying *doubt, uncertainty, omission*, and the like :

Non est dūbium quin bēnēficiū sit, *There is no doubt that it is a benefit.* Sen., Nullum intērmīsi diem quin ālīquid dārem, *I allowed no day to*

pass, without giving something. Cic. *Făcĕre non possum quin littĕras mit-tam, I cannot but send a letter.* Cic.

1) Such expressions are: non dŭbito, non dŭbium est—non multum ŭbest, pau-lum ŭbest, nihil ŭbest, quid ŭbest?—non, vix, aegre abstinco; mihi non tempĕro; non, nihil praetermitto—făcĕre non possum, făci non pĕtest.

2) The Infinitive, for *Quin* with the Subjunctive, occurs with verbs of doubting: Quis dŭbitat pătĕre Eurĕpam, *Who doubts that Europe is exposed?* Curt.

3) *Non Quin* of Cause. See 520. 3.

4) *Quin* is used in questions in the sense of *why not?* and with the Imperative in the sense of *well, but*: Quin ŭgite, *but come.* Virg. It occasionally means *nay, even, rather.*

499. QUOMINUS.—Quŏmĭnus (quo and mĭnus), *that thus the less, that not*, is sometimes used for *ne* and *ut non*, after verbs of hindering, opposing, and the like:

Non dĕterret săpientem mors quŏmĭnus reipublicae consŭlat, *Death does not deter a wise man from deliberating for the republic.* Cic. Non rĕcŭsavit, quomĭnus poenam sŭbĭret, *He did not refuse to submit to punishment.* Nep. Per eum stĕtit quŏmĭnus dĭmĭcărĕtur, *It was owing to him (stood through him), that the engagement was not made.* Caes.

1. Expressions of *hindering*, etc., are: dĕterreo, impĕdio, prŕhibeo,—obsto, obisto, officio,—rĕcŭso, per me stat, etc.

2. Verbs of *hindering* admit a variety of constructions: the Infinitive, the Subjunctive with *ut*, *ne*, *quo*, *quin*, or *quŏmĭnus*.

Relative of Purpose or Result.

500. A Relative Clause denoting a Purpose or a Result is equivalent to a clause with *ut*, denoting purpose or result, and takes the Subjunctive for the same reason. The relative is then equivalent to *ut* with a pronoun: *qui* = *ut ĕgo*, *ut tu*, *ut is*, etc.:

PURPOSE.—Missi sunt qui (ut ii) consŭlĕrent Apollĭnem, *They were sent to consult Apollo (who should, or that they should).* Nep. Missi sunt dĕlecti qui Thermŏpŭlas occŭpărent, *Picked men were sent to take possession of Thermopylae.* Nep.

RESULT.—Non is sum qui (= *ut ĕgo*) his ŭtar, *I am not such a one as to use these things.* Cic. Innŏcentia est affectio tălis ŭnĭmi, quae (= *ut ca*) nŏc-cat nĕmĭni, *Innocence is such a state of mind as injures no one, or as to in-jure no one.* Cic.

1. RELATIVE PARTICLES.—The subjunctive is used in the same way in clauses introduced by *relative particles*: ŭbi, unde, etc.:

Dŏmum ŭbi hăbităret, lĕgĭt, *He selected a house that he might dwell in it (where he might dwell).* Cic.

2. PURPOSE AND RESULT.—Relative clauses denoting purpose are readily recognized; those denoting result are used, in their more obvious applications, after such words as *tam*, so; *tālis*, is, *ejusmodi*, such, as in the above examples; but see also 501.

3. INDICATIVE AFTER TALIS, ETC.—In a relative clause after *tālis*, is, etc., the Indicative is sometimes used to give prominence to the fact:

Mihi causa tālis oblata est, in qua oratio deesse nemini potest, Such a cause has been offered me, (one) in which no one can fail of an oration. Cic.

501. Relative clauses of Result, in their less obvious applications, include,

I. Relative clauses after *Indefinite* and *General antecedents*. Here *tam*, *tālis*, or some such word, may often be supplied:

Nunc dicis aliquid (ejusmodi, or tale) quod ad rem pertineat, Now you state something which belongs to the subject (i. e., something of such a character as to belong, etc.). Cic. *Sunt qui putent, there are some who think.* Cic. *Nemo est qui non cupiat, there is no one who does not desire, i. e., such as not to desire.* Cic.

1. In the same way *quod*, or a relative particle, *ubi*, *unde*, *quo*, *cur*, etc., with the *Subjunctive*, is used after *est*, there is reason, *non est*, *nil est*, there is no reason, *quid est*, what reason is there? *non habeo*, *nil habeo*, I have no reason:

Est quod gaudeas, There is reason why you should rejoice, or so that you may. Plaut. *Non est quod credas, There is no reason why you should believe.* Sen. *Nihil habeo, quod incusem senectutem, I have no reason why I should accuse old age.* Cic.

2. INDICATIVE AFTER INDEFINITE ANTECEDENT.—A Relative clause after an indefinite antecedent also takes the Indicative, when the fact itself is to be made prominent:

Sunt qui non audent dicere, There are some who (actually) do not dare to speak. Cic. *Multa sunt, quae dici possunt, There are many things which may be said.* Cic. So also clauses with Rel. particles. See I above.

In poetry and late prose the Indicative often follows *sunt qui*:

Sunt quos juvat, there are some whom it delights. Hor.

3. RESTRICTIVE CLAUSES with *quod*, as *quod sciam*, as far as I know; *quod meminērim*, as far as I remember, etc., take the subjunctive.

II. Relative clauses after *Unus*, *Solus*, and the like, take the subjunctive:

Sapientia est una, quae moestitiam pellat, Wisdom is the only thing which dispels sadness (such as to dispel). Cic. *Soli centum erant qui creari possent, There were only one hundred who could be appointed (such that they could be).* Liv.

III. Relative clauses after *Dignus*, *Indignus*, *Idoneus*, and *Apertus* take the subjunctive:

Fabulae dignae sunt, quae legantur, The fables are worthy to be read (that they should be read). Cic. *Rufum Caesar idoneum iudicaverat quem mitteret, Caesar had judged Rufus a suitable person to send (whom he might send).* Caes.

IV. Relative clauses after Comparatives with *Quam* take the subjunctive :

Damna majōra sunt quam quae (= ut ea) aestīmāri possint, The losses are too great to be estimated (greater than so that they can be). Liv.

IV. SUBJUNCTIVE OF CONDITION.

502. Every conditional sentence consists of two distinct parts, expressed or understood,—the *Condition* and the *Conclusion* :

Si nēgem, mentiar, If I should deny it, I should speak falsely. Cic.
Here *si nēgem* is the condition, and *mentiar*, the conclusion.

RULE XLI.—Subjunctive of Condition.

503. The Subjunctive of Condition is used,

I. With **dum, mōdo, dummōdo** :

Mānent ingēnia, mōdo permāneat industria, Mental powers remain, if only industry remains. Cic.

II. With **ac si, ut si, quāsi, quam si, tanquam, tanquam si, vĕlut, vĕlut si** :

Crūdēlītātem, vĕlut si ādesset, horrēbant, They shuddered at his cruelty, as if he were present. Caes.

III. Sometimes with **si, nīsi, ni, sin, qui = si is, si quis** :

Dies dēficiat, si vĕlim nūmērāre, The day would fail me, if I should wish to recount. Cic. *Imprōbe fēcēris, nīsi mōnuēris, You would do wrong, if you should not give warning.* Cic. *Si vōluisset, dīmīcasset, If he had wished, he would have fought.* Nep.

1. **SI OMITTED.**—Two clauses without any conjunction sometimes have the force of a conditional sentence :

Nēgat quis, nēgo, Does any one deny, I deny. Ter. *Rōges me, nihil respondeam, Should you ask me, I should make no reply.* Cic. See also *Imperative*, 535. 2.

2. **CONDITION SUPPLIED.**—The condition may be supplied,

1) By *Participles* : *Non pōtestis, vōluptāte omnia dīrīgētes (si dīrīgētis), rētīnēre virtūtem, You cannot retain your manhood, if you arrange all things with reference to pleasure.* Cic.

2) By *Oblique Cases* : *Nēmo sīne spe (nīsi spem hābēret) se offerret ad mortem, No one without a hope (if he had not a hope) would expose himself to death.* Cic.

3. IRONY.—The condition is sometimes ironical, especially with *nisi* *vĕro*, *nisi forte* with the Indicative, and with *quāsi*, *quāsi vĕro* with the Present or Perfect Subjunctive:

Nisi forte insāuit, unless perhaps he is insane. Cic. *Quāsi vĕro nĕcesse sit*, as if indeed it were necessary. Caes.

4. ITA—SI, ETC.—*Ita—si*, so—if, means *only—if*. *Si quĭdem*, if indeed, sometimes has nearly the force of *since*.

5. ET OMITTED.—See 587. I. 6.

504. FORCE OF TENSES.—In conditional sentences the Present and Perfect tenses represent the supposition as not at all improbable, the Imperfect and Pluperfect represent it as contrary to the fact. See examples above. See also 476 to 478.

1. PRESENT FOR IMPERFECT.—The Present Subjunctive is sometimes used for the Imperfect, when a condition, in itself contrary to reality, is still conceived of as possible:

Tu si hic sis, ālĭter sentias, If you were the one (or, should be), you would think differently. Ter.

2. IMPERFECT FOR PLUPERFECT.—The Imperfect Subjunctive is sometimes used for the Pluperfect, with the nice distinction that it contemplates the supposed action as *going on*, not as completed:

Num Opimĭum, si tum esses, tĕmĕrārium civem pŭtāres? Would you think Opimĭus an audacious citizen, if you were living at that time (Pluperf. would you have thought—if you had lived)? Cic.

505. DUM, MŌDO, DUMMŌDO.—Dum, mŏdo, and dummŏdo, in conditions, have the force of—if only, provided that, or with ne, if only not, provided that not:

Dum res māneant, verba fingant, Let them make words, if only the facts remain. Cic. *Mŏdo permāueat industria*, if only industry remains. Cic. *Dummŏdo rĕpellat pĕricŭlum*, provided he may avert danger. Cic. *Mŏdo ne laudārent*, if only they did not praise. Cic.

When not used in conditions, these conjunctions often admit the indicative:

Dum lĕges vīgĕbant, while the laws were in force. Cic.

506. AC SI, UT SI, QUĀSI, ETC.—Ac si, ut si, quam si, quāsi, tanquam, tanquam si, vĕlut, vĕlut si, involve an ellipsis of the real conclusion:

Misĕrior es, quam si ōcŭlos non hābĕres, You are more unhappy than (esses, you would be) if you had not eyes. Cic. *Crŭdĕlĭtātem, vĕlut si adēsset, horrĕbant*, They shuddered at his cruelty as (they would) if he were present. Caes. *Ut si in suam rem āliĕna convertant*, as if they should appropriate others' possessions to their own use. Cic. *Tanquam audiant*, as if they may hear. Sen.

Ceu and *Sicŭti* are sometimes used in the same way:

Ceu bella fōrent, as if there were wars. Virg. *Sicŭti audiri possent*, as if they could be heard. Sall.

507. *SI, NISI, NI, SIN, QUI.*—The Latin distinguishes three distinct forms of the conditional sentence with *si, nisi, ni, sin*:

- I. Indicative in both Clauses.
- II. Subjunctive, Present or Perfect, in both Clauses.
- III. Subjunctive, Imperfect or Pluperfect, in both Clauses.

508. **First Form.**—*Indicative in both Clauses.*—This form assumes the supposed case as *real*, basing upon it any statement which would be admissible, if it were a known fact:

Si haec civitas est, civis sum čgo, *If this is a state, I am a citizen.* Cic. *Si non licēbat, non necesse erat,* *If it was not lawful, it was not necessary.* Cic. *Dolōrem si non pōtēro frangēre, occultābo,* *If I shall not be able to overcome sorrow, I will conceal it.* Cic. *Parvi sunt fōris arma, nisi est consilium dōmi,* *Arms are of little value abroad, unless there is wisdom at home.* Cic.

1. **CONDITION.**—The condition is introduced, when affirmative, by *si*, with or without other particles, as *quidem, modo*, etc., and when negative, by *si non, nisi, ni*. The time may be either *present, past, or future*. See examples above.

2. **CONCLUSION.**—The conclusion may take the form of a command:
Si peccāvi, ignosce, *If I have erred, pardon me.* Cic.

3. **SI NON, NISI.**—*Si non* and *nisi* are often used without any perceptible difference of meaning; but strictly *si non* introduces the negative condition on which the conclusion depends, while *nisi* introduces a qualification or an exception. Thus in the second example above the meaning is, *If it was not lawful*, it follows that *it was not necessary*, while in the fourth the meaning is, *Arms are of little value abroad, except when there is wisdom at home.*

509. **Second Form.**—*Subjunctive Present or Perfect in both Clauses.*—This form assumes the condition as *possible*:

Haec si tēcum patria lōquātur, nonne impetrāre dēbeat, *If your country should speak thus with you, ought she not to obtain her request?* Cic. *Improbe feceris, nisi mōnuēris,* *You would do wrong, if you should not give warning.* Cic. See also examples under the Rule, 503; also 486. 7.

When dependent upon a Historical tense, the Present and Perfect are of course generally changed to the Imperfect and Pluperfect, by the law for Sequence of tenses (480).

Mētuit ne, si irēt, retrāhērētur, *He feared lest if he should go, he might be brought back.* Liv.

510. Third Form.—*Subjunctive Imperfect or Pluperfect in both Clauses.*—This form assumes the supposed case as *contrary to the reality*, and simply states what would have been the result, if the condition had been fulfilled:

Săpientia non expătērētur, si nihil effīcēret, *Wisdom would not be sought* (as it is), *if it accomplished nothing*. Cic. Si optīma tēnere possēmus, haud sâne consīlio ėgērēmus, *If we were able to secure the highest good, we should not indeed need counsel*. Cic. Si vōluisse, dīmīcasset, *If he had wished, he would have fought*. Nep. Nunquam ābisset, nīsi sibi viam mūnīvisset, *He would never have gone, if he had not prepared for himself a way*. Cic. See also 486. 7.

1. Here the *Imperfect* relates to Present time, as in the first and second examples: the *Pluperfect* to Past time, as in the third and fourth examples.

2. In the Periphrastic forms in *rus* and *dus* and in expressions of *Duty*, *Necessity*, and *Ability*, the *Perfect* and *Imperfect Indicative* sometimes occur in the conclusion.

Quid fūtūrum fuit, si plebs āgītāri coepta esset, *What would have been the result, if the plebeians had begun to be agitated!*? Liv. See also 512. 2.

1) When the context, irrespective of the condition, requires the Subjunctive, the tense remains unchanged without reference to the tense of the principal verb:

Adeo est inōpia coactus ut, nīsi timuisset, Galliam rēpētītūrus fuērīt, *He was so pressed by want that if he had not feared, he would have returned to Gaul*. Liv.

Here *rēpētītūrus fuērīt* is in the Subj. not because it is in a conditional sentence, but because it is the Subj. of Result with *ut*; but it is in the Perfect, because, if it were not dependent, the Perfect Indicative would have been used.

511. MIXED FORMS.—The Latin sometimes unites a condition belonging to one of the three regular forms with a conclusion belonging to another, thus producing certain Mixed Forms.

I. The Indicative sometimes occurs in the Condition with the Subjunctive in the Conclusion, but here the Subjunctive is generally dependent not upon the condition, but upon the very nature of the thought:

Pēream, si pōtērunt, *May I perish* (subj. of desire, 487), *if they shall be able*. Cic. Quid timeam, si beātus fūtūrus sum, *Why should I fear* (486. II.), *if I am to be happy?* Cic.

II. The Subjunctive sometimes occurs in the Condition with the Indicative in the Conclusion. Here the Indicative often gives the effect of reality to the conclusion, even though in fact dependent upon contingencies; but see also 512:

Dies dēficiet, si vēlim causam dēfendēre, *The day would (will) fail me, if I should wish to defend the cause*. Cic. Vicērāmus nīsi rēcēpisset Antōnium, *We had conquered, had he not received Antony*. Cic.

1. The *Future Indicative* is often thus used in consequence of its near relationship in force to the Subjunctive, as whatever is Future is more or less contingent. See first example.

2. The *Historical tenses*, especially the *Pluperfect*, are sometimes used, for *effect*, to represent as an actual fact something which is shown by the context never to have become fully so, as in the last example.

3. Conditional sentences made up partly of the *second form* (509) and partly of the *third* are rare.

512. SUBJUNCTIVE AND INDICATIVE.—The combination of the Subjunctive in the Condition with the Indicative in the Conclusion is often only apparent. Thus

1. When the truth of the conclusion is not in reality affected by the condition, as when *si* has the force of *even if*, *although* :

Si hoc placeat, tamen vöunt, Even if (although) this pleases them, they still wish. Cic.

2. When that which stands as the conclusion is such only in appearance, the real conclusion being understood. This occurs

1) With the Indicative of *Dēbeo*, *Possum*, and the like :

Quem, si ulla in te pietas esset, cölere dēbēbas, Whom you ought to have honored (and would have honored), if there were any filial affection in you. Cic. *Dēleri exercitus pötuit, si persēcūti victōres essent, The army might have been destroyed (and would have been), if the victors had pursued.* Liv.

2) With the Imperfect and Perfect Indicative of other verbs, especially if in a periphrastic conjugation or accompanied by *Paene* or *Pröpe* :

Rēlictūri agros ērant, nisi littēras mīsisset, They were about to leave their lands (and would have done so), had he not sent a letter. Cic. *Pons itē paene hostībns dēdit, nī unus vir fuisset, The bridge almost furnished a passage to the enemy (and would have done so), had there not been one man.* Liv.

513. RELATIVE INVOLVING CONDITION.—The relative takes the subjunctive when it is equivalent to *si* or *cum* with the subjunctive :

Errat longe, qui crēdat, etc., He greatly errs who supposes, etc., i. e., if or provided any one supposes, he greatly errs. Ter. *Haec qui videat, cögātur, If any one should see these things, he would be compelled.* Cic.

V. SUBJUNCTIVE IN CONCESSIONS.

514. A concessive clause is one which concedes or admits something, generally introduced in English by *though* or *although* :

Quamquam intelligunt, though they understand. Cic.

RULE XLII.—Subjunctive of Concession.

515. The Subjunctive of Concession is used,

I. With *licet*, *quamvis*, *quantumvis*,—*ut*, *ne*, *quum*, although :

Licet irrīdeat, plus tāmēn rătio vălēbit, *Though he may deride, reason will yet avail more.* Cic. *Ut* dēsint vīres, tāmēn est laudanda vōluntas, *Though the strength fails, still the will should be approved.* Ovid.

II. With *qui* = *quum* (*licet*) *is*, *quum* *ēgo*, etc., though he :

Absolvīte Verrem, *qui* (*quum is*) se fătēātur pĕcūnias cēpisse, *Aquit Verres, though he confesses (who may confess) that he has accepted money.* Cic.

III. Generally with *etsi*, *tāmetsi*, *ētiamsi* :

Quod sentiunt, *etsi* optīmum sit, tāmēn non audent dicĕre, *They do not dare to state what they think, even if (though) it be most excellent.* Cic.

516. Concessive Clauses may be divided into three classes :

I. Concessive Clauses with *quamquam* in the best prose generally take the Indicative :

Quamquam intelligunt, tāmēn nunquam dicunt, *Though they understand, they never speak.* Cic.

1. The *Subjunctive* may of course follow *quamquam*, whenever the thought itself, irrespective of the concessive character of the clause, requires that mood (485).

2. The *Subjunctive*, even in the best prose, sometimes occurs with *quamquam* where we should expect the Indicative: *Quamquam* ne id quīdem suspiciōnem hābuerit, *Though not even that gave rise to any suspicion.* Cic.

3. In poetry and some of the later prose, the subjunctive with *quamquam* is not uncommon. In Tacitus it is the prevailing construction.

4. *Quamquam* and *etsi* sometimes have the force of *yet*, *but yet*, and *yet* : *Quamquam* quid lōquor, *And yet what do I say?* Cic.

II. Concessive Clauses with *licet*, *quamvis*, *quantumvis*,—*ut*, *ne*, *quum*, although ;—*qui* = *quum* (or *licet*) *is*, *ego*, *tu*, etc., take the Subjunctive :

Non tu possis, quantumvis excellas, *You would not be able, however much (although) you excel.* Cic. Ne sit summum mālum dōlor, mālum certe est, *Though pain may not be the greatest evil, it is certainly an evil.* Cic. See 518.

I. *UT* AND *NE*.—This concessive use of *ut* and *ne* may readily be explained by supplying some verb like *fac* or *sine* : thus, *ut* dēsint vīres (515. I.) = *fac* or *sine ut dēsint vīres*, make or grant that strength fails. See 489.

The *Concessive Particle* is sometimes omitted :

Sed hābeat, tāmēn, *But grant that it has it, yet.* Cic.

UT—*SIC* OR *ITA*, *as—so, though—yet*, does not require the subjunctive.

2. **QUAMVIS AND QUANTUMVIS.**—These are strictly adverbs, in the sense of *however much*, but they generally give to the clause the force of a concession. When used with their simple adverbial force to qualify adjectives, they do not affect the mood of the clause: *quamvis multi*, however many.

3. **MOOD WITH QUAMVIS.**—In Cicero and the best prose, *quamvis* takes the Subjunctive almost without exception, generally also in Livy and Nepos; but in the poets and later prose writers it often admits the Indicative:

Erat dignitāte rēgia, *quamvis cārēbat nōmine*, *He was of royal dignity, though he was without the name.* Nep.

4. **RELATIVE IN CONCESSIONS.**—The relative denoting concession is equivalent to *licet*, or *quum*, in the sense of *though*, with a Demonstrative or Personal pronoun, and takes the Subjunctive for the same reason: *qui* = *licet* (*quum*) *is*, *licet* *ēgo*, *tu*, etc. See examples under the Rule, 515.

III. Concessive Clauses with the compounds of *si*: *etsi*, *etiamsi*, *tāmet si* in the use of Moods and Tenses conform to the rule for conditional clauses with *si*:

Etsi nihil hābeat in se glōria, tāmen virtūtem sēquitur, *Though glory may not possess anything in itself, yet it follows virtue.* Cic. Etiamsi mors oppētenda esset, *even if death ought to be met.* Cic.

VI. SUBJUNCTIVE OF CAUSE AND TIME.

RULE XLIII.—Subjunctive of Cause.

517. The Subjunctive of Cause or Reason is used,

I. With **quum** (*cum*), since; **qui** = **quum is**, etc.:

Quum vīta mētus plēna sit, *since life is full of fear.* Cic. Quae quum ita sint, *perge, Since these things are so, proceed.* Cic. O vis vērītātis, quae (*quum ea*) se dēfendat, *O the force of truth, since it defends itself.* Cic.

II. With **quod**, **quia**, **quōniam**, **quando**, to introduce a reason on another's authority:

Socrātes accūsātus est, quod corrupēret jūventūtem, *Socrates was accused, because (on the alleged ground that) he corrupted the youth.* Quint.

Causal Clauses with Quum and Qui.

518. **QUUM.**—*Quum* takes the Subjunctive when it denotes,

I. **CAUSE OR CONCESSION:**

Quum sint in nōbis rātio, prūdētia, *since there is in us reason and prudence.* Cic. Phōcion fuit pauper, quum dīvītissimus esse posset, *Phocion was poor, though he might have been very rich.* Nep. See also 515.

II. TIME with the accessory notion of CAUSE or CONCESSION :

Quum dīmīcāret, occīsus est, *When he engaged battle, he was slain.* Nep. Zēnōnem, quum Athēnis essem, audiēbam frēquenter, *I often heard Zeno, when I was at Athens.* Cic.

1. QUUM IN NARRATION.—*Quum* with the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive is very frequent in narration even in temporal clauses. See examples under II. above.

This use of *Quum* with the Subjunctive may in most instances be readily explained by the fact that it involves *Cause* as well as *Time*. Thus *quum dīmīcāret*, in the first example, not only states the *time* of the action—*occīsus est*, but also its *cause* or *occasion*: the engagement was the *occasion* of his death. So with *quum essem*, as presence in Athens was an indispensable condition of hearing Zeno. But in some instances the notion of *Cause* or *Concession* is not at all apparent.

2. QUUM WITH TEMPUS, ETC.—*Quum* with the Subjunctive is sometimes used to characterize a period :

Id saccūlum quum plēna Graecia poētārum esset, *that age when* (such that) *Greece was full of poets.* Cic. Erit tempus, quum dēsīdēres, *the time will come, when you will desire.* Cic. So without *tempus*, etc. : Fuit quum arbitrārer, *there was* (a time) *when I thought.* Cic.

3. QUUM WITH INDICATIVE.—*Quum* denoting time merely, with perhaps a few exceptions in narration, takes the Indicative :

Quum quiescunt, prōbant, *While they are quiet, they approve.* Cic. Pārui, quum nēcesse ērat, *He obeyed when it was necessary.* Cic.

519. QUI, CAUSE OR REASON.—A Relative clause denoting cause or reason, is equivalent to a Causal clause with *Quum*, and takes the Subjunctive for the same reason :

O fortunāte adōlescens, qui (*quum tu*) tuae virtūtis Hōmērum praeccōnem invēnēris, *O fortunate youth, since you* (lit. who) *have obtained Homer as the herald of your valor.* Cic.

1. EQUIVALENTS.—In such clauses, *qui* is equivalent to *quum ego*, *quum tu*, *quum is*, etc.

2. INDICATIVE.—When the statement is to be viewed as a *fact* rather than as a *reason*, the Indicative is used :

Ilābco sēnectūti grātiam, quae mihi sermōnis āvīdītātem auxit, *I cherish gratitude to old age, which has increased my love of conversation.* Cic.

3. QUI WITH CONJUNCTIONS.—When a conjunction accompanies the relative, the mood varies with the conjunction. Thus,

1) The Subjunctive is generally used with *quum*, *quippe*, *ut*, *utpōte* :

Quae quum ita sint, *since these things are so.* Cic. Quippe qui blandiātur, *since he flatters.* Cic. Ut qui cōlōni essent, *since they were colonists.* Cic.

But the Indicative is sometimes used to give prominence to the *fact*.

2) The Indicative is generally used with *quia*, *quōniam* :

Quae quia certa esse non possunt, *since these things cannot be sure.* Cic. Qui quōniam intelligi nōluit, *since he did not wish to be understood.* Cic.

Causal Clauses with Quod, Quia, Quoniam, Quando.

520. *Quod, quia, quoniam, and quando* generally take,

I. The INDICATIVE to assign a reason *positively on one's own authority*:

Quoniam supplicatio decreta est, *since a thanksgiving has been decreed.*
Cic. Gaude quod spectant te, *Rejoice that (because) they behold you.* Hor.

II. The SUBJUNCTIVE to assign a reason *doubtfully, or on another's authority*:

Aristides nonne expulsus est patria, quod justus esset, *Was not Aristides banished because (on the alleged ground that) he was just?* Cic.

1. QUOD WITH DICO, ETC.—*Dico* and *puto* are often in the Subjunctive instead of the verb depending upon them:

Quod se bellum gesturos dicerent = quod bellum gesturi essent, ut dicebant, *because they were about, as they said, to wage war.* Caes.

2. CLAUSES WITH QUOD UNCONNECTED. See 554. IV.

3. NON QUO, ETC.—*Non quo, non quod, non quin*, rarely *non quia*, also *quam quod*, etc., are used with the Subjunctive to denote that something was *not* the true reason:

Non quo habberem quod scriberem, *not because (that) I had anything to write.* Cic. Non quod doleant, *not because they are pained.* Cic. Quia nequiverat quam quod ignoraret, *because he had been unable, rather than because he did not know.* Liv.

4. POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE. See 485 and 486.

RULE XLIV.—Time with Cause.

521. The Subjunctive of Time with the accessory notion of Cause or Purpose is used,

I. With *dum, donec, quoad*, until:

Exspectas dum dicat, *You are waiting till he speaks*, i. e., that he may speak. Cic. Ea continebis quoad te videam, *You will keep them till I see you.* Cic.

II. With *antequam, priusquam*, before, before that:

Antequam de re publica dicam, exponam consilium, *I will set forth my plan before I (can) speak of the republic*, i. e., preparatory to speaking of the republic. Cic. Priusquam incipias, *before you begin.* Sall.

1. EXPLANATION.—Here the temporal clause involves *purpose* as well as *time*: *dum dicat* is nearly equivalent to *ut dicat*, which is also often used after *expecto*. *Antequam dicam* is nearly equivalent to *ut postea dicam*: *I will set forth my views, that I may afterwards speak of the republic.*

2. WITH OTHER CONJUNCTIONS.—The Subjunctive may of course be used in any temporal clause, when the thought, irrespective of the temporal particle, requires that mood; see 486. III.

Ubi res poscēret, *whenever the case might require.* Liv.

522. DUM, DONEC, and QUOAD take

I. The *Indicative*,—(1) in the sense of *while, as long as*, and (2) in the sense of *until*, if the action is viewed as an *actual fact*:

Dum lēges vīgēbant, *as long as the laws were in force.* Cic. Quoad rēnuntiātum est, *until it was (actually) announced.* Nep.

II. The *Subjunctive*, when the action is viewed not so much as a fact as something *desired or proposed*:

Diffērant, dum dēfervescat ira, *Let them defer it, till their anger cools*, i. e., that it may cool. Cic. See also examples under the rule.

1. DONEC, IN TACITUS, generally takes the Subjunctive:

Rhēnus servat viōlentiam cursus, dōnec Occāno misceātur, *The Rhine preserves the rapidity of its current, till it mingles with the ocean.* Tac.

2. DONEC, IN LIVY, occurs with the Subjunctive even in the sense of *while*, but with the accessory notion of *cause*:

Nihil trēpidābant dōnec ponte āgērentur, *They did not fear at all while (and because) they were driven on the bridge.* Liv.

523. ANTEQUAM and PRIUSQUAM generally take,

I. The *Indicative*, when they denote mere priority of time:

Priusquam lūcet, adsunt, *They are present before it is light.* Cic. Antēquam in Siciliā vēni, *before I came into Sicily.* Cic.

II. The *Subjunctive*, when they denote a dependence of one event upon another. Thus,

1. In any *Tēñse*, when the accessory notion of *purpose or cause* is involved:

Priusquam incīpias, consulto ōpus est, *Before you begin there is need of deliberation*, i. e., as preparatory to your beginning. Sall. Tempestas minātur, antēquam surgat, *The tempest threatens, before it rises*, i. e., the threatening of the tempest naturally precedes its rising. Sen.

2. In the *Imperfect* and *Pluperfect*, as the regular construction in *narration*, because the one event is generally treated as the occasion or natural antecedent of the other. See also 471. 4.

Antēquam urbem cāpērent, *before they took the city.* Liv. Priusquam de meo adventu audīre pōtuisent, in Mācēdōniam perrexi, *Before they were able to hear of my approach, I went into Macedonia.* Cic.

3. *Pridie quam* takes the same moods as *Priusquam*.

1) INDICATIVE OR SUBJUNCTIVE.—With *antēquam* and *priusquam*, the Indicative and Subjunctive are sometimes used without any apparent difference of meaning, but the Subjunctive probably denotes a closer connection between the two events:

Ante de incommōdis dico, pauca dicenda, *Before I (actually) speak of disadvantages, a few things should be mentioned.* Cic. Antēquam de re pūblica dicam, expōnam consilium, *Before I speak of the republic, I will set forth my plan.* Cic.

2) ANTE—QUAM, PRIUS—QUAM.—The two parts of which *antēquam*, *priusquam*, and *postquam* are compounded are often separated, so that *ante*, *prius*, or *post* stands in the principal clause and *quam* in the subordinate clause:

Paucis ante diēbus, quam Syracūsae capērentur, *a few days before Syracuse was taken.* Liv. See *Tmesis*, 704. IV. 3.

VII. SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

524. A clause which involves a question without directly asking it, is called an indirect or dependent question.

RULE XLV.—Indirect Questions.

525. The Subjunctive is used in Indirect Questions:

Quid dies fērat incertum est, *What a day may bring forth is uncertain.* Cic. Quaeritur, cur doctissimi hōmīnes dissentiant, *It is a question, why the most learned men disagree.* Cic. Quaesieras, nonne pūtārem, *you had asked whether I did not think.* Cic. Quālis sit ānīmus, ānīmus nescit, *The soul knows not what the soul is.* Cic.

1. WITH INTERROGATIVES.—*Indirect* or *Dependent* questions, like those not dependent, are introduced by interrogative words: *quid*, *cur*, *nonne*, *quālis*, etc.; rarely by *si*, *sive*, *seu*, whether; *ut*, how. See examples above.

2. SUBSTANTIVE FORCE.—*Indirect* questions are used *substantively*, and generally, though not always, supply the place of subjects or objects of verbs. But an Accusative, referring to the same person or thing as the subject of the question, is sometimes inserted after the leading verb.

Ego illum nescio qui fuērit, *I do not know (him), who he was.* Ter.

3. DIRECT AND INDIRECT.—An *indirect* question may be readily changed to a *direct* or *independent* question.

Thus the direct question involved in the first example is: *Quid dies fēret*, What will a day bring forth? So in the second: *Cur doctissimi hōmīnes dissentiunt*, Why do the most learned men disagree?

4. SUBJUNCTIVE OMITTED.—After *nescio quis*, I know not who = *quīdam*, some one; *nescio quōmodo*, I know not how, etc., as also after *mīrum quantum*, it is wonderful how much = wonderfully much, very much, there is an ellipsis of the Subjunctive:

Nescio quid ānīmus praesāgit, *The mind forebodes, I know not what (it forebodes, praesāgiat, understood).* Ter. Id mīrum quantum prōfuit, *This profited, it is wonderful how much, i. e., it wonderfully profited.* Liv.

5. INDIRECT QUESTIONS DISTINGUISHED.—Indirect Questions must be carefully distinguished from certain similar forms. Thus,

1) *From Relative Clauses*.—Clauses introduced by Relative Pronouns or Relative Adverbs always have an antecedent or correlative expressed or understood, and are never, as a whole, the subject or object of a verb, while Indirect Questions are generally so used :

Dicam quod sentio (*rel. clause*). *I will tell that which (id quod) I think.*
 Cic. Dicam quid intelligam (*indirect question*), *I will tell what I know.*
 Cic. Quaeramus ubi mālēficiū est, *Let us seek there (ibi) where the crime is.* Cic.

In the first and third examples, *quod sentio* and *ubi—est* are not questions, but relative clauses; *id* is understood as the antecedent of *quod*, and *ibi* as the antecedent or correlative of *ubi*; but in the second example, *quid intelligam* is an indirect question and the object of *dicam*: *I will tell (what?) what I know*, i. e., will answer that question.

2) *From Direct Questions and Exclamations*:

Quid āgendum est? Nescio, *What is to be done? I know not.* Cic.
 Vide! quam conversa res est, *See! how changed is the case.* Cic.

6. INDICATIVE IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS.—The Indicative in Indirect Questions is sometimes used in the poets; especially in *Plautus* and *Terence*:

Si mēmōrāre vēlim, quam fidēli ānīmō fui, possum, *If I wish to mention how much fidelity I showed, I am able.* Ter.

7. QUESTIONS IN THE ORATIO OBLIQUA. See 530. II. 2.

526. SINGLE AND DOUBLE QUESTIONS.—Indirect questions, like those which are direct (346. II.), may be either single or double.

I. An Indirect Single Question is generally introduced by some interrogative word—either a pronoun, adjective, or adverb, or one of the particles *ne*, *nonne*, *num*. Here *num* does not imply negation:

Rōgāt qui vir esset (481. IV.), *He asked who he was.* Liv. Epāminondas quaesivit, salvusne esset clipeus, *Epaminondas inquired whether his shield was safe.* Cic. Dūbīto num dēbeam, *I doubt whether I ought.* Plin. See also the examples under the Rule, 525.

II. An Indirect Double Question (*whether—or*) admits of two constructions:

1. It generally takes *utrum* or *ne* in the first member, and *an* in the second:

Quaeritur, virtus suamne propter dignitatem, an propter fructus aliquos expetatur, *It is asked whether virtue is sought for its own worth, or for certain advantages.* Cic.

2. But sometimes it omits the particle in the first member, and takes *an* or *ne* in the second. Other forms are rare:

Quaeritur, nātūra an doctrīna possit effici virtus, *It is asked whether virtue can be secured by nature or by education.* Cic. See also 346. 1. 1).

1) In the second member, *neene*, sometimes *an non*, is used in the sense of *or not*:
Sāpientia beātos efficiat neene, quaestio est, Whether or not wisdom makes men happy, is a question. Cic.

2) *An*, in the sense of *whether not*, implying an affirmative, is used after verbs and expressions of doubt and uncertainty: *dūbīto an, nescio an, haud scio an*, I doubt whether not, I know not whether not = I am inclined to think; *dūbium est an, incertum est an*, it is uncertain whether not = it is probable:

Dūbīto an Thrāsýbūlum primum omnium pōnam, I doubt whether I should not place Thrasybulus first of all, i. e., I am inclined to think I should. Nep.

3) *An* sometimes has the force of *aut*, perhaps by the omission of *incertum est*, as used above:

Sīmōnides an quis ālius, Simonides or some other one. Cic.

VIII. SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION.

RULE XLVI.—Attraction.

527. The Subjunctive by Attraction is often used in clauses dependent upon the Subjunctive:

Vēreor, ne, dum mīnuēre vēlim lābōrem, augeam, I fear I shall increase the labor, while I wish to diminish it. Cic. *Tempus est hujusmōdi, ut, ūbi quisque sit, ibi esse mīnime vēlit, The time is of such a character that every one wishes to be least of all where he is.* Cic. *Mos est, ut dicat sententiam, qui vēlit, The custom is that he who wishes expresses his opinion.* Cic.

1. APPLICATION.—This rule is applicable to clauses introduced by conjunctions, adverbs, or relatives. Thus, in the examples, the clauses introduced by *dum*, *ubi*, and *qui*, take the subjunctive, because they are dependent upon clauses which have the subjunctive.

2. INDICATIVE OR SUBJUNCTIVE.—Such clauses generally take,

1) The *Indicative*, when they are in a measure *parenthetical* or give special prominence to the *fact* stated:

Mīlites mīsīt, ut eos qui fūgērāt persēquērentur, He sent soldiers to pursue those who had fled, i. e., the fugitives. Caes. *Tanta vis prōbitātis est, ut eam, vel in iis quos nunquam vīdīmus, dīlīgāmus, Such is the force of integrity that we love it even in those whom we have never seen.* Cic.

The Indicative with *dum* is very common, especially in the poets and historians:
Fuēre qui, dum dūbītāt Scaevinus, hortārentur Pīsōnem, There were those who exhorted Piso, while Scaevinus hesitated. Tac. See also 467. 4.

2) The *Subjunctive*, when the clauses are essential to the general thought of the sentence, as in the examples under the rule.

3. AFTER INFINITIVE CLAUSES.—The principle just stated (2) applies also to the use of Moods in clauses dependent upon the Infinitive. This

often explains the Subjunctive in a condition belonging to an Infinitive, especially with *non possum* :

Nec bñitas esse pōtest, si non per se expētātūr, *Nor can goodness exist (= it is not possible that), if it is not sought for itself.* Cic.

But clauses dependent upon the Infinitive are found most frequently in the *Oratio Obliqua* and are accordingly provided for by 529.

IX. SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE,—

Oratio Obliqua.

528. When a writer or speaker expresses thoughts, whether his own or those of another, in any other form than in the original words of the author, he is said to use the Indirect Discourse—*Oratio Obliqua* :

Plātōnem fērunt in Itāliam vēnisse, *They say that Plato came into Italy.* Cic. Respondeo te dōlōrem ferre mōdērāte, *I reply that you bear the affliction with moderation.* Cic. Utilem arbitror esse scientiam, *I think that knowledge is useful.* Cic.

1. DIRECT AND INDIRECT.—In distinction from the Indirect Discourse—*Oratio Obliqua*, the original words of the author are said to be in the Direct Discourse—*Oratio Recta*. Thus in the first example, *Plātōnem in Itāliam vēnisse* is in the indirect discourse ; in the direct, i. e., in the original words of those who made the statement, it would be : *Plāto in Itāliam vēnit.*

2. QUOTATION.—Words quoted without change belong of course to the Direct Discourse :

Rex “duumvīros” inquit “sēcundum lēgem fācio,” *The king said, “I appoint duumvirs according to law.”* Liv.

RULE XLVII.—Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse.

529. The Subjunctive is generally used in the Interrogative, Imperative, and Subordinate clauses of the *Oratio Obliqua* :

Ad postūlāta Caesāris respondit, cur vēnīret (*direct*: cur vēnis ?), *To the demands of Caesar he replied, why did he come.* Caes. Scribit Lābiēno cum lēgiōne vēniat (*direct*: cum lēgiōne vēni), *He writes to Labienus to come (that he should come) with a legion.* Caes. Ippias glōriātus est, annūlum quem hābēret (*direct*: hābeo) se sua mānu confēcisse, *Hippias boasted that he had made with his own hand the ring which he wore.* Cic.

NOTE.—For convenience of reference the following outline of the use of Moods, Tenses, Pronouns, etc. in the *Oratio Obliqua* is here inserted.

530. MOODS IN PRINCIPAL CLAUSES.—The Principal clauses of the Direct discourse, on becoming Indirect, undergo the following changes of Mood :

I. When *Declarative*, they take the Infinitive (551) :

Dicēbat ānimos esse dīvīnos (direct: *ānīmī sunt divīnī*), *He was wont to say that souls were divine.* Cic. Plātōnem Tārentum vēnisse rēpōrio (Plātō Tārentum vēnit), *I find that Plato came to Tarentum.* Cic. Cāto mīrārī se (mīror) āicēbat, *Cato was wont to say that he wondered.* Cic.

II. When *Interrogative* or *Imperative*, they generally take the Subjunctive according to Rule XLVII.

1. VERB OMITTED.—The verb on which the Infinitive depends is often omitted, or only implied in some preceding verb or expression ; especially after the Subjunctive of Purpose :

Pŷthia praecepit ut Miltiādem impērātōrem sūmērent ; incepta prospēra fūtūra, *Pythia commanded that they should take Miltiades as their commander, (telling them) that their efforts would be successful.* Nep.

2. RHETORICAL QUESTIONS.—Questions which are such only in form, requiring no answer, are generally construed, according to sense, in the Infinitive. They are sometimes called Rhetorical questions, as they are often used for Rhetorical effect instead of assertions : thus *num possit*, can he? for *non potest*, he can not ; *quid sit turpius*, what is more base? for *nil est turpius*, nothing is more base.

Here belong many questions which in the direct form have the verb in the first or third person :

Respondit num mēmōriam dēpōnēre posse, *He replied, could he lay aside the recollection.* Caes. Here the direct question would be: Num mēmōriam dēpōnēre possim?

3. IMPERATIVE CLAUSES WITH THE INFINITIVE. See 551. II. 1.

531. MOODS IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES.—The Subordinate clauses of the Direct discourse, on becoming Indirect, put their finite verbs in the Subjunctive :

Orābant, ut sibi auxilium ferret quod prēmērentur (direct: nōbis auxilium fer, quod prēmimur), *They prayed that he would bring them help, because they were oppressed.* Caes.

1. INFINITIVE IN RELATIVE CLAUSES.—It must be remembered (453), that Relative clauses, though subordinate in form, sometimes have the force of Principal clauses. When thus used in the Oratio Obliqua, they may be construed with the Infinitive :

Ad eum dēfertur, esse cīvem Rōmānum qui quērērētur : quem (= et eum) asservātum esse, *It was reported to him that there was a Roman citizen who made a complaint, and that he had been placed under guard.* Cic. So also comparisons : Te suspīcor iisdem, quibus me ipsum, commōvēri, *I suspect that you are moved by the same things as I am.* Cic.

2. INFINITIVE AFTER CERTAIN CONJUNCTIONS.—The Infinitive occurs, especially in Livy and Tacitus, even in clauses after *quia*, *quum*, *quamquam*, and some other conjunctions :

Dicit, se moenibus inclūsos tēnēre eos; quia per agros vāgārī, He says that he keeps them shut up within the walls, because (otherwise) they would wander through the fields. Liv. See also 551. I. 5 and 6.

3. INDICATIVE IN PARENTHETICAL CLAUSES.—Clauses may be introduced parenthetically in the oratio obliqua without strictly forming a part of it, and may accordingly take the Indicative :

Rēfērunt silvam esse, quae appellātur Bācēnis, They report that there is a forest which is called Bacenis. Caes.

4. INDICATIVE IN CLAUSES NOT PARENTHETICAL.—Sometimes clauses not parenthetical take the Indicative to give prominence to the *fact* stated. This occurs most frequently in Relative clauses :

Certior factus est ex ea parte vici, quam Gallis concesserat, omnes discessisse, He was informed that all had withdrawn from that part of the village which he had assigned to the Gauls. Caes.

532. TENSES.—Tenses in the Oratio Obliqua generally conform to the ordinary rules for Infinitive and Subjunctive Tenses (480, 540), but the law of Sequence of Tenses admits of certain qualifications :

1. The Present and Perfect may be used even after a Historical tense, to impart a more lively effect to the narrative :

Caesar respondit, si obsides sibi dentur, sēse pācem esse factūrum, Caesar replied, that if hostages should be given him, he would make peace. Caes.

2. In Conditional sentences of the third form (510),

1) The condition retains the Imperfect or Pluperfect without reference to the tense of the Principal verb ;

2) The Conclusion changes the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive into the Periphrastic Infinitives in *rus esse* and *rus fuisse* :

Censes Pompēium laetātūrum fuisse, si scīret, Do you think Pompey would have rejoiced, if he had known ? Cic. *Clāmītābat, si ille ādesset, ventūros eēse, He cried out that they would come, if he were present.* Caes.

But the Regular Infinitive, instead of the periphrastic forms, sometimes occurs in this construction, especially in expressions of *Duty*, etc. (475. 4).

3. Conditional Sentences of the second form (509), after Historical tenses, sometimes retain in their conditional clauses the Present or Perfect and sometimes change it to the Imperfect or Pluperfect, according to the Rule for Sequence of Tenses (480) :

Respondit, si expēriri vēlint, pārātum esse, He replied, if they wished to make the trial he was ready. Caes. *Lēgātos mittit, si ita fēcisset, āmicītiām fūtūram, He sent messengers saying that, if he would do thus, there would be friendship.* Caes.

Here *mittit* is the Historical Present. See 467. III.

4. The Future Perfect in a Subordinate clause of the Direct discourse is changed in the Indirect into the Perfect Subjunctive after a Principal tense, and into the Pluperfect Subjunctive after a Historical tense :

Agunt ut dimicent ; ibi imperium fore, unde victoria fuerit, *They arrange that they shall fight ; that the sovereignty shall be on the side which shall win the victory* (whence the victory may have been). Liv. Apparebat regnaturum, qui vicisset, *It was evident that he would be king who should conquer.* Liv.

533. PRONOUNS, ADVERBS, ETC.—Pronouns and adverbs, as also the persons of the verbs, are often changed in passing from the *Direct* discourse to the *Indirect* :

Gloriatus est annulum se sua manu confecisse (*direct*: annulum ego mea manu confeci), *He boasted that he had made the ring with his own hand.* Cic.

1. Pronouns of first and second persons are often changed to the third. Thus above *ego* in the direct discourse becomes *se*, and *mea* becomes *sua*. In the same way *hic* and *iste* are often changed to *ille*.

2. Adverbs meaning *here* or *now* are often changed to those meaning *there* or *then* ; *nunc* to *tum* ; *hic* to *illic*.

3. In the use of pronouns observe

1) That references to the **SPEAKER** whose words are reported are made, if of the 1st Pers. by *ego*, *meus*, *noster*, etc., if of the 2d Pers. by *tu*, *tuus*, etc., and if of the 3d Pers. by *ui*, *suus*, *ipse*, etc., though sometimes by *is*, *ille*.

2) That references to the **REPORTER**, or **Author**, are made by *ego*, *meus*, etc.

3) That references to the **PERSON ADDRESSED** by the reporter are made by *tu*, *tuus*, etc.

Ariovistus respondit nos esse iniquos qui se interpellaremus (*direct* : vos estis iniqui qui me, etc.), *Ariovistus replied that we were unjust who interrupted him.* Caes.

Here *nos* refers to the *Reporter*, Caesar, *we Romans*. *Se* refers to the *Speaker*, Ariovistus. In the second example under 528, *te* refers to the *Person Addressed*.

SECTION VII.

IMPERATIVE.

I. TENSES OF THE IMPERATIVE.

534. The Imperative has but two Tenses :

I. The **PRESENT** has only the Second person, and corresponds to the English Imperative :

Justitiam cole, *Practise justice.* Cic. Perge, Cătilina, *Go,* Catiline. Cic.

II. The Future has the Second and Third persons, and corresponds to the imperative use of the English Future with *shall*, or to the Imperative *let* :

Ii consules appellantor, *They shall be called consuls*, or *let them be called consuls*. Cic. Quod dixero, facitote, *You shall do what I say* (shall have said). Ter.

1. FUTURE FOR PRESENT.—The Future Imperative is sometimes used where we should expect the Present :

Quoniam supplicatio decreta est, celebratote illos dies, *Since a thanksgiving has been decreed, celebrate those days*. Cic.

This is particularly common in certain verbs: thus *scio* has only the forms of the Future in common use.

2. PRESENT FOR FUTURE.—The Imperative Present is often used in poetry, and sometimes in prose, of an action which belongs entirely to the future :

Ubi aciem videris, tum ordines dissipa, *When you shall see the line of battle, then scatter the ranks*. Liv.

II. USE OF THE IMPERATIVE.

RULE XLVIII.—Imperative.

535. The Imperative is used in commands, exhortations, and entreaties :

Justitiam cõle, *Practise justice*. Cic. Tu ne cede malis, *Do not yield to misfortunes*. Virg. Si quid in te peccavi, ignosce, *If I have sinned against you, pardon me*. Cic.

1. CIRCUMLOCUTIONS.—Instead of the simple Imperative, several circumlocutions are common :

1) *Cura ut, fac ut, fac*, each with the Subjunctive :

Cura ut venias, *See that you come*. Cic. See 489.

2) *Fac ne, cave ne, cave*, with the Subjunctive :

Cave facias, *Beware of doing it*, or *see that you do not do it*. Cic.

3) *Noli, nolite*, with the Infinitive :

Noli imitari, *do not imitate*. Cic. See 538. 2.

2. IMPERATIVE CLAUSE FOR CONDITION.—An Imperative clause may be used instead of a Conditional clause :

Lacesse; jam videbis furem, *Provoke him* (i. e., if you provoke him), *you will at once see him frantic*. Cic.

3. IMPERATIVE SUPPLIED.—The place of the Imperative may be variously supplied :

1) By the Subjunctive of Desire (487) :

Sint beati, *Let them be happy*. Cic. Impii ne audeant, *Let not the impious dare*. Cic.

2) By the Indicative Future :

Quod optimum vidēbitur, faciēs, *You will do* (for Imper. do) *what shall seem best.* Cic.

536. The Imperative Present, like the English Imperative, is used in commands, exhortations, and entreaties. See examples under the Rule.

537. The Imperative Future is used,

I. In commands involving future rather than present action :

Rem penditōte, *You shall consider the subject.* Cic. Cras pētito; dābitur, *Ask to-morrow ; it shall be granted.* Plaut.

II. In laws, orders, precepts, etc. :

Consules nēmīni pārento, *The consuls shall be subject to no one.* Cic. Sālus pōpūli suprēma lex esto, *The safety of the people shall be the supreme law.* Cic.

538. IMPERATIVE IN PROHIBITIONS.—In prohibitions or negative commands,

1. The negative *ne*, rarely *non*, accompanies the Imperative, and if a connective is required, *nēve*, or *neu*, is generally used, rarely *nēque* :

Tu ne cēde mālīs, *Do not yield to misfortunes.* Virg. Hōmīnem mortuum in urbe ne sēpēlito, *nēve ūrito, Thou shalt not bury or burn a dead body in the city.* Cic.

2. Instead of *ne* with the Present Imperative, the best prose writers generally use *nōli* and *nōlīte* with the Infinitive :

Nōlite pūtāre (*for ne pūtāte*), *do not think* (be unwilling to think). Cic.

SECTION VIII.

INFINITIVE.

539. The treatment of the Latin Infinitive embraces four topics :

- I. The Tenses of the Infinitive.
- II. The Subject of the Infinitive.
- III. The Predicate after the Infinitive.
- IV. The Construction of the Infinitive.

I. TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE.

540. The Infinitive has three tenses, *Present*, *Perfect*, and *Future*. They express however not absolute, but *relative* time, denoting respectively Present, Past, or Future time, relatively to the Principal verb.

1. PECULIARITIES.—These tenses present the leading peculiarities specified under these tenses in the Indicative. See 467. 2.

541. The PRESENT INFINITIVE represents the action as taking place at the time denoted by the principal verb :

Cūpio me esse clēmentem, *I desire to be mild*. Cic. Māluit se dilīgi quam mētui, *He preferred to be loved rather than feared*. Nep.

1. REAL TIME.—Hence the real time denoted by the Present Infinitive is the time of the verb on which it depends.

2. PRESENT FOR FUTURE.—The Present is sometimes used for the Future and sometimes has little or no reference to time :

Cras argentum dare dixit, *He said he would give the silver to-morrow*. Ter.

3. PRESENT WITH DEBEO, POSSUM, ETC.—After the past tenses of *dēbeo*, *oportet*, *possum*, and the like, the Present Infinitive is used where our idiom would lead us to expect the Perfect ; sometimes also after *mēmīni*, and the like :

Dēbuit officiōsior esse, *He ought to have been more attentive*. Cic. Id pōtuit faciēre, *He might have done this*. Cic.

542. The PERFECT INFINITIVE represents the action as completed at the time denoted by the principal verb :

Plātōnem fērunt in Itāliam vēnisse, *They say that Plato came into Italy*. Cic. Consciūs mihi ēram, nihil a me commissum esse, *I was conscious to myself that no offence had been committed by me*. Cic.

1. REAL TIME.—Hence the real time denoted by the Perfect Infinitive is that of the Perfect tense, if dependent upon the Present, and that of the Pluperfect, if dependent upon a Historical tense, as in the examples.

2. PERFECT FOR PRESENT.—In the poets the Perfect Infinitive is sometimes used for the Present, rarely in prose :

Tētīgisse timent pōctam, *They fear to touch (to have touched) the poet*. Hor.

3. PASSIVE INFINITIVE.—The Passive Infinitive with *esse* sometimes denotes the *result* of the action : *victus esse*, to have been vanquished, and so, to be a vanquished man. *Fuisse* for *esse* emphasizes the *completeness* of the action : *victus fuisse*, to have been vanquished. See 575. 1.

543. The FUTURE INFINITIVE represents the action as about to take place in time subsequent to that of the principal verb :

Brūtum vīsum īri a me pūto, *I think Brutus will be seen by me*. Cic. Orācūlum dātum ērat victriees Athēnas fōre, *An oracle had been given, that Athens would be victorious*. Cic.

Hence after a Principal tense the real time of the Future Infinitive is Future, but after a Historical tense the real time can be determined only by the context.

544. CIRCUMLOCUTION FOR FUTURE INFINITIVE.—Instead of the regular Future Infinitive, the circumlocution *fütürum esse ut*, or *före ut*, with the Subjunctive,—Present after a Principal tense, and Imperfect after a Historical tense,—is frequently used:

Spëro före ut contingat id nōbis, I hope this will fall to our lot (I hope it will come to pass that this may happen to us). *Cic. Non spërāvërat Hannibal, före ut ad se-dëfïcërent, Hannibal had not hoped that they would revolt to him. Liv. See 556. II. 1.*

1. CIRCUMLOCUTION NECESSARY.—*Fütürum esse ut*, or *före ut*, with the Subjunctive, for the Future Infinitive, is common in the Passive, and is moreover necessary in both voices in all verbs which want the Supine and the Participle in *rus*.

2. FORE UT WITH PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.—Sometimes *före ut* with the Subjunctive, Perfect or Pluperfect, is used with the force of a Future Perfect; and in Passive and Deponent verbs, *före* with the Perfect Participle may be used with the same force:

Dïco me sätis ädeptum före, I say that I shall have obtained enough. Cic.

3. FUTURUM FUISSE UT WITH SUBJUNCTIVE.—*Fütürum fuisse ut* with the Subjunctive may be used in the conclusion of a conditional sentence of the third form when made dependent:

Nïsi nuntii essent allätï, existimäbant fütürum fuisse, nt oppidum ämittëretur, They thought that the town would have been lost, if tidings had not been brought. Caes. See 533. 2.

II. SUBJECT OF INFINITIVE.

RULE XLIX.—Subject.

545. The Subject of an Infinitive is put in the Accusative:

Sentimus cälëre ignem, We perceive that fire is hot. Cic. Plätönem Tärentum vënisse rëpërio, I find that Plato came to Tarentum. Cic.

1. HISTORICAL INFINITIVE.—In lively description the Infinitive is sometimes used for the Indicative Imperfect. It is then called the Historical Infinitive, and, like a finite verb, has its subject in the Nominative:

Hostes gaesa conjicëre, The enemy hurled their javelins. Caes.

The Historical Infinitive may often be explained by supplying *coëpit* or *coëpë-runt*; but in most instances it is better to treat it simply as an *idiom* of the language.

2. SUBJECT OMITTED.—The Subject of an Infinitive may be omitted:

1) When it denotes the same person or thing as the subject of the principal clause, or may be readily supplied from the context:

Magna nögötia völnnt ägëre, They wish to accomplish great undertakings. Cic. Peccäre licet nëmïni, It is not lawful for any one to sin. Cic.

2) When it is indefinite or general :

Dīlgi jūcundum est, *It is pleasant to be loved.* Cic.

3. INFINITIVE OMITTED.—*Esse* and *fuisse* are often omitted in the compound forms of the Infinitive and with predicate adjectives, other infinitives less frequently (551. 5) :

Audīvi sōlītum Fabricium, *I have heard that Fabricius was wont.* Cic.
Spērāmus nōbis prōfūtūros, *We hope to benefit you.* Cic.

III. PREDICATE AFTER INFINITIVE.

546. A Predicate Noun or Adjective after an Infinitive regularly agrees with the Subject, expressed or understood (362.3) :

Ego me Phīdīam esse malle, *I should prefer to be Phidias.* Cic. Trādītum est, Hōmērum caecum fuisse, *It has been handed down by tradition that Homer was blind.* Cic. Jūgurtha omnibus cārus esse (*historical infinitive*), *Jugurtha was dear to all.* Sall.

547. A Predicate Noun or Adjective, after an Infinitive whose Subject is omitted, is often attracted into the Nominative or Dative :

I. It is attracted into the Nominative to agree with the Subject of the principal verb, when the latter is the same person or thing as the omitted Subject :

Nōlo esse laudātor, *I am unwilling to be an eulogist.* Cic. Beātus esse sine virtūte nēmo pōtest, *No one can be happy without virtue.* Cic.

1. This occurs most frequently (1) after verbs of *duty, ability, courage, custom, desire, beginning, continuing, ending*, and the like—*dēbeo, possum, audeo, sōleo, cūpio, vōlo, mālo, nōlo, incipio, pergo, dēsīno*, etc., and (2) after various Passive verbs of *saying, thinking, finding, seeming*, and the like—*dicor, trādor, fēror—crēdor, existīmor, pūtor—rēpērior—vīdeor*, etc.:

Quis sciētiōr esse dēbuit, *Who ought to have been more learned?* Cic. Pārens dici pōtest, *He can be called a parent.* Cic. Stoīcus esse vōluit, *He wished to be a Stoic.* Cic. Dēsīnant esse tīmīdi, *Let them cease to be timid.* Cic. Inventor esse dicītur, *He is said to be the inventor.* Cic. Prūdēns esse pūtābātur, *He was thought to be prudent.* Cic.

2. Participles in the compound tenses of the Infinitive are also attracted :
Pollicītus esse dicītur, *He is said to have promised.* Cic.

II. The Predicate Noun or Adjective is sometimes attracted into the Dative to agree with a Dative in the principal clause, when the latter denotes the same person or thing as the omitted Subject :

Patrīcio tribūno plēbis fieri nō licēbat, *It was not lawful for a patrician to be made tribune of the people.* Cic. Mihi negligēti esse nō licuit, *It was not permitted me to be negligent.* Cic.

1. This is rare, but is the regular construction after *licet*, and sometimes occurs after *nēcesse est*, when used after *licet*, and occasionally in other connections :

Illis timidis licet esse, nobis nēcesse est fortibus viris esse, *It is permitted them to be timid, it is necessary for us to be brave men.* Liv. But,

2. Even with *Licet* the attraction does not always take place :

Ei consulem fieri licet, *It is lawful for him to be made consul.* Caes.

IV. CONSTRUCTION OF THE INFINITIVE.

548. The Infinitive, with or without a Subject, has in general the construction of a Noun in the Nominative or Accusative, and is used,

I. As a Nominative—Subject of a Verb.

II. As an Accusative—Object of a Verb.

III. In Special Constructions.

I. Infinitive as Subject.

549. The Infinitive, with or without a Subject, is often used as a Nominative, and is thus made the Subject of a sentence, according to Rule III. :

WITH SUBJECT.—Faciūsus est vinciri civem Rōmānum, *That a Roman citizen should be bound is a crime.* Cic. Certum est liberos amari, *It is certain that children are loved.* Quint. Lēgem brevem esse oportet, *It is necessary that a law be brief.* Sen.

WITHOUT SUBJECT.—Ars est difficilis rem publicam regere, *To rule a state is a difficult art.* Cic. Cūrum esse jucundum est, *It is pleasant to be held dear.* Cic. Haec scire juvat, *To know these things affords pleasure.* Sen. Peccare licet nemini, *To sin is not lawful for any one.* Cic.

1. INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT.—When the subject is an Infinitive, the Predicate is either (1) a Noun or Adjective with *Sum*, or (2) an Impersonal verb or a verb used Impersonally. See the examples above.

1) *Tempus* = tempestivum is thus used with the Infinitive :

Tempus est dicere, *It is time to speak.* Cic.

2. INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT OF AN INFINITIVE.—The Infinitive may be the subject of another Infinitive :

Intelligi nēcesse est esse deos, *It must be understood that there are gods.* Cic. *Esse deos* is the subject of *intelligi*, and *intelligi esse deos* of *nēcesse est*.

3. INFINITIVE WITH DEMONSTRATIVE.—The Infinitive sometimes takes a Demonstrative as an attributive in agreement with it :

Quibusdam hoc displicet philosophari, *This philosophizing (this to philosophize) displeases some persons.* Cic. Vivere ipsum turpe est nobis, *To live is itself ignoble for us.* Cic.

4. PERSONAL CONSTRUCTION FOR IMPERSONAL.—With Passive verbs, instead of the Infinitive with a subject accusative, a Personal construction is

common, by which the Subject Accusative becomes the Subject Nominative of the leading verb :

Aristides justissimus fuisse traditur (for *Aristidem justissimum fuisse traditur*), *Aristides is said to have been most just.* Cic.

1) The Personal Construction is used, (1) regularly with *videor*, *jubeor*, *vetor*, and the Simple Tenses of many verbs of saying, thinking, and the like—*dicor*, *trador*, *feror*, *perhibeor*, *putor*, *existimor*, etc., also with *coepit* *sum* and *desit* *sum* with a Passive Infinitive, and (2) sometimes with other verbs of *saying*, *showing*, *perceiving*, *finding*, and the like.

Solem e mundo tollere videntur, *They seem to remove the sun from the world.* Cic. *Platonem audivisse dicitur*, *He is said to have heard Plato.* Cic. *Dii beati esse intelliguntur*, *The gods are understood to be happy.* Cic.

2) In successive clauses the Personal construction is often followed by the Impersonal.

3) *Videor* with or without a Dative often means *to fancy*, *think*: *mihi videor* or *videor*, *I fancy*; *ut videmur*, *as we fancy.*

II. Infinitive as Object.

550. The Infinitive, with or without a Subject, is often used as an Accusative, and is thus made the object of a verb, according to Rule V.:

Te dicunt esse sapientem, *They say that you are wise.* Cic. *Hac vitare cupimus*, *We desire to avoid these things.* Cic. *Manere decrevit*, *He decided to remain.* Nep.

551. INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE.—This is used as object with a great variety of verbs. Thus,

I. With Verbs of Perceiving and Declaring,—*Verba Sentiendi et Declarandi.*

II. With Verbs of Wishing and Desiring.

III. With Verbs of Emotion and Feeling.

I. WITH VERBS OF PERCEIVING AND DECLARING.—*Sentimus calere ignem*, *We perceive that fire is hot.* Cic. *Mihi narravit te sollicitum esse*, *He told me that you were troubled.* Cic. *Scripterunt Themistoclem in Asiam transisse*, *They wrote that Themistocles had gone over to Asia.* Nep.

1. VERBA SENTIENDI.—*Verbs of Perceiving* include those which involve (1) the exercise of the senses: *audio*, *video*, *sentio*, etc., and (2) the exercise of the mind: thinking, believing, knowing, *cogito*, *puto*, *existimo*, *credo*, *spero*,—*intelligo*, *scio*, etc.

2. VERBA DECLARANDI.—*Verbs of Declaring* are such as state or communicate facts or thoughts: *diceo*, *narro*, *nuntio*, *diceo*, *ostendo*, *promitto*, etc.

3. EXPRESSIONS WITH THE FORCE OF VERBS.—The Infinitive with a subject may be used with expressions equivalent to verbs of perceiving and declaring. Thus:

With *fāma fert*, report says, *testis sum*, I am a witness = I testify; *conscius mihi sum*, I am conscious, I know:

Nullam mihi rēlātam esse grātiam, tu es testis, *You are a witness (can testify) that no grateful return has been made to me.* Cic.

4. PARTICIPLE FOR INFINITIVE.—Verbs of Perceiving take the Accusative with the Present Participle, when the object is to be represented as actually seen, heard, etc., while engaged in a given action:

Cātōnem vīdi in bibliōthēca sēdentem, *I saw Cato sitting in the library.* Cic.

5. SUBJECTS COMPARED.—When two subjects with the same predicate are compared by means of *quam*, *idem—qui*, etc.; if the Accusative with the Infinitive is used in the first clause, the Accusative with its Infinitive omitted may follow in the second:

Plātōnem fērunt idem sēsisse, quod Pŷthāgōram, *They say that Plato held the same opinion as Pythagoras.* Cic.

6. PREDICATES COMPARED.—When two predicates with the same subject are compared and the Infinitive with a Subject is used in the first clause, the Infinitive with its subject omitted often follows in the second:

Nūm pŷtātis, dixisse Antōnium mīnācius quam factūrum fuisse, *Do you think Antony spoke more threateningly than he would have acted?* Cic.

But the second clause may take the subjunctive, with or without *ut*:

Audeo dicere ipsos pōtius cultōres agrōrum fore quam ut cōli prohibeant, *I dare say that they will themselves become tillers of the fields rather than prevent them from being tilled.* Liv.

II. WITH VERBS OF WISHING AND DESIRING.—The Infinitive with Subject Accusative is also used with verbs of *Wishing* and *Desiring*:

Te tua frui virtūte cūpimus, *We desire that you should enjoy your virtue.* Cic. Pontem iubet rescindi, *He orders the bridge to be broken down* (that the bridge should be broken down). Caes. Lex eum necari vētuit, *The law forbade that he should be put to death.* Liv.

1. VERBS OF WISHING.—The Infinitive is thus used not only with verbs which directly express a wish, *cūpio*, *vōlo*, *nōlo*, *mālo*, etc., but also with many which involve a wish or command: *pātior*, *sīno*, to permit; *impēro*, *jūbeo*, to command; *prohibeo*, *vēto*, to forbid. See also 558. II.

2. SUBJUNCTIVE FOR INFINITIVE.—Several verbs involving a wish or command admit the Subjunctive:

1) Opto. See 492. 3

2) Vōlo, mālo, nōlo, impēro, and jūbeo admit the Subjunctive, generally with *ut* or *ne*:

Vōlo ut respondeas, *I wish you would reply.* Cic. Mālo te hostis mētuat, *I prefer that the enemy should fear you.* Cic.

3) Concēdo, permitto, rarely *pātior* and *sīno*, admit the Subjunctive with *ut*:

Concēdo ut haec apta sint, *I admit that these things are suitable.* Cic.

III. WITH VERBS OF EMOTION OR FEELING.—The Infinitive with Subject Accusative is also used with verbs of *Emotion* or *Feeling*:

Gaudeo, te mihi suādēre, *I rejoice that you advise me.* Cic. Mirāmur, te laetāri, *We wonder that you rejoice.* Cic.

Verbs of emotion are *gaudeo, dōleo, mīror, quēror*, and the like; also *aegro fēro, grāvēter fēro*, etc.

552. INFINITIVE WITHOUT SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE.—This is used as Object with many verbs:

Vincēre scis, *You know how to conquer (you know to conquer).* Liv. Crēdūli esse coepērunt, *They began to be credulous.* Cic. Haec vitāre cūpimus, *We desire to avoid these things.* Cic. Sōlent cōgītāre, *They are accustomed to think.* Cic. Nemo mortem effūgēre pōtest, *No one is able to escape death.* Cic.

1. VERBS WITH THE INFINITIVE.—The Infinitive may depend upon verbs signifying to *dare, desire, determine—begin, continue, end—know, learn, neglect—owe, promise, etc.*, also to *be able, be accustomed, be wont, etc.*

2. INFINITIVE AS A SECOND OBJECT.—With a few verbs—*dōceo, cōgo, assuefācio, arguo*, etc.—the Infinitive is used in connection with a direct object; see 374. 4:

Te sāpēre dōcet, *He teaches you to be wise.* Cic. Nātiōnes pārēre assuefēcit, *He accustomed the nations to obey.* Cic.

In the Passive these verbs of course retain the Infinitive:

Num sum Graece lōqui dōcendus, *Must I be taught to speak Greek?* Cic.

3. INFINITIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES.—By a construction according to sense, the Infinitive is used after adjectives in the sense of participles or verbs with the Infinitive:

Est pārātus (*vult*) audire, *He is prepared to hear (is willing to hear).* Cic. Pēlides cēdēre nescius (= nesciens), *Pelides not knowing how to yield.* Hor. Avīdi committēre pugnam, *eager to engage battle.* Ovid.

This construction is rare in good prose, but common in poetry.

4. INFINITIVE WITH PREPOSITIONS.—The Infinitive regarded as a noun in the accusative, sometimes depends upon a preposition:

Multum intērest inter dāre et accipēre, *There is a great difference between giving and receiving.* Sen.

III. Infinitive in Special Constructions.

553. The Infinitive, with or without a Subject, is generally used as the Subject or Object of a verb, but sometimes occurs in other relations. It is thus used,

I. As Predicate; see 362:

Exītus fuit ōrātiōnis: sibi nullam cum his āmicītiām, *The close of his oration was that he had no friendship with these.* Caes. Vivēre est cōgītāre, *To live is to think.* Cic.

Here *sibi—āmicītiām* is used substantively, and is the Predicate Nominative after *fuit*, according to Rule I. *Cōgītāre* is in the same construction after *est*.

II. As Appositive ; see 363 :

Orācūlum dātum ērat victrīces Athēnas fōre, *The oracle that Athens would be victorious had been given.* Cic. Illud sōleo mīrārī non me accipere tuas littēras, *I am accustomed to wonder at this, that I do not receive your letter.* Cic.

1. WITH SUBJECT.—In this construction the Infinitive takes a subject accusative, as in the examples.

2. EXPLANATION.—In the examples, the clause *victrīces Athēnas fōre* is in apposition with *ōrācūlum*, and the clause *non me accipere tuas littēras*, in apposition with *illud*.

III. In Exclamations ; see 381 :

Te sic vexārī, *that you should be thus troubled!* Cic. Mēne incepto dēsistere victam, *that I vanquished should abandon my undertaking!* Virg.

1. WITH SUBJECT.—In this construction the Infinitive takes a Subject, as in the examples.

2. EXPLANATION.—This use of the Infinitive conforms, it will be observed, to the use of Accusative and Nominative in exclamations (381, 381. 3). It may often be explained as an Accus. by supplying some verb, as *dōleo*, etc., or as a Nom. by supplying *crēdendum est* or *crēdibile est*. Thus the first example becomes: *I grieve (dōleo) that you*, etc., and the second becomes: *Is it to be supposed (crēdendum est) that I vanquished*, etc.

3. IMPASSIONED QUESTIONS.—This construction is most frequent in impassioned questions, as in the second example.

IV. As Ablative Absolute. See 431. 4.

V. To express Purpose :

Pēcus ēgit altos vīsere montes, *He drove his herd to visit the lofty mountains.* Hor. Non pōpūlare pēnates vēnimus, *We have not come to lay waste your homes.* Virg.

This construction is confined to poetry.

VI. Poetic Infinitive for Gerund. See 563. 6.

SECTION IX.

SUBJECT AND OBJECT CLAUSES.

554. Subject and Object Clauses, in which, as we have just seen (549 and 550), the Infinitive is so freely used, assume four distinct forms :

I. INDIRECT QUESTIONS.—These represent the Subject or Object as *Interrogative* in character :

Quærītur, cur dissentiant, *It is asked why they disagree.* Cic. Quid āgeudum sit, nescio, *I do not know what ought to be done.* Cic. See 525.

II. INFINITIVE CLAUSES.—These have simply the force of Nouns, merely supplying the place of the Nominative, or the Accusative:

Antēcellēre contigit, *It was his good fortune to excel* (to excel happened).
Cic. Magna nēgōtia vōluit āgēre, *He wished to achieve great undertakings.*
Cic. See 549, 550.

III. SUBJUNCTIVE CLAUSES.—These clauses introduced by *ut*, *ne*, etc., are only occasionally used as subject or object, and even then involve Purpose or Result:

Contigit ut patriam vindicāret, *It was his good fortune to save his country.* Nep. Vōlo ut mihi respondeas, *I wish you would answer me.* Cic. See 492, 495.

Here *ut—vindicāret* is at once subject and result: it was his good fortune to save his country, or his good fortune was such that he saved his country. In the second example, *ut—respondeas* expresses not only the object desired, but also the purpose of the desire.

IV. CLAUSES WITH QUOD.—These again are only occasionally used as subject or object, and even then either give prominence to the fact stated, or present it as a Ground or Reason:

Bēnēficiū est quod nēcesse est mōri, *It is a blessing that it is necessary to die.* Sen. Gaudeo quod te interpellāvi, *I rejoice that (because) I have interrupted you.* Cic. See 520.

Clauses with *quod* sometimes stand at the beginning of sentences to announce the subject of remark:

Quod me Agāmemnōnem aemūlāri pūtas, fallēris, *As to the fact that you think I emulate Agamemnon, you are mistaken.* Nep.

I. FORMS OF SUBJECT CLAUSES.

555. INTERROGATIVE.—Subject clauses which are interrogative in character, of course take the form of indirect questions. See 525. 2 and 554. I.

556. NOT INTERROGATIVE.—Subject clauses which are not interrogative, with some predicates take the form of Infinitive clauses, or clauses with *quod*; while with other predicates they take the form of Subjunctive clauses with *ut*, *ne*, etc. Thus,

I. With most impersonal verbs and with predicates consisting of *est* with a Noun or Adjective, the Subject may be supplied (1) by the Infinitive with or without a Subject Accusative, or, (2) if

the fact is to be made prominent or adduced as a reason, by a clause with *quod*:

Me poenitet vixisse, *I regret that I have lived.* Cic. Quod te offendi me poenitet, *I regret that (or because) I have offended you.* Cic.

1. SUBSTANTIVE PREDICATES WITH SUBJUNCTIVE.—Mos est, mōris est, consuetūdo est, consuetūdinis est, *It is a custom, etc.*, admit the Subjunctive for the Infinitive:

Mos est hōminum ut nōlint, *It is a custom of men that they are not willing.* Cic.

2. ADJECTIVE PREDICATES WITH SUBJUNCTIVE.—Rēliquum est, proximum est, extrēmum est—vērum est, vērisimile est, falsum est—glōriōsum est, mīrum est, optimum est, etc., admit the Subjunctive for the Infinitive:

Rēliquum est ut certēmus, *it remains that we contend.* Cic. Vērum est ut bōnos diligant, *It is true that they love the good.* Cic.

II. With Impersonal verbs signifying to *happen*—accēdit, contingit, evēnit, fit—*ut, ut non*, with the Subjunctive, is generally used (495. 2):

Thrāsŷbūlo contigit, ut patriam vindicāret, *It was the good fortune of Thrasybulus (happened to him) to deliver his country.* Nep.

1. Here belong *accēdit ut, est ut, fūtūrum esse ut, or fōre ut.* See 544.

2. Clauses with *quod* also occur with verbs of happening.

III. With Impersonal verbs signifying *it follows, remains, is distant*, and the like, the Subjunctive clause with *ut* is generally used:

Rēlinquitur, ut quiescāmus, *It remains that we should submit.* Cic. See 495. 2.

IV. Subjunctive clause standing alone. See 495. 2. 2).

II. FORMS OF OBJECT CLAUSES.

557. INTERROGATIVE.—Object clauses which are interrogative in character, of course, take the form of indirect questions. See 554. I.

558. NOT INTERROGATIVE.—Object clauses which are not interrogative in character, supplying the place of direct objects after transitive verbs, sometimes take the form of Infinitive clauses, sometimes of Subjunctive clauses, and sometimes of clauses with *quod*. Thus,

I. Verbs of DECLARING take,

1. Regularly the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. See 551. I.

2. But the Subjunctive with *ut* or *ne*, when they involve a command:

Dōlābellae dixit, ut ad me scribēret ut in Itāliam venīrem, *He told Dolabella to write to me to come into Italy.* Cic. See 492. 2.

II. Verbs of DETERMINING, *stātuo*, *constituo*, *dēcerno*, and the like, take,

1. Generally the Infinitive, when the subject is the same as that of the principal verb, rarely the Subjunctive:

Mānere dēcrēvit, *He determined to remain.* Nep. Stātuerunt, ut libertātem dēfendērent, *They determined to defend liberty.* Cic. See 551. II.

2. The Subjunctive with *ut* or *ne* (expressed or understood), when a new subject is introduced:

Constituerat, ut tribūnus quērērētur, *He had arranged that the tribune should enter the complaint.* Sall. Sēnātus dēcrēvit, dārent ōpēram consules, *The senate decreed that the consuls should attend to it.* Sall. See 492. 3.

Stātuo, *dēcerno*, etc., when they mean to *think*, *deem*, *suppose*, etc., become *verba sentiendi* (551. I. 1), and of course take the Infinitive:

Landem sapiētiæ stātuo esse maximam, *I deem it to be the highest praise of wisdom.* Cic.

III. Verbs of STRIVING, ENDEAVORING, take the Subjunctive with *ut* or *ne*. See 492. 1. But *contendo*, *nitor*, *stūdeo*, and *tento*, generally take the Infinitive when the subject is the same:

Lōcum oppugnāre contendit, *He proceeds to storm the city.* Caes. Tentābo de hoc dicere, *I will attempt to speak of this.* Quint. See 552.

IV. Verbs of CAUSING, MAKING, ACCOMPLISHING, take the Subjunctive with *ut*, *ne*, *ut non*. See 492, 495.

1. EXAMPLES.—Fācio, effīcio, perfīcio—ādīpiscor, impetro—assēquor, consēquor, and sometimes fēro, are examples of verbs of this class.

2. FACIO AND EFFICIO.—Fācio in the sense of *assume*, *suppose*, takes the Infinitive; effīcio in the sense of *prove*, *show*, either the Infinitive or the Subjunctive with *ut*, etc.:

Fac ānimos non rēmānere post mortem, *Assume that souls do not survive after death.* Cic. Vult effīcere ānimos esse mortāles, *He wishes to show that souls are mortal.* Cic.

V. Verbs of EMOTION OR FEELING, whether of joy or sorrow, take,

1. The Infinitive with Subject Accusative, to express the Object in view of which the feeling is exercised. See 551. III.

2. Clauses with *quod*, to make more prominent the Reason for the feeling:

Gaudeo quod te interpellāvi, *I rejoice that (or because) I have interrupted you.* Cic. Dōlēbam quod sōcium āmisēram, *I was grieving because I had lost a companion.* Cic. See 520. I.

For VERBS OF DESIRING, see 551. II. 2.

VI. Verbs of ASKING, DEMANDING, ADVISING, WARNING, COM-

MANDING, and the like, take the Subjunctive, generally with *ut* or *ne*:

Oro ut hōmīnes mīseros conserves, *I implore that you would preserve the unhappy men.* Cic. Postūlat ut signum detur, *They demand that the signal be given.* Liv. See 492. 2.

1. EXAMPLES.—Verbs of this class are numerous—the following are examples: ōro, rōgo, pēto, prēcō, obsēcō—flāgito, postūlo, praecepīo—hortor, mōneo, suādeo, persuādeo—impello, incito, mōveo, commōveo.

2. USED AS VERBA DECLARANDI.—Some of these verbs in particular significations become *verba declarandi* (551. 2), and accordingly take the Infinitive with Subject Accusative: thus *mōneo*, in the sense of *remind* and *persuādeo* in the sense of *convince*.

3. INFINITIVE.—Even in their ordinary significations some of these verbs, especially *hortor*, *mōneo*, and *postūlo*, sometimes take the Infinitive with or without a Subject Accusative:

Postūlat se absolvi, *He demands that he should be acquitted.* Cic. See 551. II. 1 and 2.

The Infinitive is much more common in poetry than in prose.

SECTION X.

GERUND.

559. The Gerund is a verb in force, but a noun in form and inflection. As a verb it governs oblique cases and takes adverbial modifiers, as a noun it is itself governed.

560. The Gerund has four cases: Genitive, Dative, Accusative, and Ablative, governed like nouns in the same situation:

Beāte vīvendi cūpīdītāte incensi sūmus, *We are animated with the desire of living happily.* Cic. Charta inūtilis scribendo, *paper unfit for writing.* Plin. Ad āgendum nātus, *born for action.* Cic. In āgendo, *in acting.* Cic.

1. ACCUSATIVE.—The Accusative of the Gerund is used only after Prepositions.

2. GERUND AND INFINITIVE.—The gerund and the infinitive are kindred forms, expressing the meaning of the verb in the form of a noun (196. II.). They are also complements of each other, the one supplying the parts which are wanting in the other. Thus the infinitive supplies the nominative and the accusative after verbs (548); the gerund supplies the genitive, dative, and ablative, and the accusative after prepositions.

561. Gerunds with Direct Objects are regularly used only in the Genitive and in the Ablative without a preposition:

Jus vōcandi sēnātum, *the right of summoning the senate.* Liv. Injūrias fōrendo laudem mērēbēris, *You will merit praise by bearing wrongs.* Cic.

562. GERUNDIVE.—The place of the Gerund with a Direct Object is supplied by putting that object in the case of the Gerund and changing the latter into the participle in *-dus* in agreement with it. The participle is then called a *Gerundive*:

Inīta sunt consīlia urbis dēlendae = *urbem dēlendi*, *Plans have been formed for destroying the city* (of the city to be destroyed). *Cic. Nūma sacerdōtibus creandis ānimum adjēcit*, *Numa gave his attention to the appointment of priests.* *Liv.*

1. EXPLANATION.—With the Gerund, the first example would be: *Inīta sunt consīlia urbem dēlendi*, in which *dēlendi* is governed by *consīlia*, and *urbem* by *dēlendi*. In changing this to the Gerundive construction,

1) *Urbem*, the object, is changed into *urbis*, the case of the gerund, and is governed by *consīlia*.

2) *Dēlendi*, the gerund, is changed into *dēlendae*, the gerundive, in agreement with *urbis*.

2. GERUNDIVE.—For the sake of brevity, the term *Gerundive* is used not only to designate the *Participle*, but also the *Construction as a whole*, including both the participle and the noun with which it agrees.

3. USE OF GERUNDIVE.—The Gerundive may be used for the Gerund with a Direct Object, and is almost invariably so used when the Gerund would be in the Dative or would depend upon a preposition. But see 563. 2.

But in a few instances the Gerund with a Direct Object occurs in the Dative or dependent upon a preposition. See 564. 1; 565. 2; and 566. 2.

4. GERUNDIVES OF UTOR, FRUOR, ETC.—In general only the gerundives of transitive verbs are used with their nouns as equivalents for Gerunds with Direct Objects; but the gerundives of *utor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *pōtior*, and *vescor*, originally transitive verbs, admit this construction:

Ad mūnus fungendum, *for discharging the duty.* *Cic. Spes pōtiundōrum castrōrum*, *the hope of getting possession of the camp.* *Caes.*

5. PASSIVE SENSE.—In a few instances, the Gerund has in appearance a passive sense:

Nēque hābent propriam percipiendī nōtam, *Nor have they any proper mark of distinction*, i. e., to distinguish them. *Cic.*

I. GENITIVE OF GERUNDS AND GERUNDIVES.

563. The Genitive of the Gerund or Gerundive is used with nouns and adjectives:

GERUND.—*Ars vīvendi*, *the art of living.* *Cic. Stūdiōsus erat audiendi*, *He was desirous of hearing.* *Nep. Jus vōcandi sēnātum*, *the right of summoning the senate.* *Liv. Cūpīdus te audiendi*, *desirous of hearing you.* *Cic.*

GERUNDIVE.—*Lībīdo ejus vīdendi*, *the desire of seeing him.* *Cic. Plātōnis stūdiōsus audiendi fuit*, *He was fond of hearing Plato.* *Cic.*

1. The genitive of the Gerund or Gerundive occurs most frequently—

1) With *ars, scientia, consuetudo*,—*cupiditas, libido, studium, consilium, voluntas, spes*,—*potestas, facultas, difficultas, occasio, tempus*,—*genus, modus, ratio*,—*causa, gratia*, etc.

2) With adjectives denoting *desire, knowledge, skill, recollection*, and their *opposites*: *avidus, cupidus, studiosus*—*consciens, gnarus, ignarus*—*peritus, imperitus, insuetus*, etc.

2. GERUND PREFERRED.—A gerund with a neuter pronoun or adjective as object should not be changed to the participial construction, because the latter could not distinguish the gender:

Artem vera ac falsa diiudicandi, the art of distinguishing true things from the false. Cic.

3. GERUND WITH GENITIVE.—The Gerund in the Genitive sometimes assumes so completely the force of a noun as to govern the Genitive instead of the Accusative:

Rejiciendi iudicum potestas, the power of challenging (of) the judges. Cic.

Here *rejiciendi* may be governed by *potestas*, and may itself by its substantive force govern *iudicum*, the challenging of the judges, etc. But these and similar forms in *di* are sometimes explained not as Gerunds but as Gerundives, like Gerundives with *mei, nostri*, etc. See 4 below.

4. PARTICIPIAL CONSTRUCTION WITH *MEI, NOSTRI*, ETC.—With the Genitive of personal pronouns—*mei, nostri, tui, vestri, sui*—the participle ends in *di* without reference to Number or Gender:

Copia placandi tui (of a woman), an opportunity of appeasing you. Ov. *Sui conservandi causa, for the purpose of preserving themselves.* Cic. *Vestri adhortandi causa, for the purpose of exhorting you.* Liv.

This apparent irregularity may be accounted for by the fact that these genitives, though used as Personal Pronouns, are all strictly in form in the neuter singular of the Possessives *meum, tuum, suum*, etc., hence the participle in *di* agrees with them perfectly.

5. PURPOSE.—The Genitive of the Gerund or Gerundive is sometimes used to express Purpose or Tendency:

Haec tradendae Hannibali victoriae sunt, These things are for the purpose of giving victory to Hannibal. Liv. *Leges pellendi claros viros, laws for driving away illustrious men.* Tac. *Proficiscitur cognoscendae antiquitatis, He sets out for the purpose of studying antiquity.* Tac.

This genitive is sometimes best explained as Predicate Genitive (401), as in the first example; sometimes as dependent upon a noun, as *pellendi* dependent upon *leges* in the second example; and sometimes simply as a Genitive of Cause (393. 409. 4), as in the third example; though in such cases, especially in the second and third, *causa* may be supplied.

6. INFINITIVE FOR GERUND.—The Infinitive for the Genitive of the Gerund or Gerundive is often used in the poets with nouns and adjectives, sometimes even in prose:

Cupido Stygios iunare lacus, the desire to sail upon the Stygian lakes. Virg. *Avidus committere pugnam, eager to engage battle.* Ovid.

II. DATIVE OF GERUNDS AND GERUNDIVES.

564. The Dative of the Gerund or Gerundive is used with a few verbs and adjectives which regularly govern the Dative:

GERUND.—Quum solvendo non essent, *Since they were not able to pay.* Cic. Aqua utilis est bibendo, *Water is useful for drinking.* Plin.

GERUNDIVE.—Locum oppido condendo cēperunt, *They selected a place for founding a city.* Liv. Tempora dēmētendis fructibus accommodāta, *seasons suitable for gathering fruits.* Cic.

1. GERUND.—The Dative of the Gerund is rare and confined mostly to late writers; with an object it is almost without example.

2. GERUNDIVE OF PURPOSE.—In Livy, Tacitus, and late writers, the Dative of the Gerundive often denotes purpose:

Firmandae vālētūdīni in Campāniam concessit, *He withdrew into Campania to confirm his health.* Tac.

3. GERUNDIVE WITH OFFICIAL NAMES.—The Dative of the Gerundive also stands after certain official names, as *dēcemvīri*, *triumvīri*, *comitia*:

Dēcemvīros lēgibus scrībendis creāvīmus, *We have appointed a committee of ten to prepare laws.* Liv. But the Dative is perhaps best explained as dependent upon the verb.

III. ACCUSATIVE OF GERUNDS AND GERUNDIVES.

565. The Accusative of the Gerund or Gerundive is used after a few prepositions:

GERUND.—Ad discendum prōpensi sūmus, *We are inclined to learn (to learning).* Cic. Inter lūdendum, *in or during play.* Quint.

GERUNDIVE.—Ad cōlendos agros, *for cultivating the fields.* Cic. Ante condendam urbem, *before the founding of the city.* Liv.

1. PREPOSITIONS.—The Accusative of the gerund or gerundive is used most frequently after *ad*; sometimes after *inter* and *ob*; very rarely after *ante*, *circa*, and *in*.

2. WITH OBJECT.—The accusative of a gerund with a direct object sometimes occurs, but is rare:

Ad plācandum deos pertinet, *It tends to appease the gods.* Cic.

3. PURPOSE.—With verbs of *giving*, *permitting*, *leaving*, *taking*, etc., the purpose of the action is sometimes denoted by the Gerund with *ad*, or by the Gerundive in agreement with a noun:

Ad imītandum mihi prōpōsitum exemplar illud, *That model has been set before me for imitation.* Cic. Attribuit Itāliam vastandam (for *ad vastandum*) Cātīlinæ, *He assigned Italy to Catiline to ravage (to be ravaged).* Cic.

IV. ABLATIVE OF GERUNDS OR GERUNDIVES.

566. The Ablative of the Gerund or Gerundive is used,

I. As Ablative of Means or Instrument :

GERUND.—*Mens discendo alitur, The mind is nourished by learning. Cic. Sălŭtem hŏmīnībŭs dando, by giving safety to men. Cic.*

GERUNDIVE.—*Lēgendis ōrātōribus, by reading the orators. Cic.*

II. With Prepositions :

GERUND.—*Virtŭtes cernuntur in āgendo, Virtues are seen in action. Cic. Dēterrēre a scribendo, to deter from writing. Cic.*

GERUNDIVE.—*Brŭtus in libēranda patria est interfectus, Brutus was slain in liberating his country. Cic.*

1. PREPOSITIONS.—The ablative of the gerund or gerundive is used most frequently after **in** ; sometimes after **a** (ab), **de**, **ex** (e) ; very rarely after **cum** and **pro**.

2. WITH OBJECT.—After prepositions, the ablative of the gerund with a direct object is exceedingly rare :

In tribuendo suum cuique, in giving every one his own. Cic.

3. WITHOUT A PREPOSITION, the ablative of the gerund or gerundive denotes in a few instances some other relation than that of means, as *time, separation, etc.* :

Incipiēdo rēfŭgi, I drew back in the very beginning. Cic.

SECTION XI.

SUPINE.

567. The Supine, like the Gerund, is a verb in force, but a noun in form and inflection. As a verb it governs oblique cases, as a noun it is itself governed.

568. The Supine has but two cases: the Accusative in *um* and the Ablative in *u*.

RULE L.—Supine in *Um*.

569. The Supine in *um* is used after verbs of motion to express PURPOSE :

Lēgātī vēnērunt res rēpētītum, Deputies came to demand restitution. Liv. Ad Caesārem congrātŭlātum convēnērunt, They came to Caesar to congratulate him. Caes.

1. The Supine in *um* occurs in a few instances after verbs which do not directly express motion :

Filiam Agrippae nuptum dedit, *He gave his daughter in marriage to Agrippa*. Suet.

2. The Supine in *um* with the verb *eo* is equivalent to the forms of the first Periphrastic Conjugation, and may often be rendered literally :

Bonos omnes perditum eunt, *They are going to destroy all the good*. Sall.

But in subordinate clauses the Supine in *um* with the verb *eo* is often used for the simple verb :

Ultum ire, (= ulcisci) injurias festinat, *He hastens to avenge the injuries*. Sall.

3. The Supine in *um* with *iri*, the infinitive passive of *eo*, forms, it will be remembered (241. III. 1), the Future Passive Infinitive :

Brutum visum iri a me puto, *I think Brutus will be seen by me*. Cic.

4. The Supine in *um* as an expression of purpose is not very common, its place is often supplied even after verbs of motion by other constructions :

1) By *ut* or *qui* with the Subjunctive. See 489.

2) By *Gerunds* or *Gerundives*. See 563. 5; 564. 2; 565. 3.

3) By *Participles*. See 578. V.

570. The Supine in *u* is generally used as an Ablative of Specification (429) :

Quid est tam jucundum auditu, *What is so agreeable to hear* (in hearing)? Cic. Difficile dictu est, *It is difficult to tell*. Cic.

1. The Supine in *u* is used chiefly with—jucundus, optimus—facilis, proclivis, difficilis—inereditibilis, memorabilis—honestus, turpis, fas, nefas—dignus, indignus—opus est.

2. The Supine in *u* is very rare, and does not occur with an object. The only examples in common use are : *auditu, cognitu, dictu, and factu*.

3. As the Supine in *u* is little used, its place is supplied by other constructions :

1) By *ad* with the Gerund : Verba ad audiendum jucunda, *words agreeable to hear*. Cic.

2) By the Infinitive : Facile est vincere, *It is easy to conquer*. Cic.

3) By a Finite Mood with an adverb : Non facile dijudicatur amor fictus, *Pre-tended love is not easy to detect* (is not easily detected). Cic.

SECTION XII.

PARTICIPLES.

I. TENSES OF PARTICIPLES.

571. Participles, like Infinitives, express only relative time, and represent the action as Present, Past, or Future, relatively to the principal verb.

PECULIARITIES.—Tenses in Participles present the leading peculiarities specified under the corresponding tenses in the Indicative. See 467. 2.

572. PRESENT PARTICIPLE.—The present participle represents the action as taking place at the time denoted by the principal verb :

Oculus se non videns alia cernit, *The eye, though it does not see itself* (not

seeing itself), *discerns other things*. Cic. Plāto scribens mortuus est, *Plato died while writing*. Cic.

573. FUTURE PARTICIPLE.—The future active participle represents the action as about to take place, in time subsequent to that of the principal verb:

Sāpiens bōna semper plācītūra laudat, *The wise man praises blessings which will always please* (being about to please). Sen.

But the Future Passive generally loses in a great degree its force as a tense, and is often best rendered by a verbal noun. See 562 and 580.

574. PERFECT PARTICIPLE.—The perfect participle represents the action as completed at the time of the principal verb.

Uva mātūrāta dulcescit, *The grape, when it has ripened* (having ripened), *becomes sweet*. Cic. *

1. The Perfect Participle, both in Deponent and in Passive verbs, is sometimes used of present time, and sometimes in Passive verbs it loses in a great degree its force as a tense, and is best rendered by a verbal noun. See 580.

2. For the Participle with *habeo*, see 383. 1. 2).

II. USE OF PARTICIPLES.

575. Participles are verbs in force, but Adjectives in form and inflection. As verbs they govern oblique cases, as adjectives they agree with nouns:

Anīmus se non vīdens ālia cernit, *The mind, though it does not see itself, discerns other things*. Cic.

1. Participles in the Present or Perfect, rarely in the Future, may be used as adjectives or nouns: *scripta epistōla*, a written letter; *mortuī*, the dead. Participles with the force of adjectives may be used as predicate adjectives with *sum*: *occūpātī erant*, they were occupied; as a verb, *had been occupied*.

576. Participles are used to abridge or shorten discourse by supplying the place of finite verbs with relatives or conjunctions. They are used with much greater freedom in Latin than in English.

577. PARTICIPLE FOR RELATIVE CLAUSE.—In abridged sentences, the Participle often supplies the place of a Relative Clause:

Omnes aliud agentes, aliud simulantés impróbi sunt, *All who do one thing and pretend another are dishonest.* Cic.

578. FOR OTHER SUBORDINATE CLAUSES.—The Participle often supplies the place of a subordinate clause with a conjunction. It may express,

I. Time :

Plāto scribens mortuus est, *Plato died while writing.* Cic. Itūri in proelium cānunt, *They sing when about to go into battle.* Tac.

II. Cause, Manner, Means :

Sol oriens diem conficit, *The sun by its rising causes the day.* Cic. Milites rēnuntiant, se perfidiam vērītos rēvertisse, *The soldiers report that they returned because they feared perfidy (having feared).* Caes.

III. Condition :

Mendāci hōmīni ne vērūm quīdem dicenti crēdere non sōlēmus, *We are not wont to believe a liar, even if he speaks the truth.* Cic. Rēluctante nātūra, irrītus lābor est, *If nature opposes, effort is vain.* Sen.

IV. Concession :

Scripta tua jam diu expectans, non audeo tāmen flāgītāre, *Though I have been long expecting your work, yet I do not dare to ask for it.* Cic.

V. Purpose :

Perseus rēdiit, belli cāsum tentātūrus, *Perseus returned to try (about to try) the fortune of war.* Liv. Attribuit nos trūcidandos Cēthēgo, *He assigned us to Cethegus to slaughter.* Cic.

579. PARTICIPLE FOR PRINCIPAL CLAUSE.—The Participle sometimes supplies the place of a principal or coördinate clause, and may accordingly be best rendered by a finite verb with *and* or *but* :

Classem dēvictam cēpit, *He conquered and took the fleet* (took the fleet conquered). Nep. Re consentientes vōcābūlis diffērebant, *They agreed in fact, but differed in words.* Cic.

580. PARTICIPLE FOR VERBAL NOUN.—The Passive Participle is often used in Latin where the English idiom requires a participial noun, or a verbal noun with *of* :

In āmīcis ēligendis, *in selecting friends.* Cic. Hōmērus fuit ante Rōmam condītā, *Homer lived (was) before the founding of Rome* (before Rome founded). Cic.

581. PARTICIPLE WITH NEGATIVE.—The Participle

with a negative, as *non*, *nihil*, is often best rendered by a participial noun and the preposition *without* :

Misĕrum est, nihil prŏficiĕntem angi, It is sad to be troubled without accomplishing anything. Cic. Non ĕrŭbescens, without blushing. Cic.



CHAPTER VI.

SYNTAX OF PARTICLES.

RULE LI.—Use of Adverbs.

582. Adverbs qualify VERBS, ADJECTIVES, and other ADVERBS :

Săpientes fĕlicĭter vivunt, The wise live happily. Cic. Făcile doctissimus, unquestionably the most learned. Cic. Haud Ăliter, not otherwise. Virg.

583. Adverbs are sometimes used with nouns :

1. When the nouns are used with the force of adjectives or participles :

Mĭnĭme largĭtor dux, a leader by no means liberal. Liv. Pŏpŭlus lăte rex, a people of extensive sway (ruling extensively). Virg.

2. When in sense a participle or verb may be supplied :

Mărius, plăne vir, Marius, truly a man. Cic. Omnes circa pŏpŭli, all the surrounding peoples. Liv. See also 353. 2.

584. The Common Negative Particles are : *non*, *ne*, *haud*.

1. *Non* is the usual negative, *ne* is used in prohibitions, wishes and purposes (489), and *haud*, in *haud scio an* and with adjectives and adverbs ; *haud mĭrăbile*, not wonderful ; *haud Ăliter*, not otherwise. *Ni* for *ne* is rare. *Ne non* after *vĭde* is often best rendered *whether*.

2. In *non mŏdo non* and in *non sŏlum non*, the second *non* is generally omitted before *sed*, or *vĕrum*, followed by *ne—quĭdem* or *vix* (rarely *ĕtiam*), when the verb of the second clause belongs also to the first :

Assentătio non mŏdo Ămico, sed ne libĕro quĭdem dĭgna est. Flattery is not only not worthy of a friend, but not even of a free man. Cic.

3. *Minus* often has nearly the force of *non* ; *si minus* = *si non*. *Sin Ăliter* has nearly the same force as *si mĭnus*.

585. Two Negatives are generally equivalent to an affirmative, as in English :

Nihil non arröget, Let him claim everything. Hor. Nēque hoc Zēno non videt, Nor did Zeno overlook this. Cic.

1. *Non* before a general negative gives it the force of an indefinite affirmative, but after such negative the force of a general affirmative :

Nonnēmo, some one; nonnihil, something; nonnunquam, sometimes.

Nēmo non, every one; nihil non, every thing; nunquam non, always.

2. After a general negative, *ne—quidem* gives emphasis to the negation, and *nēque—nēque, nēve—nēve*, and the like, repeat the negation distributively :

Non praetereundum est ne id quidem, We must not pass by even this. Cic. Nēmo unquam nēque poëta nēque orator fuit, No one was ever either a poet or orator. Cic.

3. *Sic* and *ita* mean *so, thus*. *Ita* has also a limiting sense *in so far* which does not belong to *sic*, as in *ita—si* (503. 4). *Adco*, to such a degree or result; *tam, tantöpère*, so much, *tam* used mostly before adjectives and adverbs, and *tantöpère* before verbs.

586. For the use of Prepositions, see 432 to 437.

587. Coördinate Conjunctions unite similar constructions (309). They comprise five classes :

I. Copulative Conjunctions denote union :

Castor et Pollux, Castor and Pollux. Cic. Sēnātus pōpulusque, the senate and people. Cic. Nec erat diffīcile, Nor was it difficult. Liv.

1. LIST. See 310. 1.

2. DIFFERENCE IN FORCE.—*Et* simply connects; *que* implies a more intimate relationship; *atque* generally gives prominence to what follows, especially at the beginning of a sentence; *ac*, abbreviated from *atque*, has generally the force of *et*. *Nēque* and *nec* have the force of *et non*. *Et* and *etiam* sometimes mean *even*.

Atque and *ac* generally mean *as, than* after adjectives and adverbs of likeness and unlikeness; *similis, dissimilis, similiter, par, pariter, aequè, aliud, aliter, sēcus: aequè ac*, equally as; *aliter atque*, otherwise than. See also 451. 5.

3. QUE, AC, ATQUE.—*Que* is an enclitic, i. e., is always appended to some other word. *Ac* in the best prose is used only before consonants; *atque*, either before vowels or consonants.

4. ETIAM, QUOQUE, ADEO, and the like, are sometimes associated with *et, atque, ac*, and *que*, and sometimes even supply their place. *Quōque* follows the word which it connects: *is quōque*, he also. *Etiā*, also, further, even, is more comprehensive than *quōque* and often adds a new circumstance.

5. CORRELATIVES.—Sometimes two copulatives are used: *et (que)—et (que), tum—tum, quum—tum, both—and*; but *quum—tum* gives prominence to the second word or clause; *non solum (non modo, or non tantum)—sed etiam (vtrum etiam), not only—but also; nēque (nec)—nēque (nec), neither—nor; nēque (nec)—et (que), not—but (and); et—nēque (nec), (both)—and not.*

6. OMITTED.—Between two words connected copulatively the conjunction is generally expressed, though sometimes omitted, especially between the names of two colleagues. Between several words it is in the best prose generally repeated or

omitted altogether, though *que* may be used with the last even when the conjunction is omitted between the others: *pax et tranquillitas et concordia*, or *pax, tranquillitas, concordia*, or *pax, tranquillitas, concordiaque*.

Et is often omitted between conditional clauses, except before *non*.

II. Disjunctive Conjunctions denote separation :

Aut vestra aut sua culpa, either your fault, or his own. Liv. *Duābus tribusve hōris, in two or three hours.* Cic.

1. LIST. See 310. 2.

2. *AUT, VEL, VE.*—*Aut* denotes a stronger antithesis than *vel*, and must be used if the one supposition excludes the other: *aut verum aut falsum*, either true or false. *Vel* implies a difference in the expression rather than in the thing. It is generally corrective and is often followed by *pōtius, etiam* or *dicam: laudatur vel etiam amatur*, he is praised, or even (rather) loved. It sometimes means *even* and sometimes *for example*. *Velut* often means *for example*. *Ve* for *vel* is appended as an enclitic.

In negative clauses *aut* and *ve* often continue the negation: *non honor aut virtus*, neither (not) honor nor virtue.

3. *SIVE (si—ve)* does not imply any real difference or opposition; it often connects different names of the same object: *Pallas sive Minerva*, Pallas or Minerva (another name of the same goddess).

III. Adversative Conjunctions denote opposition or contrast :

Cūpio me esse clēmentem, sed me inertiae condemno, I wish to be mild, but I condemn myself for inaction. Cic.

1. LIST. See 310. 3.

2. *DIFFERENCE IN FORCE.*—*Sed* and *verum* mark a direct opposition; *autem* and *vērō* only a transition; *at* emphasizes the opposition; *atqui* often introduces an objection; *cētērum*, but still, as to the rest; *tāmen*, yet.

3. *COMPOUNDS OF TAMEN* are: *attāmen, sedtāmen, vēruntāmen*, but yet.

4. *AUTEM* and *VERO* follow the words which they connect: *hic autem, hic vērō*, but this one. They are often omitted, especially before *non*. They are admissible with *qui* only when it is followed by its antecedent.

IV. Illative Conjunctions denote inference :

In umbra igitur pugnābimus, We shall therefore fight in the shade. Cic.

1. LIST. See 310. 4.

2. *OTHER WORDS.*—Certain other words, sometimes classed with adverbs and sometimes with conjunctions, are also illatives: *eo, ideo, idcirco, propterea, quāobrem, quāpropter, quāre, quōcirca*.

3. *IGITUR.*—This generally follows the word which it connects: *hic igitur*, this one therefore. After a digression *igitur, sed, sed tāmen, verum, verum tāmen*, etc., are often used to resume an interrupted thought or construction. They may often be rendered *I say: Sed si quis; if any one, I say*.

V. Causal Conjunctions denote cause :

Difficile est consilium: sum enim sōlus, Counsel is difficult, for I am alone. Cic. *Et enim jus amant, For they love the right.* Cic.

1. LIST. See 310. 5.

2. ETENIM and NAMQUE denote a closer connection than *enim* and *nam*.

3. ENIM follows its word.

588. Subordinate Conjunctions connect subordinate with principal constructions (309. II.). They comprise eight classes.

I. Temporal Conjunctions denote time :

Pāruit quum nēcesse ērat, *He obeyed when it was necessary*. Cic. Dum ego in Sicīlia sum, *while I am in Sicily*. Cic. See also 311. 1; 521-523.

1. DUM added to a negative means *yet*; *nondum*, not yet; *vixdum*, scarcely yet.

II. Comparative Conjunctions denote comparison :

Ut optasti, ita est, *It is as you desired*. Cic. Vēlut si ādesset, *as if he were present*. Caes. See also 311. 2; 503, 506.

1. CORRELATIVES are often used : Tam—quam, *as, so—as, as much as*; tam—quam quod maxime, *as much as possible*; non minus—quam, *not less than*; non māgis—quam, *not more than*.

Tam—quam and ut—ita with a superlative are sometimes best rendered by the with the comparative : ut maxime—ita maxime, *the more—the more*.

III. Conditional Conjunctions denote condition :

Si peccāvi, ignosce, *If I have erred, pardon me*. Cic. Nisi est concilium dōmi, *unless there is wisdom at home*. Cic. See also 311. 3; 503. 507.

1. Nisi, if not, in negative sentences often means *except*, and nisi quod, *except that*, may be used even in affirmative sentences. Nisi may mean *than*. Nihil aliud nisi = *nothing further (more, except)*; nihil aliud quam = *nothing else (other than)*.

IV. Concessive Conjunctions denote concession :

Quamquam intelligunt, *though they understand*. Cic. Etsi nihil hābeat, *although he has nothing*. Cic. See also 311. 4; 515. 516.

V. Final Conjunctions denote purpose :

Esse oportet, ut vivas, *It is necessary to eat, that you may live*. Cic. See also 311. 5; 489-499.

VI. Consecutive Conjunctions denote consequence or result :

Atticus ita vixit, ut Athēniensibus esset cārissimus, *Atticus so lived that he was very dear to the Athenians*. Nep. See also 311. 6; 489-499.

VII. Causal Conjunctions denote cause :

Quae quum ita sint, *Since these things are so*. Cic. See also 311. 7; 517. 518.

VIII. Interrogative Conjunctions or Particles denote inquiry or question :

Quaesiēras, nonne pūtārem, *You had asked whether I did not think*. Cic. See also 311. 8; 346. II., 525. 526.

IV. INTERJECTIONS.

589. Interjections are sometimes used entirely alone, as *heu*, alas! and sometimes with certain cases of nouns. See 381 and 381. 3.

590. Various parts of speech, and even oaths and imprecations, sometimes have the force of interjections. Thus:

Pax (*peace*), *be still!* *miserum*, *miserabile*, *sad*, *lamentable!* *oro*, *pray!* *age*, *agite*, *come, well!* *mehercules*, *by Hercules!* *per deum fidem*, *in the name of the gods!* *sodes* = *si audes* (*for audies*), *if you will hear!*

CHAPTER VII.

RULES OF SYNTAX.

591. For convenience of reference, the principal Rules of Syntax are here introduced in a body. The enclosed numerals refer to the various articles in the work where the several topics are more fully discussed.

NOUNS.

AGREEMENT.

I. A PREDICATE NOUN denoting the same person or thing as its Subject, agrees with it in CASE (362):

Ego sum nuntius, *I am a messenger.* Liv.

II. An APPOSITIVE agrees with its Subject in CASE (363):

Cluilius rex moritur, *Cluilius the king dies.* Liv.

NOMINATIVE.

III. The Subject of a Finite verb is put in the Nominative (367):

Servius regnavit, *Servius reigned.* Liv.

VOCATIVE.

IV. The Name of the person or thing addressed is put in the Vocative (369):

Perge, *Laeli*, *Proceed*, *Laelius.* Cic.

ACCUSATIVE.

V. The DIRECT OBJECT of an action is put in the Accusative (371):

Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God made the world.* Cic.

VI. Verbs of MAKING, CHOOSING, CALLING, REGARDING, SHOWING, and the like, admit two Accusatives of the same person or thing (373):

Hāmleărem impērătorem fēcērunt, *They made Hamilear commander.* Nep.

VII. Some verbs of ASKING, DEMANDING, TEACHING, and CONCEALING, admit two Accusatives in the Active, and one in the Passive (374):

Me sententiam rōgāvit, *He asked me my opinion.* Cic.

VIII. DURATION OF TIME AND EXTENT OF SPACE are expressed by the Accusative (378):

Septem et trīginta regnāvit annos, *He reigned thirty-seven years.* Liv.
Quinque millia passuum ambŭlāre, *to walk five miles.* Cic.

IX. The Name of a Town used as the Limit of motion is put in the Accusative (379):

Nuntius Rōmam rēdit, *The messenger returns to Rome.* Liv.

X. A Verb or Adjective may take an Adverbial Accusative to define its application (380):

Căpita vėlāmur, *We have our heads veiled.* Virg. Nŭbe hŭmēros
ămictus, *with his shoulders enveloped in a cloud.* Hor.

XI. The Accusative, either with or without an Interjection, may be used in Exclamations (381):

Ieu me mīsčrum, *Ah me unhappy!* Cic.

DATIVE.

XII. The INDIRECT OBJECT is put in the Dative (384):

Tempōri cēdit, *He yields to the time.* Cic.

Dative of Advantage and Disadvantage (385).

Dative with Compounds (386).

Dative of Possessor (387).

Dative of Apparent Agent (388).

Ethical Dative (389).

XIII. Two Datives—the OBJECT TO WHICH and the OBJECT FOR WHICH—occur with a few verbs (390):

Mālo est hōmīnībus āvārītia, Avarice is (for) an evil to men. Cic.

XIV. With Adjectives the OBJECT TO WHICH the quality is directed is put in the Dative (391):

Omnībus cārum est, It is dear to all. Cic.

XV. A few Derivative Nouns and Adverbs take the Dative after the analogy of their primitives (392):

Obtempĕrātio lĕgībus, obedience to the laws. Cic. *Congruenter nātūrae, agreeably to nature.* Cic.

GENITIVE.

XVI. Any noun, not an Appositive, qualifying the meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive (395):

Cātōnis ōrātīōnes, Cato's orations. Cic.

XVII. Many Adjectives take a Genitive to complete their meaning (399):

Avīdus laudis, desirous of praise. Cic.

XVIII. A Predicate Noun denoting a different person or thing from its Subject, is put in the Genitive (401):

Omnia hostium ĕrant, All things belonged to (were of) the enemy. Liv.

XIX. The Genitive is used (406),

I. With **mīśĕreor** and **mīśĕresco**:

Mīśĕrĕre lābōrum, pity the labors. Virg.

II. With **rĕcōrdor**, **mĕmīni**, **rĕmīnīscor**, and **oblīviscor**:

Mĕmīnit practĕrītōrum, He remembers the past. Cic.

III. With **rĕfĕrt** and **intĕrest**:

Intĕrest omnium, It is the interest of all. Cic.

XX. A few verbs take the Accusative of the Person and the Genitive of the Thing (410):

I. Verbs of *Reminding, Admonishing*:

Te āmīcītīae commōnĕſcīt, He reminds you of friendship. Cic.

II. Verbs of *Accusing, Convicting, Acquitting*:

Vīros scĕlĕris arguis, You accuse men of crime. Cic.

III. *Mīśĕret, Poenītet, Pūdet, Taedet, and Pīget*:

Eōrum nos mīśĕret, We pity them. Cic.

For the *Genitive of Place*, see Rule XXVI.

ABLATIVE.

XXI. CAUSE, MANNER, and MEANS are denoted by the Ablative (414):

Utilitāte laudātur, *It is praised because of its usefulness.* Cic.

XXII. PRICE is generally denoted by the Ablative (416):

Vendidit auro patriam, *He sold his country for gold.* Virg.

XXIII. Comparatives without QUAM are followed by the Ablative (417):

Nihil est amabilius virtute, *Nothing is more lovely than virtue.* Cic.

XXIV. The MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE is denoted by the Ablative (418):

Uno die longior, *longer by one day.* Cic.

XXV. The Ablative is used (419),

I. With **utor**, **fruo**, **fungor**, **pōtor**, **vescor**, and their compounds:

Plurimis rebus fruimur, *We enjoy very many things.* Cic.

II. With **fido**, **confido**, **nitor**, **innitor**:

Salus veritate nititur, *Safety rests upon truth.* Cic.

III. With VERBS and ADJECTIVES OF PLENTY and WANT:

Non egeo medicina, *I do not need a remedy.* Cic.

IV. With **dignus**, **indignus**, **contentus**, and **frētus**:

Digni sunt amicitia, *They are worthy of friendship.* Cic.

V. With **opus** and **usus**:

Auctoritate tua nobis opus est, *We need your authority.* Cic.

XXVI. I. The PLACE IN WHICH and the PLACE FROM WHICH are generally denoted by the Ablative with a Preposition. But

II. NAMES OF TOWNS drop the Preposition, and in the Singular of the First and Second declensions designate the PLACE IN WHICH by the Genitive (421):

In Italia fuit, *He was in Italy.* Nep. Ex Africa, *from Africa.* Liv. Athenis fuit, *He was at Athens.* Cic. Romae fuit, *He was at Rome.* Cic.

XXVII. SOURCE and SEPARATION are denoted by the Ablative, generally with a preposition (425):

Oriundi ab Săbimis, *deseended from the Sabines*. Liv. Caedem a vōbis dēpello, *I ward off slaughter from you*. Cic.

XXVIII. The TIME of an Action is denoted by the Ablative (426):

Octōgēsīmo anno est mortuus, *He died in his eightieth year*. Cic.

XXIX. The Ablative with an adjective may be used to characterize a person or thing (428):

Summa virtūte ādōlescens, *a youth of the highest virtue*. Caes.

XXX. The Ablative may be used with a word to define its application (429):

Nōmīne, non pōtestāte fuit rex, *He was king in name, not in power*. Nep.

XXXI. The Ablative is used as the CASE ABSOLUTE (431):

Servio regnante, *in the reign of Servius* (Servius reigning). Cic.

CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS.

XXXII. The Accusative and Ablative may be used with Prepositions (432):

Ad āmicū, *to a friend*. Cic. In Itālia, *in Italy*. Nep.

ADJECTIVES.

XXXIII. An Adjective agrees with its Noun in GENDER, NUMBER, and CASE (438):

Fortūna caeca est, *Fortune is blind*. Cic.

PRONOUNS.

XXXIV. A Pronoun agrees with its Antecedent in GENDER, NUMBER, and PERSON (445):

Animāl, quod sanguinem hābet, *an animal which has blood*. Cic.

VERBS.

AGREEMENT.

XXXV. A Finite Verb agrees with its Subject in NUMBER and PERSON (460):

Ego rēges ejeci, *I have banished kings*. Cic.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

XXXVI. The Indicative is used in treating of facts (474):

Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God made the world.* Cic.

SUBJUNCTIVE TENSES.

XXXVII. Principal tenses depend upon Principal tenses: Historical, upon Historical (480):

Nititur ut vincat, *He strives to conquer.* Cic. Quaesieras nonne pūtārem, *You had asked whether I did not think.* Cic.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

XXXVIII. The POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE represents the action not as real, but as *possible* (485):

Forsitan quaerātis, *perhaps you may inquire.* Cic.

XXXIX. The SUBJUNCTIVE OF DESIRE represents the action not as real, but as *desired* (487):

Vāleant cīves, *May the citizens be well.* Cic.

XL. The SUBJUNCTIVE OF PURPOSE OR RESULT is used (489),

I. With **ut, ne, quo, quin, quōmīnus**:

Enītur ut vincat, *He strives that he may conquer.* Cic.

II. With **qui = ut is, ut ego, tu, etc.**:

Missi sunt, qui (*ut ii*) consūlerent Apollīnem, *They were sent to consult Apollo.* Nep.

XLI. The SUBJUNCTIVE OF CONDITION is used (503),

I. With **dum, mōdo, dummōdo**:

Mōdo permāneat industria, *if only industry remains.* Cic.

II. With **ac si, ut si, quāsi, quam si, tanquam, tanquam si, vēlut, vēlut si**:

Vēlut si ādesset, *as if he were present.* Caes.

III. Sometimes with **si, nīsi, ni, sin, qui = si is, si quis**:

Si vēlim nūmērāre, *if I should wish to recount.* Cic.

XLII. The SUBJUNCTIVE OF CONCESSION is used (515),

I. With **licet, quamvis, quantumvis, ut, ne, quum**, although:

Līcet irrīdeat, *though he may deride.* Cic.

II. With **qui = quum** (licet) **is**, **quum** **ěgo**, etc., though he:
Absolvite Verrem, qui (*quum is*) fāteātur, *Acquit Verres, though he confesses.* Cic.

III. Generally with **etsi**, **tāmetsi**, **ětiamsi**:

Etsi optimum sit, *even if* (though) *it be most excellent.* Cic.

XLIII. The **SUBJUNCTIVE OF CAUSE OR REASON** is used (517),

I. With **quum** (cum), since; **qui = quum is**, etc.

Quum vita mētus plēna sit, *since life is full of fear.* Cic.

II. With **quod**, **quia**, **quōniam**, **quando**, to introduce a reason on another's authority:

Quod corrupēret jūventūtem, *because* (on the ground that) *he corrupted the youth.* Quint.

XLIV. The **SUBJUNCTIVE OF TIME** with the accessory notion of **CAUSE OR PURPOSE** is used (521),

I. With **dum**, **dōnec**, **quoad**, until:

Exspectas, dum dicat, *You are waiting till he speaks*, i. e., that he may speak. Cic.

II. With **antēquam**, **priusquam**, before:

Antēquam de re pūblica dicam, *before I (can) speak of the republic.* Cic.

XLV. The **Subjunctive** is used in **INDIRECT QUESTIONS** (525):

Quid dies fērat, incertum est, *What a day may bring forth is uncertain.* Cic.

XLVI. The **Subjunctive by Attraction** is often used in clauses dependent upon the **Subjunctive** (527):

Vēreor, ne, dum mīnuere vēlim lābōrem, augeam, *I fear I shall increase the labor, while I wish to diminish it.* Cic.

XLVII. The **Subjunctive** is generally used in the **Interrogative**, **Imperative**, and **Subordinate clauses** of the **Oratio Obliqua** (529):

Respondit, cur vēnīret, *He replied, why did he come.* Caes. Scribit Lābiēno vēniat, *He writes to Labienus to come.* Caes.

IMPERATIVE.

XLVIII. The **Imperative** is used in commands, exhortations, and entreaties (535):

Justitiam cōle, *Practise justice.* Cic.

INFINITIVE.

XLIX. The Subject of an Infinitive is put in the Accusative (545):

Sentimus cālēre ignem, *We perceive that fire is hot.* Cic.

PARTICIPLES, GERUNDS, AND SUPINES.

Participles are construed as adjectives (575), Gerunds and Supines as nouns (559, 567). But

L. The Supine in *um* is used after verbs of motion to express PURPOSE (569):

Vēnērunt res rēpētītum, *They came to demand restitution.* Liv.

PARTICLES.

LI. Adverbs qualify VERBS, ADJECTIVES, and other ADVERBS (582):

Sāpientes fēliciter vīvunt, *The wise live happily.* Cic.

1. For PREPOSITIONS, see Rule XXXII.

2. CONJUNCTIONS are mere connectives. See 587 and 588.

3. INTERJECTIONS are expressions of emotion or mere marks of address. See 589.

CHAPTER VIII.

ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS AND CLAUSES.

SECTION I.

ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS.

592. The Latin admits of great variety in the arrangement of the different parts of the sentence, thus affording peculiar facilities both for securing proper emphasis and for imparting to its periods that harmonious flow which characterizes the Latin classics. But with all this freedom and variety, there are certain general laws of arrangement which it will be useful to notice.

I. GENERAL RULES.

593. The Subject followed by its modifiers occupies the first place in the sentence, and the Predicate preceded by its modifiers the last place:

Sol oriens diem conficit, *The sun rising makes the day.* Cic. Anîmus aeger semper errat, *A diseased mind always errs.* Cic. Miltiâdes Athēnas libērāvit, *Miltiades liberated Athens.* Nep.

594. Emphasis and euphony often affect the arrangement of words:

I. BEGINNING.—Any word, except the subject, may be made *emphatic* by being placed at the beginning of the sentence:

Silent lēges inter arma, *Laws are silent in war.* Cic. Nūmītōri Rēmus dēditur, *Remus is delivered to Numitor.* Liv. Igni āger vastābatur, *The field was ravaged with fire.* Sall.

II. END.—Any word, except the predicate, may be rendered *emphatic* by being placed at the end of the sentence:

Nōbis non sātisfacit ipse Dēmōsthēnes, *Even Demosthenes does not satisfy us.* Cic. Consulātum pētivit nunquam, *He never sought the consulship.* Cic. Existit quaedam quaestio subdificilis, *There arises a question somewhat difficult.* Cic.

III. SEPARATION.—Two words naturally connected, as a noun and its adjective, or a noun and its genitive, are sometimes made *emphatic* by separation:

Objurgātiōnes nonnunquam incidunt nēcessāriæ, *Sometimes necessary reproofs occur.* Cic. Justītiæ fungātur officiis, *Let him discharge the duties of justice.* Cic.

595. CONTRASTED GROUPS.—When two groups of words are contrasted, the order of the first is often reversed in the second:

Frāgile corpus ānîmus sempiternus mōvet, *The imperishable soul moves the perishable body.* Cic.

596. KINDRED WORDS.—Different forms of the same word, or different words of the same derivation, are generally placed near each other:

Ad sēnem sēnex de sēnectāte scripsi, *I, an old man, wrote to an old man on the subject of old age.* Cic. Inter se āliis ālii prōsunt, *They mutually benefit each other.* Cic.

597. WORDS WITH A COMMON RELATION.—A word which has a common relation to two other words connected by conjunctions, is placed,

I. Generally before or after both :

Pācis et artes et glōria, both the arts and the glory of peace. Liv. *Belli pācisque artes, the arts of war and of peace.* Liv.

A Genitive or Adjective following two nouns may qualify both, but it more frequently qualifies only the latter :

Haec percunctatio ac dēnuntiatio belli, this inquiry and this declaration of war. Liv.

II. Sometimes directly after the first before the conjunction :

Hōnōris certāmen et glōriae, a struggle for honor and glory. Cic. *Agri omnes et mǎria, all lands and seas.* Cic.

II. SPECIAL RULES.

598. MODIFIERS OF NOUNS.—The modifiers of a noun generally follow it. They may be either adjectives or nouns :

Pōpulus Rōmānus dēcrēvit, The Roman people decreed. Cic. *Hērōdōtus, pāter histōriae, Herodotus, the father of history.* Cic. *Liber de officiis, the book on duties.* Cic.

1. **NOUN.**—A noun as modifier of another noun is generally an appositive, a genitive, or a case with a preposition, as in the examples.

2. **WITH EMPHASIS.**—Modifiers when emphatic are placed before their nouns :

Tuscus āger Rōmāno adjācet, The Tuscan territory borders on the Roman. Liv. *Cātōnis ōrātiōnes, Cato's orations.* Cic.

3. **ADJECTIVE AND GENITIVE.**—When a noun is modified both by an adjective and by a genitive, the usual order is, *adjective—genitive—noun* :

Magna cīvium pēnūria, a great scarcity of citizens. Cic.

599. MODIFIERS OF ADJECTIVES.—The modifiers of the adjective generally precede it, but, if not adverbs, they may follow it :

Fācile doctissimus, unquestionably the most learned. Cic. *Omni aetāti commūnis, common to every age.* Cic. *Avīdus laudis, desirous of praise.* Cic.

600. MODIFIERS OF VERBS.—The modifiers of the verb generally precede it :

Glōria virtūtem sēquītur, Glory follows virtue. Cic. *Mundus deo pāret, The world is subject to God.* Cic. *Vehēmenter dixit, He spoke vehemently.* Cic. *Glōria dūcitur, He is led by glory.* Cic.

1. **AFTER THE VERB.**—When the verb is placed for the sake of emphasis at the beginning of the sentence, the modifiers, of course, follow. See first example under 594. I.

2. **EMPHASIS.**—An emphatic modifier may of course stand at the beginning or at the end of the sentence (594):

Fācillīme cognoscuntur ādōlescentes, Most easily are the young men recognized. Cic.

3. **TWO OR MORE MODIFIERS.**—Of two or more modifiers belonging to the same verb, that which in thought is most intimately connected with the verb stands next to it, while the others are arranged as emphasis and euphony may require:

Rex Scythi bellum intulit, The king waged war against the Scythians. Nep. *Mors propter brevitatē vitae nunquam longe ābest, Death is never far distant, in consequence of the shortness of life.* Cic.

601. MODIFIERS OF ADVERBS.—The modifiers of the adverb generally precede it, but a Dative often follows it:

Valde vehēmenter dixit, He spoke very vehemently. Cic. *Congruenter nātūrae vivit, He lives agreeably to nature.* Cic.

602. SPECIAL WORDS.—Some words have a favorite place in the sentence, which they seldom leave. Thus,

I. The *Demonstrative* generally precedes its noun:

Custos hujus urbis, the guardian of this city. Cic.

1. *Ille* in the sense of well-known (450. 5) generally follows its noun, if not accompanied by an adjective:

Mēdēa illa, that well-known Medea. Cic.

2. *Quisque*, the indefinite pronoun, follows some other word:

Iustitia suum enīque tribuit, Justice gives to every man his due (his own). Cic.

II. *Prepositions* generally stand directly before their cases, but *tēnus* and *versus* follow their cases:

In Asiam prōfūgit, He fled into Asia. Cic. *Collo tēnus, up to the neck.* Ov.

1. **AFTER A PRONOUN.**—The preposition frequently follows the relative, sometimes other pronouns, and sometimes even nouns, especially in poetry:

Res qua de āgitur, the subject of which we are treating. Cic. *Itāliam contra, over against Italy.* Virg.

2. **CUM APPENDED.**—See 184. 6 and 187. 2.

3. **INTERVENING WORDS.**—Genitives, adverbs, and a few other words sometimes stand between the preposition and its case. In adjurations *per* is usually separated from its case by the Acc. of the object adjured, or by some other word; and sometimes the verb *oro* is omitted:

Post Alexandri magni mortem, after the death of Alexander the Great. Cic. *Ad bēne vivendum, for living well.* Cic. *Per te deos oro, I pray you in the name of the gods.* Ter. *Per ego vos deos = per ego vos oro (oro understood). I pray you in the name of the gods.* Curt.

III. *Conjunctions* and *Relatives*, when they introduce clauses, generally

stand at the beginning of such clauses; but *autem*, *enim*, *quidem*, *quodque*, *verò*, and generally *igitur*, follow some other word:

Si peccāvi, ignosce, *If I have erred, pardon me.* Cic. Ii qui sup̄eriōres sunt, *those who are superior.* Cic. Ipse autem omnia vidēbat, *But he himself saw all things.* Cic.

1. EMPHATIC WORDS and RELATIVES often precede the conjunction.

Id ut audivit, *as he heard this.* Nep. Quae quum ita sint, *since these things are so.* Cic.

2. NE—QUIDEM takes the emphatic word or words between the two parts:

Ne in oppidis quidem, *not even in the towns.* Cic.

3. Quidem often follows pronouns, superlatives, and ordinals:

Ex me quidem nihil audiet, *He will hear nothing from me.* Cic.

4. Que, ve, ne, introducing a clause or phrase, are generally appended to the first word, but if that word is a monosyllabic preposition, they are often appended to the next word: *ad plēbemve*, for *adve*, etc., or to the people; *in fōrōque* = *inque fōro*, and in the forum. *Apud quosque*, and before whom, occurs for euphony.

IV. *Non*, when it qualifies some single word, stands directly before that word, but when it is particularly emphatic, or qualifies the entire clause, it generally stands at the beginning of the clause:

Hac villa cārere non possunt, *They are not able to do without this villa.* Cic. Non fuit Jūpiter mētendus, *Jupiter was not to be feared.* Cic.

V. *Inquam*, sometimes *Aio*, introducing a quotation, follows one or more of the words quoted. The subject, if expressed, generally follows its verb:

Nihil, inquit Brūtus, quod dicam, *Nothing which I shall state, said Brutus.* Cic.

VI. The Vocative rarely stands at the beginning of a sentence. It usually follows an emphatic word:

Perge, Laeli, *Proceed, Laelius.* Cic.

SECTION II.

ARRANGEMENT OF CLAUSES.

I. IN COMPLEX SENTENCES.

603. SUBJECT OR PREDICATE.—A clause used as the subject of a complex sentence (357) generally stands at the beginning of the sentence, and a clause used as the predicate at the end:

Quid dies fērat incertum est, *What a day may bring forth is uncertain.* Cic. Exitus fuit orātōnis: sibi nullam cum his āmicitiā esse, *The close of the oration was, that he had no friendship with these men.* Cacs.

1. This arrangement is the same as that of the simple sentence. See 593.

2. Emphasis and euphony often have the same effect upon the arrangement of clauses as of words. See 594.

604. SUBORDINATE ELEMENTS.—Clauses used as the subordinate elements of complex sentences, admit three different arrangements:

I. They are generally inserted within the principal clause, like the subordinate elements of a simple sentence:

Hostes, ubi primum nostros equites conspexerunt, celeriter nostros perturbaverunt, *The enemy, as soon as they saw our cavalry, quickly put our men to rout.* Caes. Sententia, quae tutissima videbatur, vicit, *The opinion which seemed the safest prevailed.* Liv.

II. They are often placed before the principal clause:

Quum quiescunt, probant, *While they are quiet, they approve.* Cic. Quālis sit animus, animus nescit, *The soul knows not what the soul is.* Cic. Si haec civitas est, civis sum ego, *If this is a state I am a citizen.* Cic.

This arrangement is especially common when the subordinate clause either refers back to the preceding sentence, or is preparatory to the thought of the principal clause. Hence *temporal*, *conditional*, and *concessive* clauses often precede the principal clause. Hence also, in sentences composed of correlative clauses with *is—qui, talis—quālis, tantus—quantus, tum—quum, ita—ut*, etc., the relative member, i. e., the clause with *qui, quālis, quantus, quum, ut*, etc., generally precedes.

III. They sometimes follow the principal clause:

Enititur ut vincat, *He strives that he may conquer.* Cic. Sol efficit ut omnia floreat, *The sun causes all things to bloom.* Cic.

This arrangement is common when the subordinate clause is either intimately connected in thought with the following sentence or is explanatory of the principal clause. Hence clauses of *Purpose* and *Result* generally follow the principal clause, as in the examples. See also examples under articles 489–499.

605. LATIN PERIOD.—A complex sentence in which the subordinate clause is inserted within the principal clause, as under I., is called a Period in the strict sense of the word.

In a freer sense the same term is also applied to any sentence in which the clauses are so arranged as not to make complete sense before the end of the sentence. In this sense the examples under II. are periods.

II. IN COMPOUND SENTENCES.

606. Clauses connected by coördinate conjunctions (587) generally follow each other in the natural order of the thought, as in English:

Sol ruit et montes umbrantur, *The sun descends and the mountains are shaded.* Virg. Gyges a nullo videbatur, ipse autem omnia videbat, *Gyges was seen by no one, but he himself saw all things.* Cic.

PART FOURTH.

P R O S O D Y .

607. Prosody treats of Quantity and Versification.



CHAPTER I.

QUANTITY.

608. The time occupied in pronouncing a syllable in poetry is called its quantity. Syllables are accordingly characterized as *long*, *short*, or *common*.¹

609. The quantity of syllables is determined by poetic usage. But this usage conforms in many cases to general laws, while in other cases it seems somewhat arbitrary.

1. Syllables whose quantity conforms to known rules are said to be long or short by *rule*.

2. Syllables whose quantity does not conform to known rules are said to be long or short by *authority*.

3. The rules for quantity are either *general*, i. e., applicable to most syllables, or *special*, i. e., applicable to particular syllables.

SECTION I.

GENERAL RULES OF QUANTITY.

610. RULE I.—Diphthongs and Contracted syllables are LONG :

Haec, coena, aura ; *ālius* for *ālius*, *cōgo* for *coīgo*, *occīdo* for *occādo*, *nīl* for *nihil*.

1. *Prae* in composition is usually short before a vowel : *praēcūsus*, *praēustus*.

2. *Ua*, *ue*, *ui*, *uo*, and *uu*, are not strictly diphthongs, and accordingly do not come under this rule.

¹ Sometimes long and sometimes short.

611. RULE II.—A vowel is LONG BY POSITION before *j*, *x*, *z*, or any two consonants:¹

Mājor, rēxi, gāza, mēnsa, servus.

1. But one of the consonants at least must belong to the same word as the vowel: *āb rūpe, pēr saxa.*

1) A final vowel is not usually affected by consonants at the beginning of the following word, except before *sc*, *sp*, *sq*, and *st*, where a short vowel is rare.

2) *H* and *U* must never be treated as consonants under this rule,² except in rare instances where *u* is so used by Synaeresis. See 669. II.

2. Before a mute followed by *L* or *R*, a vowel naturally short becomes common: *dūplex, āgri, pātres.*

1) In Greek words a vowel is also common before a mute with *M* or *N*: *Tēmessa, ejcnus.*

2) A mute at the end of the first part of a compound before a liquid at the beginning of the second part makes the preceding vowel long by position: *āb-rumpo, ōb-rōgo.*

3) A vowel naturally long, of course, remains long before a Mute and Liquid: *ācer, ācris.*

3. Compounds of *jūgum* retain the short vowel before *j*: *bijūgus, quadrījūgus.*

612. RULE III.—A vowel before another vowel, or a diphthong, is SHORT BY POSITION:

Pīus, pīae, dōcēo, trāho.

No account is taken of the breathing *h*; hence *a* in *trāho* is treated as a vowel before another vowel.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following are long before a vowel:

1. **A**,—(1) in the genitive ending *āi* of Dec. I.: *aulāi*,—(2) in proper names in *āius*: *Cāius* (Cajus),—(3) before *ia*, *ie*, *io*, *iu*, in the verb *aio*.

2. **E**,—(1) in the ending *ēi* of Dec. V. when preceded by a vowel: *dīēi*; and sometimes in *fīdēi*, *rēi*, *spēi*,—(2) in proper names in *eius*: *Pompēius*,—(3) in *ēheu*.

3. **I**,—(1) in the verb *fīo*, when not followed by *er*: *fīam*, *fīebam*, but *fīēri*,—(2) in the genitive *ālīus*. In other genitives *i* in *ius* is common in poetry, though long in prose, but the *i* in *altērīus* is short,—(3) in *dīus*, *a*, *um*, for *dīvus*, *a*, *um*,—(4) sometimes in *Dīāna*.

4. **O**,—is common in *ōhe*.

¹ Strictly speaking, the syllable, and not the vowel, is lengthened, but the language of convenience refers the quantity of the syllable to the vowel.

² *Qu*, *gu*, and *su*, when *u* has the sound of *u*, are treated as single consonants.

5. In Greek words vowels are often long before a vowel, because long in the original: *āer*, *Aenēas*, *Brīsēis*, *Mēnēlāus*, *Trōes*.

This often occurs in proper names in—*ēa*, *īa*, *ēus*, *īus*, *āon*, *ion*, *āis*, *ōis*, *ōius*: *Mēdēa*, *Alexandriā*, *Pēnēus*, *Dārius*, *Orion*.

SECTION II.

SPECIAL RULES OF QUANTITY.

I. QUANTITY OF FINAL SYLLABLES.

I. Monosyllables.

613. RULE IV.—Monosyllables are long:

ā, *dā*, *tē*, *sē*, *dē*, *sī*, *quī*, *dō*, *prō*, *tū*, *dōs*, *pēs*, *sis*, *bōs*, *sūs*, *pār*, *sōl*.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following are short:

1. Enclitics: *quē*, *vē*, *nē*, *cē*, *tē*, *psē*, *plē*.

2. Monosyllables in **b**, **d**, **l**, **t**: *āb*, *ād*, *fēl*, *mēl*, *āt*, *ēt*; except *sāl*, *sōl*.

3. *An*, *bis*, *cis*, *cōr*, *ēs*, *fūc*, *fēr*, *īn*, *īs*, *nēc*, *ōs* (ossis), *pēr*, *tār*, *quā* (plur. indef.), *quīs*, *vīr*; probably also *vās* (vādis), and sometimes *hēc* and *hēc* as Nom. or Acc. forms.

II. Polysyllables.

1. FINAL VOWELS.

614. RULE V.—In words of more than one syllable, the endings **a**, **e**, and **y** are short; **i** and **u**, long; **o**, common:

Viā, *māriā*, *mārē*, *mīsŷ*; *mārī*, *audī*, *fructū*, *cornū*; *āmō*, *sermō*.

615. **A** final is short: *mensā*, *templā*, *bōnā*.

EXCEPTIONS.—*A* final is long,

1. In the Ablative: *mensā*, *bōnā*, *illā*.

2. In the Vocative of Greek nouns in *as* (rarely *es*): *Aenēā*, *Pallā*.

3. In Verbs and Indeclinable words: *āmā*, *cūrā*; *circā*, *juxtā*, *antēā*, *frustrā*. Except *ilā*, *quiā*, *ejā*, and *pūtā* used adverbially.

616. **E** final is short: *servē*, *urbē*, *rēgē*.

EXCEPTIONS.—*E* final is long,

1. In Dec. I. and V.: *ēpitōmē*, *rē*, *diē*. Hence in the compounds—*hōdiē*, *prūdiē*, *postrūdiē*, *quārē*.

2. In Greek plurals of Dec. III.: *Tempē*, *mēlē*.

3. In the Sing. Imperative Act. of Conj. II. : *mōnē, dōcē*. But *e* is sometimes short in *cāvē*.

4. In *fērē, fermē, olē*, and in Adverbs from adjectives of Dec. II. : *doctē, rectē*. Except *bēnē, mālē, infernē, internē, supernē*.

617. **Y** *final* is short : *mīsŷ, mōlŷ, cōtŷ*.

EXCEPTIONS.—Contracted endings are, of course, long : *mīsŷ = mīsŷi*.

618. **I** *final* is long : *servī, bōnī, audī*.

EXCEPTIONS.—*I* *final* is,

1. COMMON in *mihī, tībī, sībī, ībī, ūbī*. But

Observe compounds *ibīdem, ibīque, ūbīque, ūbīnam, ūbīvis, ūbīcunque, necūbī, sicūbī*.

2. SHORT,—(1) in *nīsī, quāsī, cui* (when a dissyllable),—(2) in the Greek ending *sī* of Dat. and Abl. Plur. : *Troāsī*,—(3) in the Dat. and Voc. Sing., which end short in the Greek : *Alexī, Pāridī*.

Utī follows the rule, but not the compounds, *ūtīnam, ūtīque, sicūtī*.

619. **U** *final* is long : *fructū, cornū, dictū*.

EXCEPTIONS.—*Indū* for *in*, and *nēnu* for *non*.

620. **O** *final* is common : *āmō, sermō, virgō*.

EXCEPTIONS.—*O* *final* is,

1. LONG,—(1) in Datives and Ablatives : *servō, illō, quō*,—(2) in Greek words, when it represents a long Greek vowel : *ēchō, Argō*,—(3) in Adverbs : *falsō, multō, ergō, quandō, omnīnō*; except those mentioned under 2 below.

2. SHORT in *duō, ēgō, octō*, and the adverbs *citō, illīcō, immō, mōdō*, and its compounds, *dummōdō, quōmōdō*, etc.

2. FINAL SYLLABLES IN MUTES OR LIQUIDS,—

C, D, L, M, N, R, T.

621. RULE VI.—In words of more than one syllable,

Final syllables in **c** are long ;

Final syllables in **d, l, m, n, r, t**, are short :

ālēc, illūc; illūd, consūl, āmēm, carmēm, āmōr, cāpūt.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following occur,

1. *Dōnēc* and *liēn*.

2. *M* *final* with the preceding vowel is generally elided before a vowel.

See 669. I.

3. In Greek words,—(1) **en** is long; often also *an, in, on, yn*: *Hymēn, Anchīsēn, Titān, Delphīn, Actaeōn, Phorcyn*,—(2) **er** is long in *aēr, aethēr, crāter*, and a few other words with long ending in the original.

4. This rule does not, of course, apply to syllables long by previous rules.

3. FINAL SYLLABLES IN S.

622. **RULE VII.**—In words of more than one syllable, the endings **as, es, and os** are long; **is, us, ys,** short:

āmās, mensās, mōnēs, nūbēs, hōs, servōs; āvis, urbīs, bōnūs, servūs, chlāmŷs.

623. **As final** is long: *Aeneās, bōnās, illās.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*As final* is short,

1. In *anūs* and in a few Greek nouns in **ās**: *Arcās, lampās.*

2. In Greek Accusatives of Dec. III.: *Arcādūs, hērōās.*

624. **Es final** is long: *nūbēs, mōnēs.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*Es final* is short,

1. In Nominatives Singular of Dec. III., which increase short in the Gen.: *mīlēs* (Itis), *obsēs* (ĭdis), *interpretēs* (ētis). Except *ābiēs, āriēs, pūriēs, Cērēs*, and compounds of *pēs*; as *bīpēs, tripēs*, etc.

2. In *pēnēs* and the compounds of *ēs*; as *ādēs, pōtēs.*

3. In Greek words,—(1) in the plural of those which increase in the Gen.: *Arcādēs, Troādēs*,—(2) in a few neuters in **es**: *Hippōmēnēs*,—(3) in a few Vocatives singular: *Dēmōsthēnēs.*

625. **Os final** is long: *custōs, virōs.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*Os final* is short,

1. In *compōs, impōs, exōs.*

2. In Greek words with the ending short in the Greek: *Delōs, mēlōs.*

626. **Is final** is short: *āvis, cānis.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*Is final* is long,

1. In Plural Cases: *mensīs, servīs, vōbīs.*

Hence *fōrīs, grātīs, ingrātīs.*

2. In Nominatives of Dec. III., increasing long in the Gen.: *Quīrīs* (Itis). *Sūlāmīs* (Inis).

3. In the Sing. Pres. Indic. Act. of Conj. IV.: *audīs.*

Mūrīs, quīvīs, ūterrīs follow the quantity of *vīs.*

4. In the Sing. Pres. Subjunct. Act.: *possīs, vēlīs, nōlīs, mālīs.*

5. Sometimes in the Sing. of the Fut. Perf. and of the Perf. Subj.: *āmāvērīs, dōcuērīs.*

627. *Us final* is short: *servūs, bōnūs*.

EXCEPTIONS.—*Us final* is long,

1. In Nominatives of Dec. III. increasing long in the Gen.: *virtūs* (ūtis), *tellūs* (ūris).

But *pālūs* (u short) occurs in Horace. Ars P. 65.

2. In Dec. IV., in the Gen. Sing., and in the Nom. Acc. and Voc. Plur.: *fructūs*.

3. In Greek words ending long in the original: *Panthūs, Sapphūs, tripūs*.

But we have *Oedīpūs* and *pōlŷpūs*.

628. *Ÿs final* is short: *chlāmŷs, chēlŷs*.

EXCEPTIONS.—Contracted endings are of course long: *Erynnŷs* for *Erynnyes*.

II. QUANTITY IN INCREMENTS.

629. A word is said to *increase* in declension, when it has in any case more syllables than in the nominative singular, and to have as many *increments of declension* as it has additional syllables: *sermo, sermōnis, sermōnibus*.

Sermōnis, having one syllable more than *sermo*, has one increment, while *sermōnibus* has two increments.

630. A verb is said to *increase* in conjugation, when it has in any part more syllables than in the second person singular of the present indicative active, and to have as many *increments of conjugation* as it has additional syllables: *āmās, amātis, amābātis*.

Amātis has one increment, *amābātis* two.

631. If there is but one increment, it is uniformly the penult, if there are more than one, they are the penult with the requisite number of syllables before it. The increment nearest the beginning of the word is called the *first* increment, and those following this are called successively the *second, third, and fourth* increments. Thus

In *ser-mōn-¹i-bus*, the first increment is *mon*, the second *i*; and in *mon-¹u-²e-rā-mus*, the first is *u*, the second *e*, the third *ra*.

I. Increments of Declension.

632. RULE VIII.—In the Increments of Declension, **a** and **o** are long; **e, i, u,** and **y,** short:

actas, actātis, actātibus; sermo, sermōnis; puer, puēri, puērōrum;

fulgur, fulgūris; chłāmys, chlamýdis; bōnus, bonārum, bonōrum; ille, illārum, illōrum; mīser, misēri; supplex, supplicis; sātūr, satūri.

Vowels long or short by position are of course excepted.

633. A in the increments of declension is long: *pax, pācis; bōnus, bonārum; duo, duābūs.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*A* is short in the first increment,

1. Of masculines in **al** and **ar**: *Hannibal, Hannibālis; Caesar, Caesāris.*

Except *Car* and *Nar*.

2. Of nouns in **s** preceded by a consonant: *daps, dāpis; Arabs, Arābis.*

3. Of Greek nouns in **a** and **ās**: *poēma, poēmātis; Pallas, Pallādis.*

4. Of the following:—(1) *bacear, hēpar, jūbar, lar, nectar, par* and its compounds,—(2) *ānas, mas, vas* (vādis),—(3) *sal, fax*, and a few rare Greek words in *ax*.

634. O in the increments of declension is long: *hōnor, honōris; bōnus, bonōrum; duo, duōbus.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*O* is short in the first increment,

1. Of Neuters: *aequor, aequōris; tempus, tempōris.* Except *os* (ōris), *ādor* (adōris), and comparatives.

2. Of words in **s** preceded by a consonant; *inops, inōpis.* Except *Cyclops* and *hydrops*.

3. Of *arbor, bos, lēpus*,—*compos, impos, mēmor, immēmor*,—*Allōbrox, Cappādox, praecox.*

4. Of most Patrials: *Mācēdo, Macedōnis.*

5. Of many Greek nouns,—(1) those in **or**: *rhētor, Hector*,—(2) many in **o** and **on** increasing short in Greek: *aēdon, aedōnis*,—(3) in Greek compounds in **pūs**: *trīpus* (ōdis), *Oedīpus.*

635. E in the increments of declension is short: *puer, puērī; liber, libērī.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*E* is long in the first increment,

1. Of Decl. V., except in the forms *fīdēi, rēi*, and *spēi*; as *diēi, diērum, diēbus, rēbus.*

2. Of nouns in **ēn**, mostly Greek: *liēn, liēnis; Sīrēn, Sīrēnis.* So *Anio, Anīēnis.*

3. Of *Celtīber, Iber, ver*,—*hēres, lōcūples, merces, quies, inquires, rēquies, plēbs*,—*lex, rex, ālex, alex, vervex.*

4. Of a few Greek words in **es** and **er**, except *aēr* and *aether*; as *lēbes, lebētis; erāter, eratēris.*

636. I in the increments of declension is short: *mīles, mīlitis, mīlitibus; anceps, ancīpītis.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*I* is long in the first increment,

1. Of most words in **ix**: *rādix, radīcis; fēlix, felīcis.*

But short in: *appendix, cūlix, Cūlix, filix, fornix, nix, pix, sūlix, strix*, and a few others, chiefly proper names.

2. Of *dis, glis, lis, vis, Quīris, Samnis*.
3. Of *delphin* and a few rare Greek words.
4. For quantity of the ending **ius**, see 612. 3.

637. U in the increments of declension is short: *dux, dūcis; arcus, arcūbus; sātur, satūri*.

EXCEPTIONS.—*U* is long in the first increment,

1. Of nouns in **us** with the genitive in **uris, utis, udis**: *jus, jūris; sālus, salūtis; pālus, palūdis*. Except *intercus, Līqus, pēcus*.
2. Of *fur, frux, lux, plus, Pollux*.

638. Y in the increments of declension is short: *chlāmys, chlamydis*.

EXCEPTIONS.—This increment occurs only in Greek words, and is long in those in *yn, ynīs*, and in a few others.

II. Increments of Conjugation.

639. RULE IX.—In the Increments of Conjugation (630), **a, e, and o** are long; **i and u** short:

āmāmus, amēmus, amātōte, rēgimus, sūmus.

1. In ascertaining the increments of the irregular verbs, *fēro, vōlo*, and their compounds, the full form of the second person, *feris, volis*, etc., must be used. Thus in *fērēbam* and *vōlēbam*, the increments are *re* and *le*.

2. In ascertaining the increments of reduplicated forms (254), the reduplication is not counted. Thus *dēdīmus* has but one increment *di*.

640. A in the increments of conjugation is long: *āmāre*.

EXCEPTIONS.—*A* is short in the first increment of **do**: *dāre, dābam, circumdābam*.

641. E in the increments of conjugation is long: *mōnēre*.

EXCEPTIONS.—*E* is short before **r**,

1. In the tenses in **ram, rim, ro**: *āmāvēram, amavērīm, amavēro; rexerat, rexērīt*.

2. In first increment of the Present and Imperfect of Conj. III.: *rēgēre, regēris, regērem, regērer*.

3. In the Fut. ending *bēris, bēre*: *āmābēris, or -ēre, mōnēbēris*.

4. Rarely in the Perf. ending *erunt*: *stetērunt* for *stetērunt*. See 235, also *Systole*, 669. IV.

642. O in the increments of conjugation is long without exception: *mōnētōte, rēgītōte*.

643. I in the increments of conjugation is short: *rēgītis, rexīmus*.

EXCEPTIONS.—*I* is long, except before a vowel,

1. In the first increment of Conj. IV., except *īmus* of the Perf.: *audīre, audīvī, auditum*; *sentio, sentīmus, sensīmus* (perf.).

2. In Conj. III. in the first increment of perfects and supines in **īvi** and **itum** (276. III.) and of the parts derived from them (except *īmus* of Perf.: *trīvīmus*): *cūpīvi, cupivērat, cupītus*; *pētīvi, petītus*; *cāpessīvi, capessītūrus*. *Gāvīsus* from *gaudeo* follows the same analogy.

3. In the endings **īmus** and **ītis** of Pres. Subj.: *sīmus, sītis*; *vēlīmus, velītis* (239. 3).

4. In *nōlīte, nolīto, nolītōte*, and in the different persons of *ībam, ībo*, from *eo* (295).

5. Sometimes in the endings **rīmus** and **rītis** of the Fut. Perf. and Perf. Subj.: *āmāvērīmus, amāvērītis*.

644. U in the increments of conjugation is short: *vōlūmus*.

EXCEPTIONS.—*U* is long in the Supine and the parts formed from it: *vōlūtum, volūtūrus, amātūrus*.

III. QUANTITY OF DERIVATIVE ENDINGS.

645. RULE X.—The following derivative endings have the penult long:

I. **ābrum, ācrum, ātrum**:

flābrum, sīmūlācrum, ārātrum.

II. **ēdo, ido, ūdo**; **āgo, igo, ūgo**:

dulcēdo, cūpīdo, sōlītūdo; *vōrāgo, ōrīgo, aerūgo*.

III. **āis, ēis, ōis, ōtis, īne, ōne**—*in patronymics*:

Ptōlēmāis, Chrýsēis, Minōis, Icāriōtis, Nērīne, Acrisiōne.

Except *Dānāis, Phōcāis, Thēbāis, Nērēis*.

IV. **ēla, ile**; **ālis, ēlis, ūlis**:

quērēla, ōvile; *mortālis, fīdēlis, cūrūlis*.

V. **ānus, ēnus, ōnus, ūnus**; **āna, ēna, ōna, ūna**:

urbānus, ēgēnus, patrōnus, tribūnus; *membrāna, hābēna, annōna, lācūna*.

Except *galbānus*.

VI. **āris, ārus**; **ōrus, ōsus**; **āvus, ivus**:

sālūtāris, āvārus; *cānōrus, ānīmōsus*; *octāvus, aestīvus*.

VII. ātus, itus, ūtus ; ātim, itim, ūtim ; ētum, ēta :

ālātus, turrītus, cornūtus ; singulātim, vīritim, trībūtīm ; quercētum, mōnēta.

Except (1) *ānhēlītus, fortuītus, grātuītus, hālītus, hospītus, servītus, spīrītus*, (2) *affūtīm, stātīm*, and adverbs in *ītus*, as *dīvīnītus* ; and (3) participles provided for by 639.

VIII. ēni, īni, ōni,—*in distributives* :

septēni, quīni, octōni.

646. RULE XI.—The following derivative endings have the penult short :

I. ādes, iādes, īdes,—*in patronymics* :

Aenēādes, Lāertiādes, Tantālīdes.

Except (1) those in *īdes* from nouns in *eus* and *es* ; as, *Pēlīdes* (Pelens), *Neoclīdes* (Nocles), and (2) *Amphiārāīdes, Amjclīdes, Bēlīdes, Cōrōnīdes, Ljceurgīdes*.

II. iācus, īcus, īdus :

Cōrinthiācus, mōdīcus, cūpīdus.

Except *āmīcus, antīcus, aprīcus, mendīcus, postīcus, pūdīcus*.

III. ōlus, ōla, ōlum ; ūlus, ūla, ūlum ; cūlus, cūla, cūlum,—*in diminutives* :

filiōlus, filiōla, atriōlum ; hortūlus, virgūla, oppīdūlum ; floscūlus, particūla, mūnuscūlum.

IV. ētas, itas,—*in nouns* ; īter, itus,—*in adverbs* :

piētas, vēritas ; fortīter, dīvīnītus.

V. ātilis, īlis, bīlis,—*in verbals* ; īnus,—*in adjectives denoting material or time* :

versātilis, dōcīlis, āmābīlis ; ādāmāntīnus, cedrīnus, crastīnus, diūtīnus.

Except *mātūtīnus, rēpentīnus, vesperīnus*.

1. **Ilis** in adjectives from nouns usually has the penult long : *cīvīlis, hostīlis, puērīlis, virīlis*.

2. **Inus** denoting *characteristic* (325) usually has the penult long : *cānīnus, ēquīnus, mārīnus*.

647. RULE XII.—The following derivative endings have the antepenult long :

I. āceus, ūceus, āneus, ārius, ārium, ōrius :

rōsāceus, pannūceus, sūbītāneus, cībārius, cōlumbārium, censōrius.

II. ābīlis, ātilis, ātīcus :

āmābīlis, versātilis, āquātīceus.

III. *āginta, iginti, ēsīmus*,—*in numerals* :

nōnāginta, vīginti, centēsīmus.

648. RULE XIII.—The following derivative endings have the antepenult short :

I. *ībilis, ītūdo, ōlentus, ūlentus.*

crēdībilis, sōlītūdo, vīnōlentus, ōpūlentus.

II. *ūrīo*,—*in desideratives* :

ēsūrīo, emptūrīo, partūrīo.

IV. QUANTITY OF STEM SYLLABLES.

I. In Primitives.

649. The quantity of stem-syllables in primitive words, when not determined by the General Rules (Sec. I.), is in most cases best referred to authority. Thus,

In *māter, cēdo, scribo, dōno, ūtor*, the first syllable is *long by authority*, while in *pāter, tēgo, mīco, sōno, ūter*, it is *short by authority*.

650. RULE XIV.—The quantity of stem-syllables remains unchanged in inflection :

In DECLENSION,—*āvis, āvem* ; *nūbes, nūbium.*

In COMPARISON,—*lēvis, lēvior, lēvissīmus.*

In CONJUGATION,—*mōneo, mōnēbam, mōnuī.*

1. Position may however affect the quantity : *āger, āgrī* (611, 612) ; *possum, pōtūi* ; *solvo, sōlūtum* ; *volvo, vōlūtum.*

Here *ā* becomes *ǣ* before *gr*. The *o* in *possum, solvo*, and *volvo*, long only by position, becomes short before a single consonant.

2. *Gigno* gives *gēnuī, gēnītum*, and *pōno, pōsuī, pōsītum.*

3. See also 651, 652.

651. Dissyllabic Perfects and Supines have the first syllable long, unless short by position :

jūvo, jūvī, jūtum ; *fōveo, fōvī, fōtum.*

1. These Perfects and Supines, if formed from Presents with the first syllable short, are exceptions to 650.

2. Seven Perfects have the first syllable short :

bībī, dēdī, fīdī, scīdī, stētī, stītī, tūlī.

3. Ten Supines have the first syllable short:

*cĭtum, dĕtum, ĭtum, lĭtum, qŭtum, rĕtum, rĭtum, sĕtum, sĭtum, stŭtum.*¹

652. In trisyllabic Reduplicated Perfects the first two syllables are short:

cădo, cĕcĭdi; căno, cĕcĭni; disco, dĭdĭci.

1. *Caedo* has *cĕcĭdi* in distinction from *cĕcĭdi* from *cădo*.

2. The second syllable may be made long by position: *cŭcŭrri, mŏmordi.*

II. In Derivatives.

653. RULE XV.—Derivatives retain the quantity of their primitives:

bŏnus, bŏnĭtas; tĭmeo, tĭmor; ănimus, ănimŏsus; cĭvis, cĭvĭcus; cŭra, cŭro.

1. Frequentatives in *ito*, have *i* short: *clămĭto*. See 332. I.

2. In a few Derivatives the short vowel of the primitive is lengthened:

<i>hŏmo,</i>	<i>hŭmānus,</i>	<i>rĕgo,</i>	<i>rĕx, rĕgis, rĕgŭla,</i>
<i>lāteo,</i>	<i>lāterna,</i>	<i>sĕcus,</i>	<i>sĕcius,</i>
<i>lĕgo,</i>	<i>lĕx, lĕgis,</i>	<i>sĕdeo,</i>	<i>sĕdes, sĕdŭlus,</i>
<i>măcer,</i>	<i>măcĕro,</i>	<i>sĕro,</i>	<i>sĕmen,</i>
<i>mŏveo,</i>	<i>mŏbĭlis,</i>	<i>suspĭcor,</i>	<i>suspĭcio,</i>
<i>persŏno,</i>	<i>persŏna,</i>	<i>tĕgo,</i>	<i>tĕgŭla.</i>

3. In a few Derivatives the long vowel of the primitive is shortened:

<i>ăcer,</i>	<i>ăcerbus,</i>	<i>nŏtum,</i>	<i>nŏta,</i>
<i>dĭco,</i>	<i>dĭcax,</i>	<i>ŏdi,</i>	<i>ŏdium,</i>
<i>dŭco,</i>	<i>dux, dŭcis,</i>	<i>sŏpio,</i>	<i>sŏpor,</i>
<i>fĭdo,</i>	<i>fĭdes,</i>	<i>vădo,</i>	<i>vădum,</i>
<i>lŭceo,</i>	<i>lŭcerna,</i>	<i>vŏx, vŏcis,</i>	<i>vŏco.</i>
<i>mŏles,</i>	<i>mŏlestus,</i>		

This change of quantity in some instances is the result of contraction: *mŏvĭbĭlis, mŏbĭlis, mŏbĭlis*, and in others it serves to distinguish words of the same orthography: as the verbs *lĕgis, lĕges, rĕgis, rĕges, sĕdes*, from the nouns *lĕgis, lĕges, rĕgis, rĕges, sĕdes*, or the verbs *dŭcis, dŭces, fĭdes*, from the nouns *dŭcis, dŭces, fĭdes*.

III. In Compounds.

654. RULE XVI.—Compounds generally retain the quantity of their elements:

antĕ-fĕro, dĕ-fĕro, dĕ-dŭco, ĭn-aequalis, prŏ-dŭco.

1. The change of a vowel or diphthong does not affect the quantity:

dĕ-lĭgo (lĕgo), oc-cĭdo (cădo), oc-cĭdo (caedo).

¹ From *sisto*, but *stătum* from *sto*.

2. INSEPARABLE PREPOSITIONS.—**Di**, **sē**, and **vē** are long, **rē** short: **ne** sometimes long and sometimes short:

dīdūco, *sēdūco*, *vēcors*, *rēdūco*, *nēdum*, *nēfas*:

1) *Di* is short in *dīrīmo*, *disertus*.

2) *Nē* is long in *nēdum*, *nēmo*, *nēquam*, *nēquāquam*, *nēquidquam*, *nēquittia*, and *nēve*. In other words it is short.

3) *Re* is sometimes lengthened in a few words: *rēligio*, *rēliquiae*, *rēpērit*, *rēpūlit*, *rētūlit*, etc.

3. CHANGE OF QUANTITY.—In a few words the quantity of the second element is changed. Thus

Dico gives *-dīcus*; *jūro*, *-jēro*; *nōtus*, *-nītus*; *nūbo*, *nūba*: *mālē-dīcus*, *de-jēro*, *cog-nītus*, *prō-nūba*.

4. PRO.—*Pro* is short in the following words:

Prōcella, *prōcul*, *prōfānus*, *prōfārī*, *prōfecto*, *prōfestus*, *prōficiscor*, *prōfiteor*, *prōfūgio*, *prōfūgus*, *prōfundus*, *prōnēpos*, *prōneptis*, *prōtervus*, and most Greek words, as *prōphēta*, generally in *prōfundo*, *prōpāgo*, *prōpīno*, rarely in *prōcūro*, *prōpello*.

5. STEM.—When the first element is the stem of a word (338. III.), it is often followed by a short connecting vowel:

cāl-ē-fācio, *lāb-ē-fācio*, *bell-ī-gēro*, *aed-ī-fīco*, *art-ī-fex*, *ampl-ī-fīco*, *lōc-ū-ples*.

Before *fācio* in a few compounds *e* is sometimes lengthened: *liquēfācio*, *pātēfācio*, *putrēfācio*, *tēpēfācio*. The first *e* in *vidēlicet* is long.

6. I LONG.—*I* is long,—(1) in the first part of compounds of *dies*: *mēridies*, *prīdie*, *postrīdie*, *quōtidie*, *trīdium*, and (2) in the contracted forms, *bigae*, *trīgae*, *quadrīgae*, *ilīcet*, *scīlīcet*, *tībīcen* for *tībīccen*.

But *i* is short in *bīdium* and *quātrīdium*.

7. O LONG.—*O* is long in *contrō-*, *intrō-*, *retrō-*, and *quandō-* in composition; as: *contrōversia*, *intrōdūco*, *retrōverto*, *quandōque*, but *quandōquīdem*.

8. SPECIAL WORDS.—*Hōdie*, *quāsi*, and *sīquīdem* have the first syllable short.

CHAPTER II.

VERSIFICATION.

SECTION I.

GENERAL VIEW OF THE SUBJECT

655. Latin Versification is based upon Quantity and Accent. Syllables are combined into certain metrical groups called Feet, and feet, singly or in pairs, are combined into Verses.

I. METRICAL FEET.

656. Feet are either simple or compound. For convenience of reference we add the following list :

I. Simple Feet.

DISSYLLABIC FEET.

Spondee,	<i>two long syllables,</i>	— —	Lēgēs.
Trochee, ¹	<i>a long and a short,</i>	— ∪	Lēgīs.
Iambus,	<i>a short and a long,</i>	∪ —	Pārens.
Pyrrhic,	<i>two short,</i>	∪ ∪	Pātēr.

TRISYLLABIC FEET.

Dactyl,	<i>a long and two short,</i>	— ∪ ∪	cārmīnā.
Anapaest,	<i>two short and a long,</i>	∪ ∪ —	bōnītās.
Tribrach,	<i>three short,</i>	∪ ∪ ∪	dōmīnūs.
Molossus,	<i>three long,</i>	— — —	libērtās.
Amphibrach,	<i>a short, a long, and a short,</i>	∪ — ∪	āmicūs.
Amphimacer, ²	<i>a long, a short, and a long,</i>	— ∪ —	mīlītēs.
Bacchius,	<i>a short and two long,</i>	∪ — —	dōlōrēs.
Antibacchius,	<i>two long and a short,</i>	— — ∪	pāstōrīs.

II. Compound Feet.

These are only compounds of the dissyllabic feet, and all have four syllables.

¹ Sometimes called *Choree*.

² Also called *Cretic*.

Dispondeo,	<i>double spondee,</i>	— — — —	praëcëptōrēs.
Ditrochee,	<i>double trochee,</i>	— ∪ — ∪	cīvītātīs.
Diiambus,	<i>double iambus,</i>	∪ — ∪ —	āmoēnītās.
Proceleusmatic,	<i>double pyrrhic,</i>	∪ ∪ ∪ ∪	mēmōriā.
Greater Ionic,	<i>spondee and pyrrhic,</i>	— — ∪ ∪	sēntēntiā.
Lesser Ionic,	<i>pyrrhic and spondee,</i>	∪ ∪ — —	ādōlēscēns.
Choriambus,	<i>trochee (choree), and iambus,</i>	— ∪ ∪ —	impātīēns.
Antispast,	<i>iambus and trochee,</i>	∪ — — ∪	vērēcūndūs.
First Epitrite,	<i>iambus and spondee,</i>	∪ — — —	āmāvērūnt.
Second Epitrite,	<i>trochee and spondee,</i>	— ∪ — —	cōndūtōrēs.
Third Epitrite,	<i>spondee and iambus,</i>	— — ∪ —	auctōritās.
Fourth Epitrite,	<i>spondee and trochee,</i>	— — — ∪	ōrnāmētā.
First Paeon,	<i>trochee and pyrrhic,</i>	— ∪ ∪ ∪	hīstōriā.
Second Paeon,	<i>iambus and pyrrhic,</i>	∪ — ∪ ∪	āmābilis.
Third Paeon,	<i>pyrrhic and trochee,</i>	∪ ∪ — ∪	pūērīlis.
Fourth Paeon,	<i>pyrrhic and iambus,</i>	∪ ∪ ∪ —	cělērītās.

1. COMMON FEET.—The feet of most frequent occurrence in the best Latin poets are,

1) The *Dactyl* and *Spondee*, used in the Heroic Hexameter.

2) Less frequent the *Iambus*, *Trochee*, *Tribrach*, *Anapaest*, and *Choriambus*.

2. GROUPS.—A *Dipody* is a group of two feet; a *Tripody*, of three; a *Tetrapody*, of four, etc. A *Triemimēris* is a group of three half feet, i. e., a foot and a half; *Penthemimēris*, of two and a half; *Heptthemimēris*, of three and a half, etc.

657. METRICAL EQUIVALENTS.—A long syllable may often be resolved into two short ones, as equivalent to it in quantity, or two short ones may be contracted into a long one. The forms thus produced are metrical equivalents of the original forms. Thus,

The *Dactyl* becomes a *Spondee* by contracting the two short syllables into one long syllable; the *Spondee* becomes a *Dactyl* by resolving the second syllable, or an *Anapaest* by resolving the first. Accordingly the *Dactyl*, the *Spondee*, and the *Anapaest* are metrical equivalents. In like manner the *Iambus*, the *Trochee*, and the *Tribrach* are metrical equivalents.

658. METRICAL SUBSTITUTES.—In certain kinds of verse, feet are sometimes substituted for those which are not their metrical equivalents. Thus,

The *Spondee* is often substituted for the *Iambus* or the *Trochee*, though not equivalent to either. See 679, 682.

659. ICTUS OR RHYTHMIC ACCENT.—As in the pronunciation of a word one or more syllables receive a special stress of voice called accent, so in the pronunciation of a metrical foot one or more syllables receive a special stress of voice called Rhythmic Accent or Ictus.

1. **SIMPLE FEET.**—Feet consisting of both long and short syllables have the ictus uniformly on the long syllables, unless used for other feet. Thus,

The Dactyl and the Trochee have the ictus on the first syllable; the Anapaest and the Iambus on the last.

2. **EQUIVALENTS AND SUBSTITUTES.**—These take the ictus of the feet for which they are used. Thus,

The Spondee, when used for the Dactyl, takes the ictus of the Dactyl, i. e., on the first syllable; but when used for the Anapaest, it takes the ictus of the Anapaest, i. e., on the last syllable.

1) Feet consisting entirely of long or entirely of short syllables are generally equivalents or substitutes, and are accented accordingly.

2) When two short syllables of an equivalent take the place of an accented long syllable of the original foot, the ictus rests chiefly on the first of these two. Thus the Dactyl used for the Anapaest takes the ictus on the first short syllable.

3. **COMPOUND FEET.**—These take the ictus of the feet of which they are composed. Thus,

The *Choriambus* (trochee and iambus) takes the ictus of the trochee on the first syllable and that of the iambus on the last.

But *Ionic* feet are generally read with the ictus on the first long syllable.

660. **ARSIS AND THESIS.**—The accented part of each foot is called the Arsis (*raising*); and the unaccented part, Thesis (*lowering*).

II. VERSES.

661. A verse is a line of poetry, and is either simple or compound.

I. A Simple verse has one characteristic or fundamental foot, which determines the ictus for the whole verse. Thus,

Every Dactylic Verse has the ictus on the first syllable, because the Dactyl, its characteristic foot, has it on that syllable.

II. A Compound verse has a characteristic foot for each member. See 692.

662. **CAESURAL PAUSE.**—Most verses are divided into two nearly equal parts by a pause or rest called the caesura¹ or caesural pause. See 673, 674.

663. **METRICAL NAMES OF VERSES.**—The metrical name of a verse designates,

I. The Characteristic foot. Thus,

¹ Caesura (from *caedo*, to cut) means a cutting; it cuts or divides the verse into parts.

Dactylic, Trochaic, and Iambic verses have respectively the Dactyl, the Trochee, and the Iambus as the characteristic foot.

II. The Number of Feet or Measures.¹ Thus,

1. Dactylic Hexameter is Dactylic verse of six measures.
2. A verse consisting of one measure is *Monometer*; of two, *Dimeter*; of three, *Trimeter*; of four, *Tetrameter*; of five, *Pentameter*; of six, *Hexameter*.

III. The Completeness or Incompleteness of the measures. Thus,

1. A verse is termed *Acatalectic*, when its last measure is complete; *Catalectic*, when it is incomplete.

1) A *Catalectic* verse is said to be *catalectic in syllābam*, *in disyllābum*, or *in trisyllābum*, according as the incomplete foot has one, two, or three syllables.

2) A *Brachycatalectic* verse wants the closing foot of the last Dipody.

3) An *Acephalous* verse wants the first syllable of the first foot.

4) A *Hypercatalectic* verse, also called *Hypermeter*, has an excess of syllables.

2. The full metrical name combines the three particulars enumerated under I. II. and III., as *Dactylic Hexameter Acatalectic*, *Dactylic Trimeter Catalectic*, etc.

1) But for the sake of brevity the term *Acatalectic* is often omitted when it can be done without ambiguity.

2) Verses are sometimes known by names which merely designate the number of feet or measures. Thus *Hexameter* (six measures) sometimes designates the *Dactylic Hexameter Acatalectic*, and *Senarius* (six feet), the *Iambic Trimeter Acatalectic*.

664. SPECIAL NAMES OF VERSES.—Many verses are often designated by names derived from celebrated poets. Thus,

Alcaic from Alcaeus, *Archilochian* from Archilochus, *Sapphic* from Sappho, *Glyconic*, from Glycon, etc.

Verses sometimes receive a name from the kind of subjects to which they were applied: as *Heroic*, applied to heroic subjects; *Paroemiac*, to proverbs, etc.

665. FINAL SYLLABLE.—The final syllable of a verse may generally be either long or short.

666. STANZA.—A stanza is a combination of two or more verses of different metres into one metrical whole. See 699, 700.

A stanza of two lines is called a *Distich*; of three, a *Tristich*; of four, a *Tetrastich*.

¹ A measure is a single foot, except in Anapaestic, Trochaic, and Iambic verses, where it is a Dipody or Pair of feet.

667. METRE.—Metre signifies *measure*, and is used to designate,

1. A Foot or Dipody, as the measure, or metrical element of a verse.

2. A Verse or Stanza, as the measure of a poem.

668. SCANNING.—Scanning consists in separating a poem, or verse, into the feet of which it is composed.

III. FIGURES OF PROSODY.

669. The ancient poets sometimes allowed themselves, in the use of letters and syllables, certain liberties generally termed Figures of Prosody. These are,

I. SYNALOEPHA.—This is the elision of a final vowel or diphthong, or of a final *m* with the preceding vowel, before a word beginning with a vowel :

Monstr' horrend' inform' ingens, *for* Monstrum horrendum informe ingens. *Virg.*

1. No account is taken of *h*, as it is only a breathing (2. 2). Hence *horrendum* is treated as a word beginning with a vowel.

2. Interjections, *o*, *heu*, *ah*, *proh*, etc., are not elided, but in other words the elision generally takes place in the best poets.

3. Final *e* in the interrogative *ne* is sometimes elided before a consonant: Pyrrhīn' connūbia servas? *for* Pyrrhīne connūbia servas? *Virg.*

4. The elision of *s* occurs in the early poets: Ex omnību' rēbus, *for* Ex omnibus rēbus. *Lucr.*

5. *Synaloepha* may occur at the end of a line when the next line begins with a vowel. It is then called *Synapheia*.

II. SYNAERESIS.—This is the contraction of two syllables into one :

aureā, dēinde, dēinceps, īdem, īsdem.

1. Synaeresis is of frequent application. It may unite

1) Two successive vowels, as in the examples above.

2) A vowel and a diphthong: *ēāēdem*.

3) Two vowels separated by *h*, as only a breathing: *prohibeat*, pronounced *proibeat*.

2. In the different parts of *dēsum*, *ee* is generally pronounced as one syllable: *dēesse*, *dēest*, *dēerat*, *dēerit*, etc.: so *ei* in the verb *anteo*: *antēre*, *antērem*, *antēis*, *antēit*.

3. *I* and *u* before vowels are sometimes used as consonants with the sound of *y* and *w*: Thus, *ābīētē* and *ārīēte*, become *ābyētē* and *āryētē*; *gēnūū* and *tēnūēs* become *gēnwā* and *tēnwēs*.

672. VARIETIES.—The scale of dactylic hexameters admits sixteen varieties, produced by varying the relative number and arrangement of dactyls and spondees.

1. ILLUSTRATION.—Thus a verse may contain,

1) Five dactyls and one spondee, as in the first example above.

2) Four dactyls and two spondees. These again admit four different arrangements.

3) Three dactyls and three spondees, as in the second and third examples above. But these again admit six different arrangements.

4) Two dactyls and four spondees. These admit four different arrangements.

5) One dactyl and five spondees, as in the fourth example.

2. EFFECT OF DACTYLS.—Dactyls produce a rapid movement and are adapted to lively subjects. Spondees produce a slow movement and are adapted to grave subjects. But generally the best effect is produced in successive lines by variety in the number and arrangement of dactyls and spondees.

3. SPONDAIC LINE.—The Hexameter sometimes takes a spondee in the fifth place. It is then called Spondaic, and generally has a dactyl as its fourth foot:

Cārā dē- | ūm sōbō- | lēs māg- | num Jōvīs | īncrē- | mēntum. *Virg.*

673. CAESURAL PAUSE.—The favorite caesural pause of the Hexameter is *after the arsis*, or *in the thesis*, of the third foot:

Armā- | tī tēn- | dūnt ; || īt | clāmōr ēt | āgmīnē | fāctō. *Virg.*

Infān- | dūm, rē- | gīnā, || jū- | bēs rēnō- | vārē dō- | lōrem. *Virg.*

In the first line the caesural pause, marked ||, is after *tendunt*, after the arsis of the third foot; and in the second line after *regīna*, in the thesis (*nā jū*) of the third foot.

1. RARE CAESURAL PAUSE.—The caesural pause is sometimes in the fourth foot, and then an additional pause is often introduced in the second foot. Sometimes indeed this last becomes the principal pause:

Crēdīdē- | rīm ; || vēr | illūd ē- | rāt, || vēr | māgnūs ā- | gēbat. *Virg.*

2. BUCOLIC CAESURA.—A pause between the fourth and fifth feet is generally called the *bucolic caesura*, because often used in pastoral poetry:

Ingēn- | tem coe- | lō sōnī- | tūm dēdīt ; || īndē sē- | cūtus. *Virg.*

3. FAULTY CAESURA.—A caesural pause at the end of the third foot is regarded as a blemish in the verse:

Pūlvērū- | lēntūs ē- | quīs fūrīt ; || ōmnēs | ārmā rē- | quīrunt. *Virg.*

674. CAESURA AND CAESURAL PAUSE.—The ending of a word within a foot always produces a *caesura*. A line may therefore have several caesuras, but generally only one of these (sometimes two) is marked by the caesural pause:

Armă vî- | rumque că- | nō, || Trō- | jaē quī | primūs āb | ōris. *Virg.*

1. Here there is a caesura in every foot except the last, but only one of these, that after *cāno*, has the caesural pause.

2. In determining which caesura is to be marked by the pause the reader must be guided by the sense, introducing the pause where there is a pause of sense, or where at least it will not interfere with the sense.

3. The caesura, with or without the pause, is an important feature in every hexameter. A line without it is prosaic in the extreme:

Rōmaē | moēniā | tērrūit | īmpīgēr | Hānnibāl | ārmis. *Enn.*

675. LAST WORD OF THE HEXAMETER.—The last word of the Hexameter should be either a dissyllable or a trisyllable. See examples above.

1. Two monosyllables are not particularly objectionable, and sometimes even produce a happy effect:

Praecipī- | tant cū- | rae, || tūr- | bātāquē | fūnērē | mēns est. *Virg.*

Est is indeed often used even when not preceded by another monosyllable.

2. A single monosyllable, except *est*, is not often used at the end of the line, except for the purpose of emphasis or humor:

Pārtūrī- | ūnt mōn- | tēs, || nas- | cētūr | rīdicū- | lūs mus. *Hor.*

II. Dactylic Pentameter.

676. The Dactylic Pentameter consists of two parts separated by the caesural pause. Each part consists of two Dactyls and the arsis of a third. The Spondee may take the place of the Dactyl in the first part, but not in the second:

$\frac{1}{-} \cup \cup \mid \frac{1}{-} \cup \cup \mid \frac{1}{-} \parallel \frac{1}{-} \cup \cup \mid \frac{1}{-} \cup \cup \mid \frac{1}{-}$

Admōnī- | tū coe- | pī || fōrtiōr | ēssē tū- | ō. *Ovid.*

1. **PENTAMETER.**—The name *Pentameter* is founded on the ancient division of the line into five feet; the first and second being dactyls or spondees; the third, a spondee; the fourth and fifth, anapaests.

2. **ELEGIAC DISTICH.**—The Dactylic Pentameter is seldom, if ever, used, except in the Elegiac Distich, which consists of the Hexameter followed by the Pentameter:

Sēmīsē- | pūltā vî- | rūm || cūr- | vīs fērī- | ūntūr ā- | rātris

Ossă, rū- | înō- | sās || ōccūlīt | hērbă dō- | mūs. *Ov.*

III. Other Dactylic Verses.

677. The other varieties of dactylic verse are less important, but the following deserve mention:

I. DACTYLIC TETRAMETER.—This consists of the last four feet of the Hexameter :

Ibīmūs | O sōcī- | ī, cōmī- | tēsque. *Hor.*

In compound verses, as the Greater Archilochian, the tetrameter in composition with other metres, has a dactyl in the fourth place. See 691. I.

II. DACTYLIC TRIMETER CATALECTIC.—This is the Lesser Archilochian, and is identical with the second half of the Dactylic Pentameter :

Arbōrī- | būsquē cō- | mac. *Hor.*

III. DACTYLIC DIMETER.—This is the Adonic, and consists of a Dactyl and Spondee :

Mōntīs ī- | māgō. *Hor.*

II. ANAPAESTIC VERSE.

678. Anapaestic verses consist of Anapaestic dipodies.

An Anapaestic dipody consists of two Anapaests, but admits Spondees or Dactyls as equivalents.

I. ANAPAESTIC DIMETER consists of two dipodies :

Vēnīent : ānnīs || saeculā : sērīs.¹ *Sen.*

This is sometimes catalectic (663. III. 1), and has only a long syllable in place of the last foot. It is then called *Paroemiac*.

II. ANAPAESTIC MONOMETER consists of one dipody :

Dātā rēs : pātrīae. *Auson.*

1. In Anapaestic verse Dactyls are used sparingly, and are generally followed by Spondees. Each dipody generally ends with a word.

2. The last syllable is not common, as in most kinds of verse (665), but subject to the ordinary rules of quantity.

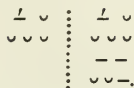
3. Anapaestic verse does not occur in the best Latin Poets.

III. TROCHAIC VERSE.

679. Trochaic verses consist of Trochaic dipodies.

A Trochaic dipody consists of two Trochees, or of a Trochee and a Spondee ; but it admits the Tribrach as the equivalent of the Trochee, and the Anapaest, of the Spondee. The first foot has a heavier ictus than the second :

¹ In verses measured by dipodies, a dotted line is placed between the feet, a single line between the dipodies, and a double line in the place of the caesural pause.



I. Trochaic Tetrameter Catalectic.

680. This consists of four Trochaic Dipodies with the last foot incomplete. The caesural pause is at the end of the fourth foot, and the incomplete dipody admits no equivalents:



Nūllă : vōx hū- | mănă : cōnstăt || ābsquē : sēptēm | littē- : ris,
Rītē : vōcā- | lēs vō- : cāvīt || quās mǎ- : gīstră | Graēcī- : a. *Ter. Mau.*

1. In *Proper Names*, a dactyl may be introduced in any foot except the fourth and seventh.

2. The *Proceleusmatic* for the Spondee sometimes occurs.

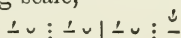
3. In *Comedy* the Spondee and its equivalents occur in the odd feet, as well as in the even, except in the last dipody.

4. The *Trochaic Tetrameter* also occurs in the earlier poets in its complete form, i. e., with eight full feet:

Ipsō : sūmmīs | sāxis : fixūs || āspē- : rīs ē- | vīscē- : rūtus. *Enn.*

II. Trochaic Dimeter Catalectic.

681. This consists of two Trochaic Dipodies with the last foot incomplete. In Horace it admits no equivalents and has the following scale,



Aulă : dīvī- | tēm mǎ- : net. *Hor.*

1. This is sometimes called *Iambic Dimeter Acephalous*, i. e., an Iambic Dimeter with the first syllable wanting.

2. A *Trochaic Tripody*,—three Trochees—technically called a *Trochaic Dimeter Brachycatalectic*, or an *Ithyphalicus*, occurs in the Greater Archilochian. See 691. I.

3. For *Sapphic Verse*, see 691. IV.

4. For *Phalæcian*, see 691. V.

IV. IAMBIC VERSE.

682. Iambic verses consist of Iambic dipodies.

An Iambic dipody consists of two Iambi, or of a Spondee and an Iambus; but it admits the Tribrach as the equivalent of the Iambus, and sometimes the Dactyl or the

Anapaest, of the Spondee. The first foot has a heavier ictus than the second.

In its full form it has the following scale :



I. Iambic Trimeter.

683. This verse, also called *Senarius*, consists of three Iambic Dipodies.

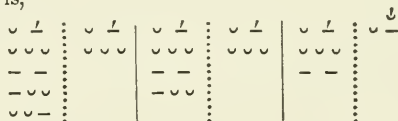
I. The first dipody has the full form.

II. The second admits no Anapaest.

III. The third admits no Anapaest or Dactyl, and in its second foot, no equivalent whatever.

IV. The Caesural Pause is usually in the third foot, but may be in the fourth.

The scale is,



Quid ōb- : sērā- | tīs || au- : rībūs | fūndīs : prēces? *Hor.*

Nēptū- : nūs āl- | tō || tūn- : dīt hī- | bērnūs : sālo. *Hor.*

Hās īn- : tēr ēpū- | lās || ūt : jūvāt | pāstās : ōves. *Hor.*

1. PROPER NAMES.—In proper names an Anapaest is admissible in any foot, except the last, but must be in a single word.

2. HORACE.—In Horace the only feet freely admitted are the Iambus and the Spondee; their equivalents, the Tribrach, the Dactyl and Anapaest, are used very sparingly. The Tribrach never occurs in the fifth foot and only once in the first. The Anapaest occurs only twice in all.

3. COMEDY.—In Comedy great liberty is taken, and the Spondee and its equivalents are freely admitted in any foot except the last.

4. CHOLIAMBUS.—This is a variety of *Iambic Trimeter* with a Spondee in the sixth foot and an Iambus in the fifth :

Misēr : Cātūl- | lē dē- : sīnās | īnēp- : tīre. *Catūl.*

Choliambus means *lame* or *limping Iambus*, and is so called from its limping movement. It is sometimes called *Scazon* for the same reason, and sometimes *Hipponactēan*, from Hipponax, its reputed inventor.

684. IAMBIC TRIMETER CATALECTIC.—This is the Iambic Trimeter with the last foot incomplete. But in Horace the only feet admissible besides the Iambus are the Tri-

brach in the second foot and the Spondee in the first and third :

[illegible]

Võcā- : tūs āt- | quē nōn : vōcā- | tūs au- : dit. *Hor.*

II. Iambic Dimeter.

685. This verse consists of two Iambic Dipodies with their usual equivalents. But in Horace the only feet admissible besides the Iambus are the Tribrach in the second place, the Spondee in the first and third, and the Dactyl in the first :

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40	41	42	43	44	45	46	47	48	49	50	51	52	53	54	55	56	57	58	59	60	61	62	63	64	65	66	67	68	69	70	71	72	73	74	75	76	77	78	79	80	81	82	83	84	85	86	87	88	89	90	91	92	93	94	95	96	97	98	99	100
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	-----

Quērūn- : tūr in | sīlvīs : āves. *Hor.*

Imbrēs : nīvēs- | quē cōm- : pārat. *Hor.*

Ast ěgǫ : vĭcīs- | sīm rī- : sěro. *Hor.*

1. IAMBIC DIMETER HYPERMETER occurs in Horace with the following scale:

[illegible]

Pŭēr | quīs ēx | aulā | cāpīl- | lis. *Hor.*

This is sometimes called the Alcaic Enneasyllabic verse and forms the third line in the Alcaic Stanza. See 700. I.

2. IAMBIC DIMETER CATALECTIC does not occur in the pure Latin poets.
Its scale is,

$$\begin{array}{ccc|ccc} \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} & \vdots & \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} & \vdots \\ 1 & 1 & \vdots & & & \vdots \end{array}$$

Mănū : pŭēr | lŏquā- : ci. *Pet. Arb.*

3. IAMBIC DIMETER ACEPHALOUS.—This name is sometimes given to the Trochaic Dimeter Catalectic (681), which is then treated as Iambic Dimeter without the first syllable. Thus

Au- : lă dī- | vītēm : mănet. *Hor.*

III. Iambic Tetrameter.

686. The Iambic Tetrameter is little used in Latin except in Comedy. It consists of four Iambic Dipodies with their usual equivalents. The caesural pause is usually after the fourth foot:

Quāntum in- : tēllēx- | ī mōdō : sēnīs || sēntēn- : tīām | dē nūp- :
tūis. *Ter.*

III. The ASCLEPIADĒAN has the following scale :

┌ — | ┌ ◡ ◡ ◡ || ┌ ◡ ◡ ◡ | ◡ ┘

Maecē- | nās ātāvīs || ēdītē rēg- | ĭbus. *Hor.*

IV. The GREATER ASCLEPIADĒAN has the following scale :

┌ — | ┌ ◡ ◡ ◡ || ┌ ◡ ◡ ◡ || ┌ ◡ ◡ ◡ | ◡ ┘

Seu plū- | rēs hīēmēs, || seu trībūit || Jūpītēr ūl- | tīmam. *Hor.*

This is sometimes called *Choriambic Pentameter* and sometimes *Choriambic Tetrameter*.

Epichoriambic Verse.

690. When a verse begins with a Second Epitrite followed by one or two Choriambi, and ends with a Bacchius, it is called Epichoriambic. Of this there are two important varieties :

I. THE SAPPHIC VERSE.—This consists of a Second Epitrite, a Choriambus and a Bacchius :

┌ ◡ ◡ — | ┌ ◡ ◡ ◡ | ◡ ◡ ┘

Nāmquē mē sil- | vā || lūpūs ĩn | Sābīna. *Hor.*

1. But the Sapphic verse may also be measured as a Trochaic Dipody followed by an Aristophanic verse, i. e., as composed of a Trochee, a Spondee, a Dactyl, and two Trochees. See 691. IV.

2. The Caesural Pause usually occurs after the fifth syllable, as in the example, but sometimes after the sixth.

3. Catullus admits two Trochees in place of the Epitrite.

II. THE GREATER SAPPHIC VERSE.—This differs from the Sapphic proper only in introducing a second Choriambus before the Bacchius :

┌ ◡ ◡ — | ┌ ◡ ◡ ◡ || ┌ ◡ ◡ ◡ | ◡ ◡ ┘

Intēr aequā- | lēs ēquītāt, || Gāllicā nēc | lūpātis. *Hor.*

This is sometimes improperly called *Choriambic Tetrameter*.

VII. LOGAOEDIC VERSE.

691. Logaoedic verses consist of Dactyls, or their equivalents, followed by Trochees.

I. GREATER ARCHILOCHIAN.—This consists of a Dactylic Tetrameter (677. I.) followed by a Trochaic Tripody. The first three feet are either Dactyls or Spondees ; the fourth, a Dactyl ; and the last three, Trochees :

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & | & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & | & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & | & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & | & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & || & \text{—} & \text{—} & \vdots & \text{—} & \text{—} & | & \text{—} & \text{—} \end{array}$$

Vītaē | sūmmā brē- | vīs spēm | nōs vētāt, || īnehō- : ārē | lōngam. *Hor.*

The caesural pause is between the two members.

II. ALCAIC VERSE.—This consists of two Dactyls followed by two Trochees:

$$\text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & | & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & | & \text{—} & \text{—} & : & \text{—} & \text{—}$$

Purpūrē- | ō vārī- | ūs cō- : lōre. *Hor.*

III. ARISTOPHANIC VERSE.—This consists of a Dactyl followed by two Trochees:

$$\text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & | & \text{—} & \text{—} & : & \text{—} & \text{—}$$

Cūr nēquē | mīlī- : tāris. *Hor.*

This verse is variously named, *Aristophanic*, *Choriambic Dimeter*, and *Choriambic Dimeter Catalectic*.

IV. SAPPHIC VERSE.—This prefixes to the Aristophanic a Trochaic Dipody consisting of a Trochee and a Spondee (690. I). The scale is,

$$\text{—} & \text{—} & : & \text{—} & \text{—} & | & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & | & \text{—} & \text{—} & : & \text{—} & \text{—}$$

Nāmquē : mē sīl- | vā lūpūs | īn Să- : bīna. *Hor.*

Sapphic verse may be classed at pleasure either with the *Logaoedic* verses, as here, or with the *Epichoriambic* verses, as in article 690. I.

V. PHALAECIAN VERSE.—This consists of a Spondee, a Dactyl, and three Trochees:

$$\text{—} & \text{—} & | & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & | & \text{—} & \text{—} & : & \text{—} & \text{—} & | & \text{—} & \text{—}$$

Nōn ēst | vīvērē, || sēd vā- : lērē | vīta. *Mart.*

This verse is sometimes called, from the number of its syllables, *Heptecasyllabic*, of eleven syllables. It does not occur in Horace. In Catullus it sometimes has a Trochee, or an Iambus, in the first place.

VIII. MISCELLANEOUS VERSES.

692. GREATER ALCAIC VERSE.—This consists of an *Iambic Penthemimeris* and a pure *Dactylic Dimeter*, i. e., an Iambic Dipody, a long syllable and two Dactyls:

$$\text{—} & \text{—} & \vdots & \text{—} & \text{—} & | & \text{—} & || & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & | & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—}$$

Vīdēs : ūt āl- | tā || stēt nīvē | cāndīdum

Sōrāc- : tē nēc | jān || sūstīnē- | ānt ōnūs. *Hor.*

1. The Caesural Pause is usually between the two members.

2. In Horace the first foot is generally a Spondee.

3. This verse forms the first and second lines of the Alcaic Stanza. See 700. I.

693. DACTYLICO-IAMBIC VERSE.—This consists of a pure *Dactylic Penthemimeris* (656. 2) and an *Iambic Dimeter* (685):

[illegible]

Junssūs āb- | irē dō- | mūm, || fērē- : bār īn- | cērtō : pēde. *Hor.*

1. This verse is sometimes called *Elegiambus*.

2. This verse and the following compounds—the *Iambico-Dactylic* and the *Triapēiun*—have the peculiarity that the two members of each may be treated as separate lines, as the last syllable of the first member is common, as at the end of a line.

694. IAMBICO-DACTYLIC VERSE.—This consists of an *Iambic Dimeter* and a *Dactylic Penthemimeris*, i. e., of the same parts as the preceding, but in an inverted order:

[illegible]

Nivēs- : quē dē- | dūcūnt : Jōvēm : || nūnc mārē, | nūnc silv- | ae. *Hor.*

1. This verse is sometimes called *Iambelegus*.

2. For the final syllable of the first member, see 693. 2.

695. PRIAPEIAN VERSE.—This consists of a *Glyconic* and a *Pherecratēan* (689. I. II.):

[illegible]

Quērcūs | ārīdă rūs- | tīcā || cōnfōr- | mătă sēcū- | ri. *Catul.*

1. In this verse, as it appears in Catullus, the Glyconic and the Pherecratæan appear with such variations as are allowed in that poet (688). Hence the Trochee *quercūs* for the Spondee, in the example.

2. For the final syllable of the first member, see 693. 2.

SECTION III.

THE VERSIFICATION OF VIRGIL, HORACE, OVID, AND JUVENAL.

696. VIRGIL AND JUVENAL.—Virgil in his Eclogues, Georgics, and Aeneid, and Juvenal in his Satires use only the Dactylic Hexameter. See 671.

697. OVID.—Ovid uses the Hexameter in his Metamorphoses, but the Elegiac Distich in his Epistles and other works. See 676. 2.

698. HORACE.—Horace uses the Hexameter in his Epistles and Satires, but in his Lyries, i. e., in his Odes and Epodes, he uses a great variety of Metre.

699. LYRICS OF HORACE.—Most of the Odes and Epodes consist of Stanzas of two, three, or four verses; but a few of them consist entirely of a single kind of verse.

LYRIC METRES OF HORACE.

700. For convenience of reference the following outline of the Lyric metres of Horace is here inserted.

A. Stanzas of Four Verses.

I. ALCAIC STANZA.—First and second verses, Greater Alcaics (692); third, Iambic Dimeter Hypermeter (685. I.); fourth, Alcaic (691. II.).

- $$\begin{array}{l}
 1. \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \cup \text{ } \text{'} \\ - - \end{array} \right. \vdots \cup \text{ } \text{'} \mid - \parallel \text{'} \cup \cup \mid \text{'} \cup \bar{\cup} \\
 2. \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \cup \text{ } \text{'} \\ - - \end{array} \right. \vdots \cup \text{ } \text{'} \mid - \text{'} \vdots \cup \text{ } \text{'} \mid \bar{\cup} \\
 3. \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \cup \text{ } \text{'} \\ - - \end{array} \right. \vdots \cup \text{ } \text{'} \mid - \text{'} \vdots \cup \text{ } \text{'} \mid \bar{\cup} \\
 4. \text{'} \cup \cup \mid \text{'} \cup \cup \mid \text{'} \cup \cup \mid \text{'} \bar{\cup}
 \end{array}$$

In thirty-seven Odes: I. 9, 16, 17, 26, 27, 29, 31, 34, 35, 37; II. 1, 3, 5, 7, 9, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17, 19, 20; III. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 17, 21, 23, 26, 29; IV. 4, 9, 14, 15.

II. SAPPHIC AND ADONIC.—The first three verses, Sapphics (691. IV.); the fourth, Adonic (677. III.).

- $$\begin{array}{l}
 1. \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{'} \cup \cup \cup \text{'} \\ \text{'} \cup \cup \cup \text{'} \end{array} \right. \vdots \text{'} - \mid \text{'} \cup \cup \cup \mid \text{'} \cup \cup \vdots \text{'} \bar{\cup} \\
 2. \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{'} \cup \cup \cup \text{'} \\ \text{'} \cup \cup \cup \text{'} \end{array} \right. \vdots \text{'} - \mid \text{'} \cup \cup \cup \mid \text{'} \cup \cup \vdots \text{'} \bar{\cup} \\
 3. \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{'} \cup \cup \cup \text{'} \\ \text{'} \cup \cup \cup \text{'} \end{array} \right. \vdots \text{'} - \mid \text{'} \cup \cup \cup \mid \text{'} \cup \cup \vdots \text{'} \bar{\cup} \\
 4. \text{'} \cup \cup \cup \mid \text{'} \bar{\cup}
 \end{array}$$

In Twenty-six Odes: I. 2, 10, 12, 20, 22, 25, 30, 32, 33; II. 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 16; III. 8, 11, 14, 18, 20, 22, 27; IV. 2, 6, 11, and Sec. Hymn.

III. ASCLEPIADEAN AND GLYCONIC.—The first three verses, Asclepiadæans (689. III.); the fourth, Glyconic (689. I.).

- $$\begin{array}{l}
 1. \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{'} \cup \cup \cup \text{'} \\ \text{'} \cup \cup \cup \text{'} \end{array} \right. \vdots \text{'} - \mid \text{'} \cup \cup \cup \text{'} \mid \text{'} \cup \cup \cup \text{'} \mid \cup \text{ } \downarrow \\
 2. \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{'} \cup \cup \cup \text{'} \\ \text{'} \cup \cup \cup \text{'} \end{array} \right. \vdots \text{'} - \mid \text{'} \cup \cup \cup \text{'} \mid \text{'} \cup \cup \cup \text{'} \mid \cup \text{ } \downarrow \\
 3. \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{'} \cup \cup \cup \text{'} \\ \text{'} \cup \cup \cup \text{'} \end{array} \right. \vdots \text{'} - \mid \text{'} \cup \cup \cup \text{'} \mid \text{'} \cup \cup \cup \text{'} \mid \cup \text{ } \downarrow \\
 4. \text{'} - \mid \text{'} \cup \cup \cup \text{'} \mid \cup \text{ } \downarrow
 \end{array}$$

In nine Odes: I. 6, 15, 24, 33; II. 12; III. 10, 16; IV. 5, 12.

IV. ASCLEPIADEAN, PHERECRATEAN, AND GLYCONIC.—The first two verses, Asclepiadæans (689. III.); the third, Pherecratean (689. II.); the fourth, Glyconic (689. I.).

- $$\begin{array}{l}
 1. \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{'} \cup \cup \cup \text{'} \\ \text{'} \cup \cup \cup \text{'} \end{array} \right. \vdots \text{'} - \mid \text{'} \cup \cup \cup \text{'} \mid \text{'} \cup \cup \cup \text{'} \mid \cup \text{ } \downarrow \\
 2. \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{'} \cup \cup \cup \text{'} \\ \text{'} \cup \cup \cup \text{'} \end{array} \right. \vdots \text{'} - \mid \text{'} \cup \cup \cup \text{'} \mid \text{'} \cup \cup \cup \text{'} \mid \cup \text{ } \downarrow \\
 3. \text{'} - \mid \text{'} \cup \cup \cup \text{'} \mid \bar{\cup} \\
 4. \text{'} - \mid \text{'} \cup \cup \cup \text{'} \mid \cup \text{ } \downarrow
 \end{array}$$

In seven Odes: I. 5, 14, 21, 23; III. 7, 13; IV. 13.

XII. HEXAMETER AND IAMBICO-DACTYLIC (671, 694).

1. See VIII. 1.

$$2. \begin{array}{ccccccc} \cup & \text{—} & \vdots & \cup & \text{—} & \vdots & \cup & \text{—} \\ \text{—} & \text{—} & \vdots & \text{—} & \text{—} & \vdots & \cup & \text{—} \end{array} \parallel \begin{array}{ccccccc} \text{—} & \cup & \cup & \vdots & \text{—} & \cup & \cup & \vdots & \text{—} \\ \text{—} & \text{—} & \vdots & \text{—} & \text{—} & \vdots & \text{—} & \text{—} & \vdots & \text{—} \end{array}$$

In Epode 13.

XIII. IAMBIC TRIMETER AND DACTYLICO-IAMBIC (683, 693).

1. See VI. 1.

$$2. \begin{array}{ccccccc} \text{—} & \cup & \cup & \vdots & \text{—} & \cup & \cup & \vdots & \text{—} \\ \text{—} & \text{—} & \vdots & \text{—} & \text{—} & \vdots & \text{—} & \text{—} & \vdots & \text{—} \end{array} \parallel \begin{array}{ccccccc} \cup & \text{—} & \vdots & \cup & \text{—} & \vdots & \cup & \text{—} \\ \text{—} & \text{—} & \vdots & \text{—} & \text{—} & \vdots & \text{—} & \text{—} & \vdots & \text{—} \end{array}$$

In Epode 11.

XIV. TROCHAIC DIMETER CATALECTIC AND IAMBIC TRIMETER CATALECTIC (681, 684).

$$1. \begin{array}{ccccccc} \text{—} & \cup & \vdots & \text{—} & \cup & \vdots & \text{—} \\ \text{—} & \text{—} & \vdots & \text{—} & \text{—} & \vdots & \text{—} \end{array}$$

$$2. \begin{array}{ccccccc} \cup & \text{—} & \vdots & \cup & \text{—} & \vdots & \cup & \text{—} \\ \text{—} & \text{—} & \vdots & \text{—} & \text{—} & \vdots & \text{—} & \text{—} & \vdots & \text{—} \end{array}$$

In Ode II. 18.

XV. GREATER ARCHILOCHIAN AND IAMBIC TRIMETER CATALECTIC (691. I.; 684).

$$1. \begin{array}{ccccccc} \text{—} & \cup & \cup & \vdots & \text{—} & \cup & \cup & \vdots & \text{—} \\ \text{—} & \text{—} & \vdots & \text{—} & \text{—} & \vdots & \text{—} & \text{—} & \vdots & \text{—} \end{array} \parallel \begin{array}{ccccccc} \text{—} & \cup & \vdots & \text{—} & \cup & \vdots & \text{—} \\ \text{—} & \text{—} & \vdots & \text{—} & \text{—} & \vdots & \text{—} \end{array}$$

2. See XIV. 2.

In Ode I. 4.

XVI. ARISTOPHANIC AND GREATER SAPPHIC (691. III.; 690. II).

$$1. \begin{array}{ccccccc} \text{—} & \cup & \cup & \vdots & \text{—} & \cup & \cup & \vdots & \text{—} \\ \text{—} & \text{—} & \vdots & \text{—} & \text{—} & \vdots & \text{—} & \text{—} & \vdots & \text{—} \end{array}$$

$$2. \begin{array}{ccccccc} \text{—} & \cup & \cup & \vdots & \text{—} & \cup & \cup & \vdots & \text{—} \\ \text{—} & \text{—} & \vdots & \text{—} & \text{—} & \vdots & \text{—} & \text{—} & \vdots & \text{—} \end{array}$$

In Ode I. 8.

D. *Verses used Singly.*

XVII. ASCLEPIADEAN (689. III.).

$$\text{—} \text{—} \mid \text{—} \cup \cup \cup \text{—} \mid \text{—} \cup \cup \cup \text{—} \mid \cup \text{—}$$

In three Odes: I. 1; III. 30; IV. 8.

XVIII. GREATER ASCLEPIADEAN (689. IV.).

$$\text{—} \text{—} \mid \text{—} \cup \cup \cup \text{—} \mid \text{—} \cup \cup \cup \text{—} \mid \text{—} \cup \cup \cup \text{—} \mid \cup \text{—}$$

In three Odes: I. 11, 18; IV. 10.

XIX. IAMBIC TRIMETER (683). See VI. 1.

In Epode 17.

701. INDEX TO THE LYRIC METRES OF HORACE.

The Roman numerals refer to articles in the preceding outline, 700.

BOOK I.		Odes.	Metres.	Odes.	Metres.
Odes.	Metres.				
1,	XVII.	4,	II.	26,	I.
2,	II.	5,	I.	27,	II.
3,	VII.	6,	II.	28,	VII.
4,	XV.	7,	I.	29,	I.
5,	IV.	8,	II.	30,	XVII.
6,	III.	9,	I.		
7,	VIII.	10,	II.	BOOK IV.	
8,	XVI.	11,	I.	1,	VII.
9,	I.	12,	III.	2,	II.
10,	II.	13,	I.	3,	VII.
11,	XVIII.	14,	I.	4,	I.
12,	II.	15,	I.	5,	III.
13,	VII.	16,	II.	6,	II.
14,	IV.	17,	I.	7,	IX.
15,	III.	18,	XIV.	8,	XVII.
16,	I.	19,	I.	9,	I.
17,	I.	20,	I.	10,	XVIII.
18,	XVIII.	BOOK III.		11,	II.
19,	VII.	1,	I.	12,	III.
20,	II.	2,	I.	13,	IV.
21,	IV.	3,	I.	14,	I.
22,	II.	4,	I.	15,	I.
23,	IV.	5,	I.	EPODES.	
24,	III.	6,	I.	Epodes.	Metres.
25,	II.	7,	IV.	1,	VI.
26,	I.	8,	II.	2,	VI.
27,	I.	9,	VII.	3,	VI.
28,	VIII.	10,	III.	4,	VI.
29,	I.	11,	II.	5,	VI.
30,	II.	12,	V.	6,	VI.
31,	I.	13,	IV.	7,	VI.
32,	II.	14,	II.	8,	VI.
33,	III.	15,	VII.	9,	VI.
34,	I.	16,	III.	10,	VI.
35,	I.	17,	I.	11,	XIII.
36,	VII.	18,	II.	12,	VIII.
37,	I.	19,	VII.	13,	XII.
38,	II.	20,	II.	14,	XI.
		21,	I.	15,	XI.
BOOK II.		22,	II.	16,	X.
1,	I.	23,	I.	17,	XIX.
2,	II.	24,	VII.	SECULAR HYMN,	
3,	I.	25,	VII.		II.

APPENDIX.

I. FIGURES OF SPEECH.

702. A Figure is a deviation from the ordinary *form*, *construction*, or *signification* of words.

Deviations from the ordinary forms are called *Figures of Etymology*; from the ordinary constructions, *Figures of Syntax*, and from the ordinary significations, *Figures of Rhetoric*.

703. The Figures of Etymology are the following:

1. APHAERESIS takes a letter or syllable from the beginning of a word: 'st for *est*.
2. SYNCOPE takes a letter or syllable from the middle of a word: *vīrum* for *vīrōrum*, *dixē* for *dixisse*.
3. APOCOPE takes a letter or syllable from the end of a word: *tūn'* for *tūne*.
4. PROSTHESIS prefixes a letter or syllable to a word: *tētūli* for *tūli*.
5. EPENTHESIS inserts a letter or syllable in a word: *Alcūmēna* for *Alcmēna*, *ālītum* for *alītum*.
6. PARAGOGÉ adds a letter or syllable to a word: *dīcier* for *dīci*.
7. METATHESIS transposes letters or syllables: *pīstris* for *pristis*.
8. ANTITHESIS substitutes one letter for another: *volnus* for *vulnus*, *olli* for *illi*.

See also Figures of Prosody, 669.

704. The Figures of Syntax are the following:

I. ELLIPSIS is the omission of one or more words of a sentence:

Hābitābat ad Jōvis (*sc. templum*), *He dwelt near the temple of Jupiter*.
Liv. Abiit, ēvāsīt (*et*), *He has gone, has escaped*. Cic.

1. ASYNDETON is an ellipsis of a conjunction. See 587. I. 6; 587. III. 4.
2. ZEUGMA is an ellipsis which employs a single verb with two subjects or objects, though strictly applicable to only one:

Pācem an bellum gērens, *whether at peace (agens) or waging war*. Sall.

3. APOSIOPESIS, also called *Reticentia*, used for rhetorical effect, is an ellipsis which leaves the sentence unfinished:

Quos ego — sed mōtos praestat compōnēre fluctus. *Whom I — but it is better to calm the troubled waves*. Virg.

4. PROVERBS are often elliptical.

5. ELLIPSIS OF FACIO, DICO, ORO. See 460. 3; 602, II. 3.

II. PLEONASM is the use of superfluous words:

Erant itīnēra duo, quībus itīnerībus exīre possent, *There were two ways by which ways they might depart*. Caes. Eurūque Nōtusque ruunt, *Both Eurus and Notus rush forth*. Virg.

1. POLYSYNDETON is a pleonasm in the use of conjunctions, as in the last example.
2. HENDIADYS is the use of two nouns with a conjunction, instead of a noun with an adjective or genitive:

Armīs virisque, *for virīs armātīs, with armed men.* Tac.

3. ANAPHORA is the repetition of a word at the beginning of successive clauses :
Me cuncta Itālia, me ūniversa civitas consulem dēclārāvīt, *Me all Italy, me the whole state declared consul.* Cic.

4. EPIPHORA is the repetition of a word at the end of successive clauses :

Laelius nāvus ērat, doctus ērat, *Laelius was diligent, was learned.* Cic.

5. Monosyllabic prepositions are often repeated before successive nouns, regularly so with *et—et* :

Et in bellicis et in cīvilibus officiis, *both in military and in civil offices.* Cic.

Other prepositions are sometimes repeated.

6. A demonstrative, pronoun or adverb, *id, hoc, illud, sic, ita*, is often used somewhat redundantly to represent a subsequent clause. So also *quid*, in *quid censes* with a clause :

Illud te ōrouit diligens sis, *I ask you (that thing) to be (that you be) diligent.* Cic.

7. Pronouns redundant with *quidē*. See 446. 1.

8. Pleonasm often occurs with *licet* :

Ut liceat permittitur = licet, *It is lawful (is permitted that it is, &c.).* Cic.

9. A word is often repeated for emphasis.

10. Circumlocutions with *res, gēnus, mōdus*, and *rātio* are common.

III. ENALLAGE is the substitution of one part of speech for another, or of one grammatical form for another :

Pōpulus lāte rex (for *regnans*), *a people of extensive sway (ruling extensively).* Virg. Sērus (*sēro*) in coelum rēdeas, *May you return late to heaven.* Hor. Vīna cādīs (*vīnis cādōs*) ōnērāre, *to fill the flasks with wine.* Virg.

1. ANTIMETRIA is the use of one part of speech for another, as in the first two examples.

2. HYPALLAGE is the use of one case for another, as in the last example.

3. SYNESIS is a construction according to sense, without regard to grammatical forms. See 438. 6 and 461.

4. ANACOLŪTION is a want of harmony in the construction of the different parts of a sentence :

Si, ut dicunt, omnes Graios esse (*Graii sunt*), *if, as they say, all are Greeks.* Cic.

IV. HYPERBATON is a transposition of words or clauses :

Praeter arma nihil ērat sūper (*sūperērat*), *Nothing remained, except their arms.* Nep. Vālet atque vīvit (*vīvit atque vālet*), *He is alive and well.* Ter.

1. ANASTROPHE is the transposition of words only, as in the first example.

2. HYSTERON PROTERON is a transposition of clauses, as in the second example.

3. TMESIS is the separation of a compound word. See 523. 2. 2).

705. Figures of Rhetoric, also called Tropes, comprise several varieties. The following are the most important.

I. METAPHOR.—This is an implied comparison, and assigns to one object the appropriate name, epithet or action of another :

Rei pūblicae vulnus (for *damnum*), *the wound of the republic.* Cic. Naufrāgium fortunae, *the wreck of fortune.* Cic.

II. METONYMY is the use of one name for another naturally suggested by it :

Aequo Marte (for *proelio*) pugnātum est, *They fought in an equal contest.* Liv. Fūrit Vulcānus (*ignis*), *The fire rages.* Virg.

By this figure the cause is often put for the effect and the effect for the cause; the property for the possessor, the place or age for the people, the sign for the thing signified, etc.: *Mars* for *bellum*, *Vulcānus* for *ignis*, *Bacchus* for *vīnum*, *nōbilitas* for *nōbiles*, *Graecia* for *Graeci*, *laurea* for *victōria*, etc.

III. SYNECDOCHE is the use of a part for the whole, or of the whole for a part; of the special for the general, or of the general for the special:

In vestra tecta (*vestras dōmos*) discēdite, *Depart to your homes.* Cic. Statio māle fida cārinis (*nāvibus*), *a station unsafe for ships.* Virg.

IV. IRONY is the use of a word for its opposite:

Lēgātos bōnus (for *mālus*) impērātor vester non admisit, *Your good commander did not admit the ambassadors.* Liv.

1. *Enim, etenim, scilicet, videlicet, nimirum, credo*, and the like, are often ironical. See 503. 3.

V. HYPERBOLE is an exaggeration:

Ventis et fulminis ōcior ālis, *swifter than the winds and the wings of the lightning.* Virg.

VI. LITOTES denies something instead of affirming the opposite:

Non ōpus est = pernīciōsum est, *It is not necessary.* Cic.

II. LATIN AUTHORS.

706. The history of Roman literature embraces about eight centuries, from 250 B. C. to 550 A. D., and has been divided by Dr. Freund into three principal periods:

I. The ANTE-CLASSICAL PERIOD.—From 250 to 81 B. C. The principal authors of this period are:

Ennius,	Plautus,	Terence,	Lucretius.
---------	----------	----------	------------

II. The CLASSICAL PERIOD.—This embraces the Golden and the Silver age:

1. The *Golden Age*.—From 81 B. C. to 14 A. D. The principal authors are:

Cicero,	Nepos,	Horace,	Tibullus,
Caesar,	Livy,	Ovid,	Propertius.
Sallust,	Virgil,	Catullus,	

2. The *Silver Age*.—From 14 to 180 A. D. The principal authors are:

Phaedrus,	The Plinies,	Quintilian,	Persius,
Velleius,	Tacitus,	Suetonius,	Lucan,
The Senecas,	Curtius,	Juvenal,	Martial.

III. The Post-CLASSICAL PERIOD.—This embraces the Brazen and the Iron Age:

1. The *Brazen Age*.—From 180 to 476 A.D. The principal authors are:

Justin,	Eutropius,	Lactantius,	Claudian,
Victor,	Macrobius,	Ausonius,	Terentian.

2. The *Iron Age*.—From 476 to 550 A.D. The principal authors are:

Boëthius,	Cassiodorus,	Justinian,	Priscian.
-----------	--------------	------------	-----------

III. THE ROMAN CALENDAR.

707. The Julian Calendar of the Romans is the basis of our own, and is identical with it in the number of months in the year and in the number of days in the months.

708. PECULIARITIES.—The Roman calendar has the following peculiarities:

I. The days were not numbered from the beginning of the month, as with us, but from three different points in the month:

1. The Calends, the *first* of each month;
2. The Nones, the *fifth*,—but the *seventh* in March, May, July, and October;
3. The Ides, the *thirteenth*,—but the *fifteenth* in March, May, July, and October.

II. From these three points the days were numbered, not forward, but backward.

Hence after the *Ides* of each month, the days were numbered from the *Calends* of the following month.

III. In numbering backward from each of these points, the day before each was denoted by *pridie Cælendas*, *Nōnas*, etc.; the second before each by *die tertio* (not *secundo*; third, not second) *ante Cælendas*, etc., the third, by *die quarto*, etc., and so on through the month.

1. NUMERALS.—This peculiarity in the use of the numerals, designating the *second* day before the Calends, etc., as the *third*, and the *third* as the *fourth*, etc., arises from the fact that the Calends, etc., were themselves counted as the first. Thus *pridie ante Cælendas* becomes the second before the Calends, *die tertio ante Cælendas*, the third, etc.

2. NAME OF MONTH.—In dates the name of the month is added in the form of an adjective in agreement with *Cælendas*, *Nōnas*, etc., as, *die quarto ante Nōnas Jānuāriās*, often shortened to, *quarto ante Nōnas Jan.* or *IV. ante Nōnas Jan.* or without *ante*, as, *IV. Nōnas Jan.*, the second of January.

3. ANTE DIEM.—Instead of *die*—*ante*, *ante diem* is common, as, *ante diem quartum Nōnas Jan.* for *die quarto ante Nōnas Jan.*

4. AS INDECLINABLE NOUNS.—The expressions *ante diem*—*Cal.*, etc., *prīdie Cal.*, etc., are often used as indeclinable nouns with a preposition, as, *ex ante diem V. Idus Oct.*, from the 11th of Oct. *Liv. Ad prīdie Nōnas Maias*, till the 6th of May. *Cic.*

709. CALENDAR FOR THE YEAR.

Days of the Month.	March, May, July, Oct.	Jan. Aug. December.	April, June, Sept. Nov.	February.
1	CALENDIS. ¹	CALENDIS.	CALENDIS.	CALENDIS.
2	VI. Nonas. ¹	IV. Nonas.	IV. Nonas.	IV. Nonas.
3	V. "	III. "	III. "	III. "
4	IV. "	Prīdie Nonas.	Prīdie Nonas.	Prīdie Nonas.
5	III. "	NONIS.	NONIS.	NONIS.
6	Prīdie Nonas.	VIII. Idus.	VIII. Idus.	VIII. Idus.
7	NONIS.	VII. "	VII. "	VII. "
8	VIII. Idus.	VI. "	VI. "	VI. "
9	VII. "	V. "	V. "	V. "
10	VI. "	IV. "	IV. "	IV. "
11	V. "	III. "	III. "	III. "
12	IV. "	Prīdie Idus.	Prīdie Idus.	Prīdie Idus.
13	III. "	IDIBUS.	IDIBUS.	IDIBUS.
14	Prīdie Idus.	XIX. Calend. ²	XVIII. Calend. ²	XVI. Calend. ²
15	IDIBUS.	XVIII. "	XVII. "	XV. "
16	XVII. Calend. ²	XVII. "	XVI. "	XIV. "
17	XVI. "	XVI. "	XV. "	XIII. "
18	XV. "	XV. "	XIV. "	XII. "
19	XIV. "	XIV. "	XIII. "	XI. "
20	XIII. "	XIII. "	XII. "	X. "
21	XII. "	XII. "	XI. "	IX. "
22	XI. "	XI. "	X. "	VIII. "
23	X. "	X. "	IX. "	VII. "
24	IX. "	IX. "	VIII. "	VI. "
25	VIII. "	VIII. "	VII. "	V. (VI.) ³ "
26	VII. "	VII. "	VI. "	IV. (V.) "
27	VI. "	VI. "	V. "	III. (IV.) "
28	V. "	V. "	IV. "	Prīdie Cal (III. Cal.)
29	IV. "	IV. "	III. "	(Prīdie Cal.)
30	III. "	III. "	Prīdie Calend.	
31	Prīdie Calend.	Prīdie Calend.		

710. ENGLISH AND LATIN DATES.—The table (709) will furnish the learner with the English expression for any Latin date, or the Latin expression for any English date; but in translating Latin, it may be convenient also to have the following rule:

I. If the day is numbered from the Nones or Ides, subtract the number diminished by one from the number of the day on which the Nones or Ides fall:

¹ To the Calends, Nones, etc., the name of the month must of course be added. Before Nonas, Idus, etc., *ante* is sometimes used and sometimes omitted (708. III. 2).

² The Calends of the following month are of course meant, as the 16th of March for instance is, *XVII. Calendus Aprīles*.

³ The enclosed forms apply to *leap-year*.

VIII. ante Idus Jan. = $13 - (8 - 1) = 13 - 7 = 6$ th of January.

II. If the day is numbered from the Calends of the following month, subtract the number diminished by two from the number of days in the current month:

XVIII. ante Cal. Feb. = $31 - (18 - 2) = 31 - 16 = 15$ th of January.

In Leap-year the 24th and 25th February are both called the sixth before the Calends of March, *VI. Cal. Mart.* The days before the 24th are numbered precisely as if the month contained as usual only 28 days, but the days after the 25th are numbered regularly for a month of 29 days: *V., IV., III. Cal. Mart.,* and *pridie Cal. Mart.*

711. DIVISIONS OF DAY AND NIGHT.—The Roman day, from sun-rise to sun-set, and the night from sun-set to sun-rise, were each divided at all seasons of the year into twelve hours.

1. NIGHT WATCHES.—The night was also divided into four watches of three Roman hours each.

2. LENGTH OF ROMAN HOUR.—The hour, being uniformly $\frac{1}{24}$ of the day or of the night, of course varied in length, with the length of the day or night at different seasons of the year.

IV. ROMAN MONEY, WEIGHTS, AND MEASURES.

712. COINS.—The principal Roman coins were the *as*, of copper, the *sestertius*, *quīnārius*, *dēnārius*, of silver, and the *aureus*, of gold. Their value in the classical period was as follows:

As,	1 to 2 cents.
Sestertius,	4 "
Quīnārius,	8 "
Dēnārius,	16 "
Aureus = 25 dēnārii,	\$4.00.

1. AS—THE UNIT OF MONEY.—The *As* was originally the unit of the Roman currency, and contained a pound of copper, but it was diminished from time to time in weight and value till at last it contained only $\frac{1}{24}$ of a pound.

But whatever its weight, $\frac{1}{2}$ of the *as* is always called an *uncia*, $\frac{2}{3}$ a *sextans*, $\frac{3}{4}$ a *quadrans*, $\frac{1}{2}$ a *triens*, $\frac{5}{12}$ a *quincunx*, $\frac{6}{12}$ a *semis*, $\frac{7}{12}$ a *septunx*, $\frac{8}{12}$ a *bes*, $\frac{9}{12}$ a *dodrans*, $\frac{10}{12}$ a *dextans*, $\frac{11}{12}$ a *deunx*.

2. SESTERTIUS, QUINARIUS, AND DENARIUS.—The *sestertius* contained originally $2\frac{1}{2}$ asses, the *quīnārius* 5, and the *dēnārius* 10; but as the *as* depreciated in value, the number of *asses* in these coins was increased.

3. AS—THE GENERAL UNIT OF COMPUTATION.—The *as* is also used as the unit in other things as well as in money. Thus

1) *In Weight*.—The *as* is then a pound, and the *uncia* an ounce.

2) *In Measure*.—the *as* is then a foot or a *jūgūrum* (718), and the *uncia* is $\frac{1}{12}$ of a foot or of a *jūgerum*.

3) *In Interest*.—The *as* is then the unit of interest, which was one per cent. a month, i. e., twelve per year, the *uncia* is $\frac{1}{12}$ per month, i. e., 1 per year, and the *semiss* is $\frac{6}{12}$ per month, i. e., 6 per year, etc.

4) *In Inheritance*.—The *as* is then the whole estate, and the *uncia* $\frac{1}{12}$ of it: *hères ex asse*, heir of the whole estate; *hères ex dodrante*, heir of $\frac{9}{12}$.

713. COMPUTATION OF MONEY.—In all sums of money the common unit of computation was the *sestertius*, also called *nummus*; but four special points deserve notice:

I. In all sums of money, the units, tens, and hundreds are denoted by *sestertii* with the proper cardinals:

Quinque sestertii, 5 *sesterces*, viginti sestertii, 20 *sesterces*, dücenti sestertii, 200 *sesterces*.

II. One thousand sesterces are denoted by *mille sestertii*, or *mille sestertium*.

III. In sums less than 1,000,000 sesterces, the thousands are denoted either (1) by *millia sestertiüm* (gen. plur.), or (2) by *sestertia*:

Duo millia sestertium, or duo sestertia, 2,000 *sesterces*; quinque millia sestertium, or quinque sestertia, 5,000 *sesterces*

With *sestertia* the distributives were generally used, as, *bina sestertia*, for duo *sestertia*.

IV. In sums containing one or more millions of sesterces, *sestertium* with the value of 100,000 sesterces is used with the proper numeral adverb, *décies*, *vicies*, etc. Thus

Décies sestertium, 1,000,000 ($10 \times 100,000$) sesterces; Vicies sestertium, 2,000,000 ($20 \times 100,000$) sesterces.

1. **SESTERTIUM.**—In the examples under IV., *sestertium* is treated and declined as a neuter noun in the singular, though originally it was probably the genitive plur. of *sestertius*, and the full expression for 1,000,000 sesterces was *Décies centēna millia sestertium*. *Centēna millia* was afterward generally omitted, and finally *sestertium* lost its force as a genitive plural, and became a neuter noun in the singular, capable of declension

2. **SESTERTIUM OMITTED.**—Sometimes *sestertium* is omitted, leaving only the numeral adverb: as, *décies*, 1,000,000 sesterces.

3. **SIGN HS.**—The sign HS, is often used for *sestertii*, and sometimes for *sestertia*, or *sestertium*:

Decem HS = 10 *sesterces* (HS = sestertii). Dena HS = 10,000 *sesterces* (HS = sestertia). Décies HS = 1,000,000 *sesterces* (HS = sestertium).

714. WEIGHT.—The basis of Roman weights is the *Libra*, also called *As* or *Pondo*, equal probably to about $11\frac{1}{2}$ ounces avoirdupois.

1. **OUNCES.**—The *Libra*, like the *as* in money, is divided into 12 parts called by the names given under 712. 1.

2. **FRACTIONS OF OUNCES.**—Parts of ounces also have special names: $\frac{1}{2}$ = *semiss*, $\frac{1}{3}$ = *duella*, $\frac{1}{4}$ = *sicilius*, $\frac{1}{6}$ = *sextūla*, $\frac{1}{8}$ = *drachma*, $\frac{1}{16}$ = *scrupulum*, $\frac{1}{32}$ = *obolus*.

715. DRY MEASURE.—The *Modius* is the basis, equal to about a peck.

1. **SEXTARIUS.**—This is $\frac{1}{16}$ of a modius.

2. **PARTS OF THE SEXTARIUS.**—These have special names: $\frac{1}{2}$ = hēmīna, $\frac{1}{8}$ = ācētābūlum, $\frac{1}{16}$ = cyāthus.

716. LIQUID MEASURE.—The *Amphōra* is the most convenient unit of the Roman liquid measure, and contained a Roman cubic foot, equivalent probably to about seven gallons, wine measure.

1. **CULEUS.**—Twenty *amphōrae* make one *Cūleus*.

2. **PARTS OF AMPHORA.**—These have special names: $\frac{1}{2}$ = urna, $\frac{1}{8}$ = congius, $\frac{1}{16}$ = sextārius, $\frac{1}{64}$ = hēmīna, $\frac{1}{128}$ = quartārius, $\frac{1}{256}$ = ācētābūlum, $\frac{1}{512}$ = cyāthus.

717. LONG MEASURE.—The basis of this measure is the Roman foot, equivalent to about 11.6 inches.

1. **COMBINATIONS OF FEET.**—Palmīpes = $1\frac{1}{2}$ Roman feet; cūbitus = $1\frac{1}{2}$; passus = 5; stādium = 625.

2. **PARTS OF FOOT.**—Palmus = $\frac{1}{4}$ foot; uncia = $\frac{1}{12}$; digītus = $\frac{1}{16}$.

718. SQUARE MEASURE.—The basis of this measure is the *Jūgērūm*, containing 28,800 Roman square feet, equivalent to about six tenths of an acre.

The parts of the *jūgērūm* have the same name as those of the *As*: uncia = $\frac{1}{16}$, sextans = $\frac{1}{24}$, etc. See 712. 1.

V. ABBREVIATIONS.

719. Names.

A. = Aulus.	L. = Lūcius.	Q. (Qu.) = Quintus.
Ap. = Appius.	M. = Marcus.	S. (Sex.) = Sextus.
C. (G.) = Caius (Gaius).	M'. = Mānius.	Ser. = Servius.
Cn. (Gn.) = Cnaeus (Gnaeus).	Mam. = Māmercus.	Sp. = Spūrius.
D. = Dēcimus.	N. = Nūmērius.	T. = Titus.
	P. = Publius.	Ti. (Tib.) = Tibērius.

720. Other Abbreviations.

A. D. = ante diem.	F. C. = faciendum cūravit.	Proc. = prōconsul.
Aed. = aedilis.	Id. = Idus.	Q. B. F. F. Q. S. = quod bonum, felix, faustumque sit.
A. U. C. = anno urbis conditae.	Imp. = impērātor.	Quir. = Quirites.
Cal. (Kal.) = Cālendae.	Leg. = lēgātus.	Resp. = res publica.
Cos. = consul.	Non. = Nōnac.	S. = sēnātus.
Coss. = consules.	O. M. = optimus maximus.	S. C. = sēnātus consultum.
D. = divus.	P. C. = patres conscripti.	S. D. P. = salūtem dicit plurimam.
D. D. = dōno dedit.	Pont. Max. = pontifex maximus.	S. P. Q. R. = sēnātus pōpūlusque Rōmānus.
Des. = dēsignātus.	P. R. = pōpūlus Rōmānus.	Tr. Pl. = tribūnus plēbis.
D. M. = diis mānibus.	Pr. = praetor.	
D. S. = de suo.	Praef. = praefectus.	
D. S. P. P. = de sua pecūnia posuit.		
Eq. Rom. = Eques Rōmānus.		
F. = filius.		

INDEX OF VERBS.

721. This Index contains an alphabetical list, not only of all the simple verbs in common use which involve any important irregularities, but also of such compounds as seem to require special mention.

But in regard to compounds of prepositions, two important facts must be borne in mind :

1. That the elements,—preposition and verb—often appear in the compound in a changed form. See 338. 1 and 341. 3.

2. That the stem-vowel is often changed in the Perfect and Supine. See 260.

A.

Abdo, ěre, dĩđi, dĩtum, 280.
 Ab-ġgo. See *ġgo*, 279.
 Ab-ġcio. See *ġcio*, 279.
 Ab-luo. See *luo*, 274.
 Ab-nuo. See *annuo*, 274.
 Abŏleo, ěre, ěvi, ětum, 266. I.
 Abŏlesco, ěre, ŏlěvi, ŏlětum, 276. II.
 Ab-rġpio. See *rġpio*, 276.
 Abs-con-do. See *abdo*, 280.
 Ac-cendo, ěre, i, censum, 273. III.
 Ac-cġdo. See *cġdo*, 280.
 Ac-cġno. See *cġno*, 280.
 Ac-cġpio. See *cġpio*, 279.
 Ac-cŏlo. See *cŏlo*, 276.
 Ac-cumbo, ěre, cŭbui, cŭbġtum, 276.

II.

Aceo, ěre, ui, —, 267.
 Acesco, ěre, ěcui, —, 281.
 Ac-qui-ro. See *quaero*, 276. III.
 Aeuo, ěre, ui, ũtum, 273. II.
 Ad-do. See *abdo*, 280.
 Ad-ġmo. See *ġmo*, 279.
 Adġpiscor, i, adeptus sum, 282.
 Ad-ŏlesco. See *abŏlesco*, 276. II.
 Ad-ŏrior. See *ŏrior*, 286.
 Ad-spġcio. See *aspġcio*, 273. I. 2.
 Ad-sto. See *sto*, 264.
 Aegresco, ěre, —, 281.
 Af-fġro. See *fġro*, 292.
 Age, *def.*, 297.
 Ag-nosco. See *nosco*, 277.
 Ag-grġdior. See *grġdior*, 282.
 Ġgo, ěre, ġgi, actum, 279.
 Ġio, *def.*, 297.
 Albeo, ěre, —, 268.
 Algeo, ěre, alsi, —, 269.

Al-ġcio, ěre, lexi, lectum, 249, 273.
 II. 1.

Al-luo. See *luo*, 274.
 Alo, ěre, ġlui, ġlġtum, altum, 276. II.
 Amb-ġgo. See *ġgo*, 279.
 Ambio, 295. 3.
 Amġcio, ġre (ui), tum, 284.
 Amo, *parad.*, 205.
 Amplector, i, amplexus sum, 282.
 Ango, ěre, auxi, —, 274.
 Annuo, ěre, i, —, 274.
 Apġge, *def.*, 297.
 Apġrio, ġre, ui, tum, 284.
 Apiscor, i, aptus sum, 282.
 Ap-pġreo. See *pġreo*, 266.
 Ap-pġto. See *pġto*, 276. III.
 Applico. See *plico*, 262.
 Ap-pŏno. See *pŏno*, 276.
 Arcesso, ěre, ġvi, ġtum, 276. III.
 Ardeo, ěre, arsi, arsum, 269.
 Aresco, ěre, ġrui, —, 281.
 Arguo, ěre, ui, ũtum, 273. II.
 Ar-rġpio. See *rġpio*, 276.
 A-scendo. See *scando*, 273. III.
 A-spergo. See *spargo*, 273.
 A-spġcio, ěre, spexi, spectum, 273.
 As-sentior, ġri, sensus sum, 286.
 As-sġdeo. See *sġdeo*, 270.
 At-texo. See *texo*, 276.
 At-tġneo. See *tġneo*, 266.
 At-tingo. See *tango*, 280.
 At-tollo. See *tollo*, 280.
 Audeo, ěre, ausus sum, 272.
 Audio, *parad.*, 211.
 Au-fġro. See *fġro*, 292.
 Augeo, ěre, auxi, auctum, 269.
 Ave, *def.*, 297.
 Avco, ěre, —, 268.

B.

Balbūtio, ire, —, 283.
Bătuo, ăre, i, —, 274.
Bîbo, ăre, i, —, 274.
Blandior, îri, itus sum, 226.

C.

Cădo, ăre, cēcîdi, cāsum, 280.
Caecūtio, ire, —, 283.
Caedo, ăre, cēcîdi, caesum, 280.
Călesco, ăre, cālui, —, 281.
Calleo, ăre, ui, —, 267.
Calveo, ăre, —, 268.
Candeo, ăre, ui, —, 267.
Căneo, ăre, —, 268.
Căno, ăre, cēcîni, cantum, 280.
Căpesso, ăre, îvi, itum, 276. III.
Căpio, ăre, cēpi, captum, 214, 279.
Carpo, ăre, si, tum, 273.
Căveo, ăre, cāvi, cautum, 270.
Cedo, ăre, cessi, cessum, 273. III.
Cēdo, *def.*, 297.
Cello, *obs.* See *excello*, 276. II.
Censeo, ăre, ui, censum, 266. III.
Cerno, ăre, crēvi, crētum, 276. II.
Cieo, ăre, civi, citum, 269. I.
Cingo, ăre, cinxi, cinctum, 273.
Circum-sisto. See *sisto*, 280.
Clango, ăre, —, 275.
Claudo, ăre, clausi, clausum, 273. III.
Claudo, ăre (*to be lame*), —, 275.
Co-ălesco, ăre, ālui, ālitum, 281.
Co-arguo. See *arguo*, 273.
Coeno, 262. 2.
Coepi, *def.*, 297.
Cognosco. See *nosco*, 277.
Cōgo, ăre, coēgi, coactum. See *ăgo*, 279.
Col-lido. See *laedo*, 273. III.
Col-ligo. See *lĕgo*, 279.
Col-lūceo. See *lūceo*, 269.
Colo, ăre, ui, cultum, 276. II.
Com-ădo. See *ădo*, 291.
Commīniscor, i, commentus sum, 282.
Com-mōveo. See *mōveo*, 270.
Cōmo, ăre, compsi, comptum, 273.
Com-pareo (*perco*). See *parco*, 280.
Compērio, ire, pēri, pertum, 281.
Compesco, ăre, peseni, —, 276. II.
Com-pingo. See *pango*, 280.

Com-plector, i, plexus sum, 282.
Com-pleo, ăre, ēvi, ētum, 266.
Com-primo. See *prĕmo*, 273. III.
Com-pungo, ăre, punxi, punctum.
See *pungo*, 280.
Con-cīdo. See *cādo*, 280.
Con-cīdo. See *caedo*, 280.
Con-cīno. See *cāno*, 280.
Con-clūdo. See *claudio*, 273. III.
Con-cūpisco, ăre, cūpīvi, cūpītum, 281.
Con-cūtio. See *quātio*, 273. III.
Con-do. See *abdo*, 280.
Con-fercio. See *farcio*, 284.
Con-ficio. See *fūcio*, 279.
Confit, *def.*, 297.
Con-fiteor. See *fāteor*, 272.
Con-fringo. See *frango*, 279.
Congruo, ăre, i, —, 274.
Connīveo, ăre, nīvi, nixi, —, 269.
Con-sĕro. See *sĕro*, 276. II.
Con-sisto. See *sisto*, 280.
Con-spicio, ăre, spexi, spectrum, 249.
Con-stituo. See *stātuo*, 273. II.
Con-sto. See *sto*, 264.
Consūlo, ăre, ui, tum, 276. II.
Con-temno. See *temno*, 275.
Con-texo. See *texo*, 276.
Con-tingo. See *tango*, 280.
Con-vălesco, ăre, vālui, vālitum, 281.
Cōquo, ăre, coxi, coctum, 273. II.
Cor-rīpio. See *rāpio*, 276.
Cor-ruo. See *ruo*, 273.
Crēbresco, ăre, crēbrui, —, 281.
Crēdo, ăre, credīdi, crēditum, 280.
Crēpo, ăre, ui, itum, 262.
Cresco, ăre, crēvi, crētum, 276. II.
Cūbo, ăre, ui, itum, 262.
Cūdo, ăre, cūdi, cūsum, 273. III.
Cumbo. See *accumbo*, 276.
Cūpio, ăre, îvi, itum, 249, 276.
Curro, ăre, cūcurri, cursum, 280.

D.

Dē cerpo, ăre, si, tum, 273. I. 1.
Dēcet, *impers.*, 299.
Dē-do. See *abdo*, 280.
Dē-fendo, ăre, i, fensum, 273. III.
Dē-fētor. See *fātiscor*, 282.
Dēfit, *def.*, 297.
Dēgo, ăre, dēgi. See *ăgo*, 279.
Dēleo, ăre, ēvi, ētum, 266.

Dē-līgo. See *līgo*, 279.
 Dē-mīco. See *mīco*, 262.
 Dēmo, ěre, dempsi, demptum, 273.
 Dē-pango. See *pango*, 280.
 Dē-prīmo. See *prīmo*, 273. III.
 Depso, ěre, uī, ītum, tum, 276. II.
 De-scendo. See *scando*, 273. III.
 Dē-sīlio. See *sālio*, 284.
 Dē-sīpio. See *sāpio*, 276. III.
 Dē-tendo. See *tendo*, 280.
 Dē-tīneo. See *tēneo*, 266.
 Dē-vertor. See *verto*, 273. III.
 Dīco, ěre, dixi, dictum, 273, 237.
 Dif-fēro. See *fēro*, 292.
 Dig-nosco. See *nosco*, 277.
 Dī-līgo. See *līgo*, 279.
 Dīmīco. See *mīco*, 262.
 Dī-rīgo, ěre, rexi, rectum, 273. I. 1.
 Disco, ěre, dīdīci, —, 280.
 Dis-crēpo. See *crēpo*, 262.
 Dis-cumbo. See *accumbo*, 276.
 Dis-pertior. See *partior*, 286.
 Dis-plīceo. See *plīceo*, 266.
 Dis-sīdeo. See *sīdeo*, 270.
 Di-stīnguo. See *stīnguo*, 275.
 Di-sto. See *sto*, 264.
 Dītesco, ěre, —, 281.
 Dīvīdo, ěre, vīsi, vīsum, 273. III.
 Do, dāre, dēdi, dātum, 264.
 Dōceo, ěre, uī, tum, 266. III.
 Dōmo, āre, uī, ītum, 262.
 Dūco, ěre, duxi, etum, 273, 237.
 Dulcesco, ěre, —, 281.
 Dūresco, ěre, dūrui, —, 281.

E.

Edo, ěre, ēdi, ēsum, 279, 291.
 E-do, ěre, ēdīdi, editum, 280.
 Egeo, ěre, uī, —, 267.
 Elicio, ěre, uī, ītum, 276. II.
 E-līgo. See *līgo*, 279.
 Emīco. See *mīco*, 262.
 Emīneo, ěre, uī, —, 267.
 Emo, ěre, emī, emptum, 279.
 Enēco, āre, uī, tum, 262.
 Eo, ěre, īvi, ītum, 295.
 Esūrio, ěre, —, ītum, 283.
 E-vādo, ěre, vāsi, vāsum, 273. III.
 Evānesco, ěre, ēvānui, —, 281.
 Ex-ardesco, ěre, arsi, arsum, 281.
 Excello, ěre, uī (rare), —, 276. II.
 Ex-clūdo. See *claudo*, 273. III.

Ex-curro. See *curro*, 280.
 Ex-ōlesco. See *abōlesco*, 273. II.
 Expēdit, *impers.*, 301.
 Expergiscor, i, experrectus sum, 282.
 Ex-pērior, īri, pertus sum, 286.
 Ex-pleo. See *compleo*, 266.
 Ex-plīco. See *plico*, 262.
 Ex-plōdo. See *plaudo*, 273. III.
 Ex-stīnguo, ěre, stīnxi, stīnctum, 275.
 Ex-sto. See *sto*, 264.
 Ex-tendo. See *tendo*, 280.
 Ex-tollo. See *tollo*, 280.

F.

Fācesso, ěre, īvi, i, ītum, 276. III.
 Fācio, ěre, fēci, factum, 249, 279, 237.
 Fallo, ěre, fēfelli, falsum, 280.
 Farcio, ěre, farsi, fartum, fartum, 284. II.
 Fāri, *def.*, 297.
 Fāteor, ēri, fassus sum, 272.
 Fātisco, ěre, —, 281. 3.
 Fātiscor, i, —, 282.
 Fāveo, ěre, fāvi, fautum, 270.
 Fendo, *obs.* See *defendo*, 273.
 Fērio, ěre, —, 283.
 Fēro, ferre, tūli, lātum, 292.
 Fērōcio, ěre, —, 283.
 Ferveo, ěre, fervi, ferui, —, 269.
 Fīdo, ěre, fīsus sum, 282.
 Fīgo, ěre, fīxi, fīxum, 273. III.
 Fīndo, ěre, fīdi, fīssum, 273. III.
 Fīngo, ěre, fīnxi, fīctum, 273.
 Fīo, fīeri, factus sum, 294.
 Flāveo, ěre, —, 268.
 Fleto, ěre, xi, xum, 273. III.
 Fleo, ěre, ēvi, ētum, 266.
 Flōreo, ěre, uī, —, 267.
 Flōresco, ěre, flōrui, —, 281.
 Fluo, ěre, fluxi, fluxum, 273. III.
 Fōdio, ěre, fōdi, fōssum, 249, 279.
 Foeteo, ěre, —, 268.
 Fōrem, *def.*, 297. III. 2.
 Fōveo, ěre, fōvi, fōtum, 270.
 Frango, ěre, frēgi, fractum, 279.
 Frēmo, ěre, uī, ītum, 276. II.
 Frēndo, ěre, —, frēssum, frēsum, 273. III.
 Frīco, āre, uī, ātum, tum, 262.
 Frīgeo, ěre, frīxi (rare), —, 269.
 Froudeco, ěre, uī, —, 267.

Fruor, i, fructus, frūtus sum, 282.
Fūgio, ēre, fūgi, fugitum, 249, 279.
Fulcio, īre, fulsi, fultum, 284.
Fulgeo, ēre, fulsi, —, 269.
Fulmīuat, *impers.*, 300.
Fundo, ēre, fūdi, fūsum, 279.
Fungor, i, functus sum, 282.
Fūro, ēre, ui, —, 276. II.

G.

Gaunio, īre, —, 283.
Gaudeo, ēre, gāvisus sum, 272.
Gēmo, ēre, ui, itum, 276. II.
Gēro, ēre, gessi, gestum, 273.
Gigno, ēre, gēnui, gēnītum, 276. II.
Glisco, ēre, —, 275.
Grādior, i, gressus sum, 249, 282.
Grandesco, ēre, —, 281.
Grandīnat, *impers.*, 300.
Grāvesco, ēre, —, 281.

H.

Haereo, ēre, haesi, haesum, 269.
Haurio, īre, hausi, haustum, haustū-
rus, hausūrus, 284.
Hēbeo, ēre, —, 268.
Hisco, ēre, —, 275.
Horreo, ēre, ui, —, 267.
Hortor, 222.
Hūmeo, ēre, —, 268.

I.

Ico, ēre, īci, ictum, 273. II.
Illīcio, ēre, lexi, lectum, 249, 273.
I. 1.
Il-lido. See *laedo*, 273. III.
Imbuo, ēre, ui, itum, 273. II.
Imminēo, ēre, —, 268.
Im-parco. See *parco*, 280.
Im-pertior. See *partior*, 286.
Im-pingo. See *pango*, 280.
In-cendo. See *accendo*, 273.
Incesso, ēre, īvi, i, —, 276. III.
In-cīdo. See *cādo*, 280.
In-cīdo. See *caedo*, 280.
In-crēpo. See *crēpo*, 262.
In-creSCO. See *cresco*, 276. II.
In-cumbo. See *accumbo*, 276.

In-cūtio. See *quātio*, 273. III.
Ind-īgeo, ēre, ui, —. See *ēgeo*, 267.
Ind-īpiscor. See *āpiscor*, 282.
In-do. See *abdo*, 280.
Indulgeo, ēre, dulsei, dultum, 269.
Ineptio, īre, —, 283.
Infit, *def.*, 297.
Ingruo, ēre, i, —, 274.
In-nōtesco, ēre, nōtui, 281.
In-ōlesco. See *ābōlesco*, 276.
Inquam, *def.*, 297.
In-sīdeo. See *sēdeo*, 270.
In-spīcio, ēre, spexi, spectrum, 249.
In-sto. See *sto*, 264.
Intel-līgo. See *lēgo*, 279.
Intērest, *impers.*, 301.
Inter-nosco. See *nosco*, 277.
Invētērasco, ēre, rāvi, rātum, 276.
Irascor, i, —, 282.
Ir-ruo. See *ruo*, 273.

J.

Jācio, ēre, jēci, jactum, 249, 279.
Jūbeo, ēre, jussi, jussum, 269.
Jūro, 262. 2.
Jūvēnesco, ēre, —, 281.
Jūvo, āre, jūvi, jūtum, 263.

L.

Lābor, i, lapsus sum, 282.
Lācesso, ēre, īvi, itum, 276. III.
Lācio, *obs.* See *allīcio*, 273. I. 2.
Lacteo, ēre, —, 268.
Laedo, ēre, laesi, laesum, 273. III.
Lambo, ēre, i, —, 274.
Languco, ēre, i, —, 269.
Lāpīdat, *impers.*, 300.
Largior, īri, itus sum, 286.
Lāteo, ēre, ui, —, 267.
Lāvo, ēre, lāvi, lautum, lōtum, lavā-
tum, 263.
Lēgo, ēre, lēgi, lectum, 279.
Libet, *impers.*, 299.
Līceor, ēri, itus sum, 272.
Līcet, *impers.*, 299.
Līmo, ēre, livi, lēvi, litum, 276. II.
Linquo, ēre, liqui, —, 279.
Līqueo, ēre, liqui (licui), 269.
Līquet, *impers.*, 299.
Līquor, i, —, 282.

Līveo, ēre, —, 268.
 Lōquor, i, lōcūtus sum, 282.
 Lūceo, ēre, luxi, —, 269.
 Lūcescit, *impers.*, 300.
 Lūdo, ēre, lūsi, lūsum, 273. III.
 Lūgeo, ēre, luxi, —, 269.
 Luo, ēre, lui, —, 274.

M.

Macreseo, ēre, macrui, —, 281.
 Mādeo, ēre, ui, —, 267.
 Mādesco, ēre, mādui, —, 281.
 Maereo, ēre, —, 268.
 Mālo, malle, mālui, —, 293.
 Mando, ēre, i, mansum, 273. III.
 Māneo, ēre, mansi, mansum, 269.
 Mātūresco, ēre, mātūrui, —, 281.
 Mēdeor, ēri, —, 272.
 Mēmīni, *def.*, 297.
 Mentior, īri, itus sum, 286.
 Mēreor, ēri, itus sum, 272.
 Mergo, ēre, mersi, mersum, 273. III.
 Mētiōr, īri, meus sum, 286.
 Mēto, ēre, messui, messum, 276. II.
 Mētuo, ēre, ui, —, 274.
 Mīco, āre, ui, —, 262.
 Mīniscor, *obs.* See *commīniscor*, 282.
 Mīnuo, ēre, ui, ūtum, 273. II.
 Miscuo, ēre, miscui, mistum, mixtum, 266. III.
 Mīsēreor, ēri, itus or tus sum, 272.
 Mīsēret, *impers.*, 299.
 Mītesco, ēre, —, 281.
 Mitto, ēre, mīsi, missum, 273. III.
 Mōlior, īri, itus sum, 286.
 Mollesco, ēre, —, 281.
 Mōlo, ēre, ui, itum, 276. II.
 Mōneuo, ēre, ui, itum, *parad.*, 207.
 Mordeo, ēre, mōmordi, morsum, 271.
 Mōrior, i (īri), mortuus sum, 249, 282.
 Mōveo, ēre, mōvi, mōtum, 270.
 Mulceo, ēre, mulsi, mulsum, 269.
 Mulgeo, ēre, mulsi, mulsum, 269.

N.

Nanciscor, i, nactus sum, 282.
 Naseor, i, nātus sum, 282.
 Necto, ēre, nexi, nexui, nexum, 273. III.

Neg-ligo, ēre, lexi, lectum. See *lēgo*, 279.
 Neo, ēre, nēvi, nētum, 266.
 Nēqueo, īre, īvi, itum, 296.
 Nigresco, ēre, nigrui, —, 281.
 Ningō, ēre, ninxi, —, 274.
 Nīteo, ēre, ui, —, 267.
 Nītor, i, nīsus, nīxus sum, 282.
 Nōlo, nolle, nōlui, —, 293.
 Nosco, ēre, nōvi, nōtum, 277.
 Nūbo, ēre, nupsi, nuptum, 273.
 Nuo, *obs.* See *annuo*, 274.
 Nuptūrio, īre, īvi, —, 283. 2.

O.

Ob-do. See *abdo* 280.
 Ob-dormiseo, ēre, dormīvi, dormītum, 281.
 Obliviscor, i, oblitus sum, 282.
 Ob-mūtesco, ēre, mūtui, —, 281.
 Ob-sīdeo. See *sēdeo*, 270.
 Ob-sōlesco. See *abōlesco*, 276.
 Ob-sto. See *sto*, 264.
 Ob-surdesco, ēre, surdūi, —, 281.
 Ob-tīneo. See *tēneo*, 266.
 Oc-cīdo. See *cūdo*, 280.
 Oc-cīdo. See *caedo*, 280.
 Oc-cīno. See *cāno*, 280.
 Oc-cīpio. See *cāpio*, 279.
 Oceūlo, ēre, ui, tum, 276. II.
 Odi, *def.*, 297.
 Of-fendo. See *dfendo*, 273. III.
 Oleo, ēre, ui, —, 267.
 Olesco, *obsolete.* See *abōlesco*, 276. II.
 Opērio, īre, ui, tum, 284.
 Oportet, *impers.*, 299.
 Op-pērior, īri, pertus, perītus sum, 286.
 Ordior, īri, orsus sum, 286.
 Orior, īri, ortus sum, 286.
 Os-tendo. See *tendo*, 280.
 Ovat, *def.*, 297.

P.

Pāciscor, i, paetus sum, 282.
 Palleo, ēre, ui, —, 267.
 Pando, ēre, i, pansum, passum, 273. III.
 Pango, ēre, pēpīgi, paetum, 280.
 Pango, ēre, panxi, pēgi, paetum, pactum, 280.

Parco, ěre, pĕperci (parsi), parsum, 280.

Părio, ěre, pĕpĕri, partum, 249, 280.

Partior, ĭri, ĭtus sum, 286.

Partŭrio, ĭre, ĭvi, —, 283. 2.

Pasco, ěre, pāvi, pastum, 276.

Păteo, ěre, ui, —, 267.

Pătior, i, passus sum, 225, 249, 282.

Păveo, ěre, pāvi, —, 270.

Pecto, ěre, xi, xum, 273. III.

Pel-licio, ěre, lexi, lectum, 249, 273.

I. 2.

Pello, ěre, pĕpŭli, pulsum, 280.

Pendeo, ěre, pĕpendi, pensum, 271.

Pendo, ěre, pĕpendi, pensum, 280.

Per-cello. See *excello*, 276. II.

Per-censeo. See *censeo*, 266.

Per-do, ěre, didi, dĭtum. See *abdo*, 280.

Pergo (*for* per-rĭgo), ěre, per-rexi, per-rectum. See *rĕgo*, 273.

Per-pĕtior. See *pătior*, 282.

Per-sto. See *sto*, 264.

Per-tĭneo. See *tĕnco*, 266.

Pessum-do. See *do*, 264.

Pĕto, ěre, ĭvi, ĭtum, 276. III.

Pĭget, *impers.*, 299.

Pingo, ěre, pinxi, pictum, 273.

Pinguesco, ěre, —, 281.

Pinso (pĭso), ěre, i, ui, piusĭtum, pi-sum, piusum, 273. III.

Plaudo, ěre, si, sum, 273. III.

Plecto, ěre, xi, xum, 273. III.

Plector, *not used as Dep.* See *amplector*, 282.

Pleo, *obsolete*. See *compleo*, 266.

Plico, āre, āvi, ui, ātum, ĭtum, 262.

Pluo, ěre, i *or* vi, —, 274.

Poenĭtet, *impers.*, 299.

Polleo, ěre, —, 268.

Polliceor, ĕri, ĭtus sum, 272.

Pŏno, ěre, pŏsui, pŏsitum, 276. II.

Posco, ěre, pŏposei, —, 280.

Pos-sĭdeo. See *sĭdeo*, 270.

Possum, posse, pŏtui, —, 289.

Pŏtior, ĭri, ĭtus sum, 286.

Pŏto, āre, āvi, ātum, um, 262. 1, 2.

Prae-cĭno. See *cāno*, 280.

Prae-curro. See *curro*, 280.

Prae-sĭdeo. See *sĭdeo*, 270.

Prae-sto. See *sto*, 264.

Prae-vertor. See *verto*, 273. III.

Prandeo, ěre, i, pransum, 269.

Prehendo, ěre, i, hensum, 273. III.

Prĕmo, ěre, pressi, pressum, 273. III.

Prŏd-ĭgo. See *ĭgo*, 279.

Prŏ-do. See *abdo*, 280.

Prŏficiscor, i, prŏfectus sum, 282.

Prŏ-fiteor. See *fāteor*, 272.

Prŏmo, ěre, prompsi, promptum, 273.

Prŏ-sum, prŏdesse, prŏfui, —, 290.

Prŏ-tendo. See *tendo*, 280.

Psallo, ěre, i, —, 274.

Pŭdet, *impers.*, 299.

Puĕrasco, ěre, —, 281.

Pungo, ěre, pŭpŭgi, punctum, 280.

Q.

Quaero, ěre, quaesĭvi, quaesĭtum, 276. III.

Quaesio, *def.*, 297.

Quātio, ěre, quassi, quassum, 249, 273. III.

Queo, ĭre, ĭvi, ĭtum, 296.

Quĕror, i, questus sum, 282.

Quiesco, ěre, quiĕvi, quiĕtum, 276. II.

R.

Rādo, ěre, rāsi, rāsum, 273. III.

Răpio, ěre, răpui, raptum, 249, 276.

Raucio, ĭre, rausi, rausum, 284.

Rĕ-censeo. See *censeo*, 266.

Re-crŭdesco, ěre, crŭdŭi, 281.

Rĕd-arguo. See *arguo*, 273.

Red do. See *abdo*, 280.

Rĕ-fello. See *fallo*, 280.

Rĕfĕro. See *fĕro*, 292.

Rĕfert, *impers.*, 301.

Rĕgo, ěre, rexi, rectum, *parad.*, 209, 273.

Rĕ-linguo. See *linguo*, 279.

Rĕmĭniscor, i, —, 282.

Rĕnĭdeo, ěre, —, 268.

Reor, rĕri, rātus sum, 272.

Rĕ-pango. See *pango*, 280.

Rĕ-parco. See *parco*, 280.

Rĕ-pĕrio, ĭre, pĕri, pertum, 284.

Rĕ-sĭdeo. See *sĭdeo*, 270.

Rĕ-sĭpio. See *săpio*, 276. III.

Rĕ-sŏno. See *sŏno*, 262.

Re-spergo. See *spargo*, 273. III.

Rĕ-tendo. See *tendo*, 280.

Rě-tíneo. See *téneo*, 266.
 Rě-vertor. See *verto*, 273. III.
 Rě-víviseo, ěre, vixi, victum, 281.
 Rideo, ěre, rísi, rísum, 269.
 Rígeo, ěre, ui, —, 267.
 Ringor, i, —, 282.
 Rôdo, ěre, rôsi, rôsum, 273. III.
 Rôrat, *impers.*, 300.
 Rúbeo, ěre, ui, —, 267.
 Rúdo, ěre, ívi, ítum, 276. III.
 Rumpo, ěre, rūpi, ruptum, 279.
 Ruo, ěre, rui, rútum, ruiturus, 273.
 II.

S.

Săgio, ěre, —, 283.
 Sălio, ěre, ui (ii), tum, 284.
 Salve, *def.*, 297.
 Sancio, ěre, sanxi, sancitum, sanc-
 tum, 284.
 Săpio, ěre, ívi, ui, —, 249, 276.
 Sarcio, ěre, sarsi, sartum, 284.
 Săt-ăgo. See *ăgo*, 279.
 Scăbo, ěre, scăbi, —, 279.
 Scalpo, ěre, psi, ptum, 273.
 Scando, ěre, di, sum, 273. III.
 Scăteo, ěre, —, 268.
 Scindo, ěre, scídi, scissum, 273. III.
 Scisco, ěre, scívi, scitum, 281.
 Sěco, âre, ui, tum, 262.
 Sădeo, ěre, scđi, sessum, 270.
 Sě-ligo. See *lęgo*, 279.
 Sentio, ěre, sensi, sensum, 284.
 Sěpělio, ěre, ívi, sepultum, 283.
 Sěpio, ěre, psi, ptum, 284.
 Sěquor, i, scđtus sum, 224.
 Sěro, ěre, scđvi, sătum, 276. II.
 Sěro, ěre, serui, sertum, 276. II.
 Sído, ěre, i, —, 274.
 Sileo, ěre, ui, —, 267.
 Singultio, ěre, —, 283.
 Sino, ěre, sívi, sítum, 276. III.
 Sisto, ěre, stíti, stătum, 280.
 Sítio, ěre, ívi, —, 283.
 Sőleo, ěre, solitus sum, 272.
 Solvo, ěre, solvi, sölútum, 273. II.
 Sőno, âre, ui, ítum, 262.
 Sorbeo, ěre, ui, —, 267.
 Sordeo, ěre, ui, —, 267.
 Sortior, ěri, ítus sum, 286.
 Spargo, ěre, sparsi, sparsum, 273.
 III.

Spěcio, *obs.* See *aspěcio*.
 Sperno, ěre, sprěvi, sprětum, 276.
 II.
 Splendeo, ěre, ui, —, 267.
 Spondeo, ěre, spōpondi, sponsum,
 271.
 Squăleo, ěre, —, 268.
 Stătuo, ěre, ui, útum, 273. II.
 Sterno, ěre, străvi, strătum, 276.
 Sternuo, ěre, i, —, 274.
 Sterto, ěre, ui, —, 276. II.
 Stínguo, ěre, —, 275.
 Sto, âre, stěti, stătum, 264.
 Strěpo, ěre, ui, ítum, 276. II.
 Strideo, ěre, strđi, —, 269.
 Strído, ěre, i, —, 274.
 Struo, ěre, struxi, structum, 273. II.
 Stűdeo, ěre, ui, —, 267.
 Stűpeo, ěre, ui, —, 267.
 Suădeo, ěre, si, sum, 269.
 Sub-do, ěre, didi, ditum, 280.
 Sűb-igo. See *ăgo*, 279.
 Sub-silio. See *sălio*, 284.
 Sue-cădo. See *cădo*, 273.
 Sue-cendo. See *accendo*, 273.
 Sue-censeo. See *censeo*, 266.
 Sue-cído. See *cădo*, 280.
 Sue-cído. See *caedo*, 280.
 Sue-creseo. See *creseo*, 276. II.
 Suesco, ěre, suěvi, suětum, 276. II.
 Suf-fěro. See *fěro*, 292.
 Suf-ficio. See *făcio*, 279.
 Suf-fódio. See *fódio*, 279.
 Sug-gěro. See *gěro*, 273.
 Sum, esse, fui, —, 204.
 Sűmo, ěre, psi, ptum, 273.
 Sűperbio, ěre, —, 283.
 Sup-pōno. See *pōno*, 276.
 Surgo (*for* sur-rigo), ěre, sur-rexi,
 sur-rectum. See *ręgo*, 273.

T.

Taedet, *impers.*, 299.
 Tango, ěre, tětigi, tactum, 280.
 Temno, ěre, —, 275.
 Tendo, ěre, tětendi, tentum, tensum,
 280.
 Těneo, ěre, ui, tum, 266. III.
 Těpesco, ěre, těpui, —, 281.
 Tergeo, ěre, tersi, tersum, 269.
 Tergo, ěre, tersi, tersum, 273. III.
 Těro, ěre, trđvi, trítum, 276. III.

Texo, ěre, ui, tum, 276. II.
 Tĕmeo, ěre, ui, —, 267.
 Tollo, ěre, sustŭli, sublĕtum, 280.
 Tondeo, ěre, tŏtondi, tonsu(m), 271.
 Tŏno, ěre, ui, itum, 262.
 Torpeo, ěre, ui, —, 267.
 Torqueo, ěre, torsi, tortu(m), 269.
 Torreo, ěre, torru(i), tostum, 266. III.
 Trĕdo. See *abdo*, 280.
 Traho, ěre, traxi, tractu(m), 273.
 Trĕmo, ěre, ui, —, 276. II.
 Tribuo, ěre, ui, ŭtu(m), 273. II.
 Trŭdo, ěre, trŭsi, trŭsu(m), 273. III.
 Tuĕor, ěri, tuĭtu(m) sum, 272.
 Tŭmeo, ěre, ui, —, 267.
 Tundo, ěre, tŭtŭdi, tunsum, tŭsu(m), 280.
 Tuor, for *tueor*, 272.
 Turgeo, ěre, tursi (*rare*), —, 269.
 Tussio, ěre, —, 283.

U.

Ulciscor, i, ultu(m) sum, 282.
 Urgeo, ěre, ursi, —, 269.
 Uro, ěre, ussi, usu(m), 273.
 Utor, i, ŭsu(m) sum, 282.

V.

Vĕdo, ěre, —, 275.
 Vĕgio, ěre, iui, —, 283.

Vĕgeo, ěre, —, 268.
 Veho, ěre, vexi, vectu(m), 273.
 Vello, ěre, velli (vulsi), vulsu(m), 273.
 III.
 Vendo, ěre, dĭdi, dĭtu(m), 280.
 Vĕn-co. See *co*, 295.
 Vĕnio, ěre, vĕni, ventu(m), 285.
 Vĕnu(m)-do. See *do*, 261.
 Vĕreor, ěri, verĭtu(m) sum, 223, 272.
 Vergo, ěre, —, 275.
 Verro, ěre, verri, versu(m), 273. III.
 Verto, ěre, ti, su(m), 273. III.
 Vertor. See *dĕvertor*, 273. III.
 Vescor, i, —, 282.
 Vespĕrascit, *impers.*, 300.
 Vĕtĕrasco, ěre, rĕvi, —, 276.
 Vĕto, ěre, ui, itum, 262.
 Vĕdo, ěre, vĕdi, vĕsu(m), 270.
 Vieo, ěre, —, ětu(m), 266. I. 2.
 Vĕgeo, ěre, ui, —, 267.
 Vilesco, ěre, vĭlui, —, 281.
 Vincio, ěre, vinxi, vinctu(m), 284.
 Vinco, ěre, vĭci, victu(m), 279.
 Vĭreo, ěre, ui, —, 267.
 Vĭresco, ěre, vĭrui, —, 281.
 Vĭso, ěre, i, um, 273. III.
 Vĭvo, ěre, vixi, victu(m), 273.
 Vŏlo, velle, vŏlui, —, 293.
 Volvo, ěre, volvi, vŏlŭtu(m), 273. II.
 Vŏmo, ěre, ui, itum, 276. II.
 Vŏvco, ěre, vŏvi, vŏtu(m), 270.

INDEX OF SUBJECTS.

NOTE.—The numbers refer to *articles*, not to pages. *Constr.* = construction, *w.* = with, *ff.* = and the following, *compds.* = compounds, *gen.* or *genit.* = genitive, *gend.* = gender, *acc.* or *accus.* = accusative, *accs.* = accusatives, *adjs.* = adjectives, *preps.* = prepositions, etc.

It has not been thought advisable to overload this index, with such separate words as may be readily referred to classes, or to general rules, or even with such exceptions as may be readily found under their respective heads. Accordingly the numerous exceptions in Dec. III. in the formation of the genitive and in gender, are not inserted, as they may be best found under the respective endings, 55-115.

- A**, SOUND of, 6 ff., 14. Nouns in
a,—of 1st dec., 42; of 3d dec., 48; genitive of, 58; gender, 111; derivatives in *a*, 320, 6. *A*, in nom., accus., voc. plur., 88; in acc. sing., 93; changed in compds., 341, 3. *A*, quantity of,—final, 615; in increments of dec.; 633; of conj., 640.
A, *ab*, *abs*, in compds., 338, 1; in compds., w. dat., 386, 2. *A*, *ab*, *abs*, w. abl., 434, of agent, 388, 1, in personification, 414, 6.
 Abbreviations, 719.
Abhinc, 427.
 Ablative, formation of,—in 1st dec., 42, 3; in 3d dec., 87, 90, 97; in 4th dec., 116, 4; in adjs., 156.
 Ablative, syntax of, 412-437. Of cause, manner, means, 414; agent, accompaniment, 414, 5 and 7. Of price, 416. W. comparatives, 417. Of differ., 418. In special constrs., 419; 385, 5; 386, 2; 434, 2; 414, 2. Of place, 420 ff. Of source, 425. Of time, 426. Of charac., 428. Of specification, 429. Abl. absol., 431; w. *quisque*, 431, 6. W. preps., 432 ff. Of gerunds, etc., 566. Of supine, 570.
 Absolute, ablative, 430 ff.; infinitive or clause, 431, 4. *Absque*, w. abl., 434.
Abstineo, w. acc. and abl., 425, 2; w. gen., 409, 4.
 Abstract nouns, 31; from adjs., 319; from verbs, 321, 2.
Abunde, w. gen., 396, III. 4).
-abus, for *is*, in 1st dec., 42, 3.
Ac, for *quam*, 417, 4. *Ac si*, w. subj., 503, 506.
 Acatalectic verse, 663, III. 1.
Accedit, constr., 556, II. 1.
 Accentuation, 25 ff.
Accedit, constr., 556, II.
Accingo, constr., 374, 7.
 Accompaniment, abl. of, 414, 7.
 Accomplishing, constr. of verbs of, 558, IV.
 Accusative, formation of,—in 1st dec., 42, 3; in 2d dec., 45; 46, 3; in 3d dec., 85, 88, 98; in adjectives, 157.
 Accusative, syntax of, 370-381.—Direct object, 371 ff.; cognate, 371, 1, 3; w. other cases, 371, 2; w. compds., 371, 4; w. verbal adjs. and nouns, 371, 7. Two accs., 373 ff.; other constrs. for, 374, 3; infin. or clause, 374, 4; poetic acc., 374, 7. Subj. of infin., 375. Agreement, 376. Adverbial acc., 377 ff. Acc. of time and space, 378. Of limit, 379,

- poetic dat. for, 379, 5. Of specification, 380. In exclam., 381. W. preps., 432 ff. Of gerunds and gerundives, 565. Of supine, 569.
- Accusing and acquitting, constr. of verbs of, 410.
- Acephalous verse, 663, III.
- aceus, adjs. in, 324.
- Active voice, 195. Act. and pass. constr., 465.
- Ad*, in compds., 338, 1; in compds. w. two accs., 374, 6; w. dat., 386. *Ad*, w. acc., 433.
- ades, in patronymics, 316; quantity, 646, 1.
- Adhuc locorum*, 396, 2, 4) (4).
- Adipiscor*, w. gen., 409, 3.
- Adjective,—Decl. of, 147 ff. Formation of cases, 154 ff., irreg., 159. Comparison, 160 ff. Numerals, 172 ff.; decl. of, 175 ff. Derivation, 322 ff. Comp., 340. W. dat., 391. W. gen. 396, III. 2: 399. W. abl., 414, 419. Agreement, 438 ff. W. the force of nouns, clauses, adverbs, 441 ff. Use of comparison, 444.
- Admiseco*, w. dat., 385, 5.
- Admoneo*, constr., 410, 3.
- Admonishing, constr. of verbs of, 410.
- Adolescens*, compared, 168, 3.
- Adonic verse, 677, III.
- Adulor*, w. acc. or dat., 385, 3.
- Advantage, dat. of, 385.
- Adverbial acc., 377.
- Adverbs,—Numeral, 181. Classes of, 304. Compar., 305. Derivation, 333 ff. Composition, 342. For adjs., 352, 4. W. dat., 392. W. gen., 396, III. 4). As preps., 437. Use, 582; w. nouns, 583. Negatives, *non*, *ne*, *haud*, 584, two negatives, 585.
- Adversative conj., 310; 587, III.
- Adversative sentence, 360.
- Adversus*, w. accus., 433.
- Advising, constr. of verbs of, 558, VI.
- Æ*, sound of, 9, 15; changed to *ī*, 341, 3.
- Ædes*, sing. and plur., 132.
- Æger*, w. gen., 399, 3.
- Æmulus*, w. gen. or dat., 399, 2, 2).
- Æneas*, decl. of, 43.
- Acqui boni facere*, 402, 3.
- Ær*, *æther*, acc. of, 93, 1, quantity of, 621, 3.
- æus, adjs. in, 326.
- Ætiam*, w. gen., 396, III. 4).
- Æticio*, w. abl. 414, 1, 1).
- Ætius*, w. gen., 399, (3).
- Age, expression of, 417, 3.
- Agent,—Abl. of, w. *a* or *ab*, 388, 1; Dat. of, 388.
- Agreement,—Of Pred. Noun, 362; in gen. and numb., 362, 1. Of Appositive, 363, in gen. and numb., 363, 1. Of Adject., 438; w. clause, 438, 3; constr. accord. to sense, 438, 6; w. pred. noun or appositive, 438, 7; w. two nouns, 439; 439, 2; w. part. gen. 396, 2, 3). Of Pronouns, 445; w. two antecedents, 445, 3; w. pred. noun or appositive, 445, 4; constr. accord. to sense, 445, 5; w. clause, 445, 7. Of Verb, 460; constr. accord. to sense, 461; agreement w. Appos. or Pred. noun, 462; w. comp. subject, 463.
- ai, for *æ*, 42, 3; quant. of, 612, 1.
- al, gen. and abl. of nouns in, 64, 87, 89.
- Alcaic verse, 664; 691, II.; greater, 692; stanza, 700, I.
- Alienus*, w. dat., 391, 1; w. abl., 391, 2, 3); w. gen., 399, 3.
- Aliquantus*, *aliquis*, *aliquot*, 191; use of *aliquis*, 455.
- alis, adjs. in, 325.
- Alius*,—Decl. 149. Indef. 191, 2; w. abl., 417, 5; w. *atque*, *ac*, or *et*, 459, 2. *Alius—alius*, 459; *alius—alium*, w. plur. verb, 461, 3.
- Alphabet, 2 ff.
- Alter*,—Decl. 149. Indef. 191, 2; *alteruter*, 191, 2; *alter—alter*, 459; *alter—alterum*, w. plur. verb, 461, 3.
- Altercor*, w. dat., 385, 5.
- Alvus*, gender of, 47.
- Ambi*, *amb.*, 338, 2.
- Ambo*, decl. of, 176, 2.
- Amphora, 716.
- Amphus* without *quam*, 417, 3.

- An*, *annon*, 346, II. 2; 526, 2, 2).
Anacoluthon, 704, III. 4.
Anapaestic verse, 678.
Anaphora, 704, II. 3.
Anastrophe, 704, IV. 1.
Animi, constr., 399, 3. 4).
Ante, in compds., 338, 1; w. dat., 386. *Ante*, in expressions of time, 427; w. acc., 433.
Antecedent, use of term, 445, 1; omitted, 445, 6; attracted, 445, 9. Clause as antecedent, 445, 7.
Antequam, w. indie. or subj., 523.
Antimeria, 704, III. 1.
Antithesis, 703, 8.
-anus, adjs. in, 325 ff.
Anxius, w. gen., 399, 3.
Aphaeresis, 703, 1.
Apocope, 703, 3.
Aposiopesis, 704, I. 3.
Appendix, 702-720.
Appositive,—Agreement of, 363; in gen. and numb., 363, 1. Subject omitted, 363, 2. Force of, 363, 3.
Aptus, w. dat., 391, 1; *aptus qui*, w. subj., 501, III.
Apud, w. acc., 433.
-ar, gen. and abl. of nouns in, 66, 87, 89.
Arceo, w. dat., 385, 4.
Archilochian verse, 664; 677, II.; greater, 691, I.
Arenae, gen. of place, 424, 3.
-aris, adjs. in, 325.
Aristophanic, 691, III.
-arium, nouns in, 317.
-arius, nouns in, 318; adjs. in, 325.
Arrangement,—Of Words, 592-602, —General rules, 593 ff. Effect of emphasis and euphony, 594. Contrasted groups, 595. Kindred words, 596. Words with common relation, 597. Special rules, 598 ff. Modifiers of nouns, 598; of adjs., 599; of verbs, 600; of adverbs, 601; of special words, —Demon. Prep. Conjunct. Rel. *Non*, 602. Of Clauses, 603-606, —Clause as Subj. or Pred., 603; as Subord. element, 604; in Latin Period, 605; in compd. sentence, 606.
Arsis and thesis, 660.
As and its divisions, 712.
- as**, nouns in, 1st dec., 43; 3d dec., 50; genit. of, 68; gend. of, 105.
-as, for *ae* in gen., 42, 3; in Greek acc. plur., 98; in patronymics, 316; in adjs., 326; quantity of, 623.
Asclepiadēan verse, 689, III.; greater, IV.
-asco, inceptives in, 332, II.
Asking, constr. of verbs of, 374; 558, VI.
Aspergo, constr., 384, 1.
Aspirated letters, 4, 3.
-asso, *assim*, in fut. perf. and perf. subj., 239, 4.
Asyndeton, 704, I. 1.
-atim, adverbs in, 334, 2.
Atque, for *quam*, 417, 4.
Attraction, of pronoun, 445, 4; of antecedent, 445, 9; of pred. noun or adj. after an infin., 547. Subj. by attraction, 527.
Attributive adj., 438, 2.
-atus, nouns in, 318; adjs. in, 323.
Au, 9, 15; changed, 341, 3.
Audio, w. Pred. Noun, 362, 2, (1).
Audiens, w. two datives, 390, 3.
Aureus, the coin, 712.
Autem, place of, 602, III.
Authority, long or short by, 609, 2.
Authors, Latin, 706.
Avidus, w. gen., 399, 2; w. dat., 399, 5; w. acc. and prep., 399, 5.
-ax, genit. of nouns in, 77; verbals in, 328; w. gen., 399, 2.
- B**, CHANGED to *p*, 248.
Being angry, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
Being distant, constr. of verbs of, 556, III.
Believing, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
Bellī, constr., 424, 2.
Bene, compared, 305, 2; w. verbs of buying, 416, 3.
Benefiting, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
Bibi, quantity of, 651, 2.
-bilis, verbals in, 328.
Bonus, decl., 148; compar., 165; *boni consulo*, 402, 3.
Bos, gen. of, 72, 6; gen. plur., 89, III.; dat., abl., 90, 2.
Brachycatalectic, 663, III.
Brazen age, 706, III.

-**brum**, nouns in, 320.

-**bs**, genit. of nouns in, 75.

Bucolic caesura, 673, 2.

-**bulum**, nouns in, 320.

-**bandus**, verbals in, 328.

C, SOUND of, 11 ff. Nouns in, 48; genit. of, 63; gend., 111.

C, quantity of final syllables in, 621.

Caesura, caesural pause, 662; in hexam., 673 ff.; in anapaestic verse, 678; in trochaic, 680; in iambic, 683, IV.; 686.

Calendar, Roman, 707.

Calends, 708, I. 1.

Calling, verbs of, w. two accs., 373.

-**canus**, adjs. in, 326, 2.

Caput, genit. of, 67; w. verbs of condemning, 410, 5.

Carbasus, gend. of, 47.

Cardinals, 172, 174; decl. of, 175 ff.

Cases, etymology of,—Endings of, 38, 2; in 1st dec., 42; in 2d dec., 45; in 3d dec., 52; in 4th dec., 116; in 5th dec., 119; comparative view of, 121; general endings, 123. Formation of, in 3d dec.—nom. sing., 55; gen., 56 ff.; dat., 84; acc., 85; voc., 86; abl., 87; nom., acc., and voc. plur., 88; gen., 89; dat. and abl., 90. Greek cases,—gen. sing., 92; acc., 93; voc., 94; nom. and voc. plur., 95; gen., 96; dat. and abl., 97; acc., 98. Cases of adjs. of 3d dec., 154–158.

Cases, syntax of, 364–435,—characterized, 364; kindred, 365; nom., 364 ff.; voc., 369; accus., 370–381; dat., 382–392; gen., 393–411; abl., 412–431; w. prepositions, 432–437.

Catalectic verse, 663, III. 1.

Causa, gratia, 414, 2, 3).

Causal conjunctions, 310, 311; 587, V.; 588, VII.

Causal sentences, 360.

Cause, abl. of, 414.

Cause, Subj. of, 517–523,—Rule, 517, 521; w. *quum*, 518; *qui*, 519; *quod, quia, quoniam, quando*, 520; *dum, donec, quoad*, 522; *antequam, priusquam*, 523.

Cause, denoted by part., 578, II.

Causing, constr. of verbs of, 558, IV.

Cave, w. subj. for imperat., 535, 1.

Caveo, constr., 385, 3.

-**ce**, appended, 186, 1.

Celo, constr., 374, 2 and 3.

-**cen**, compounds in, 339, 2.

-**ceps**, genit. of nouns and adjs. in, 75, 1; 155, 3.

Certo, w. dat., 385, 5.

Certus, w. gen., 399, (2).

Ch, 4, 3; sound of, 11, 1.

Characteristic, gen. of, 396, IV.; abl. of, 428; gen. and abl. distinguished, 428, 4.

Choliambus, 683, 4.

Choosing, verbs of, w. two accs., 373.

Choriambic verse, 689 ff.

Cingo, constr. of, 374, 7.

-**cio**, derivatives in, 315, 5.

Circa, circiter, w. acc., 433.

Circum, in compds., 338, 1; compds. w. acc., 371, 4; w. two accs., 374, 6. *Circumdo, circumfundo*, constr., 384, 1. *Circum*, w. acc., 433.

Cis, citra, w. acc., 433.

Citerior, compared, 166.

Citum, quantity of, 651, 3.

Clam, w. acc. or abl., 437, 3.

Clauses, as nouns, gender of, 35.

Prin. and sub. clauses, 345, 1 and 2. Clause as object, 371, 5; as abl. absol., 431, 4; as antecedent, 445, 7. Indirect questions, clauses w. infin., subj., and w. *quod*, compared, 554. Arrangement of, 603 ff.

Coculum, plur. *coeli*, 143, 1.

Cognate accus., 371, 1.

Coins, Roman, 712.

-**cola**, compounds in, 339, 2.

Collective nouns, 31.

Colus, gender of, 47.

Com, con for *cum*, in compds., 338, 1; w. dat., 386.

Combined objects, 354, 3.

Comitor, w. acc. or dat., 385, 3.

Command, subj. of, 487 ff. Constr. of verbs of, 385; 558, VI.

Common nouns, 31; com. quantity, 23.

Commonco, commonefacio, constr., 410, 3.

Communis, constr., 391, 2, 4); 399, 3.

- Commuto*, constr. of, 416, 2.
 Comparative conj.s., 311; 588, II.
 Comparative degree, 160; wanting, 167; formed by *magis*, 170. Comparatives w. gen., 396, 2, 3) (2); w. abl., 417; w. *quam*, 417, 1; w. force of too, 444, 1; before and after *quam*, 444, 2; w. *quam* and the subj., 501, IV.
 Comparative view,—of decl., 121–123; of conjugation, 243 ff.
 Comparison,—of adj.s., 160; modes of, 161; terminational, 162 ff.; irreg., 163 ff.; defect., 166 ff.; adverbial, 170. Use of, 444; in adverbs, 444, 4.
Compleo, constr., 410, 7.
 Complex sentences, 345, 357; abridged, 358 ff. Comp. elements, 350; subject, 352; predicate, 354.
Compos, genit. of, 155; w. gen. or abl., 399, (3); 419, III.
 Composition of words, 313, 338 ff.
 Compound nouns,—decl. of, 125 ff.; composition of, 339; comp. adjectives, 340; verbs, 341; prin. parts of, 259 ff.: comp. adverbs, 342. Comp. sentences, 345, 360; abridged, 361. Comp. subject, predicate, modifier, 361, 1–3. Compounds of preps. w. acc., 371, 4; w. two accs., 374, 6.
 Computation of money, 713.
Con, see *com*.
 Concealing, verbs of, w. two accs., 374.
Concedo, constr., 551, II. 2.
 Concession, subj. of, 514 ff.; participle, 578, IV.
 Concessive conjunctions, 311; 588, IV.
 Condemning, constr. of verbs of, 410, 5.
 Condition,—conjunctions of, 311, 588. Subj. of, 502; force of tenses, 504; w. *dum*, *modo*, *dummodo*, 505; *ac si*, *ut si*, etc., 506; *si*, *nisi*, etc., 507 ff.; *si* omitted, 503, 1; condition supplied, 503, 2; first form, 508; second, 509; third, 510; mixed forms, 511, 512. Condition in relative clauses, 513; in *oratio obliqua*, 533, 2 and 3; denoted by participle, 578, III.
 Conditional sentences, 502 ff.
Confido, w. dat., 385, 1; w. abl., 419.
 Conjugation, 201 ff.; of *sum*, 204. First conj., 205 ff., 261 ff.; second, 207 ff., 266 ff.; third, 209 ff., 273 ff.; fourth, 211 ff., 283 ff.; of verbs in *io* of the 3d conj., 213. Periphrastic, 227 ff. Contractions and peculiarities, 234 ff. Comparative view of conj., 243 ff.; one general system, 244. Vowel conj., 278. Conj. of irreg. verbs, 287 ff.; of defect., 297; of impersonal, 298 ff.
 Conjunctions, 308; coördinate, use of, 587; subordinate, use of, 588. Place of, in sentence, 602, III.
Conscius, w. gen., 399, (2); w. abl., 399, 5; w. gen. and dat., 399, 6.
Conscius mihi sum, constr., 551, 3.
 Consecutive conjunctions, 311, 588.
 Consonants, 3, I.; double, 4, 2; sounds of, 10 ff., 16.
Consors, w. gen., 399, (3).
Constituo, constr., 558, II.
Consuetudo, *consuetudinis est*, constr., 556, I. 1.
Consulo, constr., 385, 3.
Consultus, w. gen., 399, (2).
Contentus, w. abl., 419, IV.
Contingit, constr., 556, II.
Contra, w. accus., 433.
 Contracted syllables, quantity of, 610.
 Contractions, in conj., 234 ff.
Contrarius, constr., 391, 2, 4).
 Convicting, constr. of verbs of, 410.
 Coördinate conjunctions, 309.
 Copulative conjunctions, 310, 587. Copul. sentences, 360.
Coram, w. abl., 434.
 Countries, gender of names of, 35.
-crum, nouns in, 320.
Cuicquidmodi, 187, 7.
Cujas, 185, 3; 188, 4.
Cujus, 185, 3; 187, 3; 188, 4; *cujusmodi*, *cujuscemodi*, *cujuscumquemodi*, 187, 7; *cujusdummodi*, 191, 4.
-culum, nouns in, 320.
-culus, *cula*, *culum*, nouns in, 315; adj.s. in, 327.
Cum, appended, 184, 6; 187, 2;

- cum, com*, in compds., 338, 1.
Cum, w. abl., 434.
-cundus, verbals in, 328.
Cuncti, omnes, w. gen., 396, III. 2, 3).
Cupidus, w. gen., 399, 2.
Cupiens, idiomatic use of dat., 387, 3.
Cupio, constr., 551, II. 1 and 2.
- D**, DROPPED before *s*, 55, 3;
 quantity of final syllables in, 621.
 Dactylic verse, 670 ff. Dactylo-
 iambic, 693.
Dama, gend. of, 44.
 Dates, Lat. and Eng., 710.
 Dative, formation of,—in 1st dec.,
 42, 3; in 3d dec., 84, 90, 97; in
 4th dec., 116, 4; in 5th dec., 119,
 4.
 Dative, syntax of, 382–392,—with
 verbs, 384 ff. Of advant. and dis-
 advant., 385. W. compds., 386.
 Of possessor, 387. Of agent, 388.
 Ethical dat., 389. Two dat., 390.
 W. adjs., 391. W. nouns and adv.,
 392. Of gerunds, etc., 564. W.
 verbs of Separ. 425, 2, 3).
Datum, quantity of, 651, 3.
De, in compds. w. dat., 386, 2. *De*
 w. abl., 434.
Decerno, constr., 558, II.
Decipio, w. gen., 409, 4; 410, 7.
 Declarative sentence, 346.
 Declaring, constr. of verbs of, 551.
 Declension, 39; first, 42; second,
 45; third, 48; fourth, 116; sec-
 ond and fourth, 117; fifth, 119.
 Comparative view of decl., 121;
 one general system of decl., 122.
 Decl. of compds., 125.
Dei, quantity of, 651, 2.
Decoco, constr., 374, 2 and 3.
 Defective nouns, 119, 5; 129; def.
 adjs., 159; def. comparison, 166;
 def. verbs, 297.
 Deliberative questions, w. the subj.,
 486, II.
 Demanding, constr. of verbs of, 374;
 558, VI.
 Demonstratives, 186; use of, 450.
Denarius, 712.
 Dependent verbs, 221; 465, 2.
- Derivation, 313; of nouns, 314 ff.;
 of adjs., 322 ff.; of verbs, 330 ff.;
 of adverbs, 333 ff.
 Derivatives, quantity of, 653; quan-
 tity of deriv. endings, 645 ff.
 Desideratives, 332, III.
Desino, w. gen., 409, 4.
 Desire, subj. of, 487 ff.; in assevera-
 tions, 488, 4; in relat. clauses,
 483, 5.
 Desiring, constr. of verbs of, 551.
Desisto, w. gen., 409, 4.
Despero, w. acc., 371, 3.
Deterior, compared, 166.
Deterreo, constr., 499, 1–2.
Deus, 45, 6.
 Diaeresis, 669, III.
Diana, quantity of, 612, 3.
 Diastole, 669, IV.
Dic for *dice*, 237.
-dicus, compds. in compared, 164.
 Difference, abl. of, 418.
 Differing, dat. w. verbs of, 385, 4.
Differo, w. dat., 385, 4.
Dignor, constr., 419, 2.
Dignus, constr., 419; *dignus, qui*,
 w. subj., 501, III.
 Dimeter, 663, 2.
 Diminutive, nouns, 315; dim. adjs.,
 327; dim. verbs, 332, IV.
 Diphthongs, 4; sounds of, 9; quan-
 tity of, 610.
 Dipody, 656, 2.
 Direct object, 354, 1; 371.
Dis, di, 338, 2.
 Disadvantage, dat. of, 385.
Discrepo, w. dat., 385, 4.
 Disjunctive conjs., 310; 587; sen-
 tences, 360.
Dispar, constr., 391, 2, 4).
 Displeasing, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
Dissentio, w. dat., 385, 4.
Dissimilis, constr., 391, 2, 4).
 Dissyllabic perfects and supines,
 quantity of, 651.
 Distance, abl. of, 378, 2.
 Distich, 666.
Disto, w. dat., 385, 4.
 Distributives, 172; 174; decl. of,
 179.
Div, compared, 305, 4.
Dius, quantity of, 612, 3.
Diversus, compared, 167.
Dives, compared, 165, 2.

Docco, constr., 374, 2 and 3.
Dolco, w. accus., 371, 3; w. clause, 558, V.; w. abl., 414, 2, 1).
Domus, decl. of, 117; gend., 118; constr., 379, 3; 424, 2.
Donec, w. indic. or subj., 521 ff.
Dono, constr., 384, 1.
 Double constr. of a few verbs, 384, 1.
 Double consonants, 3.
Duc for *duce*, 377.
Dum, *dummodo*, w. subj., 503 ff.; w. ind. or subj., 521 ff.
Duo, decl. of, 176.

E, SOUND of, 6, 14. Nouns in *e*,—1st dec., 43 ff.; 3d dec., 48, 50; genit. of, 59; 89, 1; abl. of, 87, 1; gend., 111. *E* in abl., 87; in Greek acc. plur., 98; for *ei* in gen. and dat., 119, 4; *E* in adverbs, 335; changed to *i*, 341, 3.
E, quantity of—in *ei*, 119, 1; final, 616; in increments of decl., 635; of conjugation, 641.
E or *ex*, see *ex*.
Ecce with demonstratives, 186, 3; in exclamations, 367, 3; 381, 3.
Ecquis, 188, 3. *Ecquid*, 346, II. 2.
Edoceo, constr., 374, 2 and 3.
Egenus, w. gen. or abl., 399, (3); 419, III.
Egeo, constr., 409, 1.
Ego, decl. of, 184.
Eheu, quantity of, 612, 2.
Ei, 9. *Ei*, quantity of, 612, 2.
-ēis, in patronymics, 316.
-eius, quantity of, 612, 2.
Ejusmodi, 186, 4.
-ela, nouns in, 320, 7.
 Elegiac distich, 676, 2.
 Elegiambus, 693, 1.
 Elements of sentences, 347 ff.
 Ellipsis, 704, of *facio*, *oro*, 367, 3; 602, II. 3.
-ellus, *ella*, *ellum*, nouns in, 315; adjs. in, 327.
-em, in accus., 85, 119.
 Emotion, constr. of verbs of, 551; 558, V.
 Emphasis and euphony in the arrangement of words, 594.
-en, nouns in, 51; *en* in Greek acc., 93; with demonstratives, 186, 3; in exclamations, 367, 3; 381, 3.

Enallage, 704, III.
 Enclitics, accent of, 26, (a); quantity of, 613, 1.
 Endeavoring, constr. of verbs of, 558, III.
 Endings, 41; in 1st dec., 42; in 2d dec., 45, 1; in 3d dec., 52, 2; in 4th dec., 116; in 5th dec., 119; in the five decls., 121, 123; in comparison, 162; in conjugation, 242.
 English pronunciation of Latin, 6 ff.
Enum, place of, 602, III.
-ensis, adjs. in, 325 ff.
-entior, *entissimus*, in comparison, 164.
 Envying, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
Eo, w. gen., 396, 2, 4).
 Epenthesis, 703, 5.
 Epicene nouns, 36.
 Epichoriambic verse, 690.
 Epiphora, 704, II. 4.
Epitome, decl. of, 43.
Epulum, plur., *epulae*, 143.
-er, gend. of nouns in, 47, 103. Adjs. in, 151; comparison of, 163, 1. Adverbs in, 335.
-ere, for *erunt*, 235.
Erga, w. acc., 433.
Ergo, w. gen., 411.
-ernus, adjs. in, 325, 2.
-es, nouns in, 50, 119; genitive of, 69; gender of, 104, 109, 119. *es*, in nom., acc., and voc. plur., 88.
-es, final, sound of, 8, 1; quantity of, 624.
-esco, inceptives in, 332, II.
-esso, *essim*, in fut., perf., and perf. subj., 239, 4. *esso*, verbs in, 332.
-ester, adjs. in, 325, 2.
-estus, adjs. in, 323, 3.
 Ethical dative, 389.
Etiamsi, *etsi*, w. subj., 515, 516, III.
-etum, nouns in, 317.
 Etymology 29-342.
Eu, sound of, 9.
 Euphonic changes, 55, 3; before *si*, *sum*, *tum*, 248; 257, 1; in prepositions, 338, 1.
 Euphony, see *Emphasis*.
-eus, adjs. in, 324, 326.
Evenit, constr., 556, II.
-ex, genit. of nouns in, 78.

Ex, e, in compds. w. dat., 386, 2. *Ex*, w. abl., 434.

Exchanging, constr. of verbs of, 416, 2.

Exclamatory sentences, 346, IV.; accus. in, 381; voc., nom., dat. in, 381, 3; infinitive in, 553, III.

Exoro, constr., 374, 2.

Expers, exors, w. gen., 399, (3).

Exterus, compared, 163, 3.

Extra, w. acc., 433.

Extremum est, constr., 556, I. 2.

Exuo, constr., 374, 7; 384, 1.

FAC, for *face*, 237.

Facio, w. pred. gen., 403.

Falsum est, constr., 556, I. 2.

Falsus, compared, 167.

Fames, abl. *famē*, 137, 2.

Familia, genitive of, 42, 3.

Fearing, constr. of verbs of, 492, 4.

Feeling, constr. of verbs of, 551; 558, V.

Feet, metrical, 656 ff.

Feminine, 33.

Fer, for *fere*, 237.

Fertilis, w. gen., abl., or acc., 399, (2) and 5.

-fex, compds. in, 339, 2.

-ficus, adjs. in, compared, 164.

Fido, w. dat., 385; w. abl., 419.

Figures—of prosody, 669; of etymology, 703; of syntax, 704; of Rhetoric, 705.

Filling, constr. of verbs of, 410, 7.

Final conj., 311; 588, V.

Final syllables, quantity of, 613 ff.; final syllable of the verse, 665.

Finite, or definite moods, 196; finite verb, 196.

Fio, quantity of, 612, 3.

Fit, constr., 556, II.

Flagito, w. two accs., 374, 2; w. subj., 558, VI.

Foci, gen. of place, 424, 3.

Following, constr. of verbs of, 556, III.

Formation,—of cases, 55–98; of parts of verbs, 240–260; of words, 313–342.

Fractions, 174, 1.

Freeing, constr. of verbs of, 410, 7.

Frenum, pl., *freni*, *frena*, 143.

Frequentatives, 332.

Fretus, w. abl., 419, IV.

Frugi, in decl., 159; compared, 165.

Fruor, constr., 419.

Fungor, constr., 419.

Future, 197; 241, I.; in indic., 470; w. force of imperat., 470, 1; for Eng. pres., 470, 2; w. *melius*, 470, 3. Wanting in subj., 479; how supplied, 481, III. 1. In imperat., 534, 537; fut. for pres., and pres. for fut., 534, 1 and 2. In infin., 543 ff.; circumlocution for, 544. In part., 573.

Future Perfect, 197; 241, II.; in indic., 473; to denote certainty, 473, 1; for Eng. pres., 473, 2. Wanting in subj., 479; how supplied, 481, III. 2.

Futurum esse, fuisse, fore, ut, 544, 1–3.

Futurum sit ut, 481, III. 1 and 2.

G, SOUND of, 11 ff.; changed, 248.

Gaudeo, constr., 371, 3; 551, III.; 558, V.; 414, 2.

Gemo, w. accs., 371, 3.

Gems, gender of names of, 47.

Gender, 33 ff.; in 1st dec., 44; in 2d dec., 47; in 3d dec., 99–115; in 4th dec., 118; in 5th dec., 119; general table of, 124.

Genitive, formation of,—endings, 40; in 1st dec., 42; *as* for *ac, um* for *arum*, 42, 3; in 2d dec., 45; *i* for *ii, um* for *orum*, 45, 5; *o* or *on*, 46, 3; in 3d dec., 56–83, 89, 96; in 4th dec., 116; *uis* for *us*, 116, 4; in 5th dec., 119; *e* or *i* for *ei*, 119, 4. In adjectives, 155.

Genitive, syntax of, 393–411,—with nouns, 395; varieties, 396; peculiarities, 397; other constrs. for gen., 398. W. adjs., 399. W. verbs, 401 ff. Pred. gen., 401 ff.; other constrs. for, 404. Of place, 404; 421, II. In special constrs., 405 ff. Acc. and gen., 410. W. adverbs, 411. Gen. of gerunds and gerundives, 563.

Genitus, w. abl., 425, 3.

Gentile nouns, 326, 3.

Gerund,—Nature of, 559. Cases of, 560. Ger. and Infin., 560, 2. W.

direct object, 561. Gerundive, 562; of *utor*, *fruor*, etc., 562, 4. Pass. sense of Ger., 562, 5. Genitive of ger. and gerundive, 563; ger. when preferred, 563, 2; gerundive with *mei*, *nostri*, etc., 563, 4; of purpose, 563, 5; infin. for ger., 563, 6. Dat. of, 564; of purpose, with official names, 564, 2 and 3. Accus. of, 565; w. object, 565, 2; of purpose, 565, 3. Abl. of, 566.

Gloriosum est, 556, I. 2.

Glyconic verse, 664, 689.

Gnarus, w. gen., 399, (2).

Golden age, 706.

Greek nouns,—in 1st dec., 43; in 2d dec., 46; in 3d dec., 91–98.

H. A BREATHING, 2.

Hadria, gender of, 44.

Happening, constr. of verbs of, 556, II.

Haud, *ne*, *non*, 584.

Heptasyllabic verse, 691, V.

Hendiadys, 704, II. 2.

Hepthemimeris, 656, 2.

Heroic verse, 664.

Heteroclites, 135 ff.

Heterogeneous nouns, 141 ff.

Hexameter verse, 663, 2. Dactylic, 671.

Hic, *iste*, *ille*, decl. of, 186; use of, 450.

Hic (adv.), w. gen., 396, III. 4).

Hipponactean, 683, 4.

Historical tenses, 198, 2; hist. present, 467, III.; hist. perfect, 471, II.

Hodie, quantity of, 654, 8.

Horace, versification of, 698 ff. Lyric metres of, 700. Index, 701.

Horreo, w. accus., 371, 3.

Huc, w. gen., 396, III. 4).

Hujusmodi, 186, 4.

Humus, gender of, 47; constr. of *humi*, 424, 2.

Hypallage, 704, III. 2.

Hyperbaton, 704, IV.

Hyperbole, 705, V.

Hypercatalectic verse, 663, III.

Hypermeter, 663, III.

Hypothetical sentences, see *Conditional* ditto.

Hysteron proteron, 704, IV. 2.

I SUPPLIES the place of *j*, 2, 3; sound of, 6 ff.; 14 ff.; with the sound of *y*, 9; *i* for *ii*, *ie*, 45, 5. Nouns in, 48; genit. of, 60; gender of, 111; *i*, final in dat., 84; in abl., 87; for *is*, 92; for *ei*, 119, 4; in perfect, 247, 2. *I*, quantity of,—final, 618; in increments of decl., 636; of conjugation, 643. **-ia**, nouns in, 319; in nom., acc., and voc. plur., 88.

-iacus, adjs. in, 326.

-iades, in patronymics, 316.

Iambelegus, 694, 1.

Iambic verse,—Dipody, 682. Trimeter, 683; choliambus, 683, 4; catalectic, 684. Dimeter, 685; hypermeter, 685, 1; catalectic, 685, 2; acephalous, 685, 3. Tetrameter, 686.

Iambico-dactylic verse, 694.

-ianus, adjs. in, 326.

-ias, in patronymics, 316.

-ibam, for *iebam*, 239, 1.

-ibo, *ibor*, for *iam*, *iar*, 239, 2.

-ibus, in dat. and abl. plur., 90.

-icius, adjs. in, 324, 328.

Ictus, 659.

-icus, adjs. in, 325 ff.

Idem, decl., 186; w. dat., 391, 3; use of, 451. *Idem*—*qui*, *ac* or *atque*, 451, 5.

Ides, of the calendar, 708, I. 3.

-ides, in patronymics, 316.

-ido, nouns in, 320, 7.

Idoneus qui, w. subj., 501, III.

-idus, verbals in, 328.

-iensis, adjs. in, 326.

-ier, for *i* in infin., 239, 6.

Igitur, place in the clause, 602, III.

Ignarus, w. gen., 399, (2).

-igo, nouns in, 320, 7.

-ile, nouns in, 317.

-ilis, adjs. in, 325, 328; compared, 163, 2.

Ilative conj., 310; 587, IV.; sentences, 360.

Ille, decl. of, 186; use of, 450.

Ille for *ille*, 186, 2.

Illiusmodi, 186, 4.

-illo, verbs in, 332, IV.

-illus, *illa*, *illum*, in nouns, 315, 3; in adjs., 327.

- in*, in acc., 85, 93; for *am*, or *em* in pres. subj., 239, 3.
- Inmemor*, genit. of, 155, 4; gen. plur., 158, 3; w. gen., 399, 2.
- imonia*, nouns in, 319.
- Impedio*, constr., 499, 1-2.
- Imperative, 196. Tenses, 534. Use, 535 ff.; pres., 536; fut., 537; in prohibitions, 538.
- Imperative sentences, 346, III.
- Imperfect tense, 197; 241, I.; in indic., 468 ff.; in lively description, of customary or repeated action, 469; of attempted action, in letters, 469, 1 and 2. In Subj., 477; of present time, 481, V.; after Perf. Def., 482, 1; for Pluperf., 486, 4; in desires and wishes, 488, 2; in condition, 510; after *antequam* and *priusquam*, 523, 2.
- Imperitus*, w. gen., 399, (2).
- Impero*, constr., 551, II. 1 and 2.
- Impersonal verbs, 298 ff.; subjects of, 556, I.-III.
- Impertio*, constr., 384, 1.
- Impleo*, constr., 410, 7.
- Impos*, genit. of, 155; w. gen., 399, (3).
- Impotens*, w. gen., 399, (3).
- Imprudens*, w. gen., 399, (2).
- in*, in Greek accs., 93.
- In*, in compds., 338, 1; w. two accs., 374, 6; w. dat., 386. *In*, w. acc. or abl., 435.
- Inceptives, inchoatives, 332, II.
- Incertus*, w. gen., 399, (2).
- Inclination, subj. of, 486, 3.
- Inclutus*, compared, 167.
- Increments, 629 ff.; quantity of, 632 ff., 639 ff.
- Indeclinable nouns, gender of, 35; examples, 128. Indecl. adjs., 159.
- Indefinite moods, 196.
- Indefinite pronouns, 189; use of, 455 ff.
- Index of verbs, 721.
- Indicative, 196; use of, 474 ff.; special uses, 475.
- Indigeo*, constr., 409, 1.
- Indignus*, w. abl., 419, IV. *indignus qui*, w. subj., 501, III.
- Indirect discourse, distinguished from direct, 528. Subj. in, 529. Moods in prin. clause, 530; in sub. clause, 531. Tenses, 532; Pronouns, adverbs, etc., 533.
- Indirect object, 354, 2. Rule, 384: indirect w. direct, 384, II.
- Indirect questions, 524 ff.—Subj. in, 525. Indic. in, 525, 6; in orat. obliqua, 530, II. 2; sing. and double, 526.
- Induco*, constr., 374, 7.
- Indulging, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
- Induo*, constr., 374, 7; 384, 1.
- ine*, in patronymics, 316, 4.
- Inferus*, compared, 163, 3.
- Infinitive, 196, II. Tenses of, 540 ff. Subject of, 545; of Hist. infin., 545, 1. Predicate after, 546; attracted, 547. Construction of, 548 ff.; as Nom., 549; as Accus., 550 ff.; w. another acc., 552, 2; in relative clauses, 531, 1; after conjunctions, 531, 2; after adjs., 552, 3; after preps., 552, 4; in special constrs., 553; as pred., 553, I.; as appos., 553, II.; in exclam., 553, III.; as abl. abs., 553, IV.; of Purpose, 553, V.; for Gerund, 553, VI.
- Infra*, w. acc., 433.
- Ingenii*, w. adjs., 399, 3.
- Injuring, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
- Initor*, constr., 419.
- Inops*, w. gen. or abl., 399, (3); 419.
- Inscius*, w. gen., 399, (2).
- Inseparable preps., 307; 654, 2.
- Inspergo*, constr., 384, 1.
- Instrument, abl. of, 414, 4.
- Insuetus*, w. gen., 399, (2); w. other constrs., 399, 5.
- Integer*, w. gen., 399, 3.
- Inter*, in compds., 338, 1; w. dat., 386. *Inter*, w. acc., 433.
- Intercludo*, constr., 384, 1.
- Interest*, w. gen., 406, III.
- Interior*, compared, 166.
- Interjections, 312; w. voc., 369, 1; w. nom., acc., or dat., 381, 3; use of, 539 ff.
- Interrogative conjunctions, 311, 588.
- Interrogative pronouns, 188; use of, 454.
- Interrogative sentences.—Form, 346, II. Interrog. words, 346, II. 1. Double quest., 346, II. 2. Deliber. quest., 486, II. Answers, 346, II.

3. Indirect quest., 525; w. indic., 525, 6; single and double, 526. In indirect discourse, 529 ff.; rhetorical ques., 530, 2.

Interrogo, w. two accs., 374, 2; w. acc. and abl., 374, 2-3.

Intra, w. accus., 433.

Intransitive verbs, 193; 371, 3; impersonal pass., 465, 1.

-inus, adjs. in, 324 ff.

Invidus, w. gen. or dat., 399, 2, 2).

Invitus, idiomatic use of dat., 387, 3.

-io, verbs of 3d conj. in, 213 ff.; nouns in, 318, 321.

Ionic verse, 687.

-ior, in comparatives, 162.

Ipsē, decl. of, 186; use of, 452.

Ipsus, for *ipse*, 186, 3.

Iron age, 706.

Irony, 705, IV. in condition, 503, 3.

Irregular nouns, 127 ff.; irreg. adjs., 159; irreg. comparison, 163 ff.

Irregular principal parts of verbs, 249-258; irreg. verbs, 287 ff.

Is, decl. of, 186; use of, 451; reflexive, 448. *Is—qui*, 451, 4.

-is, in dat. and abl. of the 1st and 2d decls., 42, 45; in genit. of 3d dec., 52; in acc., dat., and abl. plur., 88, III.; 90. Nouns in *is*, 50; genitive of, 71; gender of, 106.

-is, in patronymics, 316; quantity of *is* final, 626.

-isco, inceptives in, 332, II.

Islands, gen. of names of, 35; constr. of names of, 424.

-issimus, in superlatives, 162.

-isso, verbs in, 332.

Iste, decl. of, 186; use of, 450.

Istic, *isthic*, for *iste*, 186, 2.

Istiusmodi, 186, 4.

-itas, nouns in, 319.

-iter, adverbs in, 335.

Ithyphallicus, 681, 2.

-itia, nouns in, 319.

-itimus, adjs. in, 325, 2.

-itium, nouns in, 318.

-ito, frequentatives in, 332.

-itudo, nouns in, 319.

Itum, quantity of, 651, 3.

-itus, nouns in, 318; adverbs in, 335, 3.

-ium, in genit. plur., 89; nouns in, 318 ff.

-ius, adjs. in, 326; quantity of, 612, 3.

-ivus, adjs. in, 328, 5.

-ix, genitive of nouns in, 79.

J, PLACE supplied by *i*, 2; length-eus preceding vowel, 611.

Jecur, genitive of, 66, 5.

Iesus, decl. of, 128, 1, '3).

Jocus, pl., *joci*, *joca*, 141.

Jubeo, constr., 551, II. 1 and 2.

Jugerum, decl. of, 136; use of, 718.

Jugum, quantity of compds. of, 611, 3.

Jungo, w. dat., 385, 5.

Jupiter, genitive of, 66, 3.

Jusjurandum, decl. of, 126.

Juvenal, versification of, 696.

Juvenalis, abl. of, 87, 2.

Juvenis, abl. of, 87, 2; compared, 168, 3.

Juvo, w. accus., 385, 1.

Juxta, w. accus., 433.

K, RARE, 2.

Knowing, constr. of verbs of, 551, I. 1.

L, NOUNS in, 48, 51; genit. of, 64; gender, 112; quantity of final syllables in, 621.

Labials, 3.

Lacrimo, w. accus., 371, 3.

Laedo, w. accus., 385, 1.

Lar, quantity of genit., 633, 4.

Lassus, w. gen., 399, 3.

Latin authors, 706.

Latin grammar, 1.

Latin period, 605.

-lentus, adjs. in, 323.

Letters, classes of, 3; combinations of, 4; sounds of, 5-16.

Libero, w. abl. or gen., 425, 3.

Libra, 714.

Licet, w. subj., 515.

Linguals, liquids, 3.

Litotes, 705, VI.

Litum, quantity of, 651, 3.

Logaoedic verse, 691.

Longius, without *quam*, 417, 3.

-is, genit. of nouns in, 76.

M, EUPHONIC changes of, 248, 333, 1; quantity of final syllables in, 621; elided, 669, I.

-ma, dat. and abl. plur. of nouns in, 90, 1.

Magis, maxime, in adverbial comparison, 170.

Magnus, compared, 165.

Major, in expressions of age, 417, 3.

Making, verbs of, w. two accs., 373; w. subj., 558, IV.

Malo, constr., 551, II. 1 and 2.

Malus, compared, 165.

Manifestus, w. gen., 399, 3.

Manner, means, abl. of, 414; principle for, 578, II.

Masculine, 33.

Material nouns, 31.

Me, for *mihi*, 184, 5.

Measure of difference, abl. of, 418; measure in prosody, 663, II.; Roman measure, 715 ff.

Med, mehe, for *me*, 184, 5.

Medeor, w. dat., 385, 2.

Medius, designating part, 441, 6.

Melius, w. indic. for subj., 475, 2-4.

Melos, plur. of, 95, 1.

Meme, 184, 6.

Memini, w. gen., 406, II.; w. acc., 407, 1.

Memor, w. gen., 399, 2).

-men, mentum, nouns in, 320.

Mensa, decl. of, 42.

Mepte, 184, 5.

-met, forms in, 184, 3; 185, 1.

Metaphor, 705, I.

Metathesis, 703, 7.

Metonymy, 705, II.

Metre, 667.

Metrical equivalents and substitutes, 657, 658.

-metros, Greek nouns in, 47, 2.

Metuo, constr., 385, 3; 492, 4.

Meus, decl., 185.

Mi for *mihi*, 184, 5.

Militia, constr., 424, 2.

Mille, decl. and use of, 178.

Million, cardinal for, 174; symbol for, 180.

Million sesterces, Latin for, 713, 4.

-mino, in imperatives, 239, 5.

Minor, minus, without *quam*, 417, 3.

Miror, w. accus., 371, 3; w. gen., 409, 4.

Mirum est, constr. of, 556, I. 2.

Mis for *mei*, 184, 5.

Miseco, w. dat., or abl., 385, 5.

Miseror, miseresco, w. gen., 406.

Miseret, constr., 410. *Miserescit, miseretur*, 410, 6.

Mobile nouns, 36.

Moderor, constr., 385, 3.

Modifier, 348 ff.

Modius, 715.

Modo, w. subj., 503, 505.

Moereo, w. accus., 371, 3.

Monco, constr., 410, 3.

Money, Roman, 712 ff.

Monometer, 663, 2.

Monosyllables, quantity of, 613.

Months, Roman, 707; division of, 708; gender of names of, 35.

Moods, 196,—Indic., 474 ff. Subj., 483-533. Imperat., 534 ff. Infinitive, 539-553. Gerund, 559 ff. Supine, 567 ff. Part., 571 ff.

Mos, moris est, constr., 556, I. 1.

-ms, gen. of nouns in, 75.

Multiplicatives, 173.

Multus, comparison of, 165.

Mutes, 3.

Muto, constr., 416, 2.

N, NOUNS in, 48; genit. of, 65; gend. of, 113; quantity of final syllables in, 621.

Name, dat. of, 387, 1; gen. of, 387, 2.

Names of towns, constr., 423.

Natus, w. abl., 425, 3.

Ne, num, nonne, interrog. particles, 311, 8; in single questions, 346, II. 1; in double, 346, II. 2; in indirect questions, 526.

Ne, w. subj. of desire, 488, 3; of purpose, 489 ff.; of concession, 515.

Ne, non, haud, 584. *Nere*, 490, 1.

Neene, 346, II. 2, 3); 526, 2, 1).

Nedum, w. subj., 493, 4.

Negatives, 584; force of two negatives, 585.

Nemo, indef., 191, 2; use of, 457, 1.

Nequam, indecl., 159; compared, 165, 2.

Ne—quidem, 585; 602, III. 2.

Nescio an, w. subj., 526, II. 2, 2).

Nescio quis, quomodo, etc., w. indic., 525, 4.

Nescius, w. gen., 399, (2).

- neus**, adjs. in, 324.
Neuter, decl. of, 149; indef., 191, 2.
 Neuter adjectives, as adverbs, 335, 4; as cognate accus., 371, 1, 3) (2); as a second accus., 374, 5; w. partitive genit., 396, III. 2, 3) (3); as predicate, 438, 4.
 Neuter nouns, nom., acc., and voc. of, 38, 3; neuter by signification, 35; by ending, in 2d dec., 47; in 3d dec., 111 ff.; in 4th dec., 118.
Nŕ, w. subj., 503, 507 ff.
Nimis, w. gen., 396, III. 4).
Nisi, w. subj., 503, 507 ff.
Nitor, constr., 419.
Nolo, constr., 551, II. 1 and 2; *noli*, -ito, in prohibitions, 535, 1, 3).
Nomen est, constr., 387, 1.
 Nominative, formation of, in 3d dec., 55, 88, 95; neut. plur. in adjs., 157.
 Nominative, syntax of, 366 ff.; as subject, 367; agreement of, 368; for voc., 369, 2.
Non, *ne*, *haud*, 584; place of *non*, 602, IV., omitted, 584, 2.
Non, w. *quo*, *quod*, *quin*, *quia*, w. subj., 520, 3.
 Nones in the Roman month, 708, I. 2.
Nonne, *non* = *nonne*, 346, II. 1.
Nox, for *ego*, 446, 2.
Noster, for *meus*, 446, 2.
Nostras, 185, 2.
Nostri, *nostrum*, 396, 1; 446, 3.
 Nouns, etymology of,—gender of, 33 ff.; pers. and numb., 37; cases, 38; declensions, 39–126; indecl., 128; defect., 129; heteroclites, 135 ff.; heterogeneous, 141.
 Nouns, syntax of, 362–437,—Agreement, 362 ff. Nom., 364 ff.; Voc., 369; Accus., 370–381; Dat., 382–392; Gen., 393–411; Abl., 412–431; w. preps., 432–437.
Novus, compared, 167.
Noxius, w. gen., 399, 3.
-ns, genit. of nouns in, 76.
Nubo, w. dat., 385, 2.
Nullus, decl. of, 149; indef., 191, 2; use of, 457; for *non*, 457, 3.
Num, *numquid*, 346, II. 1 and 2.
 Number, 37; in verbs, 199.
 Numerals, 171 ff.; adjs., 172 ff.; decl. of, 175 ff.; symbols, 180; adverbs, 181.
-nus, adjectives in, 324.
Nusquam, w. gen., 396, III. 4).
O, SOUND of, 6 ff., 14; nouns in, 48, 51; genit. of, 61; gend., 100; derivatives in, 320, 6.
O, quantity of,—final, 620; in increments, 634, 642; in compds., 654, 7.
Ob, in compds., 338, 1; in compds. w. dat., 386. *Ob*, w. acc., 433.
Obediens, w. two datives, 390, 3.
 Obeying, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
 Object, direct, indirect, combined, 354; direct, 371; omit., 371, 1, (3); clause as an object, 371, 5; 557 ff. See *Subject and object clauses*.
 Objective genitive, 396, II.
 Oblique cases, 38; use of, 370–437.
Obliviscor, w. gen., 406, II.; other constrs., 407.
Obsisto, *obsto*, constr., 499, 1–2.
Ociŕ, compared, 166.
-odos, Greek nouns in, 47, 2.
Oe, sound of, 9, 14.
Officio, constr., 499, 1–2.
Ō, quantity, 612, 4.
Oleo and *redoleo*, w. acc., 371, 3.
Ollus, for *ille*, 186, 3.
-olus, *ola*, *olum*, in diminutives,—in nouns, 315, 2; in adjs., 327.
Omnes, w. gen., 396, III. 2, 3).
-on, in Greek gen. plur., 96.
-one, in patronymics, 316.
Operam do, w. subj., 492, 1.
Optimum est, constr., 556, I. 2.
Opus, constr., 419.
-or, gender of nouns in, 101; derivation of, 320 ff.
Oratio obliqua, see *Indirect discourse*.
 Ordinal numbers, 172, 174; decl. of, 179.
Oro, w. two accs., 374, 2; w. subj. or infin., 558, VI. 3.
 Orthography, 2–28.
Ortus, w. abl., 425, 3.
-os, nouns in, 50; genit. of, 72; gend., 102.
-os, for *is* in the genitive, 92.
-os final, sound of, 8, 1; quantity, 625.

-osus, adjs. in, 323.
Ovid, versification of, 697.
-ox, genit. of nouns in, 80.

PALAM, w. abl., 437, 2.

Palatals, 3, II.

Pan, gen. and acc. of, 65, 2; 93, 1.

Panthus, voc. of, 46, 3, 5).

Par and *dispar*, constr., 391, 2, 4).

Paragoge, 703, 6.

Pardoning, verbs of, w. dat., 385.

Paroemiac verse, 664.

Pars, in fractions, 174, 1.

Particeps, genit. of, 155; w. gen., 399, (3).

Participles, 196, II. 4. Tenses, relative time, 571. Agreement and use, 438 and 575 ff. For rel. clause, 577. For sub. clause,—time, cause, manner, means, condition, concession, purpose, 578. For prin. clause, 579. For verbal noun, 580. W. negative, 581.

Particles, etymology of,—Adverbs, 303 ff.; preps., 306 ff.; conjuncts., 308 ff.; interjects., 312.

Particles, syntax of, 582–590,—Adverbs, 582 ff.; preps., 586, 432–437; conjuncts., 587 ff.; interjects., 589 ff.

Partim, w. gen., 396, III. 4). *Partim*—*partim*, for *pars*—*pars*, 461, 5.

Partitive genitive, 396, III.

Parts of speech, 30.

Parum, w. gen., 396, III. 4).

Parrus, compared, 165.

Passive voice, 195; passive constr., 371, 6.

Paterfamilias, decl. of, 126.

Pulior, constr., 551, II. 1–2.

Patrials, 326, 3.

Patronymies, 316.

Pause, caesural, 662.

Peculiarities in conjug., 234 ff.

Pelagus, plur. and gend. of, 46, 5; 47, II.

Penes, w. accus., 433.

Pentameter, 663, 2.

Penthemimeris, 656, 2.

Penults, quantity of, 645 ff.

Per, in compds., 338, 1; 371, 4;

per, w. acc., 433. *Per me stat*, 499, 1.

Perceiving, constr. of verbs of, 551.

Percontor, w. two accs., 374, 2.

Perfect system, 241.

Perfect and supine, formation of, 258.

Perfect, 197; 241, II.; pres. and hist., or definite and indef., 198; wanting, 268, 275, 281, 283.

Perfect, syntax of,—in indie., 471; def. and indef., or pres. and hist., 471; of what has ceased to be, 471, 1; w. *paene*, *prope*, 471, 2; for Eng. pres., 471, 3. In subj., 478; in sequence, 480; after hist. tense, 482, 2; 533, 1; in desires and wishes, 488, 2; in condition, 509; in orat. obl., 532 ff.; in infin., 542; for pres., 542, 2. In part., 574; for verbal noun, 580.

Period, Latin, arrangement of, 605.

Periphrastic conjugation, 227 ff.

Peritus, w. gen., 399, (2).

Permisceo, w. dat., 385, 5.

Permitto, constr., 551, II. 2.

Person, of nouns, 37; of verbs, 200.

Personal pronouns, 184; use of, 446; reflex. use of, 448.

Persuading, verbs of, w. dat., 385.

Pertacet, *pertacsum est*, 410, 6.

Peto, constr., 374, 3, 4).

Ph, 4.

Phalaecean verse, 691, V.

Pherecratean verse, 689, II.

Piget, constr., 410.

Place, abl. or gen. of, 421 ff.; locative, 423, 2.

Pleasing, verbs of, w. dat., 385.

Plenty, constr. of verbs and adjs. of, 419, III.

Plenus, w. gen. or abl., 399, (3); 419.

Pleonasm, 704, II.

Pluperfect, 197; 241, II.—in indie., 472; in letters, 472, 1; for Eng. imp., 472, 2. In subj., 478; sequence, 480; in desires and wishes, 488, 2; in condition, 510; after *antequam* and *priusquam*, 523, 2; in orat. obl., 532; 533, 2–4.

Plural, 37; wanting, 130; with change of meaning, 132.

Plus, without *quam*, 417, 3.

Poenitet, constr., 410.

Polysyndeton, 704, II. 1.

Pone, w. accus., 433.

- Posco*, w. two aecs. or acc. and abl., 374, 2; w. subj., 558, VI.
- Position, long by, 611; short, 612.
- Positive, 160; wanting, 166.
- Possessives, 185; w. gen., 397, 3; for gen., 398, 3; w. *refert* and *interest*, 408, 1, 2; use of, 447; reflexive, 448.
- Possessor, dat. of, 387.
- Post*, sound of, 8, 1.
- Post*, in compds., 338, 1; in compds. w. dat., 386. *Post*, in expressions of time, 427; *post*, w. acc., 433.
- Posterus*, compared, 163, 3.
- Postremus*, force of, 442.
- Postridie*, w. gen., 411; w. accus., 437, 1.
- Postulo*, constr., 374, 3, 4).
- Potens*, w. gen., 399, (3).
- Potential subjunctive, 485 ff.; in declar. sentences, 486, I.; in deliberative questions, 486, II.; in sub. clauses, 486, III.; of repeated action, 486, 5.
- Potior*, w. gen., 409, 3; w. abl., 419; 419, 4.
- Prae*, in compds. w. dat., 386; *prae*, w. abl., 434.
- Præditus*, w. abl., 419, 3.
- Præter*, in compds., w. accus., 371, 4; *præter*, w. accus., 433.
- Predicate, 347; simple, 353; complex, 354; compound, 361. Pred. nouns, 355, 362. Pred. adjs., 356; 438, 2. Pred. gen., 401; varieties of, 402; verbs with, 403; other constrs. for, 404. Pred. abl., 428, 1.
- Prepositions, 306; inseparable, 307; in compds., 338, 1. In expressions of time and space, 378, 1 and 2. W. names of places, 379, 1, 2 and 4. *Pro* with abl., 384, 2, 2). Compds. w. dat., 386. *A* or *ab* w. abl. of agent, 388, 1; 414, 5. Case w. prep. for the dat., 391, 2; for the gen., 398, 4; 399, 5; 407, 2; 410, 4. *Cum* w. abl. of accompaniment, 414, 7. *Quam pro*, 417, 6. W. abl. of place, 421; of source and separation, 425; of time, 426. Preps. w. cases, Rule, 432, 434 ff.; preps. as adverbs, 436.
- Present, 197; 241, I.,—in indic., 466 ff.; of general truths, customs, hist. pres., 467. In subj., 477. In imperat., 536. In infin., 541. Part., 572.
- Present perfect, 471, I.
- Present system of forms, 241.
- Priapeian verse, 695.
- Price, gen. of, 396, IV.; abl. of, 416.
- Pridie*, w. gen., 411; w. acc., 437, 1.
- Primitives and derivatives, 313.
- Principal parts of verbs, 240, 246–260. Prin. clauses, 345, 2; in oratio obliqua, 530. Prin. elements, 349; tenses, 198, 2.
- Prior*, *primus*, 166; force of, 442, 1.
- Prisquam*, w. indic. or subj., 521, 523.
- Pro*, in compds. w. dat., 386, 2; *pro*, w. abl. in defence of, 384, 2, 2); *pro*, w. abl., 434.
- Pro*, quantity of, in compds., 654, 4.
- Procul*, w. abl., 437, 2.
- Prohibeo*, constr., 499, 1; 551, II. 1.
- Pronouns, 182 ff.; pers., 184; poses., 185; demon., 186; relat., 187; interrog., 188; indef., 189.
- Pronouns, syntax of, 445–459,—Agreement, 445. Pers. and Posses., 446 ff. Reflex. use of, 448 ff. Demon., 450 ff. Rel., 453. Interrog., 454. Indef., 455.
- Pronunciation of Latin, 5–28.
- Prope*, w. accus., 433.
- Proper nouns, 31.
- Propior*, *proximus*, 166; w. accus., 391, 2, 2); 433.
- Propius*, w. accus., 437, 1.
- Proptius*, constr., 391, 2, 4); 399, 3.
- Propter*, w. accus., 433.
- Prosody, 607–701,—Quantity, 608–654. Versification, 655–701.
- Prospicio*, constr., 385, 3.
- Prosthesis, 703, 4.
- Provideo*, constr., 385, 3.
- Providus*, w. gen., 399, (2).
- Proxime*, w. accus., 437, 1.
- Proximum est*, constr., 556, I. 2.
- Proximus*, w. accus., 391, 2, 2); 433.
- Prudens*, w. gen., 399, (2); w. abl., 399, 5.
- ps*, genit. of nouns in, 75.
- Pudet*, constr., 410.
- Punishment, w. verbs of condemning, 410, 5.

Purgo, constr., 410, 7.
 Purpose, subjunctive of, 489 ff.; w. conjuncts., 490; pure purpose, 491; mixed, 492; peculiarities, 493; in rel. clauses, 500 ff. Inf. of purpose, 553, V.; gerund, 563, 5; 564, 2; supine, 569; participle, 578, V.
Pyrites, decl. of, 43.

QU, changed, 248.
Quero, constr., 374, 3, 4).
Qualis, *qualiscunque*, *qualisqualis*, 187, 7; *qualis*, interrog., 188, 4; *qualislibet*, indef., 191, 4.
 Quality, characteristic, genit. of, 396, IV.; abl. of, 428.
Quam, w. comparatives, 417, 1; w. superlatives, 170, 2. *Quam pro*, w. abl., 417, 6. *Quam ut*, w. subj., 496, 2. *Quam si*, w. subj., 503, 506. *Quam quod*, w. subj., 520, 3.
Quamquam, w. indic. or subj., 516, I.
Quamvis, *quantumvis*, w. subj., 515 ff.
Quando, w. indic. or subj., 520.
 Quantity, 20 ff.; signs of, 24. General rules for, 610 ff. Special, 613-654; final syllables, 613 ff.; increments, 629 ff.; deriv. endings, 645 ff.; stem syllables, 649 ff.
Quantus, *quantuscunque*, *quantusquantus*, 187, 7; indefinite, 188, 4.
Quasi, w. subj., 503, 506.
Qui, rel., interrog., indef., 187 ff.; for *quo*, *qua*, 187, 1; 188, 2. Use of as rel., interrog., indef., 453 ff.
Qui, w. subj. of purpose or result, 489, 500 ff. *Qui dicitur*, *vocatur*, 453, 7. *Quicunque*, 187, 4.
Quia, w. indic. or subj., 520.
Quidum, indef., 191, 455.
Quidem, place in clause, 602, III.
Quilibet, 191; use of, 458.
Quin, w. subj., 489, 498.
Quinam, 188, 3.
Quinarius, 712.
Quippe, w. relative, 519, 3.
Quis, interrog., 188; indef., 189 ff.; use of, 454 ff.
Quis, for *quibus*, 187, 1.
Quisnam, 188, 3.
Quispiam, 191; use of, 455.

Quisquam, 191; use of, 457.
Quisque, 191; use of, 458; w. plur. verb, 461, 3.
Quisquis, 187, 4.
Quitum, quantity of, 651, 3.
Quivis, 191; use of, 458.
Quo, w. gen. 396, III. 4); w. subj. of purpose, 489, 497.
Quod, w. gen., 396, III. 4); w. indic. or subj., 521 ff.
Quod, expletive, 453, 6; w. subj., 520; clause w. *quod* unconnected, 554, IV.; *quod* restrictive, 501, 3.
Quojus, *quoi*, for *cujus*, *cui*, 187, 1.
Quominus, w. subj., 499.
Quoniam, w. indic. or subj., 520.
Quoque, place in the clause, 602, III.
Quot, *quotcunque*, *quotquot*, *quotus*, *quotuscunque*, 187, 7; 188, 4.
Quum, w. subj., 515, 517 ff.; w. indic., 518, 3.

R, DROPPED, 55, 3; changed, 248; nouns in, 48, 51; genit. of, 66; gender, 101, 103, 111, 114.
R, quantity of final syllables in, 621.
Rastrum, plur. *rastri*, *rastra*, 143.
Ratum, quantity of, 651, 3.
Re, *red*, 338, 2.
-re, for *ris*, 236.
 Reason, subj. of, 517 ff. See *Cause*.
Recordor, w. gen., 406, II.; w. accus., 407, 1; w. abl. with *de*, 407, 2.
Recuso, constr., 499, 1-2.
 Reduplicated perfects, 254; quantity of, 652.
Refert, constr., 406, III.; 408.
Refertus, w. gen. or abl., 399, (2) and 5.
 Reflexive use of pronouns, 448 ff.
 Regarding, verbs of, w. two accus., 373.
Regno, w. gen., 409, 3.
 Relative, 187; as adj., 445, 8; use of, 453.
 Relative clause, w. potential subj., 486, 1; w. subj. of desire, 488, 5; of purpose, result, 500; of result after indefinite or general antecedents, after *unus*, *solus*, *dignus*, *indignus*, *idoneus*, *aptus*, and compar. w. *quam*, 501, I.-IV.; w. subj. of condition, 513; of conces-

- sion, 515; of cause, reason, 517, 519; w. infin., 531, 1.
- Reliquum est*, constr., 556, I. 2.
- Remaining, constr. of verbs of, 556, III.
- Reminding, constr. of verbs of, 410.
- Reminiscor*, w. gen., 406, II.
- Repeated action, subj. of, 486, 5.
- Reposeo*, with two accs., 374, 2.
- Resisting, verbs of, w. the dat., 385.
- Respublica*, decl. of, 126.
- Restat ut*, 495, 2.
- Result, subjunctive of, 489 ff.; w. conjuncts., 490 ff.; of pure result, 494; mixed, 495; peculiarities, 496. With relatives, 500. See *Relative clause*.
- Retinentia*, 704, I. 3.
- Rhetorical questions, 530, 2.
- Rhythmic accent, 659.
- Rideo*, w. accus., 371, 3.
- Rivers, gender of names of, 35.
- Rogo*, w. two accs., 374, 2; w. subj., 558, VI.
- rs, genit. of nouns in, 76.
- Rudis*, w. gen., 399, (2); w. abl., 399, 5.
- Rules of Syntax, 591.
- Rus*, constr., 379, 3; 424, 2.
- Rutum*, quantity of, 651, 3.
- S** SOUND of, 11 ff.; nouns in, 48 ff.; genit. of, 68-76; genit., 110.
- Sacer*, compared, 167; w. dat. or gen., 391; 399, 3, 3).
- Saepe*, compared, 305, 4.
- Sapio*, w. accus., 371, 3.
- Sapphic verse, 664; 690, I.; 691, IV.; greater sapphic, 690, II.
- Satago*, *satagito*, w. gen., 409, 5.
- Satis, w. gen., 396, III. 4).
- Satisfacio*, w. dat., 385, 2.
- Scaium*, quantity of, 651, 3.
- Scanning, 668.
- Season, 683, 4.
- Scidi*, quantity of, 651, 2.
- Secundum*, w. accus., 433.
- Semi-deponents, 272, 3; 282; use of, 465, 3.
- Senex*, compared, 168, 3.
- Sentences, syntax of, 343-361; classification of, 345 ff.; simple, 347 ff.; complex, 357 ff.; compound, 360. See also *Declarative*, *Exclamatory*, *Imperative*, *Interrogative*.
- Separation, abl. of, 425.
- Sequence of tenses, 480 ff. Rule, 480. Application, 481; after hist. pres., 481, IV.; after imp. subj., 481, V.; after infin. or part., 481, VI. Exceptions, 482; after perf. def., 482, 1; hist. tense, 482, 2; in orat. obliqua, 482, 3.
- Sequitur*, w. subj. or infin., 495, 2; 549, 1.
- Serving, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
- Servus*, decl. of, 45.
- Scse*, 184, 4.
- Sestertius*, *sestertia*, *sestertium*, 712 ff.
- Showing, verbs of, w. two accs., 373.
- si, sin, in Greek datives, 90, 97.
- Silver age, 706.
- sim, in perfect subj., 239, 4.
- Similis* and its compds., constr., 391, 2, 4).
- Simple,—sentence, 347 ff.; elements, 350; subject, 351; predicate, 353; words, 313, 1.
- Simul*, w. abl., 437, 2.
- Sin*, w. subjunctive, 503, 507 ff.
- Sine*, w. abl., 434.
- Singular, 37; wanting, 131.
- Sino*, constr., 551, II. 1.
- Sitio*, w. accus., 371, 3.
- Situm*, quantity of, 651; 3.
- so, in fut. perfect, 239, 4.
- Solus*, decl. of, 149; *solus qui*, w. subj., 501, II.
- Source, abl. of, 425.
- Space, abl. of, 378.
- Sparing, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
- Specification, acc. of, 380; genit. of, 396, V.; abl. of, 429.
- Spirants, 3.
- Stanza, 666; stanzas of Horace, 699 ff.
- Statum*, quantity of, 651, 3.
- Statuo*, constr., 558, II.
- Stem, 41; in the five decls., 123.
- Stem-syllables, quantity in primitives, 649 ff.; in derivats., 653; in compds., 654.
- Stiti*, *stiti*, quantity of, 651, 2.
- Striving, constr. of verbs of, 558, III.
- Studiosus*, w. gen., 399.
- Sub*, in compds., 338, 1; compds. w. dat., 386. *Sub* w. acc. or abl., 435.

- Subject,—Simple subject, 351; complex, 352; compound, 361. Subj. nom., 367; omitted, 367, 2. Subj. acc., 375, 545; omitted, 545, 2. Infin. as subj., 549. Clause as subj., 555 ff.
- Subject and object clauses, 554 ff. Indirect questions, infin. clauses, subjunctive clauses, and clauses with *quod*, compared, 554. Subjunctive clauses, 555 ff.; interrog., 555; not interrog., 556. Object clauses, 557 ff.; interrog., 557; not interrog., 558.
- Subjective genitive, 396, I.
- Subjunctive, 196; syntax of, 483–533,—Potential Subj., 485 ff. Subj. of desire, 487 ff. Of purpose or result, 489–501; w. conjuncts., 489 ff.; w. relatives, 500 ff. Of condition, 502 ff. Of concession, 515 ff. Of cause and time, 517 ff. In indirect questions, 524 ff. By attraction, 527. In indirect discourse—*oratio obliqua*, 528.
- Subordinate,—clauses, 345, 2; in *oratio obliqua*, 531. Sub. conjuncts., 311, 588; elements, 349.
- Substantives, see *Nouns*.
- Subter*, in compds. w. acc., 371, 4. *Subter*, w. acc. or abl., 435.
- Sui*, decl. of, 184; use of, 448 ff.
- Sum*, w. dat., 387; w. pred. gen., 403.
- Super*, in compds. w. accus., 371, 4.; in compds. with dat., 386. *Super*, w. acc. or abl., 435.
- Superlative, 160; irreg., 163; wanting, 168 ff.; formed by *maxime*, 170; w. gen., 396, 2, 3) (2).
- Superus*, compared, 163, 3.
- Supine, 196, II.; wanting, 267 ff., 274, 281, 283. Use of, 567 ff.
- Supine system, 241.
- Supplico*, w. dat., 385, 2.
- Supra*, w. accus., 433.
- Suspensus*, w. gen., 399, (2).
- Suns*, decl. of, 185; use of, 448 ff.
- Syllables, 17 ff.
- Synaeresis, 669, II.
- Synaloepha, Synaphœia, 669, I. 5.
- Synecdoche, 705, III.
- Synesis, 704, III. 3.
- Synopsis of conjugation, 216–226.
- Syntax, 343–606,—of sentences, 343–361; of nouns, 362–437; of adjectives, 438–444; of pronouns, 445–459; of verbs, 460–581; of particles, 582–590. Rules of syntax, 591. Arrangement of words and clauses, 592–606.
- Systole, 669, IV.
- T** SOUND of, 11 ff.; nouns in, 48; genit. of, 67; gender, 111. *T* dropped, 55, 3; 248.
- T*, quantity of final syllables in, 621
- Tacet*, constr., 410.
- Talis*, 186, 4.
- Talpa*, gender of, 44.
- Tametsi*, w. subj., 515; 516, III.
- Tanquam*, *tanquam si*, w. subj., 503; 506.
- Tantus*, 186, 4: *tantum abest*, 496, 3.
- Teaching, verbs of, w. two accs., 374.
- Te* for *te*, 184, 5.
- Tempero*, constr., 385, 3.
- Templum*, decl. of, 45.
- Temporal conjunctions, 311; 588, I.
- Tenses, 197; prin. and hist., 198; wanting, 198, 3. Use of, in indic., 466 ff.; in subj., 476 ff.; sequence of, 480 ff.; in imperat., 534; in infin., 540; in part., 571.
- Tenus*, w. gen., 411; w. abl., 434; after its case, 434, 2.
- Terræ*, genit. of place, 424, 3.
- Testis sum*, constr., 551, 3.
- Tete*, 184, 4.
- Tetrameter verse, 663, 2.
- Tetrapody, 656, 2.
- Tetrastich, 666.
- Th, 4.
- Thesis, 660.
- thongos, Greek nouns in, 47, 2.
- Threatening, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
- tim, adverbs in, 334, 2.
- Time, accus. of, 378; abl. of, 378, 2; 426; w. the prep. *in*, 426, 2; w. *abhinc*, 427. Time denoted by acc. or abl. w. *ante* or *post*, 427; by participle, 578, I.
- Time, with cause or purpose, subj. of, 521 ff.
- Timco*, constr., 385, 3; 492, 4.
- Tis*, for *tui*, 184, 5.
- to, for *tor*, in imperative, 239, 5.

Tot, totus, 186, 4. *Totus*, decl. of, 149.

Towns, gender of names of, 35; constr.—accus., 379; with *urbs* or *oppidum*, 379, 2; genit. or abl., 421, II.

Trans, in compds., 338, 1; in compds. w. acc., 371, 4; w. two aces., 374, 6. *Trans*, w. acc., 433.

Transitive verbs, 193; 371, 3.

Trees, gender of names of, 35.

Trimeter, 663, 2.

Tripody, 656, 2.

Tristich, 666.

Trochaic verse, 679 ff.

-trum, nouns in, 320.

Tu, decl. of, 184.

Tuli, quantity of, 651, 2.

-tus, nouns in, 318.

Tuus, decl. of, 185.

U, SOUND of, 6 ff., 14; w. sound of *w*, 9. Nouns in *u*, 116; gender of, 118.

U, quantity of,—final, 619; in increments, 637, 641.

-u, for *ui* in dat., 116, 4.

Ubi, w. genit., 396, 2, 4).

-ubus, in dat. and abl., 90; 116, 4.

Ui, as diphthong, 9.

-uis, for *us*, in genit., 116, 4.

-ula, nouns in, 320, 5.

-uleus, in derivatives, 315, 5.

Ullus, decl. of, 149; indef., 191, 2; use of, 457.

Uterior, ultimus, 166; force of, 442, 1.

Ultra, w. accus., 433.

-ulus, ula, ulum, in nouns, 315; 320, 5; in adjs., 327 ff.

-um, for *arum*, 42, 3; for *orum*, 45, 5, 4); in gen. plur. of 3d dec., 89.

-undus, undi, for *endus, endi*, 238.

Unus, decl. of, 149, 176; *unus qui*, w. subj., 501, II.

Unusquisque, 191, 1.

-ur, genit. of nouns in, 114.

-ura, nouns in, 321.

-urio, desideratives in, 332, III.

-us, for *e* in voc. sing., 45, 5; nouns in, 50 ff., 116; genitive of, 73, 116; gender, 115, 118. Derivatives in, 320, 6; 321; *us*, final, quantity of, 627.

Usque, w. accus., 437, 1.

-ustus, adjs. in, 323.

Usus, constr., 419.

-ut, nouns in, 51; genit. of, 67; genit., 111.

Ut, w. subj. of purpose or result, 489 ff.; omitted, 493, 2; w. *qui*, 519, 3.

Ut si, w. subj., 503, 506.

Ut quisque—ita, 458, 2.

Uter, utercunque, 149; 187, 6; 188, 4; 191, 2.

Uterlibet, uterque, utervis, 191, 3.

Uterque, w. plur. verb, 461, 3.

Utinam, w. subj. of desire, 488, 1.

Utor, constr., 419; 419, 4.

Utpote, w. *qui*, 519, 3.

Utrum, 346, II. 2.

-utus, adjs. in, 323.

-uus, verbal adjs. in, 328, 5.

-ux, genitive of nouns in, 81.

V, PLACE supplied by *u*, 2.

Vacuum, w. gen. or abl., 399, (3) and 5.

Value, genit. of, 396, IV.

Vannus, gender of, 47.

Vclut, vclut si, w. subj., 503, 506.

Verbal inflections, table of, 242.

Verbs, etymology of—Classes, voices, moods, tenses, etc., 192–203. Paradigms, 204–215. Synopsis, 216–226. Periphrastic conj., 227–232. Contractions and peculiarities, 234–239. Formation of parts, 240 ff. Table of inflections, 242. Comparative view of conjs., 243 ff. Principal parts of verbs, 246–260. Classification of verbs, 261–286. Irreg. verbs, 287–296. Defect., 297. Impers., 298–301. Deriv., 330 ff. Compound, 341. Irregularities of special verbs, 721. See also *Transitive, Intrans., Finite, Deponent, Semi-depon., Impersonal, Frequent., Incept., Desiderat., Diminutive*.

Verbs, syntax of, 460, 581,—Agreement, 460 ff. Omitted, 367, 3; 460, 3. Voices, 464 ff. Tenses of Indic., 466 ff. Use of Indic., 474. Tenses of Subj., 476 ff. Use of Subj., 483–533. Imperat., 534 ff. Infin., 539–553. Subject and

- object clauses, 554 ff. Gerund, 559-566. Supine, 567 ff. Participles, 571-581.
- Verb-stem, 203, 242.
- Verecor*, constr., 492, 4.
- Verisimile est, verum est*, constr., 556, I. 2.
- Vero*, place in clause, 602, III.
- Verses, 661; names of, 663 ff.
- Versification, 655,—Feet, 656 ff.
- Verses, 661 ff. Figures of prosody, 669. Varieties of verse, 670 ff.
- Versus*, w. accus., 433.
- Vescor*, constr., 419; 419, 4.
- Vestras*, 185, 2.
- Vestri, vestrum*, 396, III. 1.; 446, 3.
- Veto*, constr., 551, II. 1.
- Fetus*, compared, 167.
- Vicinus*, w. dat. or gen., 391, 1; 399, 3.
- Vir*, decl. of, 45, 4.
- Virgil*, versification of, 696.
- Vocative, formation of, 86, 88; in Greek nouns, 95; in adjs., 154, 157. Syntax of, 369.
- Voices, 195. See also under *Verbs*, *syntax of*.
- Volens*, idiomatic use of dat., 387, 3.
- Volo*, constr., 551, II. 1.
- volus**, compds. in, compared, 164.
- Vowels, 3, I.; sounds of, 6 ff., 14 ff.; before *r*, 6, 2.
- W**, PLACE supplied by *u*, 2.
- Want, constr. of verbs and adjs. of, 419.
- Warning, constr. of verbs of, 558, VI.
- Weights, Roman, 714.
- Winds, gender of names of, 35.
- Wishing, constr. of verbs of, 551.
- Words, arrangement of, 592.
- X**, SOUND of, 11 ff.; nouns in, 48, 50; genitive of, 77-83; gender of, 108.
- Y**, ONLY in Greek words, 2.
- Nouns in, 48; genitive of, 62; gender, 111.
- Y*, quantity of,—final, 617; in increments, 628.
- ys**, genitive of nouns in, 74; gender of, 107; quantity of *ys* final, 628.
- yz**, genitive of nouns in, 82.
- Z**, ONLY in Greek words, 2.
- Zeugma, 704, I. 2.

THE END.



Harkness's Latin Grammar.

From Rev. Prof. J. J. OWEN, D.D., New York Free Academy.

"I have carefully examined Harkness's Latin Grammar, and am so well pleased with its plan, arrangement, and execution, that I shall take the earliest opportunity of introducing it as a text-book in the Free Academy."

From Mr. JOHN D. PHILBRICK, Superintendent of Public Schools, Boston, Mass.

"This work is evidently no hasty performance, nor the compilation of a mere book maker, but the well-ripened fruit of mature and accurate scholarship. It is eminently practical, because it is truly philosophical."

From Mr. G. N. BIGELOW, Principal of State Normal School, Framingham, Mass.

"Harkness's Latin Grammar is the most satisfactory text-book I have ever used."

From Rev. DANIEL LEACH, Superintendent Public Schools, Providence, R. I.

"I am quite confident that it is superior to any Latin Grammar before the public. It has recently been introduced into the High School, and all are much pleased with it."

From Dr. J. B. CHAPIN, State Commissioner of Public Instruction in Rhode Island.

"The vital principles of the language are clearly and beautifully exhibited. The work needs no one's commendation."

From Mr. ABNER J. PHIPPS, Superintendent of Public Schools, Lowell, Mass.

"The aim of the author seems to be fully realized in making this 'a useful Book, and as such I can cheerfully commend it. The clear and admirable manner in which the intricacies of the Subjunctive Mood are unfolded, is one of its marked features."

"The evidence of ripe scholarship and of familiarity with the latest works of German and English philologists is manifest throughout the book."

From Dr. J. T. CHAMPLIN, President of Waterville College.

"I like both the plan and the execution of the work very much. Its matter and manner are both admirable. I shall be greatly disappointed if it does not at once win the public favor."

From Prof. A. S. PACKARD, Bowdoin College, Brunswick, Maine.

"Harkness's Latin Grammar exhibits throughout the results of thorough scholarship. I shall recommend it in our next catalogue."

From Prof. J. J. STANTON, Bates College.

"We have introduced Harkness's Grammar into this Institution. It is much more logical and concise than any of its rivals."

From Mr. WM. J. ROLFE, Principal Cambridge High School.

"Notwithstanding all the inconveniences that must attend a change of Latin Grammars in a large school like mine, I shall endeavor to secure the adoption of Harkness's Grammar in place of our present text-book as soon as possible."

From Mr. L. R. WILLISTON, Principal Ladies' Seminary, Cambridge, Mass.

"I think this work a decided advance upon the Grammar now in use."

From Mr. D. B. HAGER, Princ. Eliot High School, Jamaica Plain, Mass.

"This is, in my opinion, by far the best Latin Grammar ever published. It is admirably adapted to the use of learners, being remarkably concise, clear, comprehensive, and philosophical. It will henceforth be used as a text-book in this school."

Harkness's Latin Grammar.

From Prof. C. S. HARRINGTON and Prof. J. C. VAN BENSCHOTEN, of the Wesleyan University.

"This work is clear, accurate, and happy in its statement of principles, is simple yet scholarly, and embraces the latest researches in this department of philological science. It will appear in our catalogue."

From Mr. ELBRIDGE SMITH, Principal Free Academy, Norwich, Ct.

"This is not only the best Latin Grammar, but one of the most thoroughly prepared school-books that I have ever seen. I have introduced the book into the Free Academy, and am much pleased with the results of a month's experience in the class-room."

From Mr. H. A. PRATT, Principal High School, Hartford, Ct.

"I can heartily recommend Harkness's new work to both teachers and scholars. It is, in my judgment, the best Latin Grammar ever offered to our schools."

From Mr. I. F. CADY, Principal High School, Warren, R. I.

"The longer I use Harkness's Grammar the more fully am I convinced of its superior excellence. Its merits must secure its adoption wherever it becomes known."

From Messrs. S. THURDER and T. B. STOCKWELL, Public High School, Providence.

"An experience of several weeks with Harkness's Latin Grammar, enables us to say with confidence, that it is an improvement on our former text-book."

From Mr. G. B. GOFF, Principal Boys' Classical High School, Providence, R. I.

"The practical working of Harkness's Grammar is gratifying even beyond my expectations."

From Rev. Prof. M. H. BUCKHAM, University of Vermont.

"Harkness's Latin Grammar seems to me to supply the desideratum. It is philosophical in its method, and yet simple and clear in its statements; and this, in my judgment, is the highest encomium which can be bestowed on a text-book."

From Mr. E. T. QUIMBY, Appleton Academy, New Ipswich, N. H.

"I think the book much superior to any other I have seen. I should be glad to introduce it at once."

From Mr. H. ORCUTT, Glenwood Ladies' Seminary, W. Brattleboro', Vt.

"I am pleased with Harkness's Latin Grammar, and have already introduced it into this seminary."

From Mr. CHARLES JEWETT, Principal of Franklin Academy.

"I deem it an admirable work, and think it will supersede all others now in use. In the division and arrangement of topics, and in its mechanical execution, it is superior to any Latin Grammar extant."

From Mr. C. C. CHASE, Principal of Lowell High School.

"Prof. Harkness's Grammar is, in my opinion, admirably adapted to make the study of the Latin language agreeable and interesting."

From Mr. J. KIMBALL, High School, Dorchester, Mass.

"It meets my ideal of what is desirable in every grammar, to wit; compression of general principles in terse definitions and statements, for ready use; and fullness of detail, well arranged for reference."

